

The Garden of the Eight Paradises

BĀBUR AND THE CULTURE OF EMPIRE IN CENTRAL
ASIA, AFGHANISTAN AND INDIA (1483-1530)



BY

STEPHEN F. DALE

THE GARDEN OF THE EIGHT PARADISES

BRILL'S INNER ASIAN LIBRARY

EDITED BY

NICOLA DI COSMO
DEVIN DEWEESE
CAROLINE HUMPHREY

VOLUME 10



THE GARDEN OF THE EIGHT PARADISES

*Babur and the Culture of Empire in Central Asia,
Afghanistan and India (1483-1530)*

BY

STEPHEN E DALE



BRILL
LEIDEN • BOSTON
2004

This book is printed on acid-free paper.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Dale, Stephen Frederic.

The garden of the eight paradises : Babur and the culture of Empire in Central Asia, Afghanistan and India (1483-1530)

p. cm. — (Brill's inner Asian library ; 10)

Includes bibliographical references and index

ISBN 90-04-13707-6

1. Babur, Emperor of Hindustan, 1483-1530. 2. Asia, Central — History. 3. Afghanistan — History. 4. India — Kings and rulers — Biography. 5. India — History — 1000-1765. I. Title. II. Series.

DS461.1.D35 2004

954.02'52'092—dc22

[B]

2003063901

ISSN 1566-7162

ISBN 90 04 13707 6

© Copyright 2004 by Koninklijke Brill NV, Leiden, The Netherlands

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, translated, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without prior written permission from the publisher.

*Authorization to photocopy items for internal or personal use is granted by Brill provided that the appropriate fees are paid directly to The Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Suite 910 Danvers MA 01923, USA.
Fees are subject to change.*

PRINTED IN THE NETHERLANDS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Preface.....	vn
Maps and Illustrations.....	ix
Abbreviations.....	xi
A Note on Transliteration	xin
Introduction.....	1
Chapter One. Emperors and Individuals.....	15
Chapter Two. The Timurid Denouement in Mawarannahr	67
Chapter Three. Babur's Cultural Personality	135
Chapter Four. The Padshah of Kabul	187
Chapter Five. Poetry and Autobiography	247
Chapter Six. The Conquest of Hindustan	291
Chapter Seven. Strangers in a Strange Land	355
Chapter Eight. The Rewards of Empire, the Loneliness of Exile	403
Epilogue: Babur and the Timurid Renaissance	459
Bibliography.....	473
Glossary.....	495
Index.....	501

明珠

PREFACE

Writing a biography of Zahir al-Din Muhammad Babur has meant relying on generations of scholars, the help of contemporaries and the kindness and tolerance of friends. This biography would not have been possible first of all, were it not for the publication of scholarly editions and translations of Babur's remarkable autobiography. Three works in particular have been especially important. They are: the critical edition compiled by Professor E. J. Mano of Kyoto University, the first English translation of Babur's original Turkic text by Annette Susannah Beveridge, the self-taught, late-Victorian scholar, and the edited Turkish translation of Reşit Rahmeti Arat. Beyond these textual foundations I am especially indebted to the scholarship of a group of late Soviet-era scholars, in particular A. Azimdzhanova, I. V. Stebleva, O. D. Chekhovich and Elena A. Davidovich. I first read Babur's poetry in Azimdzhanova's and Stebleva's Russian translations, and I have greatly benefited from the numismatic and social-economic studies of Davidovich and Chekhovich. Regarding the Timurids in particular, I have been educated by the scholarship and conversations with Beatrice F. Manz, Jo-Ann Gross, Jürgen Paul and Maria E. Subtelny. I have also made repeated use of Wheeler M. Thackston's valuable translations of Babur's text and that of Babur's Mongol cousin, Haydar Mirza Dughlat.

Over the course of many years I have been especially fortunate to benefit from the expertise of several scholars, especially Thomas T. Allsen, Cornell H. Fleischer and Peter B. Golden, who all have patiently contributed to the knowledge of someone trained primarily in Indo-Islamic studies. I have had innumerable conversations about Central Asia with Tom Allsen, who also has generously supplied me with dozens of references and/or articles and books that reflect his own encyclopedic knowledge of Mongol and post-Mongol Central Asia. I first began studying Turkish with Cornell Fleischer, who also, early in my work, presented me with a splendid copy of Arat's Turkish translation of Babur's autobiography. In many conversations and in his writings Peter Golden has shared his own exceptional knowledge of Turks and Turkish history. Professor

Dona Straley, the scholarly Middle East Librarian at Ohio State University, has also generously supported this work with her own expertise.

Many friends have openly shared my enthusiasm for this project over a course of many years. One of the earliest was Carole J. Dale, who among other things, organized the party to commemorate Babur's 500th birth anniversary on the steppes of Central Ohio. Alam and Parwin Payind have enriched my own knowledge of Afghan culture—and cuisine—during many conversations and dinners. Beth Russell has graciously listened—on probably too many occasions—to discussions of arcane aspects of Babur's life and Central Asian, Afghan and Indian history. A number of Uzbek friends and colleagues were wonderfully welcoming and helpful during my most recent trip to Uzbekistan. These include Professor Shermatov Akram of Samarkand State University, Majlis Deputy and Head of the Babur International Fund, Zakhirjon Mashrabov, Dr. Kozimjon Turdaliev of the Andijan Ministry of Foreign Economic Relations and Professor Saifuddin Jalilov of Andijan State University. Mr. Ted Elder of the Andijan Development Center also went out of his way to help me when I stayed in Andijan. Finally, Anarbaev Abdulhamid of the Uzbek Institute of Archeology kindly took the time to explain the excavations at the site of the ancient city of Akhsi.

I tentatively began this project with a generous grant from the Social Science Research Council that allowed me to make my first trip to then Soviet Uzbekistan. Later I had the opportunity to study Babur's poetry during a year at the Woodrow Wilson Center in Washington D.C., where the friendship of Sumit Ganguly and Tapan Raychaudhuri was especially meaningful. A subsequent fellowship at the Institute for Advanced Study at Princeton gave me the time and support to write early drafts of several chapters of the manuscript. The Timurid seminar held at the Institute was an especially valuable forcing ground for some of the ideas in this biography. The College of Humanities at the Ohio State University has given me research leave on several occasions and a grant that supported the publication of illustrations in this volume. The maps were drawn by Mr. Ron Mclean of Ohio State University.

I have dedicated this volume to Lillian Li, whose encouragement, criticism, warmth and laughter have meant more than I can adequately express.

MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS

A. Maps

1. The Middle East, Central Asia and India
2. The Ferghanah Valley
3. Central Asia, Afghanistan and Northwestern India
4. Kabul and Hindustan

B. Illustrations

1. *Photograph'*.View from ancient Akhsi southeast toward Andijan
2. *Photograph'*.Gur-i Amir: Timur's tomb in Samarqand
3. *Photograph'*.Madrasah of Ulugh Beg in Samarqand
4. *Photograph'*.Yunas Khan's tomb in Tashkent
5. *Miniature*: Review of Mongol Yak Tail Standards in Ferghanah, June 1502.
6. *Miniature*: Babur orders a stream straightened at Istalif, sometime after September 1504. Illustrating the Kabul gazetteer.
7. *Photograph*:The Harat fortress
8. *Photograph*:Masjid-i Jaim: Friday mosque of Harat
9. *Miniature*: Babur visits female relatives at Husayn Bayqara's *madrasah* in Harat. December 1506.

10. *Miniature*'. Babur returns to camp drunk on horseback, March 1519.
11. *Miniature*'. Indian Elephants, Illustrating the Indian gazetteer.
12. *Miniature*'. Assault on Rajput fortress of Chandiri, January 1528.
13. *Miniature*'. Babur tours Gwalior, September 1528.
14. *Photograph*'. Statue of Babur and shrine in Andijan
15. *Photograph*'. Babur's symbolic tomb in Andijan

ABBREVIATIONS

AA — *AA-n-i Akbari*

AN — *Akbar namah*

BN-A — Arat, *Vekayi Babur'un Hatirati*

BN-B — Beveridge, *The Babur-Nama in English*

BN-M — Mano, *Babur-Nama (Vaqayi)*

CHIr — *Cambridge History of Iran*

Dkh — *Dihkhuda*

El 2 — *Encyclopaedia of Islam*, New Edition

Elr — *Encyclopaedia Iranica*

HN — *Humdyun namah*

Kopriilu-zade — “Babur Shahdn ShiTleri.”

NS — Amir Khusrau, *Nuh sipihr*.

Stebleva — *Semantika Gazeli Babura*

TJ — *Tuzuk-i Jahdngm*

TR-R — Ross, *Tdnkh-i Rashidi*,

TR-T — Thackston, *Tdnkh-i Rashidi*.

Yucel — *Babur Dzvam*

.

A NOTE ON TRANSLITERATION

Apart from English and Western European languages this biography has relied on secondary sources in Russian and modern Turkish and primary and secondary sources in Persian and Turki or Chaghatay Turkish. The transliteration system of the *Encyclopaedia Iranica* is used for Russian, and readers familiar with this language will easily recognize the original Cyrillic terms and titles of books and articles. Modern Turkish is simply rendered in the Latin script of the original. In order to simplify the body of this text Persian, Turki and Arabic terms, geographic regions and place names are given in glossary in the original Arabic script used by Turki as well as Arabic and Persian. The Arabic script spelling of these words is based on E.J. Mano's *Concordance and Classified Indexes* the companion volume to his collated edition of Babur's autobiography, which is cited in the Introduction. This is done here in order to simplify the transliteration system within the body of the text.

In many historical works that deal in whole or in part with Central Asia Turki and Mongol words are transliterated as if they were Persian. One of the most obvious differences between these languages is the absence of a distinction between long and short vowels in Turki and the importance of that difference in Persian—and in Arabic. Thus in Persian transliteration LJUm, “seal” or “tax” is rendered as *tamgha* rather than *tamgha*, and jLo as *tuman* rather than *tuman*. Here these languages are differentiated. For Persian, and Arabic words used in Persian and Turki phrases, long vowels will be indicated, thus Babur rather than Babur—but in representing Persian consonants the transliteration used by the *International Journal of Middle East Studies* will be simplified so that letters with the exact or similar sounds will be represented by one letter. Thus 3, J, and will all be represented by “z.” Those unfamiliar with the exact spelling may refer to the glossary.

Turki and Mongol words are represented here as simply as possible, rather than following the complex systems that modern linguists use to represent languages not well served by the Arabic script. In terms of vowels, while these languages do not distinguish between long and short vowels, the letters that reflect Turkish vowel harmony have been indicated. These are represented by umlauts or

in the case of the sound represented in modern Turkish by the undotted i, as "i." Thus كۆل or "lake" is given as *koi* and not *kill* and j I is given as *ariq* and not *ariq* or *ariq*. Regarding consonants the sounds ش and چ that are represented in standard Turk! transliteration systems respectively as s and c, are rendered simply as "sh" and "ch;" ج is given as "j." Otherwise the transliteration follows the simplified Persian system outlined above with the exception that X represents both "g" and "k" depending on the word. Thus X j-L is *buluk* while < i j is *beg*.

Compound personal names composed of Persian or Arabic and Turk! or Mongol words are given according to the language in each part of the name. Thus < j 7X1 j ايو ب is given as Ayub Begchik and not Ayub Begchik, and p.j \LAj K \ j3A is given as Khubnigar Khanim rather than Khubnigar Khamm. Finally, no attempt has been made to distinguish the spelling or pronunciation of geographic regions or place names according to either linguistic origin or local practice. Qarshi, a town near Samarqand, is given with no diacritics, and not as Qarshi, the Turk! version or Qarshi, the Persian transliteration. This reflects uncertainties about pronunciation, which in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, as today, could vary according to geographic, ethnic or social factors.

INTRODUCTION

Zahir al-Din Muhammad Babur (1483-1530), is a figure of major significance in the political and literary history of the sixteenth century world. The founder of the Indo-Afghan state that evolved into the Mughal Empire, Babur also wrote a sophisticated autobiography, distinguished by an unparalleled range of personal and political detail. It can still be argued whether his political or his literary legacy is more important. His descendants, after all, transformed his modest and largely unpacified territorial conquests into one of the world's great, pre-colonial Islamic empires, a state so wealthy that its name became synonymous in Europe with opulent display. Merely the act of Babur's great-great-grandson, Shah Jahan, in building the Taj Mahal might be reason enough to remember Babur, recount his life and recall his own highly refined aesthetic sense. Yet, in the very longue duree of recorded history Babur's autobiography may have the greater or at least the more enduring influence. A work that seems preternaturally modern in its revelations of motive and open displays of emotion, the autobiography, along with a collection of engagingly personal verse, humanize both its author and also an entire civilization. However, it is misleading to think of Babur's political and literary activities as distinct aspects of his career. Babur probably would not have written the autobiography had he been a political failure, and almost nothing would be known about his tumultuous military and political history without the autobiography.

Viewed from the singular perspective of September 11, 2001, Babur's life and writings are especially significant for what they reveal of an individual: a relentlessly ambitious, humorous, casually violent, articulate, heavy drinking, personally engaging, highly cultured Muslim who lived in three regions of contemporary interest: Central Asia, Afghanistan and India. Due to both his conquest and his literary legacy Babur is a well-known figure in the world of Islamic scholarship and among both scholars and the public in all three regions. Unfortunately but quite understandably twenty-first century Uzbeks, Afghans and Indians tend to view Babur not so much as an individual but as an embodiment of an ideology or a dream. In Uzbekistan, where he was born, he is now a nationalist

icon, in Kabul where he long reigned and is buried, his name evokes nostalgic memories where his neglected and now damaged gravesite reminds inhabitants of better days and picnics on its beautiful hillside location, and in India Babur is now reviled by many Hindu nationalists for building the mosque known as the Babri Masjid. Now destroyed, this building was seen by activists of the militant World Hindu Council and also by many members of the BJP, the Hindu nationalist political party, as a symbol of Muslim imperialism and repression. It is only one of the many ironies of Babur's life and the modern perceptions of that life, that while Babur was an observant Muslim he never mentions building a mosque or even praying in one. Instead, in narrating his life from the early days in the lush Ferghanah valley, far east of Samarkand, to its triumphal conclusion in India, he constantly and lovingly discusses the planning and construction of gardens, to which he gave such evocative names as: the Garden of Rest, the Gold-Scattering Garden, the Lotus Garden, and the Garden of the Eight Paradises. It is in these gardens he can be most frequently seen and, in many respects, most readily understood.

Biography is a genre devoted to the individual, and particularly in an age when religious and political stereotypes are evoked and misrepresented with alarming frequency, it is an important counterpoint to depersonalized structural analysis. As the French biographer and *Annales* historian Bernard Guenee writes when discussing these complementary forms of historical knowledge:

The study of structures seemed to me to be irreplaceable. It illuminated the past with marvelous coherence. But it made everything too simple. And a biography enables one to take a first look at the overwhelming complexity of things. What is more the study of structures seemed to give too much prominence to necessity.... But "it is only through men that things happen." And the story of a life helps us to understand how fragile and uncertain the destiny of these men is.... A biography makes it possible to pay more attention to chance, to the event, to chronological sequence; it alone can give the historian a sense of the time through which people actually lived.¹

Commenting on Guenee's argument, his fellow *Annaliste*, Jacques Le Goff, remarks: "Let me go further. The historian of structures

Jacques Le Goff, "After *Annales*: the Life as history," *Times Literary Supplement* April 14-20, 1989, 394 and 405.

had become sated with abstractions and starved of concrete reality. He wanted to become a real historian, as described by Marc Bloch, one who, like the ogre in the fairy tale, knew that 'when he smelled human flesh he was approaching his quarry.' That quarry was no longer 'man in society,' or humanity viewed collectively, it was the individual, a particular historical character."²

Babur's literary legacy means that he can be discussed as an individual in ways and to a degree that is unique for his time and place. In fact, in prose and poetry he revealed more about himself as an individual than can be found in any text or collection of texts written by or about any other person in the Middle East, South Asia or East Asia in the sixteenth century or in previous eras. Nor did many Europeans produce comparable bodies of work for this or earlier periods.

Babur has been the subject of many scholarly studies. His autobiography, originally written in the Central Asian Turkic dialect now commonly known as Chaghatay Turkish, was eventually translated into Persian at the Indian court of his grandson, Akbar (r. 1556-1605), in the late sixteenth century. Then following the British conquest of the subcontinent the work was also translated into English, when it was immediately recognized as an exceptional historical source. Since then the autobiography has also been translated into Russian, French, Uzbek and Japanese.³ It has been mined for the information it contains and used as the basis for numerous biographies in English, French, Russian and Uzbek, as well as the source for an atmospheric historical novel in Uzbek titled *Babur, Starry Nights*.⁴ Paralleling the scholarly study of Babur's text has been the publication of research on a vast array of topics directly or indirectly connected with his life in Central Asia, Afghanistan

² Ibid., 394.

³ The most important editions of the text for scholarly study are the nineteenth century English and French translations by John Leyden and William Erskine and Abel Pavet de Courteille, then Annette S. Beveridge's carefully edited, early twentieth century English translation based on a surviving Turk! text, Reşit Rahmeti Arat's "modern" Turkish translation with its valuable notes to Turk! etymologies and history, S. A. Azimdzhanova's edited Russian translation, W. M. Thackston's parallel edition of the Turk! and Persian texts and English translation, and most recently Eiji Mano's collated edition discussed below. These and other editions are listed in the bibliography.

⁴ Available most readily in the Russian translation. See Pirimkul Kadyrov, *Babur: Evzdnye Nochi Yu*, Surovtseva trans. (Moskva: Sovetskii Pisatef, 1983).

and India. This scholarship has provided crucial new insights into Babur's cultural, political and social milieu, making it far easier to understand and explain the implications of his prose and poetry than was possible in the nineteenth and early twentieth century.

Despite the voluminous popular and scholarly literature on Babur, no critical biography of the man has previously been written in any language, largely because no reliable editions of his autobiography and poetry have been available until very recently. Most of all it is Eiji Mano's collated edition of the extant Chaghatay manuscripts of the autobiography, published only in 1995, that has made it possible to write a modern study of his life.⁵ The work of half a lifetime, Professor Mano's text has enabled scholars to discuss Babur, his cultural assumptions, political and social milieu with the greatest possible precision. Not only has Professor Mano published an impeccably edited text, but he has supplemented it with a concordance in which the entire vocabulary of the text is indexed.⁶ Almost simultaneously the Turkish scholar, Bilal Yucel, collated numerous extant manuscripts of Babur's largely Chaghatay poetry and published the first complete edition of Babur's verse in Latin script.⁷ While Soviet-era scholars, most notably I. V. Stebleva and S. A. Azimdzhanova, have written insightful specialized studies of Babur's poems, no complete edition of his verse had previously been published.⁸ The verse is used here only autobiographically, that is for the light it sheds on Babur's life. A literary analysis of his poetry and its relation to the Turki and Persian verse of his contemporaries and predecessors, a separate work of another lifetime, still awaits to be done. With Professor Yucel's publication such work is now possible.

This biography is largely written in the form of a commentary on Babur's autobiography and poetry and it is done so for two interrelated reasons. First of all Babur's prose and poetry are incomparable sources, not merely because they offer unique information about his life and era, but because they provide the only narrative line for his life. As Le Goff observes, "Historical biography must, at

⁵ Eiji Mano ed., *Babur-Nama (Vaqayi')* (Kyoto: Syokado, 1995).

⁶ Eiji Mano, *Babur-Nama (Vaqa'f)* Concordance and Classified Indexes (Kyoto: Syokado, 1996).

⁷ Bilal Yucel, *Babur Divdni* (Ankara: Ataturk Kiiltur Merkezi, 1995).

⁸ See among other works S. Azimdzhanova, *Indiiskii Divan Babura* (Tashkent: "Fan", 1966) and I. V. Stebleva, *Semantika Gazeli Babura* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1982).

least to some extent, be a narrative, an account of someone's life; it is articulated around certain individual or collective events—a biography without events makes no sense....”⁹ Unlike the case of later autobiographers such as Benjamin Franklin, Babur's life was not recorded by a host of contemporary observers whose eyewitness accounts can be used together with the autobiography to synthesize an independent narrative of his life. Babur is mentioned in the Persian narrative histories written both during and after his life. However, only the autobiographical accounts of his Mongol cousin, Haydar Mirza Dughlat (1499-1551), and his daughter, Gulbadan Begim, contain substantial personal information about him, and much of that is taken from Babur's own autobiography.¹⁰ The scarcity of information about Babur in other historical sources is due to the fact that he spent most of his life as a minor figure on the fringes of the principal power centers in Central Asia, Afghanistan and India. Therefore, court historians paid relatively little attention to him or his career until he successfully invaded north India.

Several examples of the manner in which historians treat the places and events of Babur's life may suffice to illustrate the centrality of his narrative and the relative poverty of other accounts as sources for his life. First, consider the degree to which court historians describe events in the Ferghanah valley, the appanage or territory east of Samarqand that Babur inherited in 1494, when he was just under twelve years of age. S. Azimdzhanova has observed how little is recorded about the life of Babur's father, ‘Umar Shaykh

⁹ Le Goff, After *Annales*: the Life as history,” 394.

¹⁰ Mirza Haydar Dughlat, *Tarikh-i-Rashidi* Persian text edited by W. M. Thackston, Sources of Oriental Languages and Literatures No. 37 (Cambridge, Mass: Harvard University, 1996), and W. M. Thackston's English translation of the same text also in the series, Oriental Languages and Literatures no. 38 (1996). Two more fully annotated editions are the first edited English translation completed in 1897, *A History of the Moghuls of Central Asia*, Being *The Tarikh-i-Rashidi of Mirza Muhammad Haidar Dughlat* edited by N. Elias and translated by E. Denison Ross (London Curzon Press, repr. 1972), and the recent Russian edition by A. Urumbaev et al ed. and trans., *Ta'rikh-i Rashidi* (Tashkent: “Fan,” 1996). See also V. V. Barthold, “The Tarikh-i-Rashidi of Mirza Muhammad Haydar, Dughlat. A History of the Moghuls of Central Asia,” in V. V. Barthold, *Raboty Po Istochniko-vedeniyu* (Moskva: “Nauka,” 1973), 8, 63-73 and Eiji Mano, “An Attempt at a Critical Text of One Section of the *Tarikh-i Rashidi*” in Eiji Mano and Kazuyuki Kubo ed., *A Synthetical Study on Central Asian Culture in the Turco-Islamic Period* (Kyoto: Kyoto University, 1997), 6-25. Gulbadan Begim, *The History of Humayun {Humayun-Namd}* Annette S. Beveridge trans. and ed. (Delhi: Idarah-i Adabiyat-i Delli, repr. 1972).

Mirza, who had previously governed the valley. 'Umar Shaykh Mirza, like his brothers, cousins and nephews who governed much of Central Asia at this time, was descended on his father's side from the Central Asian conqueror Timur (d. 1405) and therefore he, like Babur, is known to later historians as a Timurid.

Apart from Babur, none of the historians of the fifteenth century devote even a page to the rule of Omar Sheikh in Ferghane. The Timurid court historians, Abdarrazzak Samarkand!, Mirkhond and Khondemir, were not interested in the lives of rulers of small appanages. These historians limited themselves to an enumeration of the existing *soyurghal* possessions [appanage grants] of their rightful owners. This is exactly how Abdarrazzak Samarkand!, the court historian of the later Timurids acts.... In these pages Abdarrazzak gives a few lines to Omar Sheikh Mirzy [about his *soyurghal*].... In the works of Mirkhond and Khondemir—court historians of Sultan Husain [of Harat]—we also fail to find valuable information about the rule of Omar Sheikh.... the name of Omar Sheikh is preserved in history only because his son was Babur.¹¹

Azimdzhanova makes a similar point about the sources for her book *The State of Babur in Kabul and in India* f¹ In this work, in which the author gives a systematic survey of the extant materials available for Babur's entire career, she remarks: "There is much material in the works of the pro-Timurid historians such as Khwandamir and Muhammad Haydar about the life and activities of Babur [in Kabul] which is borrowed from his memoirs. However, these historians are not able to reconstruct the gap of the period of his rule."¹³ That is, Babur's narrative of his life in eastern Afghanistan in the early sixteenth century is the first eyewitness or historical account of the region. Without his autobiography almost nothing would be known about Afghans or events in this region for another century. Even coinage is lacking for Kabul during this period, a valuable source of economic, political and ideological data in better documented regions, especially Timurid Mawarannahr. Considering Babur's own publicized awareness of the importance of com-

¹¹ S. Azimdzhanova, *K Istorii Ferghany Vtoroi Poloviny XV v.* (Tashkent: "Nauka," 1966), 6.

¹² S. A. Azimdzhanova, *Gosudarstvo Babura v Kabule i v Indii* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1977).

¹³ *Ibid.*, 13-14. See especially Chapter I: "Survey of Sources and Scientific Literature." The only extant sources Azimdzhanova fails to discuss are coinage and Babur's poetry.

merce in the Kabul economy, coinage could shed critical light on his administrative and financial policies. However, while coin hoards are relatively plentiful for most Timurid territories, they are completely lacking for eastern Afghanistan in the late fifteenth and early sixteenth century.¹⁴ Therefore, due to a lack of both written and material evidence Azimdzhanova's study of Babur's state in Kabul is by necessity abstracted primarily from his work. A similar point can and has also been made about the historiography of Babur's years in India.¹⁵

Khwandamir, one of the Timurid court historians cited by Azimdzhanova, pays considerably more attention to Babur's life than to that of Babur's father, 'Umar Shaykh, for he revised sections of his massive history, *Habib al-siyar*, after Babur conquered North India.¹⁶ The most accomplished Timurid, Safavid Iranian and again in his later years, Timurid court historian of the early sixteenth century, Khwandamir was a sophisticated member of the Muslim intelligentsia and a man whom Babur patronized when he joined him in India in September, 1528. After Babur's death in 1530 Khwandamir stayed on to serve Babur's son, Humayun.¹⁷ In his history he discusses Babur's life at considerable length, but most of his information is taken directly from Babur's autobiography, which he had access to after he arrived in India.¹⁸ However, his

¹⁴ See for example the many numismatic studies of Elena A. Davidovich, such as her analyses of the copper and silver coinage of the Tajikistan region, including the Mongol, Timurid and Uzbek periods. *Klady Drevnikh i Srednevekovykh Monet Tadzhikistana* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1979). A few of Babur's coins minted in Kabul after his victories in India have survived. See Charles J. Rodgers, *The Catalogue of the Coins*, Pt. I, *The Coins of the Mogul Emperors of India*, (Delhi: Inter-India Publications, repr. 1985), 1-4.

¹⁵ Iqtidar Husain Siddiqui, "Babur's Relations with the Members of Afghan Nobility in India (1519-1530 A. D.)," *Islamic Culture* 12, 4 (October 1978), 241-61.

¹⁶ Ghiyas al-Dm b. Humam al-Dm al-Husaym Khwandamir, *Habib al-siyar fi akhbar afrad al-bashar* (Tehran: Kitabkhanah-yi Khayyam, 1954) 4 v. Khwandamir had completed his work earlier, but supplemented it with new information he acquired in India.

¹⁷ He became a court historian for Humayun and died in India in 1535. For details of his life and numerous works see M. Hidayat Hosain ed., *Qanun-i Humduni of Khwandamir* (Calcutta: Baptist Mission Press, 1940), i-xxxvi.

¹⁸ For a discussion of Khwandamir's use of Babur's memoirs see N. D. Miklukho-Maklai, "Khondamir i 'Zapiski Babura,'" *Tyurkololgicheskie Issledovaniya* (Moskva-Leningrad: "Nauka," 1963), 237-49. N. N. Tumanovich discusses Khwandamir and other late Timurid and Safavid-era historians and sources in his work, *Gerat v XVI-XVII vekakh* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1989). See especially chapter I, "Sources and Historiographical Problems."

indebtedness to Babur may not be at first apparent because Khwandamir writes highly Arabicized literary Persian rather than Babur's simpler, more direct Ghaghatay. This has the effect of presenting Babur's information in a significantly distinct way that sometimes masks both his source and also the meaning of the original. Khwandamir's history is useful in supplementing Babur's account, but principally as a source for regions, powers and events that are only marginally relevant to his life.

The relative lack of information about Babur also characterizes the later history of Hasan-i Rumlu, a member of the military/administrative class of mid-sixteenth century Safavid Iran. Hasan-i Rumlu (b. 1530) mentions Babur a number of times in the extant volume of his important history the *Ahsan al-tawankh*. In two of the longer passages he describes Babur's defeats by Uzbek troops following his second occupation of Samarqand in 1501 and eventual flight to Kabul in 1504, and later in the volume, his next loss to the same Uzbek forces following his third occupation of Samarqand in 1511-1512. In the first passage Hasan-i Rumlu takes only a paragraph to summarize three years of Babur's life that Babur himself narrates in his typically detailed and emotionally compelling fashion over the course of many pages.²⁰ Due to its brevity and misleading precis of events, Hasan-i Rumlu's brief account of this period in Babur's life is worthless. Whatever his source for this information, the Iranian historian had little interest in and or knowledge of events that did not involve Iranian forces.

At least that is suggested by his much fuller account of Babur's loss to the Uzbeks in 1512. At that time Babur was allied with the Iranians, and Hasan-i Rumlu gives a detailed account of their joint effort to counterattack against the Uzbeks after Babur's defeat, a campaign that led to the death of the Iranian commander and Babur's final expulsion from Central Asia. In this instance Hasan-i Rumlu gives useful military information that supplements the narrative of Babur's cousin Haydar Mirza, who also participated in this campaign.²¹ He had access to earlier Persian accounts, most

¹⁹ Hasan-i Rumlu, *Ahsan al-tawankh* 'Abd al-Husayn Nava'i ed. (Tehran: Intisharat-i Babik, 1357/1978). Born in 937/1530/31, he completed his history in 980/1572/3.

²⁰ Ibid., 115.

²¹ Ibid., 168-74.

particularly Khwandamir's history, although for these years his account is more detailed than that of his predecessor. The detail Hasan-i Rumlu provides also suggests he had gathered eyewitness testimony. It is also worth noting that he, like such later Safavid historians as Iskandar Beg Munshi, treats Babur and his descendants with great respect.²² This is a noticeable feature of Safavid relations with Babur's successors, even when the Iranians were actively battling with them for control of Qandahar, a perennial source of friction between the two states. Nonetheless, overall the *Ahsan al-tawdrikh* and other Safavid accounts only supplement Babur's autobiography for brief, albeit important moments in his life.

An analogous argument about the tangential relevance of narrative historical sources for Babur's life, may also be made about Uzbek histories, that is Persian-language histories written by historians who either enjoyed or sought the patronage of Uzbek rulers, who at the end of the fifteenth century, eradicated Timurid power in Central Asia. As in the case of Khwandamir and Hasan-i Rumlu, these Uzbek histories are modestly useful in supplementing Babur's works, but they offer virtually no personal information. They are far more perfunctory in this regard than even Safavid sources. Nor do they enable modern historians to evaluate fairly Babur's own caustic and highly prejudicial characterization of Shibani Khan, the scourge of the Timurids and the founder of Uzbek power. Two important examples of these histories are the contemporary account of Kamal al-Din All Bina'i (1451-1510), the *Shibani-ndmah* written in sometime after 1505, and the late sixteenth century account of Hafiz-i Tamsh ibn Mir Muhammad Bukhari (b. c. 956/1549), the *Sharaf-namah-i shahf* written in the latter half of the sixteenth century.

The *Shibani-ndmah* is a history of Shibani Khan from his birth through 1505 and includes the period of his first capture of Samarqand in 1500. It was later used by Khwandamir as a source for his own history of the Uzbeks and their conquest of Samarqand. The author's treatment of Babur is limited to a brief reference to the grant of 'Umar Shaykh's appanage and then a more protracted

²² Iskander Beg Munshi, *History of Shah 'Abbas the Great* (Tarik-e 'Alamara-ye 'Abbas!) Roger Savory trans. (Boulder, Colorado and New York, N.Y.: Westview Press and Biblioteca Persica, 1978 & 1986), 3 v.

account of Babur's relations with his cousin, Sultan ^ĀAlī Mirza, the nominal ruler of Samarqand before the Uzbeks took the city. It adds no significant information to Babur's own account, other than stylized descriptions of the suffering of the general population.²³ The later *Sharaf-namah-i shaht* is a more traditional history and covers the period of Babur's last defeat by the Uzbeks in 1512.²⁴ However, the author's lengthy description of these events is taken from Haydar Mirza's first-hand account.²⁵ The Uzbek work that offers a new and intriguing perspective on Babur is not really a history at all, but a text devoted to explaining the Islamic principles of government, the *Suluk al-muluk*, by Fazlullah ibn Ruzbihan Khunji (Isfahan!), who also wrote a brief history of Shibam Khan's campaigns. Khunji, an Uzbek partisan and orthodox Sunni 'alim, was outraged by Babur's cynical profession of Shi'ī Islam in exchange for help from his Shi'ī Iranian allies in retaking Samarqand in 1511. Khunji, who was as he says a "prisoner of heretics" in Samarqand when Babur occupied the city, describes Babur's final loss to Uzbek forces in 1512 and commemorates it with a poem that ridicules Babur's defeat and flight and castigates his hypocrisy.²⁶

Khwandamir, Hasan-i Rumlu, Bina'i and Hafiz-i Tamsh are four of the most important of many Persian-language authors whose works can be used to complement Babur's narrative. However, apart from the fact that these historians only supplement his autobiography, there is also the question of the kind of information they provide. Typically such authors offer political and military narratives primarily devoted to their patrons, although the richness of their data and the literary quality of their texts vary enormously. As

²³ Kazuyuki Kubo ed., "Bina'i, Kamal al-Dīn ^ĀAlī, *Shaybānī-nama*" in Eiji Mano ed., *A Synthetical Study on Central Asian Culture in the Turco-Islamic Period* (Kyoto: Ministry of Education, 1997), 65-7 & 1-93.

²⁴ Hafiz-i Tamsh ibn Mir Muhammad Bukhari, *Sharaf-nama-i shdkhi*. M. A. Salakhedinova trans and ed. (Moskva: "Nauka," Chast' 1, 1983 & Chast' 2, 1989).

²⁵ Haydar Mirza's history is used almost word for word, with some critical omissions, *Sharaf-nama-i shdkhi*, Chast' 1, 19 & 85-86.

²⁶ Fazlullah ibn Ruzbihan Khunji, *Suluk al-muluk* (Tehran: Intisharat-i Khwarazmi, 1362/1983). Lines from the poem are quoted below, Chapter 4. Khunji's other work, completed in 1509, in which Babur is mentioned only briefly, is the *Mihman-namah-yi Bukhara* Manuchihr Sutudeh ed. (Tehran: BTNK, 1354/1976). Khunji alludes to Babur's first attack on Qandahar on p. 184.

a result of their preoccupation with political and military events they provide little detailed information about the traits of individuals, whether their physical characteristics, personality or presumed motives. When they do discuss causes of events or the character or motives of individuals, their texts also must be treated with caution, as Peter Hardy warns in his seminal work on Persianate historiography, *Historians of Medieval India*.²¹ Autobiographies such as Babur's are often seen as problematic sources, but narrative historical accounts must be treated with equal if not even greater care. In any event when the accounts of these historians overlap with Babur's autobiography their information tends to be only marginally useful. And however critical their sources may be for understanding specific events, taken together they do not provide even a tiny fraction of the material needed to construct an alternate narrative to that contained in Babur's autobiography and in his poetry.

The second reason for writing this biography as a selective commentary on Babur's own writings is that by following his narrative closely it is possible to appreciate and comment on his self-presentation, that is to critique his autobiographical intent. Understanding this intent is a crucial part of interpreting his life. This in turn raises the question of just how one approaches the autobiography and Babur's poetry. What is so critical to remember is that Babur's works are not self-explanatory. Quite the opposite is true. In fact the difficulty of reading his autobiography explains why most of the elegant, well-annotated and beautifully illustrated modern translations of the text usually have remained unread, decorating coffee tables or gathering dust in library shelves. His autobiography and poetry too, most of which is still not translated, require persistent, informed questioning to appreciate what he reveals of himself, to critique his self-presentation and to understand the implications of his elaborate, often numbingly detailed narrative for the social, cultural and political life of his era. In attempting to achieve these goals this biography is written in alternating thematic and narrative chapters. Of the thematic chapters two are devoted to studying the nature and significance of Babur's principal writings—his autobiography and his poetry—and two others use material from his prose and poetry to examine his personality. Interspersed with these thematic chapters are four devoted to narrative, using and critically

²¹ Peter Hardy, *Historians of Medieval India* (London: Luzac, 1966).

evaluating his own account of himself and his society while carrying the story forward. Above all else these narrative chapters are meant to convey a sense of Babur's humanity and to demonstrate better than any analytical summary can accomplish, the complexity of his life and the contingency of his career, Bernard Guenee's "fragile and uncertain" destiny.

Biographies are preoccupied with individuals, and it is a rare opportunity to be able to humanize a pre-modern Muslim of any social class. Yet in Babur's case an exceptionally well-documented life also offers unique data for understanding the "structure" of politics in the interconnected Central Asian, Afghan and north Indian worlds of the late fifteenth and early sixteenth century. In his lifetime, though, the structure was more of an anti-structure, a decentralized, atomized political "system." That is, not only was Babur a marginal figure throughout most of his career, but his era was a kind of chronological marginalia in the political history of Central Asia, Iran, Afghanistan and India. It was the final moment in the transition phase from the steppe empires of the preceding centuries to the more highly structured and, to varying degrees, increasingly bureaucratic states of the early modern period. Harat, for example, the richest and most culturally vibrant Timurid artifact of the late-fifteenth century, was essentially a city-state. The political fragmentation it represented was also reflected in the extremely modest military resources which its ruler and the rulers of other Timurid city-states commanded. Babur himself gives detailed evidence of this fundamental economic, political and military reality again and again in his autobiography, thus supplying the kind of specific data that is needed to identify the structures that Guenee and others admire—because they see them as sociological axioms that generate theorems or social explanations. However, it is not necessary to be a social theorist to appreciate the fundamental political realities of Babur's day. The English novelist and essayist, E. M. Forster, demonstrated his own quite sophisticated, if quirky grasp of the late-Timurid world when, in a review of the English translation of Babur's memoirs, he wrote:

At the time that Machiavelli was collecting materials for *The Prince*, a robber boy, sorely in need of advice, was scuttling over the high lands of Central Asia. His problem had already engaged the attention and sympathy of the Florentine; there were too many kings about and not enough kingdoms. Tamurlane and Gengis Khan (the boy

was descended from both) had produced between them so numerous a progeny that a frightful congestion of royalties had resulted along the upper waters of the Jaxartes and the Oxus, and in Afghanistan. One could scarcely travel two miles without being held up by an Emperor. The boy had inherited Ferghana, a scrubby domain at the extreme north of the fashionable world; thinking Samarkand a suitable addition, he conquered it from an uncle when he was thirteen. Then Ferghana revolted, and while trying to subdue it he lost Samarkand, too, and was left with nothing at all. His affairs grew worse; steal as he might, others stole quicker, and at eighteen his mother made him marry—a tedious episode. He thought of escaping to China, so hopeless was the block of uncles and cousins, and aunts; poisoned coffee and fire-pencil thinned them out, but only for a moment; up they sprang, again he conquered, lost, conquered and lost forever Ferghana and Samarkand. Not until he was twenty-one and had taken to drink, did the true direction of his destiny appear; moving southward he annexed Kabul. Here the horizon expanded; the waters flowed southward again from Kabul, out of the Asian continent into the Indian; he followed them, he took Delhi, he founded the Mogul Empire, and then, not to spoil the perfect outline of his life, he died. Had Machiavelli ever heard of Babur? Probably not. But if the news had come through, how he would have delighted in a career that was not only successful but artistic!²⁸

Forster takes considerable literary license with Babur's life, but otherwise offers a reasonable precis of political conditions in his Central Asian homeland. In his offhand allusion to Machiavelli he also, but apparently unintentionally, reminds his readers that political fragmentation is often the forcing bed of cultural florescence and creativity—as is suggested by both the Italian Renaissance and original Greek examples, and corroborated by the cases of Timurid Harat and Samarkand.²⁹ And this is only one of many parallels between Italy and Central Asia that strike anyone familiar with both the Florentine, Sienese and Timurid worlds in the late fifteenth century. These include the cultivation and refinement of aesthetic sensibility amidst a brutal life of constant political and social violence, and the open, unashamed egotism of individuals. And it is individuals who emerge most vividly from Babur's writ-

²⁸ E. M. Forster, "The Emperor Babur," in *Abinger Harvest* (London: Edward Arnold, repr. 1936), 292.

²⁹ An idea developed for the Timurid case by Maria Eva Subtelny in her article, "Socioeconomic Bases of Cultural Patronage Under the Later Timurids," *International Journal of Middle East Studies* 20 (1988), 479-505.

ings, not only Babur himself, but also a constellation of distinct personalities. In this respect it is difficult to detect fundamental differences in these two distant societies, which in later centuries have been seen by so many to inhabit the contrasting and even fundamentally opposed European and Islamic worlds. For this moment at least their individuals seem a remarkably similar human type, the most fundamental historical structure of all.

CHAPTER ONE

EMPERORS AND INDIVIDUALS

هر کیم بو وقائع نی اوکور بیلکای کیم
نی رنج و نی محنت و نی غملار کوردوم

Everyone who reads these Events will know,
What grief and what sorrow and what difficulties I have seen.
Babur in the *Rampur Diwan*
Agra, 28 December 1528¹

The Turkic Emperors

On April 20, 1526 Zahir al-Din Muhammad Babur defeated the Afghan ruler, Sultan Ibrahim Lodi, at the battle of Panipat, just over fifty miles north of Delhi. With his victory he founded the state generally known as the Mughal Empire. Babur, as he is usually known by the last word in his name meaning tiger or leopard, traced his lineage from two extraordinary Central Asian conquerors, Temur and Chinggis Qan.² On his father's side he was de-

¹ "Events" is capitalized in the translation of this poem as the word is the probable title of Babur's autobiographical memoir. See below, n. 25. Babur evidently intended this verse to be included in the finished text of the memoirs. However, it is not included in the extant and incomplete versions of the text.

² The name Babur is evidently a variant of the Persian word *babr*, a leopard, tiger or other cat-like animal. The word appears repeatedly in Firdausi's eleventh century epic poem on Iranian kingship, the *Shah nāmā*. Martti Rasanen suggests this identification in his book *Versuch eines Etymologischen Wörterbuchs der Türk-sprachen* (Helsinki: Suomalais-Ugrilainen Seura, 1969-71), I, 53 & 66. He identifies a Chaghatay Turkic word "babar" or "leopard" with a Yakut Turkic word "babyr" or "babyr" meaning "tiger" found in a Russian-Yakut dictionary published in Petrograd between 1917 and 1930. He equates this word with the Persian "babr" and the Ottoman "babr." Rasanen also defines the Uighur word *bar* or *bar* as Tiger, I, 63-4. This usage is presumably the origin of the names of some Mamluks, the Turkic [Qipchaq] "slave" rulers of medieval Egypt between 1250 and 1518. The suffix "bars" occurs in several Mamluk compound names, such as "Alti-bars" or "Six Tigers." See J. Sauvaget "Norms et Surnoms de Mamelouks,"

scended in the fifth generation from the Turk, Temur, the Turki word for “iron.”³ Due to an early leg wound Temur is known in most Persian-language sources as Timur-i leng, Timur the Lamé or in common European parlance, Tamerlane (1336-1405).⁴ On his mother’s side Babur was a fifteenth generation descendant of the Mongol Chinggis Qan or in Persian texts, Chingiz Khan (c.1167-1227).⁵ More particularly he was descended from Chingiz Khan’s second son, Chaghatay, once the ruler of the western Central Asian territories where Timur later came to power.⁶ However, since

Journal Asiatique, V. 238 (1950) p. 38 no. 29, p. 41 No. 49 & 50, p. 43 no. 65 and p. 51 no. 144. The old Turkic word for lion is *arslan* and for tiger, *qaplarn*, both are also found in Ottoman Turkish. See V. M. Nadelyaev et al ed. *Drevnetyurkskii Slovar* (Leningrad: “Nauka,” 1969), 55 & 421.

³ The language spoken by Temur and his descendants is generally known as Turki. In Europe it has been known since the nineteenth century as Chaghatay Turkish, that is the Turkic language or dialect spoken in the *ulus* or territories of Chinggis Qan’s second son Chaghatay. In the twentieth century this language was known to the people of the Uzbek Soviet Republic and later independent state as “Old Uzbek.” See Use Laude-Cirtautas, “On the Development of Literary Uzbek in the Last Fifty Years,” *Central Asiatic Journal* 21 (1977), 36 n. 1. For an introduction to the language see Janos Eckmann, *Chagatay Manual*, Uralic and Altaic Series V. 60 (Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana University Publications, 1966), 1-13. Persian, however, was the lingua franca throughout Temur’s western dominions and the dominant literary language in these territories throughout the fifteenth and sixteenth century.

⁴ For an introduction to Temur’s career, especially his relations with Turco-Mongol tribes and the administration of his empire see Beatrice Forbes Manz, *The rise and rule of Tamerlane* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1989). H. R. Roemer summarizes Temur’s career and history of his descendants, the Timurids, in two articles, “Timur in Iran,” and “The Successors of Timur,” in CHIr. Vol. 6, pp. 42-146. Other articles in this volume survey religion, literature and architecture in Iran during the period of Temur and his successors. Thomas W. Lentz and Glenn D. Lowry have coauthored an intelligent, splendidly illustrated survey of the Timurid arts, *Timur and the Princely Vision, Persian Art and Culture in the Fifteenth Century* (Los Angeles: Los Angeles County Museum of Art and the Arthur M. Sackler Gallery, 1989).

⁵ The Persianized variants of these names will be used throughout the remainder of this text. Thus, Chinggis Qan will be rendered Chingiz Khan and Temur as Timur. Likewise the Uzbek leader, Shaybaq or Shibaq Khan will be given as ShTbanT Khan. The Mongols will either be identified as such or by the variant of their name commonly used by Turks at this time, *Mughul*. For the latter see Igor De Rachewiltz, “The Name of Mongols in Asia and Europe: A reappraisal,” *Etudes Mongoles Et Siberiennes* 27 (1996), 199-205.

⁶ The Mongol view of Chingiz Khan’s origins is contained in the Mongol verse epic adapted by Paul Kahn from the English translation of Francis Woodman Cleaves, *The Secret History of the Mongols* (San Francisco: North Point Press, 1984). The best scholarly introduction to Chingiz Khan’s career is the well-illustrated study by Paul Ratchnevsky, *Genghis Khan, His Life and Legacy* Thomas Nivison

patrilineal descent determined social and dynastic identity in Central Asia, Babur thought of himself first as a Timurid and a Turk, and those are two terms he uses to identify his own lineage. Yet his status as a matrilineal descendant of Chingiz Khan was nearly as important to him as his Timurid identity. He favored both Timurids and Chaghatay Mongols in his inner circle, appointed both to command positions in his armies and married two of his daughters to Chaghatay Mongols just before his death in India in 1530. Indeed, in sixteenth century sources and some later ones as well, his dynasty is often identified as Chaghatay.⁷ It is for this reason the hyphenated title Timurid-Mughul is the most meaningful name for the dynasty he founded in India, and the title that will be used throughout this book.⁸

Babur was the fourth Turkic-speaking Muslim ruler in a century to establish a major state in the enormous swath of territory extending from the Middle East through Iran to western Central Asia and including also India or South Asia. He represented the culmination of a process of Turkification that had begun in this vast region in the tenth century. His three predecessors founded states whose rulers directly or indirectly influenced Babur's career and

Haining trans, and ed. (Oxford: Blackwells, repr. 1996). Rashid al-Dm Tabib, the Iranian polymath scholar and minister to the Il-Khans, the Mongol rulers of Iran in the thirteenth and early fourteenth century, summarizes the career of Chingiz Khan's second son Chaghatay. See John Andrew Boyle trans., *The Successors of Genghis Khan* (New York, N.Y.: Columbia University Press, 1971), 135-56.

⁷ Timur himself married a Chaghatay Mongol wife to give himself a Mongol kinship connection, an all important connection in Central Asia of this period. It was this marriage that allowed him to take the title *kurgen*, or Mongol/ ChingTzid son-in-law. See Roemer, "Timur in Iran," in CHIr 1, 6, p. 45. This title and his conquest of the western Chaghatay lands meant that Babur even on his paternal Timurid or Turkic side also had an important Chaghatay connection. No wonder then his Mongol cousin, the historian Haydar Mirza and other sixteenth century writers often refer to Babur's family as Chaghatays. Ruzbihan Khunji identifies Babur as "Padshah Babur b. 'Umar Shaykh Chaghatay." *Suluk al-muluk*, 50. Most of Timur's coins were struck in the names of his nominal Chaghatay overlords, at least until the last year of his life. R. E. Darley-Doran, "Timurids," "Numismatics," EI2, 10, 525. A number of modern historians, including Roemer cited above, also refer to Timur's own state as a Chaghatay kingdom.

⁸ Timurid-Mughul is also used here for the practical reason that Mughal/ Mughul has been almost universally used as the name for Babur's dynasty in European language publications. The other name sometimes used for Babur's dynasty is Indo-Timurid. This is strictly accurate but doesn't allude to the Chaghatay connection. Mughal is the more common spelling of the word that is more accurately represented as Mughul.

those of his descendants. These founders were Mehmet II, the Conqueror (1432-1481), a descendant of Turkic tribal leader Osman, who took Constantinople, later Istanbul, in May 1453; Shah Ismaʿīl Safavī (1487-1524), a Turkic-speaking leader of a largely Turkic tribal confederation who occupied Tabriz in 1501 and the most of the Iranian plateau a decade later, and Shibam Khan (1451-1510), the Chingizid leader of the largely Turkic Ozbek or Uzbek tribal confederation that defeated Babur and expelled him from Samarqand in 1501. The founders of all four states had a great deal in common. Not only were they all Muslims and ethnically or culturally Turks or Turkicized Mongols, but they also shared a respect for Timurid and Chingizid political legitimacy, and they all valued Persian as the prestigious lingua franca and dominant literary culture of the eastern Islamic world.⁹ The states they founded were also closely linked by trade and by the circulation of literary, scientific and religious elites. Yet, in many other respects these rulers and their empires were also profoundly different.

Mehmet the Conqueror established the Osmanli or Ottoman Empire in Istanbul, an empire that had earlier established its authority in Anatolia and areas of the Balkans.¹⁰ The evolution of this state that was to become the longest-lived Muslim empire of all time, represented the culmination of the prolonged confrontation between Turkic tribal groups and forces of the eastern Roman or Byzantine Empire. By the fourteenth century the most successful of these tribal fighters had coalesced into a group of emirates or small states, initially deriving most of their political and cultural traditions from the Saljuq Turks, who had ruled Iran and parts of

⁹ The one ruler whose family ethnic or racial background is not well known is Shah Ismaʿīl Safavī. However, there is no doubt of his Turkic dynastic and cultural identity. He thought of himself as a successor to the Aq Qyunlu Turkic dynasty of northwestern Iran and gathered most of his supporters from this region and from eastern Anatolia. For the Aq Qyunlu see John Woods, *The Aqqyunlu: clan, confederation and empire, a study in 15th/9th century Turko-Iranian politics* (Minneapolis: Biblioteca Islamica, 1976). Shah Ismaʿīl also wrote in a Turkic dialect generally identified as a precursor of Azeri, the modern Turkic dialect/language of both Iranian and independent Azerbaijan.

¹⁰ The standard biography is Franz Babinger's, *Mehmed the Conqueror and His Time* William Hickman ed. and Ralph Manheim trans. (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1978). Halil İnalcık discusses the formative and "golden" age of the empire in his authoritative account, *The Ottoman Empire, The Classical Age 1300-1600* (London: Phoenix Press, repr. 2000).

eastern Anatolia between the eleventh and thirteenth centuries.¹¹ When Mehmet inherited control of the rapidly expanding Ottoman emirate in 1451 he took control of a Sunni Muslim state whose leaders saw themselves not merely as descendants of Osman, but also as *ghazis*, heroic warriors for the faith, who since the mid fourteenth century had fought on the Byzantine-Christian frontier.¹² Later Ottoman sultans continued to legitimize their rule not merely by invoking their Turkic past, which as they knew was embarrassingly modest when compared with Timurids and Chingizids, but portrayed themselves as protectors of Sunni Islam.¹³ This latter aspect of their imperial ideology acquired greater significance following their defeat of the Mamluk sultan of Egypt in 1516 and occupation of Mecca in the following year. It had already been sharpened by their conflict with the Shi'i Muslim Safavids, who rose to power on their eastern flank in the late fifteenth century.

When Isma'il Safavi captured the important northwestern Iranian city of Tabriz in 1501 he founded a state fundamentally different from the Ottomans, Uzbeks and Timurid-Mughuls.¹⁴ There were some similarities. While his paternal ancestors may have been either Iranian or Kurdish, Ismail wrote in a Turkic dialect, and in political terms he saw himself as the successor to a Turkic ruling lineage, in his case the Aq Quyunlu Turks.¹⁵ He was the maternal grandson of Uzun Hasan, the Aq Quyunlu ruler of

¹¹ C. E. Bosworth, "Saldjukids," EI2, 8, 936-59.

¹² The classic exposition of this thesis of Ottoman *ghazi* origins is Paul Wittek's work, *The Rise of the Ottoman Empire* (London: Royal Asiatic Society, 1938). A recent restatement and revision of the thesis is by Cemal Kafadar, *Between Two Worlds, The Construction of the Ottoman State* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1995).

¹³ Cornell H. Fleischer discusses Ottoman self-consciousness about their lack of a prestigious Timurid or Chingizid imperial tradition in his book *Bureaucrat and Intellectual in the Ottoman Empire, The Historian Mustafa AH (1541-1600)* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1986), 290 passim. See also his later article in which he analyzes the creation of Suleyman's complex ideology of legitimacy. "Soliman Le Magnifique Et Son Temps," *Rencontres De LEcole Du Louvre* (Paris: La Documentation Franchise, 1992), 159-77.

¹⁴ For a brief introduction to the dynasty see R. M. Savory, "Safavids," EI2, 8, 765-74 and H. R. Roemer, "The Safavid Period," in CHI 6, 189-350. Other chapters in this latter volume survey Safavid religion, economics and literature.

¹⁵ See Woods, *The Aqqyunlu...*, cited above n. 6. Vladimir Minorsky says of the Safavids that "Not improperly the early Safavid state may be considered as the third stage of the Turcoman domination in Persia." *Tadhkirat al-Muluk* (Cambridge: E. J. W. Gibb Memorial, repr. 1980), 30.

northwestern Iran and eastern Anatolia. Then too, apart from his Islamic faith and Turkic culture, Ismail resembled the early Ottomans in that he also grew up in an area near a Christian frontier, for him the Caucasus, where the *ghaza* was a fact of life. Yet, Ismail was neither the leader of a tribal dynasty like the Ottomans nor a ruler with a Chingizid or Timurid lineage, like the Uzbeks and Timurid-Mughuls. Nor was he a Sunni Muslim, as were the Ottomans, Uzbeks and Timurid-Mughuls. He was, rather, the messianic religious head of a militarized sufi order, a devotional or mystical order known as the Safavi, which in the latter half of the fifteenth century had become Shil Muslim as well.

These dual sufi and Shil elements of his religious identity comprised the principal sources of Ismail's legitimacy, although a century later Safavid historians fabricated a tenuous Timurid link for the dynasty in a transparent attempt to compensate for his modest matrilineal Aq Qyunlu connections.¹⁶ As a *pir* or *shaykh*, that is the spiritual head of the family order, he articulated the religious autocracy common to sufi orders. Then as a Shil he also saw himself as a representative of the last earthly Imam, a line of Muslims descended from the Prophet Muhammad whose lineage, they believed, gave them unique spiritual insight into the esoteric meaning of the Quran and, therefore, elite political status in the Islamic world. Ismail combined these elements in his millenarian religious appeal to the largely Turkic tribes of eastern Anatolia and northwestern Iran.¹⁷ Gradually he established himself as a charismatic leader of this predominantly Turkic confederation, and founded a state that imposed Shil Islam over the hitherto largely

¹⁶ As described by Sholeh Alysia Quinn in her book, *Historical Writing During the Reign of Shah 'Abbas: Ideology, Imitation and Legitimacy in Safavid Chronicles* (Salt Lake City, Utah: The University of Utah Press, 2000). See especially her section, "Timurid Legitimacy: The Safavid Shaykhs and Connections with Timur," 86-89.

¹⁷ Shah Isma'il's Azerbaijani Turkish poetry provides some of the best insights into his eccentric and complex religious ideology that later became institutionalized in quite a different and essentially more orthodox variant as the state religion in Safavid Iran. See Vladimir Minorsky's translation, "The Poetry of Shah Isma'il," in *Medieval Iran and its Neighbours* (London: Variorum Reprints, 1982), 1006a-1053a. Said Amir Arjomand gives an excellent introduction to Safavid Shī'ite ideology, the religious and political elements of Safavid dynastic legitimacy and the evolution of the Shī'ite *ulama* or clerical class during and after the Safavid era. See his book *The Shadow of God and the Hidden Imam* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, repr. 1987).

Sunni population of the Iranian plateau. In ethnic terms this population was comprised primarily of Iranians and Turks. While Aq Quyunlu leaders had thought of themselves in some degree as rulers in Iran, it was an accident of geography and the presence of powerful states on their periphery that made the Safavids rulers over the historic land of Iran.¹⁸ Then gradually the enormous influence of Persian bureaucrats, literati and a substantial Persian speaking population gradually transformed the Safavid state into the culturally Persian Shō kingdom of Ismail's descendants.

In northeastern Iran the expanding Safavid state almost immediately came into conflict with the strongly Sunni Ozbek or Uzbek tribal confederation that had already usurped Timurid control of Mawarannahr, the land beyond the Amu Darya river known in European sources as Transoxiana.¹⁹ While the confederation was composed largely of Turks, it was led by the Chingizid Shibam Khan, who is reported to have said of himself, "...through me the dying house of Chingis flares up again....when I breeze by...like the morning wind, the candle of Timur goes out as I pass."²⁰ Shibam led one of the successor dynasties to the Mongol Golden Horde, originally the *ulus* or hereditary territory of Chingiz Khan's oldest son Jochi, located on the steppe in the Volga-Ural region and including part of western Turkistan.²¹ Already in the mid-fifteenth century Uzbeks had expanded into western areas of the Timurid's Central Asian borderlands and had involved themselves in the perennial succession disputes of Timur's descendants. By the time

¹⁸ The Aq Quyunlu had used the title *Padshah-i Iran*, even though they controlled only the northwestern region of the Iranian plateau. See Roemer, CHIr, 6, 339. Many of the various titles used by Safavid administrators are summarized by Roger Savory, "The Safavid State and Polity," *Iranian Studies*, 7, Nos. 1-2, (Winter-Spring 1974), 179-216.

¹⁹ An abbreviated version of the Arabic phrase more completely rendered as *ma wara'u'n-nahr*, that which is beyond or behind the river Oxus or Amu Darya, the river that defines part of the modern boundary between Afghanistan and the Central Asian republics of Uzbekistan and Turkmenistan.

²⁰ Quoted by Andras J. E. Bodrogligeti, *A Grammar of Chagatay* (Miinchen: Lincome Europa, 2001), frontispiece. For an introduction to Shibam Khan see R. D. McChesney, "Shibam Khan" in EI2, 9, 426-28.

²¹ The history of the Golden Horde and the evolution of the Ozbek or Uzbek Khanate is discussed by Devin DeWeese in his book about the Muslim conversion of this Turco-Mongol population. See *Islamization and Native Religion in the Golden Horde, Baba Ukles and Conversion to Islam in Historical and Epic Tradition* (University Park, Pa.: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1994).

of Babur's birth in 1483 they posed a serious threat to Timurid control of the oasis cities of Bukhara and Samarqand. Then in 1501 they not only drove Babur from Timur's capital, but three years later chased him from the region, forcing him to take refuge in the former Timurid appanage of Kabul in 1504. By 1507 Shibam Khan had also occupied Harat, expelling or killing the remaining Timurids in Khurasan. Subsequently the Uzbeks remained a real and immediate threat both to the Safavid control of northeastern Iran or Khurasan, and to Timurid-Mughul rule in northern Afghanistan, sometimes even threatening Kabul. Uzbek campaigns or raids continued to pose a serious problem for both the Safavid and Timurid-Mughul dynasties for more than a century after Shah Ismail Safavi killed Shibam Khan in battle in 1510.²² Uzbek appanages continued to control most of Mawarannahr down to the period of Russian imperial expansion into the region in the mid nineteenth century.

Among the four rulers who founded these dynasties Babur was partly distinguished by his splendid Timurid-Mughul genealogy. That lineage never impressed the Chingizid Shibam Khan, although the Uzbek Khan made as many marital alliances as possible with both the Timurid and Chaghatay branches of Babur's family.²³ However, what sets Babur apart from his three predecessors and contemporaries more than anything else is that he bequeathed not only an empire to his descendants but a human face to posterity. Neither Mehmet the Conqueror nor Shah Ismail nor Shibam Khan left behind significant evidence of their personal or emotional lives, apart from implicit evidence of their political ambition. The lack of such information is reflected in the modern historical accounts of these rulers. Only Mehmet is the subject of a substantial biography and in his brief chapter titled "The Ruler and the Man," its author, Franz Babinger, observes of Mehmet, "What makes an unbiased appraisal of Mehmet II so exceedingly difficult

²² Martin B. Dickson discusses Uzbek relations with the Safavids during the reign of Shah Isma'ili's successor Tahmasp in his unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, "Shah Tahmasp and the Uzbeks," Princeton University, 1958. Robert D. McChesney lucidly describes the nature of the Uzbek state in the course of examining the history of an important Muslim shrine in Balkh in his book, *Waqf in Central Asia, Four Hundred Years of a Muslim Shrine, 1480-1889* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1991).

²³ Maria Eva Subtelny, "Babur's Rival Relations: A Study of Kinship and Conflict in the 15th-16th Century Central Asia," *Der Islam* 66, 1 (1989), 102-118.

is the absence of reliable documentation concerning his personal life.”²⁴ Even less is known of the inner lives or personalities of Shah Ismail and ShTbanT Khan. In contrast Babur’s life is more fully documented than any ruler in the pre-colonial Islamic world. This knowledge is based largely on his remarkable autobiographical memoir. Known simply as the *Vaqai* or *Events*, this work not only humanizes Babur but is the single most valuable source for understanding late fifteenth and early sixteenth-century Timurid society, as well as Afghanistan and north India in the early sixteenth century. No other contemporary source exists that is remotely comparable. It is the basis for all scholarship on Babur, and a knowledge of its character and contents is a prerequisite for studying both the man and the eastern Islamic world in which he struggled for personal recognition and imperial power.

Babur’s Autobiography

It is difficult to overestimate the importance of Babur’s autobiographical memoir, the *Vaqai*.²⁵ First of all there is just the size of the text, over six hundred pages in the most recent printed Turk! edition, even with fifteen years of the narrative missing.²⁶ Far more important than the size of the *Vaqai*, though, is its character and scope. At one level it is merely an exceptionally detailed political and military history of Mawarannahr, Afghanistan and north India. Yet in it Babur transcended the narrative and historical genres of

²⁴ Babinger, *Mehmed the Conqueror*, p. 410. Ghulam Sarwar’s, *History of Shah Ismffil Safawz* (Aligarh, India: Published by the Author, 1939) is largely a chronology of his career. The author doesn’t pretend to be writing a biography.

²⁵ Babur’s work is usually known as the *Babur-namah*, literally “Babur’s book,” but there is little doubt that *Vaqai* or “Events” was his intended title for the entire work, as the word is the heading for each dated chapter, i.e. the “Events of the Year 1526.” Babur’s descendants knew it under a variant of this title as “*Vdqidt-i Babun*—a Turk! book written by his majesty himself.” AN, I, 234. *Vaqdi*^c and *Vaqi*^c*at* are plural variants of the same Arabic root. The work was translated from Turk! to Persian at the Timurid-Mughul court in 1589. AN, III, 862 and n. 4. *Vaqai* is the title used throughout the remainder of this work.

²⁶ This is the splendid, definitive edition produced by Professor Eiji Mano of Kyoto University that is supplemented by the author’s concordance and classified indices. See the *Babur-Nama (Vaqdyf Critical Edition based Upon Four Chaghatay Texts with Introduction and Notes* (Kyoto: Syokado, 1995), and *Babur-Nama (Vaqdyf Concordance and Classified Indexes* (Kyoto: Syokado, 1996). This is the edition cited throughout this work.

his culture to produce a retrospective self-portrait of the kind that is usually associated with the most stylishly effective European and American autobiographies. No other author in the pre-colonial literary history of the Islamic world—or in pre-colonial India or China—offers a comparable autobiographical memoir, a seemingly ingenuous first-person narrative enlivened by self-criticism as well as self-dramatization and the evocation of universally recognizable human emotions.²⁷ Not only does Babur make himself seem engaging and personally approachable to modern readers, he also creates a three dimensional picture of his world otherwise known mainly from traditional, stylized political narratives and dazzlingly colorful but still two dimensional miniature paintings. No other monarch in pre-modern times—or really from any period—has made such a wealth of piquant observations on diverse subjects: verbal portraits of quirky contemporaries, realistic descriptions of the chaos of battle, pointed literary and artistic critiques, and a naturalist's precise description of the environment. Nor have many pre-modern autobiographers or even professional historians exhibited Babur's taste for quantification, a trait some associate with modernity and the rise of the West in post-Renaissance times. It is, therefore, legitimate to say of Babur's work for Asia what John Pope-Hennessy has said about the European significance of the *Vita* or "Life" of the Renaissance goldsmith and sculptor, Benvenuto Cellini, that it is "the most revealing personal document of the sixteenth century."²⁸

From the moment when nineteenth century English scholar-administrators discovered Babur's *Vaqaff* first in an incomplete Turk! original and then later in Persian translation, they recognized it as a work of exceptional human vitality and a treasure trove of social, cultural and political information. One such man, the judicial officer and Persian scholar Henry Beveridge, said of Babur in 1887, "His autobiography is one of those priceless records which

²⁷ This includes Jonathan Spence's, *The Emperor of China's self-portrait of Kang-hsi* (New York, N.Y.: Vintage Books, 1975). This is not, however, a true autobiography but a collection of telling autobiographical remarks and stories collected by the author and translator.

²⁸ John Pope-Hennessy ed., *The Life of Benvenuto Cellini, Written by Himself* John Addington Symonds trans. (London: Phaidon Press, repr. 1995), ix. The most complete and stimulating study of Cellini in English is by Dino S. Cervigni, *The "Vita" of Benvenuto Cellini* (Ravenna: Longo Editore, 1979).

are for all time, and is fit to rank with the confessions of St. Augustine and Rousseau, and the memoirs of Gibbon and Newton. In Asia it stands almost alone.”²⁹ Their pleasure, even astonishment, at discovering such a work in Asia has been universally echoed by later readers. In the twentieth century these reactions are typified by E. M. Forster and Jean-Paul Roux, the French Turcologist and biographer of Babur. Forster, the author of *The Passage to India*, wrote enthusiastically of Babur’s work and the man it reveals. “Fresh, yet mature, the *Memoirs* leave an ambiguous and exquisite impression behind. We are admitted into the writer’s inmost confidence....And since to his honesty, energy and sensitive ness, Babur added a warm heart... the reader may discover a companion uncommon among the dead and amongst kings.... nothing...need hinder the modern man if he cares to come.”³⁰ Forster’s enthusiastic response to the *Vaqai*, his delight at the accessibility of the author and the seeming modernity of the text, was precisely echoed more than a half-century later by Roux, who justifies his decision to write a biography of Babur by remarking:

Why Babur? Because his literary works deliver to us everything, with his qualities and faults, especially his daily inner self, in his most casual moods, in his most profound thoughts, which often could have been our own.³¹

Both men essentially reiterate the more soberly expressed view of Annette Susannah Beveridge, whose edited translation of the original Turki text Forster was reviewing when he made his comments. As she remarks in her introduction, “...what has kept interest in it alive through some four centuries is the autobiographical presentment of an arresting personality its whole manner, style and diction produce.”³²

Almost no one who has read the *Vaqaf* has failed to be charmed by its author. It is almost as if in writing Babur took the advice he

²⁹ Quoted by Stanley Lane Poole, *Babar* (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1909), 12.

³⁰ Forster, “The Emperor Babur,” 294.

³¹ Jean-Paul Roux, *Histoire des Grands Mogols, BABUR* (Paris: Fayard, 1986), 19.

³² BN-B, Iviii. The wife of Henry Beveridge and the mother of William Beveridge, the architect of the British Labour Party’s social welfare program, Annette Susannah Beveridge was a self-taught Persian and Turki scholar. For details of her equally compelling life see M. A. Scherer, “Annette Akroyd Beveridge: Victorian Reformer, Oriental Scholar,” Unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, The Ohio State University, 1995.

offers his readers when he pointedly remarks that one of his cousins was certain to be remembered as a coward for failing to join an alliance against the Uzbek confederation, the tribal coalition that in 1504 forced Babur from his Central Asian homeland, and by 1506 was threatening to destroy him, his cousin and their few surviving Timurid and Chingizid relations. How could anyone of intelligence, Babur remarks, fail to consider his posthumous reputation. After all, “a person’s acts outlive him.... Wise men have called an illustrious name a second life.”³³ As Forster and Roux show by their delighted reaction to the *Vaqai*, Babur has enjoyed a spectacularly successful second life. His success in defining himself for posterity may also be measured by the attention given to his text, and to a much lesser degree his poetry and other writings. Not only has the *Vaqai* been translated into at least six languages, in the late twentieth century it was again published but in new, lavishly illustrated French and English editions.³⁴

Babur’s success at defining himself for posterity may also be measured by another, ironic standard, the largely uncritical reception of the *Vaqai*. Apart from Annette Susannah Beveridge, who almost alone among scholars of Babur’s writings succeeds in maintaining her critical distance, most editors and translators of the *Vaqai* and writers who have used the text to discuss the history of the era or to compile biographies, have been seduced by the charms of the work.³⁵ They revel in their delight at discovering such an unexpected treasure and have largely taken it at face value, mining its pages for Babur’s wonderfully pithy observations or for “factual” information about the culture and society of the period.³⁶ Like other readers of effective autobiographies, both casual readers and sophisticated scholars have been “won over... by being admitted to his [Babur’s] intimacy.”³⁷ In fact, nearly all readers of the

³³ BN-M, f. 185b. Babur renders the saying in Persian, undoubtedly quoting a Persian verse. See below Chapter 3 for a discussion of his use of Persian aphorisms.

³⁴ These two recent illustrated editions are by J.-L. Bacque-Grammont and Wheeler M. Thackston.

³⁵ The principal exception being S. A. Azimdzhanova, whose two important works are cited in the Introduction.

³⁶ Babur’s work has largely been used in the uncritical way that earlier characterized the citation of material from medieval Indo-Persian histories. See Peter Hardy’s insightful historiographical analysis, *Historians of Medieval India*.

³⁷ Pascal, *Design and Truth in Autobiography* (London: Routledge and Keegan Paul, 1960), 1.

Vaqaz have become Babur's literary *nadzm* his intellectual "boon companions," his posthumous friends and partisans. As a result while Babur's work is widely known and frequently quoted, it cannot be said to be well-understood or appreciated beyond a superficial level. In consequence, with the sole exception of Jean-Paul Roux's work, the many biographies that have appeared are little more than precis of the original text.³⁸ Then too, in the continuing enthusiasm for the *Vaqaz* the significance of Babur's poetry, much of it also autobiographical in different and important ways, has been almost totally ignored.

It is one of the great ironies of historical and literary scholarship on Babur that while his *Vaqaz* is widely recognized as an autobiographical text that resembles many classic western examples of the genre, the significance of that perception in both the Islamic and broader literary world has been largely overlooked. First, most of those who write about the work usually suggest that it is either the earliest or the sole pre-modern autobiography in the Islamic world. Yet, as an autobiographical memoir the *Vaqaz* is not unique. An autobiographical tradition was every bit as much a part of Islamic civilization as it was in the Mediterranean and western European world. Babur's work stands out not because it was the first such work written by a Muslim, but because it was so qualitatively superior to earlier autobiographical memoirs in virtually every respect. Second, the complexities of the work have never been discussed, for it is not only a autobiographical memoir but also a legitimizing narrative, an administrative survey and an unusual example of the genre of "mirror for princes" advice literature. However, the most inexplicable aspect of the voluminous scholarship on the work is this: the implication of identifying the work as an autobiography has never been seriously discussed. In their enthusiasm for the *Vaqaz* readers have largely ignored the essential character of autobiography, that it is pre-eminently what the *Annales* historian Marc Bloch identified as an intentional source, a rhetorical self-statement, in this case a consciously crafted, retrospective presentation of a life.³⁹ Like every other autobiographical work Babur's is at least in part a self-serving piece of propaganda. Fortunately it is a brilliantly original example of the genre—and a great deal more.

³⁸ Roux, an accomplished Turcological scholar, is the only biographer to frame his life of Babur within a discussion of Timurid society and culture.

³⁹ Marc Bloch, *The Historian's Craft* (New York, N.Y.: Vintage Books, 1953), 60.

Autobiography in the Islamic World

A significant autobiographical tradition existed in the pre-colonial Islamic world, and it is important to understand the characteristics of extant autobiographical works written by Muslims in order to appreciate both the nature and originality of Babur's text. Autobiographical works were written in pre-modern or pre-colonial Islamic societies just as they were in Christian or Jewish communities in the Mediterranean and in Europe.⁴⁰ Indeed, if autobiography is simply defined as a retrospective presentation of one's own life, then there is good reason to think they were at least as common in the medieval Islamic world as they were in Europe of the same period.⁴¹ Some Middle Eastern autobiographies were inspired by Greek or

⁴⁰ See the seminal article of Franz Rosenthal, "Die arabische Autobiographie," *Studia Arabica* 1 [Analecta Orientalia], 14 (1937), 1-40, the essay by M. J. L. Young "Medieval Arabic Autobiography," in M. L. J. Young, J. D. Latham and R. B. Serjeant, *Religion, Learning and Science in the 'Abbasid Period* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1990), 183-87, and the important recent discussion of Arabic autobiography by Dwight F. Reynolds and others in *Edebiyat* 7 (1997), 207-393. See especially Reynolds introductory essay, "Introduction: Arabic Autobiography," 208-14. Dwight Reynolds and his colleagues have identified seventy autobiographical texts dating between the ninth and nineteenth century written in the "Arab" world and adjacent territories by Arabs, Armenians, Berbers, Iranians, Turks and West Africans. Reynolds, 208. Reynolds has also edited the expanded version of his essay in the volume, *Interpreting the Self, Autobiography in the Arabic Literary Tradition* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 2001). For Arabic autobiography see also Sergei E. Shuiskii, "Some Observations on Modern Arabic Autobiography," *Journal of Arabic Literature*, 13 (1982), 111-23, and Fedwa Malti-Douglas, *Blindness and Autobiography: al-Ayyam of Taha Husayn* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1988). Cemal Kafadar discusses some Ottoman examples in his article "Self and Others: the Diary of a dervish in seventeenth century Istanbul and first-person narratives in Ottoman literature," *Studia Islamica* 69 (1989), 121-70, while Bert Fragner describes the Iranian tradition in *Persische Memoirenliteratur als Quelle zur Neuen Geschichte Irans* (Wiesbaden: Franz Steiner, 1979). For autobiographical and biographical literature of the Timurid period see Maria E. Subtelny, "Scenes from the Literary Life of Timurid Herat,"³ in Roger M. Savory and Dionisius A. Agius eds., *Logos Islamikos: Studia Islamica in Honorem Georgii Michaelis Wickens* (Toronto: 1984), 137-55. Two Persian-language examples from seventeenth century Iran and eighteenth century India are discussed and translated by Devin J. Stewart, "The Humor of Scholars: The Autobiography of Nfmat Allah al-Jaza'iri (d. 1112/1701)," *Iranian Studies* 22, 4 (1989), 47-81 and by C. M. Naim ed. and trans., *fikr-i Mir* (Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1999).

⁴¹ This definition is adopted by Reynolds, *Interpreting the Self*, 30. The estimate of the number of autobiographies in the "medieval" Islamic world relative to Christian Europe is based on a comment of Georg Misch, *Geschichte der Autobiographie* (Bern and Frankfurt: A. Francke and Gerhard Schultke-Bulmke, 1949-69),

Iranian examples, but most were written solely within an Islamic—or Islamized Arab, Persian or Turkic—context. The medieval Muslim theologian al-Ghazali (d.1111), wrote one as did the fourteenth century philosophical historian, Ibn Khaldun (d.1406).⁴² However, neither al-Ghazali nor Ibn Khaldun consciously or incidentally convey a sense of themselves as distinct personalities or idiosyncratic human beings. The same can be said for most of the authors of earlier extant works. The overwhelming majority of these writers are concerned with external events and their texts usually represent little more “than an extended *curriculum vitae*.”⁴³ An example of a typical but exceptionally significant pre-modern professional Muslim autobiography is Ibn Sina’s (Avicenna’s) brief account of his religious, scientific and philosophical education in Bukhara and Khurasan in the tenth and eleventh century.⁴⁴ Apart from information about his birth it contains almost no personal information about this scientist and scholar.

Neither in the Islamic world nor in India were people of Babur’s era encouraged to write highly personal autobiographies. Even in Europe the widespread taste for literary self-indulgence comes very late with the Romantic movement. Rousseau’s *Confessions* were published posthumously at the beginning of that period, and it was only then that Cellini’s *Vita* came to be widely appreciated. However, in all cultures different occupational groups or social classes had distinct attitudes toward public and/or literary displays of egotism. In the Islamic world to which Babur belonged the ex-

III. 2, 980, cited in Reynolds, *Interpreting the Self*, 22. Misch, however, like most Eurocentric writers who discuss autobiography in the Islamic world, felt that however numerous, Muslim autobiographies were not the equivalent of European works. Misch, indeed, felt that Muslim works reflected an “arrested state of human consciousness.”

⁴² For al-Ghazali’s spiritual reflections see W. Montgomery Watt trans., *The Faith and Practice of Al-Ghazali* (Oxford: One World Publications, repr. 1994). Ibn Khaldun’s autobiography is discussed by Walter Joseph Fischel in *Ibn Khaldun and Tamerlane: Their Historic Meeting in Damascus*, A.D.1401 (803/ A study based on Arabic Manuscripts of Ibn Khaldun’s “Autobiography,” with a translation into English and a commentary (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1952) and “Ibn Khaldun’s “Autobiography in the Light of External Arabic Sources” *Studi orientalistici in onore di Giorgio Levi Della Vida* (Rome: Institute per l’Oriente 1956), 1, 287-308. See also M. G. de Slane, “Autobiographic d’ Ibn Khaldoun, *Journal Asiatique* 4th ser., 3 (1844), 5-60, 187-210, 291-308 and 325-53.

⁴³ Young, “Medieval Arabic Autobiography,” 183.

⁴⁴ See Dimitri Gutas, *Avicenna and the Aristotelian Tradition* (Leiden: Brill, 1988), 23-30 & 194-98.

tremes were represented by pious, self-effacing Muslims on the one hand and aggressive warrior aristocrats on the other.

As is true of Near Eastern monotheists generally, devout Muslims, whether laymen or members of the *filama*, the clerical class of theologians and religious functionaries, believed in the necessity of humility and the suppression of the human ego in order effectively to worship god. In some instances Muslim autobiographers even express anxiety about the ethics of recording their own lives, self-conscious about an act of "self-aggrandizement."⁴⁵ The Quran is the source of many such injunctions, as in verse 17 of Surah 3, which praises those who show "patience, firmness and self-control" and who "worship devoutly."⁴⁶ Like Christians, Muslims are advised to be humble remembering God "With humility and in reverence without loudness in words."⁴⁷ Muslims, like Christians, are also warned against egotistical self-indulgence that might corrupt the individual and destroy his/her spiritual resolve; "Intoxicans and gambling" are classed as "Satan's handiwork."⁴⁸ The significance of these and other injunctions is encapsulated in the term for Islamic law, the *shariah*, whose primary sources are the Quran and the *hadith*, the attested reports of Muhammad's injunctions or behavior. *Shariah* means the straight path, the path of strict personal morality and social restraint. Thus, "Where man succeeds, it is because of patience and constancy of vision, of loyalty to the divinely rational order of the world and of forsaking the chaotic desires of the self."⁴⁹

The belief that one should suppress egotism in order to gain salvation stimulated the development of a distinct poetical genre among sufis, Muslims who practiced a devotional or mystical variant of Islam. These poems were known as *zuhdiyyat*, verses of abstinence.⁵⁰ Writers of such poems emphasized the worthlessness of the external or material world and the fallacy of ambition. One

⁴⁵ Reynolds, "Arabic Autobiography," 209.

⁴⁶ *The Holy Qur'an* 'Abdullah Yusuf 'Ali translated and ed. (Brentwood, Md.: Amana Corporation, 1989), 130.

⁴⁷ Ibid., V. 205, Surah 7.

⁴⁸ Ibid., V. 90, Surah 5.

⁴⁹ Tarif Khalidi, *Arabic historical thought in the classical period* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1994), 11.

⁵⁰ J. T. P. De Bruijn, *Persian Sufi Poetry* (Richmond, Gt. Britain: Curzon Press, 1997). Chapter II, "Poems of Abstinence."

of the atypical *rubaiyat* or quatrains attributed to the well-known twelfth century Iranian mathematician and poet 'Umar Khayyam is an example of such verses that urge the necessity of suppressing the self in order to be saved;

The more from *self* I part I have the more
The more I humble *self* the higher soar.
How strange the more the Wine of Life I sip
The more befuddled yet the sober more.⁵¹

A similar sentiment is found expressed by a later Iranian poet, Muhammad Shirin Maghribi, born about 1350 near Isfahan in central Iran. A sufi preoccupied with the doctrine of *tauhzf* or the unity of god, Maghribi emphasized man's insignificance and the pathetic irrelevance of egoistic self-expression.

Thou art a drop; speak not of the depths of Ocean;
Thou art a mote; speak not of the Sun sublime.
Man of To-day, seek not to express the notion
Of all the past and future spans of Time.....
Of T and 'we' so long as naught thou knowest.
Be silent; speak no more of T and 'We';
Breathe not the names of highest or of lowest,
Till God shall teach thee what the names may be....⁵²

Finally in a poem which has been titled "Our Existence is an Enigma," the great Iranian lyricist Shams al-Dm Hafiz of Shiraz (b. c.1320), describes a visit to one of the taverns so commonly mentioned in Khayyam's verse. Here the poet's flirtation is unsuccessful because of his egotism, and the poem is a metaphor for relationship between the egotistical Muslim and God.

Left to myself, the tavern-wench I spied
And sought to win her love by speaking fair....

⁵¹ Ahmad Saidi, *Ruba'iyat of Omar Khayyam* (Berkeley, Ca.: Asian Humanities Press, 1991), 221. Whether or not Khayyam wrote this poem—or indeed most of the others attributed to him, is a secondary matter here. See Saidi's "Introduction" and A.J. Arberry's critical discussion in A.J. Arberry ed. and trans., *The Ruba'iyat of Omar Khayyam* (London: Penguin, 1981), 9-41. Khayyam, of course, is usually associated with quatrains celebrating systematic indulgence rather than disciplined abstinence.

⁵² A.J. Arberry, *Classical Persian Literature* (London: George Allen and Unwin, repr. 1967), 408-09.

Said she, her arching eyebrows like a bow....
 So long as thou in all created things
 Seest but thyself the centre and the end.
 Go spread thy dainty nets for other wings-
 Too high the Anca's nest for thee, my friend.⁵³

A specific example of how this attitude might discourage Muslims from writing highly personal autobiographies is found in a much later story related by the British traveler Alexander Burnes, who during his intelligence gathering mission between Kabul and Bukhara in 1832, reported that he had met a "Khwaja," whom he describes as both a "priest and merchant," possibly a sufi of the Naqshbandi order to which Babur belonged.⁵⁴ He loaned this man a copy of the memoirs of Shah Shuja^c, the early nineteenth century ruler of Kabul and was obviously amused by his reaction. Burnes writes:

The book was written by the King himself; and gives a detail of his life and adventures, in a simple style, free from extracts of the Koran, metaphors and other extravagancies of oriental authors.... The work in fact, was what would be called by us an interesting detail of events. The Khwaju returned it to me a few days after, saying it was a dry production, not enlivened by the fear of God or a remembrance of the Prophet but entirely occupied with matters of a personal nature.⁵⁵

⁵³ A. J. Arberry, *Fifty Poems of Hafiz* (London: Curzon Press, repr. 1993), 125. The 'Anea" [in Persian, *Enqa*] of the last line quoted here is another name for the fabulous bird known more commonly as *simurgh*, which also implies here anything scarce or wonderful.

⁵⁴ Khwajah was a common title in Babur's era among Naqshbandi *pirs* or *shaykhs*, spiritual teachers, from Central Asia. See Stephen F. Dale and Alam Payind, "The Ahrari Waqf of Kabul in the Year 1546 and the Mughul Naqshbandiyyah," *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 119.2 (1999), 218-33. In fact, the order was most commonly known as that of the *Khwajahgan*. Jo-Ann Gross provides explicit evidence of Naqshbandi shaykhs' commercial activities in her article, "Naqshbandi Appeals to the Herat Court: A Preliminary Study of Trade and Property Issues," in Devin DeWeese ed., *Studies on Central Asian History in Honor of Yuri Bregel* (Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana University, Research Institute for Inner Asian Studies, 2001), 113-28.

⁵⁵ Alexander Burnes, *Travels into Bokhara*, II, 218-19. Just to emphasize that such attitudes were common to religious classes generally and not just to Muslims, Burnes adds that Bishop Heber, who traveled in and wrote extensively and intelligently of early nineteenth century India, "has been blamed by some" for the worldliness of his memoirs. Shah Shuja's writings are available in Muhammad Husain Herati ed., *Waqiat-i Shah Shuja*, Pts. I & II [Pt. III written by Herati]

In this pious man's view, self-referential autobiography itself was a profane act. Such a person would have been far more likely to approve of St. Augustine's *Confessions* than the self-centered, prosaic memoirs of the Muslim ruler of Kabul.

Pious Muslims and members of the *flama* may have condemned egotism, but members of the ruling elite usually admired and encouraged it, although they often experienced a psychological tension between their aristocratic habits and professed religious ideals. Most Turco-Mongol warriors usually reveled in their egotism and trumpeted their triumphs. The social ethos of such men was a regional version of the values of the warrior class of pre-Islamic Arabia, whose popular genre of *fakhr* or boasting often featured descriptions of drunkenness as well as feats of horsemanship and hunting.⁵⁶ The specific Central Asian variant of this tradition to which Babur was heir has been preserved in the oral epics of Central Asia, where the traditional activities of members of the aristocratic warrior class have been preserved in epic poetry. These epics extol the individualistic, heroic and largely amoral values of this class, the polar opposite of the self-effacing, moralizing 'alim or truly pious sufi. There are, for example, the Kirghiz poems featuring the hero Manas that describe a recently Islamized pastoral nomadic community. "Everyone who has any real existence or function in the poems is individualized and mentioned by name...life is sustained chiefly by hunting and plunder ...[and] it is only rarely that social standards or moral judgements are expressed explicitly."⁵⁷

These poems describe a state of social and cultural evolution that in the Central Asian context was closer to Timur's day than

(Kabul: Afghan Historical Society, 1954). It is described by Shah Mahmud Hanifi in "Inter-Regional Trade and Colonial State Formation in Nineteenth Century Afghanistan," unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, University of Michigan, 2001, 22.

⁵⁶ Abdulla el-Tayib, "Pre-Islamic Poetry," in A. F. L. Beeston et al. *Arabic literature to the end of the Umayyad Period* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1983), 81-5.

⁵⁷ Nora K. Chadwick and Victor Zhirmunsky, *Oral Epics of Central Asia* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1969), 90 and 87-8. The extant forms of these poems date to the eighteenth century. See also Karl Reichl, *Turkic Epic Poetry: Traditions, Forms, Poetic Structure* (N.Y. and London: Garland Publishing, 1992).

Babur's, but the values they extol and the heroes they describe are a recognizable feature of Babur's society as well. In fact Babur's marvelously detailed characterizations of the Turks and Mongols who composed his following represent a fifteenth century class picture of egotistical, hard drinking, socially unrestrained Turco-Mongols, almost none of whom would have blushed at full-throated praise or would have been reluctant to laud themselves. Representative of this class was a Turco-Mongol warrior named Nuyan Beg, whom Babur describes as "a dissolute, wine-loving rogue."⁵⁸ Or another such man who joined Babur's retinue in 1511-12, Hasan 'Ali Jalayir, had previously been a falconer. Under the pen name Tufayli he wrote good panegyric poems known as *qasidairy* says Babur, who goes on to characterize him as "a fearless and extravagant person, a keeper of catamites, he constantly played backgammon and threw the dice."⁵⁹

If they were literate and intelligent, well-born and ambitious, such men might occasionally also write their memoirs. It is not surprising that the Islamic autobiographical texts that most closely resemble Babur's were composed by members of the warrior elite. One example is the *Tibydn* of the eleventh century Berber amir of Granada, 'Abd Allah ibn Buluggm (b. c.447/1055-6- d. c.1095).⁶⁰ Largely a military-political narrative interspersed with observations on statecraft, it was written to salvage the author's reputation and that of his family after his deposition in 1090. The author devotes so much space to reflections on politics and statecraft that the *Tibydn* is in substantial measure an example of "mirrors for princes" literature.

Ibn Buluggm wrote in the first person and at a relatively advanced age. He begins and concludes the work with pious reflections. Islam is a moral reference point for him and all such authors. However, in the last chapter these reflections are balanced by a series of observations and aphorisms in which he unmistakably shows himself to be a member of the self-indulgent ruling elite

⁵⁸ BN-M, f. 171b.

⁵⁹ BN-M, fs. 174b-175a.

⁶⁰ Amin T. Tibi ed. and trans., *The Tiblyan* (Leiden: Brill, 1986). The author's frank rationale for writing is given on p. 190 of this edition. See also Reynolds, "Essentializing the Self: Private Life and Personality in the Memoirs of Ibn Buluggm," in Reynolds ed. *Interpreting the Self*, 74-9.

whose values set him apart from self-abnegating sufis. Thus he writes:

It is said that sexual intercourse is one of the best remedies for melancholy because of the momentary pleasure it affords. So also is a session at the bath for it fills one with pleasure. A person who seeks delight throughout his life should enjoy himself whenever he can find an easy way of satisfying his desires. He who snatches his moment of pleasure is a winner, but he who delays it is a loser. For a man is the child of the here and now.⁶¹

In this final chapter Ibn Buluggm also mentions his poetry, which he says he dabbled in “as kings are wont to do in their pastimes,” although he quotes none in his narrative.⁶² He also includes an erudite discussion of the pleasures and dangers of wine. At the immediate end of the work Ibn Buluggm defends his court life, saying among other things that there was nothing wrong taking boys as “boon companions” for “is not kingship or wealth intended for enjoyment and adornment?”⁶³ Overall the last chapter is one of the most psychologically interesting documents in medieval Islamic literature in its accidental revelations of powerfully recalled emotions.

A second, but intellectually and socially less interesting autobiographical memoir, is that of the late twelfth-century Arab noble, Abu'l Muzaffar Usamah ibn Murshid ibn Munqidh (b. 488/1095 - d. 584/1188). Usamah, as he is generally known, was the son and nephew of the “kings” of Shayzar, a castle-town on the Orontes river in northern Syria, although he spent much of his mature life in exile in Egypt and Damascus. Another uncle served in the Fatimid Egyptian court, and Usamah's son became a boon companion of Salah al-Din, who appointed his eighty year-old father to be governor of Beirut, just before it was taken by the Crusaders. Usamah ibn Munqidh's autobiography, the *Kitab al-Tibdr* (*The Book of Learning by Examples*) is intended, as its title indicates, to be a kind of “mirror for princes” text, although it is largely given over to accounts of “intermittent war and incessant hunting.”⁶⁴ As the

⁶¹ Tibi ed. and trans., *The Tibyān*, 186.

⁶² *Ibid.*, 174.

⁶³ *Ibid.*, 192.

⁶⁴ Young, “Medieval Arabic Autobiography,” 186.

author describes his own warrior life before being weakened by old age:

My whole ambition was to engage in combat with my rivals,
Whom I always took for prey. They therefore were in constant
Trembling on account of me. More terrible in warfare than
Nighttime, more impetuous in assault than a torrent,
And more adventurous on the battlefield than destiny!⁶⁵

The work is far simpler in style and content than Ibn Buluggm's—it is after all the anecdotal dictation of a ninety year old man. However, the author exhibits a similar unapologetic egotism and uses a simple, idiosyncratic style to render the Crusades believably as a bewildering series of vicious petty skirmishes, marked by occasional Muslim-Christian friendship and interspersed with the periodic prolonged siege. Like Ibn Buluggm, Usamah was a literate member of a warrior aristocracy who had studied grammar, calligraphy, poetry and the Quran and composed acclaimed collections of verse, but like the Berber he does not dwell on his literary and artistic interests in the text itself. Nor does Usamah ibn Munqidh exhibit any of Babur's taste for careful organization, quantification and precise detail. Perhaps because he dictated these reminiscences in extreme old age "Logic and scientific classification of data were no idols to him...."⁶⁶ Nor do Ibn Buluggm or Usamah ibn Munqidh include the piquant observations about a vast spectrum of human and natural phenomena that enrich and enliven Babur's autobiography.

The Vaqai as Autobiography

In terms of the social class of its author Babur's *Vaqai* represents a similar kind of text to those of Usamah ibn Munqidh and Ibn Buluggm, but one considerably more ambitious, artistically more compelling and composed on a vastly greater scale. Babur, that is, wrote as a member of the Turco-Mongol warrior aristocracy of Mawarannahr. He was a far more cultured man than the pre-

⁶⁵ Philip K. Hitti translated, *Mn Arab-Syrian Gentleman and Warrior in the Period of the Crusades, Memoirs of Usamah Ibn Munqidh* (New York., N.Y.: Columbia University Press, 2000), 191.

⁶⁶ *Ibid.*, 15.

Islamic Arab poets or Manas of the Kirgiz epic poems, but not necessarily more so than the well-educated Usamah ibn Munqidh or Ibn Buluggm. As a descendant of Timur and Chingiz Khan, he belonged to essentially the same social class, one whose *raison d'être* was war and conquest and whose representatives usually saw warfare and hunting as variants of the same aggressive activity. He expresses his own sense that these were the norms of his class on many occasions, as when he implicitly criticizes one of his Timurid cousins for lacking *mulkgirliq* or "kingdom-seizing" ambitions.⁶⁷ Babur was of course a Muslim, but one whose compatriots were professional warriors, unapologetic individualists and usually self-indulgent pleasure seekers, more often than not amusing themselves in their leisure with chess, sustained drinking bouts and/or the consumption of the intoxicating confection *majun*, and the unrestrained pursuit of sexual pleasure. No one who reads the *Vaqai*—or the works of Ibn Buluggm or Usamah—could possibly imagine that the sense of self was less highly developed among people in the Islamic world than in the populations of medieval Europe or Renaissance Italy.

Babur's work is not a modern autobiography in which the author attempts to trace, explain or justify his personality.⁶⁸ His work is closer in spirit and in fact almost identical in character to the *Vita* of Benvenuto Cellini. He is someone who gives us "the complex reality of the man without any analysis."⁶⁹ Like Cellini he does not discuss his childhood as a distinct and psychologically formative stage of life.⁷⁰ Like Cellini, Babur devotes little space to recounting

⁶⁷ BN-M, f. 38a.

⁶⁸ This definition has been the norm since Rousseau's *Confessions* were published in the late eighteenth century. The French critic Philippe Lejeune, for example, defines autobiography as a "retrospective prose narrative written by a real person concerning his own existence, where the focus is his individual life, in particular the story of his personality." Philippe Lejeune, *On Autobiography* Katherine Leary translated and Paul John Eakin edited (Minneapolis, Minn: University of Minnesota Press, 1989), 4. Most modern scholars of the genre like Karl Joachim Weintraub, consider the difference between autobiography and memoir to be that of introspection, which they believe to be characteristic of autobiography. See his article "Autobiography and Historical Consciousness," *Critical Enquiry* 1, 4 June, 1975), 821-48. In fact these terms are not used by scholars in a rigorously exclusive way.

⁶⁹ The opinion of Roy Pascal, an author of one of the seminal modern studies of the autobiographical genre and one of the few western scholars to acknowledge the existence of Babur's work. *Design and Truth in Autobiography*, 31.

⁷⁰ As Philippe Aries has shown the idea of childhood as a distinct phase of life

his family relations, although he exhibits far more emotion on this subject than does the Italian. Like Cellini the artist, Babur the presumptive monarch is preoccupied with recounting his career. Indeed, the two authors are so fundamentally similar in outlook as to suggest that there was a cross-cultural autobiographical type before Rousseau revolutionized the genre by making his own personality the subject of his *Confessions*. That type might be identified as the “professional” autobiography, reflections in which people wrote of themselves primarily as representatives of a vocation: kings or bureaucrats, churchmen or philosophers, artists or poets. This comparison might be expanded to include China, since the period between 1565 and 1680 has been termed “the golden age of Chinese autobiography.”⁷¹

To understand the nature of Babur’s *Vaqai* and the characteristics that distinguish it from the works of Ibn Buluggm and Usamah it is useful to artificially separate and analyze its political and personal strands and as well as to discuss the stylistic characteristics that give the work its considerable literary power. It makes sense to begin with the intertwined political, administrative and didactic goals that pervade the work. Nowhere in his extant text, in his poetry or any of his other writings does Babur explain why he wrote or whether any particular work inspired him to do so; if he ever wrote an introduction to the *Vaqai* it is now lost.⁷² Still, he leaves no doubt that like Usamah and Ibn Buluggm he is writing first and foremost to chronicle his political and military career. From the opening sentence to the last fragmentary phrase he is preoccupied with narrating his accomplishments as a Timurid. The entire *Vaqai* is a testimonial to his political purpose, and it is suffused with a profound and utterly self-assured sense of political legitimacy derived from his Timurid descent, the source of his self-described imperial ambitions or, as he baldly expresses it, his “ambition for rule and desire for conquest.”⁷³ Babur’s Timurid identity was the driving force of his personality and his narration of the

was a recent development in Europe as it was certainly also in Asia. *Centuries of Childhood* translated by Roger Baldick (N.Y.: Vintage Books, 1952).

⁷¹ Pei-yi Wu, *The Confucian’s Progress, Autobiographical Writings in Traditional China* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1990), xii.

⁷² Neither does Ibn Buluggm. In Usamah’s case the first folios of the work are missing.

⁷³ BN-M, f. 55b.

struggle to establish a viable Timurid state is the dramatic story line that gives coherence to this text.⁷⁴

Shortly after the opening of the book he reminds his readers of his matchless lineage, a characteristic steppe means to establish social bona fides, typically done when two strangers would meet and identify themselves with lineages stretching back several generations. Characteristically he first carefully demonstrates that his father and uncles were Miranshahi Timurids, descendants of Miranshah Mirza, Timur's third son. Speaking first of his father 'Umar Shaykh, Babur writes:

He was born in Samarqand in 860 (1465). He was Sultan Abu Sa'id Mirza's fourth son, younger than [Babur's uncles] Sultan Ahmad Mirza, Sultan Muhammad Mirza and Sultan Mahmud Mirza. Sultan Abu Sa'id Mirza was Sultan Muhammad Mirza's son. Sultan Muhammad Mirza was the son of Miranshah Mirza, Timur Beg's third son.⁷⁵

Babur then identifies his father's wives, the most important of whom for him was his mother, Qutlugh Nigar Khanim, the second daughter of the Mongol Yunas Khan. Babur also supplies a genealogy for his maternal grandfather, Yunas Khan, as he was a de-

⁷⁴ A point made by Pascal, *Design and Truth in Autobiography*, 19. He writes: "The quality of an autobiography depends ultimately on the quality of the spirit of the writer.... I mean a capacity which differs according to the nature of the personality and life, and which succeeds in creating in us the consciousness of the driving force of this life, what Montaigne calls a man's "master form." John Paul Eakin makes a similar point in his superbly written study of western autobiography, *Fictions in Autobiography* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1985). He quotes Erik Erikson's discussion of identity formation in his psychoanalytic biography, *Young Man Luther*. Erikson wrote: "By accepting some definition as to who he is, usually on the basis of a function in an economy, a place in the sequence of generations, and a status in the structure of society, the adult is able to selectively reconstruct his past in such a way that, step for step, it seems to have planned him or, better, he seems to have planned it." *Fictions in Autobiography*, 109, n. 32.

⁷⁵ BN-M, f. 6b. Patrilineal descent was the norm in Babur's day, whether it was or not in earlier Turkic societies. While steppe societies may have been more egalitarian than the great urban civilizations of China, Iran and India individuals with aristocratic lineages were always careful to establish their social precedence. The nineteenth century Hungarian scholar Arminius Vambery remarked on this social/political awareness and observed that when two Kirgiz tribesmen meet the first question asked is: 'Who are they seven fathers—ancestors?' The person addressed, even if a child in his seventh year, always has his answer ready, for otherwise he would be considered very ill-bred." Quoted in Chadwick and Zhirmunsky, *Oral Epics of Central Asia*, 12.

scendant of Chingiz Khan's second son, Chaghatay Khan,

Both Ibn Buluggm and Usamah are also careful of course to proclaim the lineages that defined their identity and careers. Babur's account is partly distinguished from their narratives by his wealth of detail about his parentage and social relations, which is symptomatic of his penchant for detailed, precise description that distinguishes the entire work. However, his writing is also distinguished by two other traits. First, he does not rely solely on his lineage or political status to assert legitimacy, but implicitly demonstrates that he possessed civilizing cultural attributes that were respected traits of a late fifteenth-century Timurid ruler. The two most important of these attributes are Babur's knowledge of and active participation in high literary culture and his religious orientation and learning.

Like Ibn Buluggm and Usamah ibn Munqidh Babur wrote poetry, but unlike his predecessors he integrated much of his verse into the text. He did so partly as a stylistic device but partly also to demonstrate his intention to master the poetic art that was the most accessible and public form of high culture in this as in other pre modern societies. Indeed, in narrating his attempt to master the poetic art Babur offers his readers one of the most complete accounts of the evolution of a writer available for this period. Apart from demonstrating his literary knowledge, Babur is also careful to inform readers of his commitment to the dominant Sunni Muslim faith of his Ferghanah homeland. He does so in a variety of ways: by describing his attachment to his religious tutor, a man with a prestigious scholarly lineage, and by mentioning his formal study of Islamic law during the Kabul period. On many other occasions Babur proclaims his religious commitment in far more subtle ways that his audience would immediately understand, but which are not always obvious to the modern reader. One example of these implicit proclamations is his discussion of how, sometime after he took Kabul in 1504, he paid landowners north of the city for some garden property that his Timurid uncle, Ulugh Beg Kabuli, had forcefully appropriated for his use years earlier. By mentioning the compensation he paid for this land Babur is telling his readers that he was a "just sultan," that is a ruler who adhered to Muslim administrative and legal norms.⁷⁶

⁷⁶ See below Chapter 6.

The entire *Vaqai* can, therefore, be read as a carefully conceived, legitimizing self-presentation of a Turco-Mongol aristocrat who is a knowledgeable, accomplished writer and a committed Sunni Muslim who rules according to accepted Islamic administrative norms. As its tone and content implicitly demonstrate, the legitimizing audience for the text was comprised, most importantly, of the Islamized, literate, Turk!- speaking Timurid and Ghaghatay Mongol elite, and beyond them, the broader society of Turco-Mongol military aristocrats. In geographic terms he was speaking especially to the Turco-Mongol populations of his Central Asian homeland, despite the fact that when he wrote the *Vaqai*, Afghanistan and India had become the refuge for so many of his own Timurid and Chingizid relations. His religious writings were also directed partly at a Central Asian constituency, but to religious scholars in Samarqand and Bukhara. However, the *Vaqai* also served an important administrative function that is readily apparent in the carefully conceived tripartite structure of the text.

Babur has organized the *Vaqai* around the three principal phases of his political career, creating a structurally symmetrical work that is one of many internal indications of his systemizing intelligence. In the first section he narrates his life from the time he inherited his father's appanage in the Ferghanah valley east of Samarqand until he fled from the Uzbeks to Kabul in 1504. In the second he describes his life from the moment he entered Kabul in 1504 down to 1526, although fifteen years of narrative for this period are missing. In the last third of the text he recounts his victories in north India and subsequent attempt to pacify the region, although this section too is incomplete, breaking off a year and a half before his death in December 1530. Babur begins each of these sections with a statement defining his political situation, appropriately opening the Ferghanah section—which in the extant text is also the opening of the *Vaqai*—by writing in the first person: "In the month of Ramazan of the year 899 (1494) during my twelfth year I became *padshah* (ruler, monarch, emperor) in the province of Ferghanah."⁷⁷ After describing his flight from Fergha-

⁷⁷ BN-M, f. 1a. *Padshah* or *badshah* in its Indian variant, is an Iranian, Persian-language title that literally means "protecting" [pad] "lord" [shah]. It signifies a monarch, ruler or king, while the related title, *shahanshah* or "king of kings" used by pre-Islamic Achaemenid and Sasanian rulers of Iran, connotes an emperor.

nah and occupation of Kabul in 1504, he prefaces the rest of the Kabul narrative with a similar statement. "At the end of Rabi^c al-awwal with Almighty God's grace and mercy Kabul and Ghazni and its districts were taken and occupied without a struggle."⁷⁸ Then near the beginning of the final or Indian section, after describing the victory that gave him Delhi and Agra in April 1526, he writes: "On Thursday the 28th of Rajab (May 10th) at the time of the afternoon prayer Agra was entered and [we] dismounted at the house of [the defeated] Sultan Ibrahim Ludi."⁷⁹

After introducing each of these sections Babur supplies a gazetteer for each region that came under his control. In the text immediately after each of the three political statements defining his rule—in Ferghanah, Kabul and India—Babur surveys the geography, ethnography, resources and flora and fauna of each of these regions. In addition to these three main divisions he also includes a separate survey of Samarqand, similarly placed in the text following his first occupation of Timur's capital in October/November 1497.⁸⁰ In the case of Samarqand he includes a critique of the principal buildings and suburban districts of the capital. Babur may have been inspired to write these gazetteers by a familiarity with such well-known Persian-language geographical works as the anonymous tenth century survey of the known world, the *Hudud al-'alam*.^x He is even more likely to have known one of the two fifteenth century Timurid-era works: the *Jughrafiyd-yi Hafiz-i Abru*, the economic geography of the Harat region completed in the first half of the century, and the more comprehensive survey of the geography, personalities, monuments of Khurasan written just as the end of the century, the *Rauzat al-jannat ft ausdf madznat Harat*,⁸²

⁷⁸ BN-M, f. 128a.

⁷⁹ BN-M, f. 268b.

⁸⁰ James L. Westcoat, Jr. is one of the few scholars to recognize this characteristic of the *Vaqai*. See his article "Mughal Gardens and Geographic Sciences, Then and Now," in Attilio Petruccioli ed., *Gardens in the Time of the Great Muslim Empires* (Leiden: Brill, 1997), 190.

⁸¹ See G. E. Bosworth ed., *Hudud al-Alam, "The Regions of the World f A Persian Geography 372 a.h.-982 a. d. Translated and Explained by V. Minorsky with the Preface by V. V. Barthold* (London: Luzac, repr. 1970).

⁸² Mayil Haravi ed., *Jughrafiya-yi Hafiz-i Abru: qismat-i rub^c-i Khurasan* (Tehran: Bunyad-i Farhang-i Iran, 1349/1970), and Mu'Tn al-Dm Muhammad ZamchT IsfizarT, *Rauzat al-jannat ft ausaf madinat Harat* 897-899 a. h. [1491-1493] Sayyid Muhammad Kazim Imam ed. (Tehran: Tehran University, 1338-39/ 1959-60), 2 v. When describing the Kabul region Babur use the Turkic term *buluk* several

He does not mention either work, and his surveys are partially distinguished by unusually detailed information on flora and fauna. Yet, whatever the inspiration, his gazetteers are the first known comprehensive surveys of this kind in South Asia. It is possible that his example provided part of the model for the great historical and administrative treatise of Abud Fazl 'Allami, the courtier and historian of Babur's grandson, Akbar.⁸³

Two of Babur's gazetteers are relatively brief. This is true of his surveys of Ferghanah and Hindustan. His account of Kabul and its neighboring districts is, though, both detailed and comprehensive. He knew eastern Afghanistan far better than either Ferghanah or India; it was smaller and he spent most of his adult life in the region. His account is the first extensive survey of this area, and it was known to and used by his successors. It is, in fact, a strategic survey that provided crucial information for governing Kabul, in Babur's Indian perspective the second city of a state he saw as an Indo-Afghan empire.⁸⁴

Babur probably intended these gazetteers to be used in this way by his sons and their officials, and he also seems to have thought of the entire *Vaqai* as having another and didactic purpose, to be a kind of mirror for Timurid princes. Passages in the *Akbar narnah*, the history of the reign of his grandson, suggest that his successors viewed his memoirs at least partly as *naslhat namah*, an advice treatise, although probably in a more reverential and less practical way than Babur intended. In the words of the *Akbar namah's* author, Abu'l Fazl, Babur's book was an "*Institute for all earthly sovereigns and a manual for teaching right thoughts and proper ideas.*"⁸⁵ Even

times to refer to subdivisions of *tumans*. He uses it only one other time, at the beginning of the Ferghanah section. This is the term Hafiz-i Abru uses for subdivisions of districts around Harat.

⁸³ It is not accurate to say, therefore, that Abu'l Fazl's administrative and historical treatise, the *A'in-i Akbari* had no precedent. See Shireen Moosvi, "Making and Recording History—Akbar and the *Akbar-nama*," in Iqtidar Alam Khan ed., *Akbar and His Age* (Delhi: Northern Book Centre, 1999), 181-87. It is in China that gazetteers of various kinds became a well established genre. For an introduction see Timothy Brook, *Geographical Sources of Ming- Qing History* (Ann Arbor, Mi.: Center for Chinese Studies, University of Michigan, 1988).

⁸⁴ It was as important for rulers of Babur's day to have accurate intelligence as for later British officials whose interests are discussed by Christopher A. Bayly, *Empire and Information, Intelligence Gathering and Social Communication in India, 1780-1870* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1996).

⁸⁵ AN, I, 278. Babur's memoirs were translated into Persian by November,

so the *Vaqaf* was not a generic piece of advice literature such as the well-known eleventh century “mirror for princes” text, the *Qabus-namah* which is presented as a series of explicit lessons on various topics ranging from relations with one’s mother and father to drinking customs, the purchase of horses, friendship and the conduct of government. Unlike these instructions that are abstracted from a particular context and then generalized, most of Babur’s lessons are an implicit part of his particular narrative, and perhaps more effective for that reason. An example is when he carefully describes his early military defeats in Ferghanah, a remarkable discussion for a royal author at this or any period and one presumably meant to instruct his sons. Twice he describes cases where he or his men were surprised and defeated because he or they forgot to post sentries, and Babur attributes these defeats to lack of experience.⁸⁷ On some occasions he does stop to offer an explicit moral, as when he observes that his cousin who refused to join the anti-Uzbek coalition in 1506 should have had the intelligence to remember that a man’s reputation outlives him.⁸⁸ It is easy to see how this observation could be expanded to become a thematic chapter in a typical “mirror for princes” work.

The closest Babur ever comes to an actual “mirror for princes” series of observations occurs near the end of the *Vaqai* where Babur has copied into the text what might be called a personal *nasihat namah*, or “letter of advice” to his son Humayun. Written to Humayun in Afghanistan on November 27, 1528, just two years before Babur’s death, the letter includes advice on almost every conceivable subject, including Humayun’s spelling error in using the wrong “t” in the word *iltifaf* “regard” or “favor.” Among other

1589. AN, III, 862. “On this day [24 November 1589] the Khan-Khanan (Bairam’s son ‘Abdu-r-Rahim) produced before the August Presence [Akbar] the Memoirs of Firdus Makam (Babur) which he had rendered into Persian out of Turku...”

⁸⁶ Reuben Levy ed., *The Nasihat-Ndama known as Qabus Mama of Kai Kaus b. Iskandar b. Qabus Washmgir* (London: Luzac, 1951). See also the example of the oldest Turkic example of the “mirror for princes” genre, the late eleventh century work *Kutadgu Bilig*, which is similarly organized into thematic chapters. See Robert Dankoff ed. and trans., *ffWom of Royal Glory (Kutadgu Bilig) A Turko-Islamic Mirror for Princes* by Yusuf Khass Hajib (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1983).

⁸⁷ See BN-M, f. 111a for one example, discussed below chapter 2.

⁸⁸ BN-M, f. 185b. A point he makes again a few pages later about his despised enemy Shibani Khan. BN-M, f. 206a.

things it is a reminder of how difficult it must have been to have been the son of a successful and hectoring, perfectionist father. Babur's more conventional kingly advice included his reaction to Humayun's apparent desire to be alone. "Solitude," he writes, "is a vice in kingship." To drive home this point he quotes a line from the thirteenth century Iranian poet Sa'di, whose two works, the *Gulistan* and *Bustan*, were for Babur as they are today for Persian speakers, an inexhaustible source of aphorisms. In this case:

اگر پای بندی رضا پیش گیر و کر یکسواری سر خوش گیر

If your feet are fettered, learn to be content.

But if you are a lone horseman, follow your own way.

Babur then concludes with yet another hoary observation, "Solitude is not consistent with kingship."⁸⁹

Kingship was obviously Babur's first, last and perennial concern, but it is his ability to give an affecting human portrait of the man who would be and finally was king, that has endeared him to generations of readers. Both Ibn Buluggm and Usamah are able to convey some aspects of their emotional lives, but they still remain largely one-dimensional figures who are describing their careers at maturity, although each gives some impression of the psychological effects of old age. Babur's remarkable achievement is his ability to draw readers into his life almost as if he were the affecting character of a compelling novel. Writing in the first person explains only a little about Babur's ability to engage even the novelist E. M. Forster, and this usage does not distinguish him from his predecessors. Indeed, he may use the first person, singular and plural, less often than Ibn Buluggm or Usamah. Often he chooses to use the third person passive voice, although sometimes he seems to do so as a way of avoiding responsibility or distancing himself from some action. The fundamental reason why Babur is so much more dramatically effective than any previous Muslim autobiographer is that he is also able to give a convincing portrait of himself as an individual who changes as he matures—from an insecure young man through maturity and then to reflective and melancholy old age. His account is especially sympathetic because of the individualized way he has of describing recognizable human emotions as he recounts the crises and triumphs of his tumultuous life.

⁸⁹ BN-M, f. 349a.

These changes seem to parallel the three major phases of Babur's political career in Mawarannahr, Kabul and India, an impression that reinforces the dramatic impact of his *Vaqai*. It is not that Babur himself explicitly discusses his life in this way; once again it is his narrative that implicitly creates this impression. Just his description of military defeats caused by inexperience contributes to this feeling. More compelling than these incidents, though, are the times when he interrupts his bewilderingly detailed descriptions of military campaigns to recall emotional upheavals triggered by political or psychological crises. He records the first such instance when describing his feelings in March 1498, after learning that his enemies had just occupied his home fortress of Andijan and executed his childhood religious tutor, Khwajah Maulana Qazi. Writing of himself as a young man of sixteen he says of his reaction: "Since I had known myself, I never knew such pain and grief," and concludes, "It was very hard on me, I wept uncontrollably."⁹⁰

Shortly after recounting this wrenching event Babur reinforces the impression he has created of a struggling, emotionally uncertain young man when he describes another emotional upheaval that happened just slightly over a year later. In the course of recounting the confusing events that allowed him to retake Andijan in June/July 1499 and to enjoy a moment's respite from campaigning, he recalls developing what he calls a "strange" or "extraordinary" affection for a boy in the *ordu bazari*, the "camp bazar." Despite the fact that just a short time earlier he had consummated an arranged marriage with one of his Timurid cousins, Babur says that before seeing this boy, whose name, he reports, fortuitously happened to be Baburi, "I had not felt affection for anyone. Indeed, I knew nothing of affection or love even from report."⁹¹ What follows is an lengthy, vivid recollection in which Babur dwells on his debilitating infatuation for this boy in highly emotive language. Even though Babur's particular language may have been at least partly derived from Arabo-Persian literary models, his depiction of his anti-social self-absorption rings true even after five centuries. Due to my "overwhelming passion," Babur writes, "I wandered shoeless and bareheaded through street and lane...neither respecting friends or strangers nor caring for myself or others."⁹²

⁹⁰ BN-M, fs. 54a-b.

⁹¹ BN-M, f. 75b.

⁹² BN-M, f. 76a. See below chapter II for an account of this incident.

Babur's portrayal of his adolescent emotional turmoil powerfully communicates a sense of self, an individuality, that is rarely encountered in pre-colonial Islamic literature or indeed in most oral or literary traditions prior to the eighteenth century. By powerfully depicting his emotions, which in Islamic sources are usually described generically or, more usually, are filtered through the socially respectable medium of poetry, Babur imbues his text with a seemingly modern presence that Forster, Roux and others have been quick to detect.⁹³ In these passages he resembles some of the autobiographers of the late eighteenth and early nineteenth century who participated in the broader literary movement of European Romanticism and vigorously asserted the "claims of the subjective self."⁹⁴ One of the reasons why Babur seems so spiritually close to European autobiographers of this era is his unashamed revelation of his own feelings, as when he describes his reaction to the accidental death of a close Mongol friend in 1502. His death "made a strong impression on me," Babur writes, "Rarely have I been so affected by a person's death. I wept continuously for a week or ten days."⁹⁵

Babur so persuasively conveys a sense of his humanity because he shows himself to be reacting with universally recognizable emotions to the particular crises of his youth—his depression after early military disasters, the confused, turbulent feelings of adolescent love, and the profound sense of loss that follows the death of a close friend. On several other occasions Babur draws readers into his emotional life, reinforcing the "autobiographical pact" he has so effectively concluded with them—ensuring their loyalty by playing on their sympathy.⁹⁶ One of the most poignant of all these passages is the one near the beginning of the Kabul section where he

⁹³ As Dwight Reynolds writes about the use of poetry to express emotion in Arabic autobiographies, "Poetry communicated ideas in a 'marked' discourse separate from prose. it could also be used...to express deeply felt emotions: love, grief, loneliness, anger, yearning. All these were themes more often expressed in poetry than in prose." Dwight Reynolds ed., *Interpreting the Self, Autobiography in the Arabic Literary Tradition* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 2001), 94.

⁹⁴ Pascal, *Design and Truth in Autobiography*, 51.

⁹⁵ BN-M, f. 98b.

⁹⁶ The term is borrowed from Philippe Lejeune, *On Autobiography*, although it is used in a somewhat different sense here. See especially Chapter I: "The Autobiographical Pact."

describes his mother's death and perhaps because of the nature of the event, it seems to mark a transition in his emotional life. At least it marks a transition in the text, for Babur never again describes his emotions so openly in the *Vaqai* although later he frequently uses verse for this purpose.

Writing about events in June 1505, less than a year after he had fled from Ferghanah and occupied Kabul, Babur describes how his mother, Qutlugh Nigar Khanim, fell ill with fever. While he doesn't often allude to his emotional ties with his family in the *Vaqai* this passage gives some idea of the personal affection that transcended the self-interested considerations of dynastic legitimacy and political alliances, usually the only aspect of kinship relations alluded to in traditional historical sources. After his mother was bled to no effect an Iranian *tabib* or physician, appropriately named Sayyid Tabib, prescribed a traditional Khurasan! cure, watermelon. This too failed and Babur's mother died six days later.⁹⁷ During the forty-day period of mourning that followed Babur learned that his grandmother and trusted counselor, Isen Devlat Begim, and a Mongol uncle had also died a short time before. Then just as the mourning period neared an end it was resumed when Shah Begim, a wife of his maternal grandfather, Yunas Khan, and one of Yunas Khan's daughters, Mihrnigar Khanim, arrived from Khurasan. "Lamentations began anew," writes Babur, "The grief [caused by] these losses was immeasurable."⁹⁸

Unfortunately, the fragmentary state of the Kabul section leaves readers uncertain if Babur's psychological response to political and personal crises of this period differed significantly from that of his youthful Ferghanah years. More than two-thirds of the text that

⁹⁷ However touchingly archaic the use of melons may appear from the twentieth century perspective, this treatment does reflect the prestige of melons from Khurasan, the region now included in northeastern Iran and western Afghanistan. Once in the later history of relations between the Timurid-Mughuls and the Safavids, a Safavid export ban on these melons became a *casus belli* between the two empires. Stephen Frederic Dale, *Indian Merchants and Eurasian Trade, 1600-1750* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1994), 22 and n. 32. Melons, of course, provided water and sugar, so they may actually have done patients some limited good.

⁹⁸ BN-M, fs. 156b-157a. Many of Babur's female relatives have names ending in what might be called affectionate titles and grammatically are Turk! possessives. Thus, *begim* is "my beg," and *khanim* "my khan." The latter is the origin of the Iranian *khanum* or "lady," which, as in the Turcol-Mongol usage, comes after the name. See BN-A, "Begim," pp. 587-89.

covers the years between 1504 and 1526 is missing, most pages probably lost when Babur's son Humayun was driven from India by resurgent Afghan forces in 1540. These lost sections would have included his account of the last great political debacle of his life, his brief reconquest of Samarqand in 1511 with help from Safavid Iran, followed by his expulsion from the city once again by Uzbek forces less than a year later. Some of the extant text appears to be in unrevised diary form, meaning that Babur probably wrote these pages in Kabul and didn't have time to transform it into the more polished narrative that characterizes the Ferghanah section. His entries for 1519, for example, often appear as a series of staccato like notations and might have included later reflections if he had lived to make them.

Yet even given the incomplete state of the Kabul section readers are still left with the impression of man who has matured in both personal and political ways. Babur partly suggests this just by the events he chooses to discuss for the years 1505 and 1506. Within a year of his mother's and grandmother's death Babur writes that he assumed the title of *padshah*, the Iranian imperial title that in his memoirs he anachronistically assigns himself when he describes his inheritance of his father's kingdom in 1494. Then immediately following this passage he mentions that his first son, Humayun, was born on 6 March 1506.⁹⁹ Whether or not Babur assumed the title before his son was born is not clear, but just his narration of these important events show this to have been a transitional year in his young life, following almost immediately upon his acquisition of Kabul and the death of his mother and grandmother. In his surviving narrative of the Kabul years the adolescent emotional traumas in Ferghanah now also give way to allusions to a series of marriages and births of children. He is married a second time in 1507, and a second son is born to him in 1519. In narrating these family events Babur seems to mark his transition to adulthood. He also remembers he had matured as a military strategist during these years, for when he describes the victorious conclusion of his attack on Qandahar in 1507 he writes in a self-congratulatory passage, which is also a model of the autobiographer's egotistical art, "I prepared an excellent battle order. Never before had I arranged things so well."¹⁰⁰ Whether or not he ever tried to reconcile this

⁹⁹ Both events are described in fs. 215a-b.

¹⁰⁰ BN-M, f. 209a.

statement with an explanation for his last defeat by Uzbeks five years later in 1512 will never be known.

The reader's sense that during his Kabul years Babur had both matured and relaxed stems partly from his willingness to drink wine and the uninhibited delight he expresses when describing the camaraderie of extended drinking bouts with his companions. Such scenes are nowhere present in his narrative of the Ferghanah decade from 1494 to 1504. Probably this is due to the fact that during his early life in Ferghanah he had steadfastly observed the Quranic injunctions against alcohol taught him by his childhood religious tutor and political advisor, Khwajah Maulana Qazi, the man whose murder caused him such grief in 1498. While on a visit to Harat from Kabul in December 1506, he was tempted to drink wine by his urbane cousins, who still held sway in this, the sophisticated cultural capital of the late Timurid world. Complex questions of etiquette and social precedence inhibited Babur from drinking wine at this time, but sometime after this visit he started to take wine as well as the drugged confection, *majun*. In another part of the text he explicitly mentions drinking Bukhara wines during his last, brief occupation of Samarqand in 1511-12. In any case, when his narrative resumes in 1519 after a ten-year gap he seems like a man transformed, enjoying life as a Timurid *primus inter pares* among longtime Turco-Mongol aristocratic companions in a seemingly never ending series of drinking parties. It is evident from his later narrative in the Indian section that Babur looked back to this period as his personal golden age, bracketed by the emotional and political instability of his youth and the bittersweet triumphs of his Indian years.

Babur's account of the moveable feasts that dominate his narrative for 1519 and 1520, when the narrative again breaks off for five years, also serves him as a second act for what becomes in the third section of the *Vaqai* and in his poetry, a dramatic account of military triumph that is eventually trumped by illness, nostalgia and a concern for spiritual redemption. Whatever uncertainties linger about his personal development during the poorly documented Kabul years they now give way to the compelling immediacy of the Indian section of the text that Babur wrote between 1526 and 1529. This is supplemented by a *diwan* or collection of poems Babur wrote between 1526 and 1528 that collectively represents some of

the most openly autobiographical verse that is found in the Turk! or Persian poetry of the period. Indeed, Babur's feelings are more obviously on display in the verse he wrote in India than in the prose text. However, in both prose and poetry Babur communicates a convincing self-portrait of an aging monarch whose emotional life differed markedly from his days in Ferghanah or Kabul. His account of this period is also supplemented by the autobiographical memoir of his daughter, Gulbadan Begim, whose account of Babur's last months add a touching denouement to Babur's own writings.¹⁰¹

It is precisely in Babur's description of his illness and nostalgia for the good old days in Kabul, contrasted by accounts of his remorse for religious transgressions of that earlier life, that he powerfully paints a self-portrait of a man entering the last stage of his life. As in earlier sections Babur spends most of his narrative energy in the Indian section describing the political situation and the seemingly never-ending military campaigns that were necessary to consolidate his hold over north India and the Gangetic valley. Fairly early in the last pages he scatters hints of his mortality, something he must have felt acutely as he wrote in India where he so often fell seriously ill. Illnesses that earlier in the narrative lasted for a few days now sometimes stretch on for weeks, undefined stomach ailments of the kind that make any longtime resident of India cringe in sympathy and possible recognition. In the *Vaqai* he briefly describes his symptoms, reserving poetry for emotive renditions of his fever and sleepless nights. It is poetry too that he turns to when he tries to describe his sense of loss and loneliness at a time when his sons and many of his closest companions were in Afghanistan, where they had fled after Babur's initial victories because they could not adjust to India's climate. It is most of all in poetry that Babur expresses his sense of regret for his religious failings, where in the autobiographical mold of St. Augustine and other authors of spiritual quests, he constructs a dramatic contrast between his self-indulgent former self and a regretful, more pious maturity.

¹⁰¹ Gulbadan Begim, *The History of Humayun (Humayun-Namd)* .

The Power of Language and the Truth of Detail

The inherent drama and carefully structured presentation of his political and personal life give Babur's writings much of the dramatic literary structure that distinguishes his autobiographical presentation from earlier Islamic autobiographies. Nevertheless, his ability to make his account so compelling is also due to the relative simplicity and specificity of his writing. It is important, of course, that like Ibn Buluggm and Usamah Babur wrote in the first person, as he does when he opens the Ferghanah section, although he doesn't maintain that voice throughout the text.¹⁰² Yet whatever voice he uses he never abdicates the narrative center stage, and speaks of himself in the first person just as often at the end of the work as at the beginning. Writing about events of June 1529, about a year and a half before he died, he remarks in the first person in one of his characteristically engaging asides, about his love for the wonderful fruit he recalled from his days in Mawarannahr and Afghanistan. He reports that he had been able to grow quite decent grapes in his newly constructed *Hasht Bihisht* or "Eight Paradises" garden in Agra, which along with newly cultivated Afghan melons had given him great pleasure.¹⁰³

Babur's voice can be heard so clearly in the *Vaqai* because he writes in a relatively simple style. His style is simple, that is, when compared to the complex prose favored by most Perso-Islamic court historians, a kind of writing that often obliterates both meaning or individuality with elaborate metaphorical narratives of stereotypical behavior. In the words of E. E. Bertels, the prominent Soviet scholar of Timurid-era Persian and Turki literature, fifteenth century prose was "adorned with rhyme, overflowing with the most complex images and comparisons, sometimes obscuring the thought so much that phrases had to be re-read several times until its thought became clear."¹⁰⁴ Two Timurid-era historians who produced widely admired works in this baroque style were Sharaf al-Dm 'Ali Yazdi, the author of the *fafar namah* or *Book of Victory*, one of the two works by this title on Timur's life and one which Babur

¹⁰² See Annette Beveridge's interesting discussion of Babur's use of pronouns. BN-B, lix-lx.

¹⁰³ BN-M, f 380b.

¹⁰⁴ Evgenii Eduardovich Bertels, *Izbrannye Trudy, Navoi i Dzhami* (Moscow: "Nauka," 1965), 45.

had read, and Khwandamir, the Harat historian who joined Babur's nascent court in India in 1528.

Yazdi's notoriously baroque prose was taken as a model for historical writing by none other than Babur's young Mongol cousin, Haydar Mirza Dughlat, and by many later Iranian historians who also affected his high literary style. In fact, Haydar Mirza, himself a member of the Turco-Mongol military class, apologized with engaging naivete for his inability to write a proper preface to his partly autobiographical history of the Mongols, and so instead simply copied the Prolegomena of Yazdi's history.¹⁰⁵ Written by men who had usually received a religious and literary education, works such as Yazdi's were often made more difficult for Turco-Mongol aristocrats by the profligate use of Arabic vocabulary. Khwandamir's massive history, the *Habib al-siyar*, typifies this practice. In many sections the work is a Persian-language history only in terms of its grammar and the use of Persian verbs, prepositions and pronouns; the vocabulary is predominantly Arabic.

Babur's own Turki prose is hardly the simple spoken language of the Ferghanah countryside, but a more complex language acquired over his entire lifetime. It is full of Persian constructions and vocabulary. He typically, for example, uses series of paired adjectives or multiple synonyms that Iranian writers favored for descriptions and human characterizations. The quality of his prose also varies. It is more polished in the *Vaqai*\ Ferghanah section, while many of the Kabul and Indian pages resemble diary entries. Nonetheless, Babur's writing as a whole is still atypically direct, precise and detailed when measured by the style of Perso-Islamic historians or by the Turki writers who emulated them. A sense of the difference between these contrasting styles is obvious when comparing Babur's and Khwandamir's narrative, an especially telling comparison as Khwandamir used Babur's work to revise parts of the *Habib al-siyar*. When, for example, Babur describes how he reacted to the desertion of most of his men in 1498, he writes: "It was very hard on me; I wept uncontrollably."¹⁰⁶ In court histories emperors were not known to cry, even when only sixteen

¹⁰⁵ Mirza Haydar Dughlat, *Tarikh-i-Rashidi* Persian text edited by W. M. Thackston, 4-5.

¹⁰⁶ BN-M, f. 55b.

years old, and Khwandamir relying on Babur's original, describes this same episode by reporting: "When this untoward news [of the defections] reached the presence of the highly esteemed *padshah* he was saddened at the discord of the perfidious times...."¹⁰⁷ Each statement is correct, but Babur's is succinct, personal and emotive, while Khwandamir's elaborate language masks the reality of human emotion by rendering it generically as a respectable royal response.

The contrast between Khwandamir's language and Babur's, the Arabicized, stylized and impersonal quality of the first as compared with the more idiomatic, particular and individualized Turki of the other, has many literary parallels with similar effects. One such example can be found in the contrasting styles of aristocratic women and men in medieval or Heian Japan. Japanese autobiographical diaries written by women during the ninth to twelfth centuries were composed in the elegant but colloquial patois of the aristocracy. The startling "freshness and immediacy" of these diaries and their accessibility for modern readers, is contrasted with the character of the formal Chinese that male aristocrats and officials had to master to write government documents and formal narrative histories.¹⁰⁸ Like Khwandamir writing highly Arabicized Persian in the oblique, metaphorical idiom of traditional Iranian historiography, male Japanese writers expressed themselves in the highly stylized, formal language of classical Chinese. Women were not constrained by the use of this court language; they were discouraged from learning it. Men, in contrast, were expected to express themselves in this prestigious lingua franca, with the result that they produced little of enduring humanistic value.¹⁰⁹

It seems likely that Babur's choice of language was at least partly a conscious decision, although it may also have been partly due to two other factors: his inability to write high literary prose and the natural preference of a man of affairs for lucid language. After all as Haydar Mirza makes clear it took special training to make the

¹⁰⁷ Khwandamir, *Habib al-siyar* IV, 261.

¹⁰⁸ Wu, *The Confucian's Progress*, 13-14.

¹⁰⁹ *Ibid.*, 13-14. The literary value of these formal, classical texts must, of course, be considered in the context of their times. Some may have been masterpieces of classical Chinese composition, whatever their value for human understanding.

personal impersonal, the direct indirect and the simple metaphorical. Like Ibn Buluggm, Babur seems to have recognized that ornate language led to the death of meaning. Thus Ibn Buluggm writes in his introduction that “you will perceive that should the author of this book aim at producing high-sounding words and rhymed phrases, the sense would be adversely affected.”¹¹⁰ Babur says something similar in his 1528 letter of advice to Humayun that includes, among other irritating fatherly observations, a critique of his son’s prose. He sarcastically criticizes the opaque style of Humayun’s letters by comparing it to a *muamtna*, an enigma, a genre of poetic puzzles much favored by Timurid poets of the later fifteenth century. “Whoever,” writes Babur, “saw an enigma in prose.”

You have written these letters of yours as I instructed. [Yet] you have not read [them], for if you had read [them] you would know it is impossible to understand [them] and being unable to understand you would have to alter [them]. One can read your letters with difficulty, but they are very obscure. No one has ever seen a prose enigma. Your spelling is not bad, although it is not very precise.... If one makes every effort your letters are readable, but the obscurity of your terminology is such that the meaning cannot be entirely grasped. Your laziness as a correspondent is also due to this reason [the effort required to write such prose] Your extravagant style is the reason for the obscurity. From now on write informally, clearly and cleanly. It will be less trouble both to you and to the reader.¹¹¹

It is not merely that Babur’s prose is relatively spare, it is also precise, both in the way he uses language and in the detail of his descriptions. A case in point of the ways he uses Turk! is the opening section of the Ferghanah gazetteer, which immediately follows his opening line about inheriting the province in his twelfth year. “Ferghanah,” he writes:

Is [located] in the fifth climatic zone. It is situated on the edge of settled or cultivated [civilized] world. On its east is Kashgar; its west, Samarqand, its south, the mountains of the Badakhshan border. On its north while there were reportedly cities such as Almaligh and

¹¹⁰ Tibi ed., *The Tibyan*, 34.

¹¹¹ BN-M, fs. 349a-b. For an exceptionally lucid discussion of the *muamma* genre see Paul E. Losensky, *Welcoming Figham, Imitation and Poetic Individuality in the Safavid-Mughal Ghazal* (Costa Mesa, Ca.: Mazda, 1998), 154-64.

Almati and Yangi, which in the history books they write as Utrar, they are now destroyed and utterly devastated on account of the Mongols and Uzbeks.¹¹²

What is particularly interesting about this geography is that Babur carefully uses the Turk! particle, *ekan dur* when discussing the cities in Ferghanah that had been destroyed. This particle conveys the idea that the narrator has not personally seen something or experienced an event, just as Babur had never visited the region of these three cities. He is careful to use either this particle or the Turk! reported past tense to similar effect throughout the *Vaqai*.

Beyond this careful use of language is the remarkable attention he gives to physical descriptions of the natural world and his characterizations of people he knew. He includes some of his finest descriptions of nature in pages of his Indian gazetteer written in 1528. Typical of these is his precise account of the date palm, which is also interesting as evidence that in some parts of the *Vaqai* Babur is addressing not just his sons but the literate Turk! speakers of Mawarannahr. In introducing this tree Babur remarks that it is not peculiar to Hindustan, but that he will describe it because it is not found in those *vildyatlar*, those provinces or countries. As Babur specifically mentions that dates were grown in Lamghan (now Laghman), a dependent district of Kabul located just east-northeast of the city, he is presumably not using *vilayatlar* to refer to the districts in and around the Afghan capital. Writing of the Indian date palm Babur says with typical care:

The branches at the top of the tree are exactly in one place. The leaves of the branches extend outward from a single stem on two sides. Its trunk is rough and ill-colored. Its fruit is like a cluster of grapes [but] much bigger than a cluster of grapes. They say that among plants the date-palm tree resembles animals in two ways. One is, that just as if animals heads are cut off they expire; if the top of a date-palm tree will be cut off, the tree will wither. Then one [other] is that just with an animal no offspring will be produced without a male, so also if a branch of the male tree is not brought to the date-palm tree, it will not produce well. The truth of these words is not known.¹¹³

¹¹² BN-M, f. 1a.

¹¹³ BN-M, fs. 284b-285a.

Equally compelling in their extraordinary detail and color are Babur's descriptions and characterizations of various individuals, such as his portrait of one of his Timurid uncles, Sultan Mahmud Mirza, who in appearance was "squat, with a sparse beard, fat and rather ugly," a description that suggests an almost classic Turco-Mongol physical type, albeit one here in self-indulgent old age. Babur goes on to give a fairly balanced account of this man. In fact, it is a remarkably even-handed characterization of a person whom he obviously found distasteful. It is a description that also serves as a helpful reminder of some common characteristics that link the Timurid ruling class in the late fifteenth century with Ibn Buluggin and Usamah in the preceding centuries. Here we have public piety coexisting with the massive self-indulgence of an aristocratic warrior who also felt he had a cultural obligation to compose poetry. Curiously Babur begins with a general characterization that he seems later to contradict. He reports that Mahmud Mirza's "Morals and manners were good," by which he may have had in mind that "He never missed his prayers," but criticizes him for speaking slightly of Babur's patron saint, the Naqshbandi sufi *shaykh* or teacher, Khwajah 'Ubaydullah Ahrar. Then he praises his administration while reviling his personal habits, always carefully indicating when he knew something only by report.

His administration and discipline were very good. Within his province not one dirhem or one dinar was spent without his knowledge. He never ignored his *naukar's* allowances. His gatherings, gifts, and table and court were very good. Everything was done according to rule and regulation. Neither soldier nor peasant was ever allowed to oppose any arrangement or plan which he made.

Apparently he previously rode hard to the hunt; in later times he hunted with falcons. He was addicted to cruelty and debauchery. He continuously drank wine. He kept many catamites, and in his realm if there was a handsome beardless boy, he did everything possible to bring [him] and make [him] a catamite....His sons all died young from cruelty and infamous debauchery.

Sultan Mahmud Mirza had a poetic temperament and compiled a *diwan*, but his poetry was very feeble and insipid. To compose such poetry, it would have been better not to have composed [at all]. He was a untrustworthy person [and] was disdainful of Khwajah "Ubaydullah [Ahrar, the Naqshbandi sufi shaykh]. He was a heartless person and shameless. Around him he had many buffoons and shameless [people] who performed lewd, indecent acts right in the

diwan in the open... He was poorly spoken and it was difficult to understand his speech immediately.¹¹⁴

One of many character sketches that distinguish the Ferghanah section, this illustrates Babur's taste for the kind of exquisite detail, which when applied to individuals, produces compelling portraiture that resembles Tolstoy's talent for acute characterization. That is, Babur has a novelist's eye for telling detail similar to the ability that Isaiah Berlin notes in the Russian novelist, whom he praises as a "genius... for marvelously accurate reproduction of the irreproducible, the almost miraculous evocation of the full, untranslatable individuality of the individual."¹¹⁵ Unfortunately, as is so commonly true of autobiographers, Babur never appraised himself with the same caustic frankness he brings to character sketches of even his closest relatives.

Finally, Babur not only fills the *Vaqai'* with these remarkable descriptions, but the readers' sense that they are listening to a man with an exceptionally precise mind is reinforced by his penchant for precise calculation and quantification. He displays this characteristic on many occasions, especially of course when counting troops or enumerating resources. One of the most piquant examples of this is his careful discussion of the Indian calendar and the Hindu method of keeping time. In the *vilayatlar* or provinces, that is to say his homeland, Babur says that there were four *fash* or seasons, but in Hindustan there were only three: summer, monsoon and winter. He explains that these seasons are based on lunar months, thereby requiring adjustments or the periodic addition of intercalary months. This was done, he writes, by sequentially adding an extra month to the calendar every three years, first to the monsoon season, next to the winter season, then to the summer season. Then after giving the Indian names for the months and identifying them with zodiacal signs, Babur lists the days of the week, followed by his exquisitely minute account of Indian divisions of time.

Clearly using his homeland of Mawarannahr as the standard for comparison, Babur prefaces his explanation by saying that in "our place" the Turki concept of day and night or *kichagunduz*, is divided into twenty-four parts. Each of these is called by the Arabic term

¹¹⁴ BN-M, fs. 25b-26a.

¹¹⁵ Isaiah Berlin, *The Hedgehog and the Fox* (New York, N.Y.: Simon and Schuster, 1953), 41.

saat or hour, which is in turn divided into the Arabic *daqḥḥah* or minute. Having said this he launches into one of his engagingly arcane calculations, illustrating how he delighted in such mental exercises for their own sake. Thus he remarks that since it took a minute to pronounce the *fatihah*, the short opening *surah* or chapter of the Quran, together with the *bismillah*, the common invocation of God's name, these verses could be recited 8,640 times in a twenty-four hour period. Following this aside he goes on to describe how Indians divide up the day. "The Hind Hi," the Indian people," he writes, divide the [Turk!] *kichagiindiiz* into sixty parts known as *qany* with both night and day divided into four parts called *pahars* or "watches." Babur then explains how time was actually announced in urban areas. "For this business of keeping time," he reports, "a group of men called *gariydlis* are appointed in all major cities." As he further explains, these men were given two instruments for keeping time, a thick brass disk hanging on a cord, and a drinking vessel with a hole in the bottom that when placed in water took an hour to fill. Each time the vessel filled the *gariydlis* struck the brass disk, once for the first hour of the watch, twice for the second, etc.

After describing this operation Babur writes that he had improved the system by having the *gariyals* strike the appropriate number of times for the watch, just after striking the hour, so that during the night people would confuse one watch for another. "This was excellent," he says in one of his many self-congratulatory asides, and concludes with a demonstration paralleling his Islamic verbal measure of the minute by observing that the duration of the subdivision of the *qari*, known as the *pal*, equaled the time it took to open and shut one's eyes sixty times. This meant, he calculated, that in a *kichagiinduz* or twenty-four hour period, a person could open or shut his eyes 216,000 times. Or in Islamic terms the *pal* equaled the time it took to say both the Quranic phrase *qul-huwa* "UahZ)" "Say He is God," and the *bismillah* invocation eight times, meaning you could say them both 28,800 times in a full day.¹¹⁶

On other occasions Babur displays his taste for quantification in more trivial but more engaging matters, as when in Samarqand in 1497 he determines the circumference of the city walls by ordering

¹¹⁶ BN-M, fs. 289a-b. The phrase *qul-huwa-llahi* opens the 112th sura of the Quran.

that they be paced off—10,700 paces.¹¹⁷ Later in the Kabul gazetteer he describes the Ghurband *tuman* or district and remarks on the number of flowers in the foothills. He says that he counted them and discovered there thirty-two or thirty-three unique varieties.¹¹⁸ Or while on campaign in India he reports swimming across the Ganges, and notes that he counted that it took him thirty-three strokes to cross the river.¹¹⁹ Yet whether applied to troops, revenue, time or flowers his penchant for recording these discussions reflects an intelligent, precise mind at work.

“Design and Truth in Autobiography”

Every characteristic that distinguishes the *Vaqai* from its predecessors helps to explain why it has nearly always been taken at face value and seen as a text that may be accepted on its author's own terms. The symmetry of its tripartite construction, the persuasive evocation of emotion, the direct and precise use of language, the compelling detail of its descriptions; all these traits have understandably left readers dazzled amidst dry court histories. Then there is Babur's own repeated assertion that in writing he is telling the truth, whether about his interpretations of events or analyses of motivation and character. Such statements are the perennial claim and signature characteristic of nearly every autobiographer. Cellini makes similar statements in the *Vita*, although usually about art rather than politics.¹²⁰ Babur insists that he is truthful principally when he wants to bolster his claims that his accomplishments exceeded those of every other Timurid. When he does so the self-promoting autobiographical nature of the text is most evident.

When, for example, Babur describes how he captured Timur's

¹¹⁷ BN-M, f. 44b.

¹¹⁸ BN-M, f. 136a.

¹¹⁹ BN-M, f. 363b.

¹²⁰ Cellini begins his life by remarking: “All men of whatsoever quality they may be, who have done anything of excellence, ought, if they be persons of truth or honesty, to describe their lives with their own hands.” Symonds, *The Life of Benvenuto Cellini*, 1. Towards the end of his autobiography Cellini does remark “If I did not confess that in some of these episodes I acted wrongly, the world might think I was not telling the truth in those in which I say I acted rightly,” 299. He then admits to a minor transgression but this is the only time he makes such an admission or criticizes himself.

capital Samarqand from the Uzbeks in 1500, he compares his achievement to the capture of the Timurid cultural capital of Harat thirty years earlier by Sultan Husayn Bayqara, whom he recognizes as the greatest Timurid of the late fifteenth century. After demonstrating in a step-by-step comparison that his achievement far surpassed that of his illustrious older relative, Babur concludes by writing: "No criticism of people is intended from these words. This statement was accurate as given above. I do not intend to aggrandise myself by writing this. What was written was the truth."¹²¹ Babur may indeed have been truthful, but he was, of course, glorifying himself. He makes a similar statement later in the narrative when describing what he regarded as a betrayal of himself by his Chingizid relatives in Kabul in 1507. "It is the truth that is written," Babur asserts, "...What is being documented truly happened."¹²²

Babur's claims to truthfulness raise the central question of autobiographical writing. Is his autobiography a precisely accurate history in which, as he insists, "What is being documented truly happened," or is it as many modern critics suggest really a creative work of fiction. The answer is no more simple for Babur than it is for most other writers, because in the *Vaqai* as in other such works there are many types of autobiographical truths, among others, truths of perspective, truths of emphasis and interpretation, truths of narration, that is inclusion and omission, truths of physical description. Nearly all autobiographers offer self-interested interpretations of their lives and, like Babur, they usually do so from the perspective of old age. When as in Babur's case no contemporary alternative sources exist that are remotely comparable in the quality of writing or the richness of detail it is easy to accept what he says without question. His perspective and selectivity determine what readers think and what they know. When he offers characterizations of individuals his eye for detail and taste for pithy personality sketches delight the reader, but whether he is being fair or not is often impossible to say. His almost universally contemptuous characterization of Afghans is one case in point. Not only does he treat the Afghan tribes in and around Kabul who refused to accept his

¹²¹ BN-M, fs. 85b-86a.

¹²² BN-M, f. 201a.

authority with exceptional brutality, but he excoriates nearly every Afghan with whom he comes into contact. Yet any reader who accepts his comments overlooks the fact that from the time Babur took Kabul in 1504 Afghans, either as tribes in and around Kabul or as members of the Ludi dynasty of Agra and Delhi, were his most persistent antagonists whom he fought to the end of his life. And the Afghans then, as throughout much of their history, had no voice.

Another example is Babur's account in which he expresses irritation with his Timurid cousin Badi^c al-Zaman Mirza for not immediately showing him the respect Babur felt he deserved when he visited Harat in December 1506. As one who had twice captured Samarqand and fought with the Uzbeks, Babur was outraged by Badi^c al-Zaman's grudging welcome. "It was unconscionable," Babur writes, "to delay showing me respect."¹²³ The effect of Babur's narrative and editorial is to engage the readers sympathy. Not only do readers readily accept Babur's point of view but they share his outrage at the way he has been treated. When, therefore, at the conclusion of this passage he remarks that he both demanded and received an apology from his cousin it seems only just. This is a classic autobiographical moment. Babur survived and these men did not. His narrative is the only record; his opinion the only surviving point of view. He immortalizes his dynastic ambition while making his cousin's touchy pride seem nothing but churlish. Even the reader may ask after reading this passage, "How could Badi^c al-Zaman Mirza have acted so ungraciously?" Never mind that Babur's two quixotic occupations of Samarqand in 1497 and 1500 had been unmitigated disasters, not to speak of the fact that his cousin, the heir to Harat, enjoyed far higher status in the Timurid world than did Babur. No one who reads the *Vaqaf* sympathizes with other Timurids because Babur effectively convinces them that only his ambitions are honorable, while those of others are dishonest, illegitimate or just irrelevant.

A further explicit demonstration of how Babur could be self-serving is seen in two instances in which he describes the political role of women in Timurid affairs. First, when he is narrating events in the fall of 1494 less than six months after inheriting his father's

¹²³ BN-M, f. 187a.

appanage in Ferghanah, Babur mentions how his grandmother, Isen Devlat Begim, met his inner circle of advisors to squelch an incipient revolt against Babur's still fragile authority. Commenting on her role Babur remarks: "Among women my grandmother, Isen Devlet Begim, was an exceptional advisor and counselor. She was extremely intelligent and prudent. Most affairs were settled with her advice."¹²⁴ Even if, as he somewhat condescendingly notes, his grandmother was only the best advisor "among women," Babur still openly acknowledges her important role in his early political life. He learned of her death in Kabul in 1505. Yet later in the Ferghanah section he denounces the political role of women in general when he describes his young Timurid cousin's actions that led to the first Uzbek occupation of Samarqand in the spring of 1500.

At the time the city was held by his cousin, Sultan 'All Mirza, with whom Babur had cooperated in 1497 to seize the city from yet another Timurid cousin. After entering the city in October or November of that year Babur had to withdraw in March 1498 when his enemies occupied his home fortress of Andijan and killed Khwajah Maulana Qazi, his religious tutor. Sultan 'All Mirza was left behind with a relatively small force, and in the spring of 1500 as Uzbek troops converged on the city he made some kind of agreement with their leader, Shibam Khan. Actually Babur says that Sultan 'All's mother secretly told Shibam Khan that if he married her, his son would exchange Samarqand for his father's old territory in northern Afghanistan—after the Uzbeks captured that area. Recounting this seemingly improbable tale with his usual convincing detail, Babur says that when Shibam Khan camped outside of Samarqand Sultan 'All Mirza went out to meet him accompanied by only a few men, where he was badly received, foreshadowing his execution four or five days later. Babur then launches into a denunciation of the mother, that "unfortunate stupid woman," for whom, he writes, Shibam cared nothing, "not even thinking of her as a concubine."¹²⁵ Yet he also excoriates poor Sultan 'All Mirza for listening to a woman's advice, remarking, "for paying attention to a woman's words, he sullied his name in the

¹²⁴ BN-M, f. 24b.

¹²⁵ BN-M, f. 80b.

annals of virtuous men.”¹²⁶ Babur must have expected his presumably male readership would nod sagely in agreement with such a homespun truism, while forgetting what he himself had written not many pages earlier about his grandmother.

Finally, an even more important example, because it is often quoted as evidence of Babur’s early but thwarted intention to invade India, is an assertion he makes shortly after describing his victory over the Afghan ruler of Delhi in April 1526. Babur writes as if it had been his intention to conquer India from the first moment he entered Kabul in 1504, saying here in the passive tense:

From 1504/05 when Kabul province was taken until now there was always ambition for Hindustan. [Yet] sometimes owing to the addled opinion of *begs* and sometimes owing to the uncooperativeness of elder and younger brethren an invasion of Hindustan was not possible and its countries remained unconquered.¹²⁷

Transparently self-serving, this statement is contradicted by the evidence of the *Vaqai*. It was only the force of circumstance reinforced by the logic of geography that made Babur reluctantly turn his ambitions from a reconquest of Mawarannahr to a conquest of India. Samarqand not India was his goal when he occupied Kabul in 1504. Kabul was only a temporary refuge until he could reclaim his ancestral homeland, a goal or at least a dream that his descendants in India nurtured until the collapse of the dynasty in the eighteenth century. In his early years in Afghanistan Babur wanted to raid India for supplies, but when in 1511 the Safavid Shah Isma’il defeated and killed Shibani Khan Uzbek the road to Samarqand opened again, and as far as one can tell from his own text, Babur forgot about India for the next four or five years. Taking his family north with him on a march through the Hindu Kush mountains, Babur reoccupied Samarqand with the aid of Safavid troops. If the Uzbek coalition had not defeated him once again he would certainly have reconstituted a Timurid state on Timur’s urban, Central Asian foundations. Yet, even after this defeat in 1512 he still did not immediately return to Kabul to prepare for an Indian invasion but instead remained in northern Afghanistan for at least another two years, apparently hoping against hope for a new opportunity to reoccupy his homeland.

¹²⁶ Ibid., f. 80b.

¹²⁷ Ibid., f. 269a.

These passages remind readers of the significance of identifying the *Vaqai* as an autobiography. Knowing this, no one can accept the text as a source that can be simply mined for its “facts,” whether these are descriptions of political events or attributions of individual motivations. Babur’s work is distinguished by a high degree of precision, which indeed in the case of his descriptions of the natural world can sometimes be verified by later comparison. Yet, he is still an autobiographer and autobiographies usually contain not only self-promotion but “discrimination and selection in the face of the endless complexity of life, selection of facts, distribution of emphases, choice of expression.” Here too the *Vaqai* exemplifies a characteristic of the autobiographical genre as “a ceaseless process of identity formation in which new versions of the past evolve to meet the constantly changing requirements of the self in each successive present.”¹²⁸ In Babur’s case this modification of the past is most obvious when he inserts into the text a sense of piety and spiritual remorse that he experienced in his last years in India. However, one of the most valuable aspects of the *Vaqai* is that its unfinished state makes it possible to see Babur’s autobiographical mind at work more clearly than if he had enjoyed the leisure to produce a really polished text, free of internal inconsistencies. Given another ten years of life he might have polished out the traits of the work that enliven it with the recognizable peculiarity, complexity and uncertainty of real life, and made it resemble the formulaic products of the professional literate elite such as Khwandamir’s, *Habib al-siyar*.

What follows is a skeptical reading of the *Vaqai* and Babur’s poetry in an effort to understand his life, reconstruct his world and ultimately explain his climactic conquest. Skepticism in this case does not imply, however, the intellectual nihilism of the modern literary critic who rejects the possibility of discovering truth or discerning reality in any text, including the truth of the author’s intention. Whatever else may be ambiguous in Babur’s writings, his sense of himself and the magnitude of his achievement is unmistakable. “Everyone who reads these Events will know,” he writes in one of his late poems, “What grief and what sorrow and what difficulties I have seen.” Beyond that the implicit evidence of the text, what

¹²⁸ Eakin, *Fictions in Autobiography*, 36.

Marc Bloch would call its “unintentional” evidence, not only offers a convincing portrait of Babur’s own particular Timurid mentalite, but the single most realistic record of war and politics in the pre modern Islamic world.

One of the single most compelling aspects of this verbal landscape is that Babur populates it with such authentic individuals as his Timurid uncle, Mahmud Mirza. Absent are the depersonalized stereotypes of typical Islamic narrative texts and common Western perception. If nothing else this biography may at least remind readers that in his appreciation for precise and revealing detail Babur resembles certain Italian Renaissance authors, not merely because he composed an autobiography, but because of his “appreciation of the concrete, the specific and the unique” in people and in nature. In this respect the founder of the Timurid renaissance of South Asia exhibits a cultural attitude and literary taste that at this period is typically associated in western minds solely with the “social and intellectual climate of Renaissance Florence.”¹²⁹ One conclusion that emerges from reading the *Vaqaz* is that however distant geographically, the men and women of Florence and Samarqand resembled each other in fundamentally important ways.

¹²⁹ Gene Brucker, *Renaissance Florence* (Berkeley, Ca.: University of California Press, repr. 1983), 222. Brucker is summarizing the opinion of Paul Oskar Kristeller in his work, *Renaissance Thought: the Classic, Scholastic and Humanist Strains* (New York, N.Y.: Harper 1961).

CHAPTER TWO

THE TIMURID DENOUEMENT IN MAWARANNAHR

His pearl-like nature was a station for the marks of greatness and sublimity; freedom and detachment together with lofty restraint and majestic power flashed forth in his nature; in asceticism and absorption (*Jaqr u fana*) a Jum'd [sic] and Bayazid; while the magnificence and genius of an Alexander and of a Faridun shone from his brow.

Abud Fazl "Allami writing of Babur in the late sixteenth century.¹

True to their dynastic bias Timurid-Mughul court historians portray Babur as a mythical leader, a man with the prescience of Solomon and the military genius of Alexander. Babur, however, implicitly depicts himself as a flawed if often heroic individual, a man with little political foresight and questionable military skills. Instead of describing his career as an ascending arc of preordained triumphs foretold by supernatural signs, a common motif of court historians, he characterizes his political life as a succession of unpredictable cycles of disasters and triumphs. Writing in the relative calm of Agra after his victories in north India in 1526 and 1527, he reflects that four or five times in his career he had suddenly gone from "hardship to rest and difficulties to repose."² Elsewhere he describes these cycles as an alternation between *fatrat*, a powerless interregnum, and *fursat*, leisure.³ In both instances he conveys profound shifts in his political fortunes, contrasting periods of defeat, exile and powerlessness with those of victory, status and power. In more specifically political terms Babur characterizes the extremes of these cycles as *qazaqtiq*, the status of a political vaga-

¹ AN, I, 223-24 and n. 4. Babur, that is, was a great Muslim mystic and a quasi-mythological emperor. Faridun was one of the mythological monarchs of Iran. Both Jum'd i.e. Junayd, and Bayazid were members of the Naqshbandi sufi order into which Babur also was born. The order is discussed below, chapter 3.

² BN-M, f. 96a.

³ Babur first uses *fatrat* in this way in fs. 8b and 9a.

bond or throneless exile, and that of *istiqlal*, the exercise of sovereignty.⁴

It was during the decade following his father's death in 1494 that Babur experienced the wildest swings in his political fortunes, climaxed in 1504 by his flight from Mawarannahr and occupation of Kabul. He never interprets the twists of fortune he experienced in these years. Unlike the fourteenth century Arab-Muslim scholar Ibn Khaldun, who used Aristotelian logic to analyze the underlying causes of the political chaos in North Africa and Islamic Spain, Babur never steps back from his often bewilderingly complex narrative of events to generalize, much less to offer structural explanations for his turbulent political history. Such explanations are easy to find, though, in two related characteristics of fifteenth century Central Asian politics: Turco-Mongol inheritance patterns and the nature of late Timurid politics. With these factors in mind it is easy to understand the fundamentally unstable nature of the political world Babur was born into and therefore took for granted, seeing no need to explain it to his intended audience of like-minded Turco-Mongol aristocrats.

Inheritance and Fragmentation

When it came to establishing political stability and centralized rule Turco-Mongol states were plagued by two inherent problems: the ambiguity of political succession and the related custom of allotting territory to sons of aristocratic and royal lineages. These problems were not peculiar to Turco-Mongol or even Central Asian steppe societies, but were found throughout the Middle East. Even after pastoral nomadic tribes founded states, evolved into sedentary societies and developed complex bureaucratic administrative systems, these inheritance patterns persisted. As was true of most Middle Eastern and Central Asian tribal people, any able bodied member of the ruling clan or family among Turco-Mongols was eligible for political leadership of a tribe or the exercise of territorial sovereignty of an urban-based empire. Implicit in this political tradition was the assumption that tribal plunder or territorial conquests were

⁴ He uses *fatrat* synonymously with *qazaqtıq* in f. 11a.

the joint property of the ruling lineage.⁵ The absence of an established pattern of succession meant that after a ruler's death, while in theory preference was often given to the eldest son, any son or brother or nephew could contest for power and, if successful, could legitimately rule. As a result, a ruler's death often triggered civil wars among his sons and/ or other male relatives. In the context of the great Central Asian nomadic empires of Chingiz Khan and Timur, the death of the founder meant respectively: the subdivision of the empire with one heir accorded superior status and internecine war among claimants as they sought to replicate the authority of the founder. Among both Chingizids and Timurids the number of legitimate claimants multiplied in succeeding generations, leading to the subdivision of authority and territory. In the late fifteenth century two or three generations of Chingizids and Timurids sometimes struggled for power at the same time. This succession problem initially plagued all the Turkic empires, and was dealt with by the Ottomans, Safavids, Uzbeks and Timurid-Mughuls in distinct ways.

The conflicts inherent in this system were also encouraged and almost guaranteed by the related practice of a ruler parceling out territories among his sons, sometimes but no means always with preference given to the oldest. In an arrangement generally known to modern scholars as the appanage system, sons of a ruler were appointed at a young age, often less than ten years, to be nominal governors of provinces or subordinate fortresses. They were also assigned guardians, known among Timurids as *beg atekehs*, to advise and protect them.⁶ This custom represented an ad hoc division of the father's patrimony even before his death. It usually meant that young men grew into adults having little day-to-day contact with their siblings. Whether or not brotherly love was a significant emotion in other premodern societies it had little meaning where chil-

⁵ For the Uzbek case see R. D. McChesney, *Waqf in Central Asia*, 51-58. The nature of leadership in a particular Iranian pastoral nomadic tribe is described in the well-known study by Fredrik Barth, *Nomads of South Persia* (London: Allen and Unwin 1961). The tangled question of what the Latin term "tribe" means in the Middle Eastern and Central Asian context is discussed at length by Richard Tapper. *Frontier Nomads of Iran* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1997), 1-24. Suffice to say here that neither anthropologists or historians agree on a definition, which is applied to entities ranging from fairly small pastoral nomadic camping and migratory groups to large political/military confederations.

⁶ BN-A, 579-81.

dren had so little sustained contact after their earliest years. These children/young men also developed mini-courts and distinct political ambitions, as indeed was natural for them to do in the Turco-Mongol system of shared inheritance. Conflict between the sons was even more likely to occur or to be intensified when they were children of different mothers.

The existence of these separate power centers frequently gave rise to chronic instability even during a ruler's lifetime, as sons rebelled against fathers and fought among themselves. That is, not only did conflicts occur between various appanages, but between fathers and sons of the individual appanages themselves. The experience of the last Timurid ruler of Harat, Sultan Husayn Bayqara (r.1469-1506), typified this problem. During the last decade of his life he spent more energy suppressing his rebellious adult sons, nominally his subordinate governors, than he did in campaigning against the Uzbeks, his most formidable enemy. Babur experienced many of these difficulties with his two younger half-brothers, Jahan gir and Nasir Mirza, even though they were only nine and seven years old respectively in 1494 when he nominally assumed control of his father's state. However, their deaths in 1506-07 and 1515 meant that he was spared the potential problem of their ambitions after he conquered north India.

Timur himself was heir to the Turco-Mongol traditions, and did not modify them in any significant way. He began his career and ended his life as a leader of a nomadic conquest dynasty. While he used Iranians particularly to help him create an effective financial administration, he never attempted to transcend Turco-Mongol political traditions by creating a new Timurid legitimacy modeled on autocratic Iranian or Chinese models.⁷ At no time, for example, did he exploit the ideology of Iranian kingship that was so familiar in Mawarannahr and proclaim himself *shah*. Nor did he create institutional structures for a bureaucratic Timurid state that might subordinate or suppress his descendants' individual ambitions. Timurid lineages rather than a cohesive Timurid state ruled fifteenth century Mawarannahr and Khurasan. Indeed, Timur's name was the most enduring political legacy he bequeathed to his children and grandchildren, but it did not distinguish one male

⁷ Beatrice Manz describes Timur's use of Iranian bureaucrats—and his contempt for them as a class or ethnic group. *The rise and rule of Tamerlane*, 109-15.

relative from another. All had an equal theoretical claim to be his legitimate successor.⁸ Nor had Timur allowed any member of his family to acquire significant independent power that might have guaranteed the supremacy of one family member over all the rest. He had ruled personally through the draconian use of force, and did not trust even his own immediate relatives enough to ensure their control over the provinces they ruled in his name.⁹

The exact moment Timur died in 1405 his empire fractured, as his descendants struggled for control of his conquests in Central Asia, Iran and Afghanistan.¹⁰ During the century following Timur's death and the end of Timurid rule in Harat in 1506 there were periods of stability and impressive cultural florescence in the central Timurid lands of Mawarannahr and Khurasan.¹¹ This is particularly true of the nearly four decades from 1409 to 1447 when Timur's fourth son, Shah Rukh, reigned in Harat and Shah Rukh's son, Ulugh Beg, ruled as his deputy in Samarqand. Yet in the latter half of the century the situation of Timur's descendants steadily deteriorated as local dynasties in Iran overthrew Timurid sovereignty and the proliferation of Timurid descendants fractionalized political power and scarce resources. It is possible that the progressive reduction of the weight of the principal Timurid silver coin, the *tangah* was due to this fragmentation.¹² By the late fifteenth century the Timurids' weakened, divided states permitted the advance of

⁸ Maria Eva Subtelny, "Babur's Rival Relations: A Study in Kinship and Conflict in 15th-16th Century Central Asia", 102-118.

⁹ Beatrice Forbes Manz, *The rise and rule of Tamerlane*, 18 and Manz, "The legacy of Timur," *Asian Art* 2, 2 (Spring, 1989), 10-29. See also Ratchnevsky, *Genghis Khan*, 125-26 for a description of the lack of a dynastic tradition in the Mongol empire, and Peter Golden, *An Introduction to the History of the Turkic Peoples* (Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 1992), chapters IX and X.

¹⁰ As testified to near Tabriz on 25 March 1405 by the Castillian ambassador to Timur, Ruy Gonzalez de Clavijo, who was then returning from his audience with Timur in Samarqand. E. Denison Ross and Eileen Power ed., *Clavijo, Embassy to Tamerlane, 1403-06* Guy Le Strange trans. (N.Y. and London: Harper, 1928), 311-315. R. M. Savory describes the aftermath of Timur's death in Iran in his article, "The Struggle for Supremacy in Persia after the Death of Timur," *Der Islam* 40, 1 (1964), 35-65.

¹¹ See especially Lentz and Lowrey, *Timur and the Princely Vision* Persian art and Culture in the Fifteenth Century.

¹² Elena A. Davidovich, "The Monetary Reform of Muhammad ShTbanT Khan in 913-914/1507-08," 135.

the Ghingizid-led Uzbek confederation from Turkistan in the west and Mongol intrusions from Mughulistan east of Ferghanah, across the Tien Shan mountains. Writing of the 1490's Babur reported destruction by both groups north of Andijan where Timurid control had evaporated. "Because of the Mughuls and Uzbeks," he writes, "not a single village in that region is without a fort."¹³

Thus when in 1494 Babur became in his anachronistic terms "*padshah* in the province of Ferghanah" in his twelfth year, he became in reality no more than a young and vulnerable claimant to a minor Timurid appanage. In fact he was not a *padshah* at this time, a Iranian title he himself says he assumed only in 1506 after taking Kabul. Instead he was but one of numerous male descendants of Timur and Chingiz Khan who possessed similar dynastic ambitions and comparable Turco-Mongol legitimacy. These men were the *mirzas* and *khans* respectively of his memoir.¹⁴ In the presence of multiple Timurid *mirzas* and Chingizid *khans* descent offered little more than legitimacy, a kind of passive charisma. It guaranteed admission to dangerous and frequently deadly political contests, and also represented a kind of life-saving political insurance in perilous times, attracting support in situations where pretentious "commoners" might be abandoned and lose their lives. The fundamental reality of late fifteenth century politics in Central Asia was the absence of a political system that could moderate or unite these men's political ambitions. No factor, neither kinship, nor religion, nor language, nor age, nor love of chess or poetry or drink, nor nostalgia for past glories—nor any shared social connection, cultural characteristic or personal habit—ensured lasting political cooperation among them.

Blood ties were nonetheless critically significant. As far as can be ascertained from fragmentary evidence, the core of each *mirza's* and *khan's* entourage, his *uruq* or household, contained many of his near and distant relatives and long-time retainers, who often became linked with each other or with Timurids and Chingizids by marriage.¹⁵ Babur and others also invoked family connections when seeking aid or alliances. In 1502, for example, when he was virtu-

¹³ BN-M, f. 59b.

¹⁴ *Mirza* from *amirzadah*, an *amir's* son. Timur held the title of *amir* rather than *khan*, as he was not a Chingizid.

¹⁵ *Uruq* had two meanings for Babur, his household and/or his baggage train. See BN-A, 659-661.

ally a refugee in Ferghanah Babur pointedly mentions that he sought help from his Mongol uncle, Mahmud Khan of Tashkent, because the Khan was not a *yak* a stranger, but a *tuqqan*, a relation.¹⁶ This was only one of several times he sought the Khan's help because of their family connection. Babur also pointedly reminds his readers of times when he acted for the greater dynastic good or merely compassionately out of kinship considerations. He mentions, for example, that after he occupied Kabul in 1504 he helped all of his Chaghatay kin who came to him—"out of compassion and family feeling I gave Shah Begim," he writes of one of his maternal grandfather's wives, "Pamghan, one of Kabul's best districts."¹⁷ "Compassion and family feeling" may express the principal motives of such acts that combined a vital moral ideal, a natural sympathy and charitable impulse for relatives, with the political instinct to bolster legitimacy by demonstrating an ability to provide for members of the lineage or dynasty. When he or other Timurid or Chaghatay family members were absolutely helpless they often found at least temporary refuge with their relatives. However, when any of these men enjoyed a measure of sovereignty or could reasonably hope to achieve it, kinship more usually triggered conflict rather than cooperation.

Due to this unstructured, atomized environment the late Timurid political world was a truly chaotic one, chaotic in the modern mathematical and physical sense of being unpredictable. It was distinguished by a kind of Brownian motion of numerous, some times multitudinous Turco-Mongol offspring, colliding with one another's dynastic ambitions and veering off in unpredictable geographic and political directions.¹⁸ Babur summarized the essence of this ruthlessly individualistic political world when he observed of the political situation in 1506, two years after he seized Kabul, "As this was a world full of discord, anyone who was aggressive could

¹⁶ BN-M, f. 101a.

¹⁷ BN-M, f. 200b. "Pamghan" in the text but later generally spelled Paghman.

¹⁸ See C. Dyke, "Strange Attraction, Curious Liaison: Clio Meets Chaos," in *The Philosophical Forum* 21, 4 (Summer, 1990), 369-92, and Stephen H. Kellert, *In the Wake of Chaos* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1993). Charles Melville describes an equally chaotic situation in early fourteenth century Iran that followed the collapse of the Il-Khans, the Mongol dynasty of Iran. *The Fall of Amir Chupan and the Decline of the Ilkhanate, 1327-37: A decade of discord in Mongol Iran* (Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana University Research Institute for Inner Asian Studies, 1999).

seize anything from a province or a people.”¹⁹ “We also,” he goes on to say with characteristic frankness, “imposed tribute and took something from the Turks and Mongols of those mountain regions.”²⁰ He did fail to note, because it was understood among his audience, that “anyone” had to be someone of good lineage, in his eyes a Timurid *mtrza* or a Chaghatay *khan*.

The Turco-Mongol Landscape in 1494

When Babur was born in 1483 five Timurids still held most of Mawarannahr, the contiguous region of Khurasan to the west southwest and Kabul and eastern Afghanistan. Four of these men were Babur’s paternal uncles, descendants of Timur’s third son, Miranshah. As is shown both by their military actions and the coinage they sometimes produced, they were independent rulers within appanages granted them by Babur’s paternal grandfather, Abu SaʿTd Mirza Miranshahi.²¹ The appanages are usually identified as *soymrghals*, tax-free, military-feudal territorial grants.²²

¹⁹ BN-M, f. 185a.

²⁰ Ibid., f. 185a.

²¹ John E. Woods has identified members of various Timurid descent lines in *The Timurid Dynasty Papers on Inner Asia* No. 14 (Bloomington, Indiana: Research Institute for Inner Asian Studies, 1990). Elena A. Davidovich mentions the copper coinage minted in Andijan, Babur’s own appanage in the Ferghanah valley. Davidovich, *Istoriya Denezhnogo Obrashcheniya Srednevekovoi Srednei Azii*, (Moskva: “Nauka,” 1983), 190.

²² For a brief but lucid description of the *soyurghal* institution see H. R. Roemer, “The Successors of Timur,” *CHI*, 6, 131. One of the earliest but still one of the most complete and erudite discussions of the *soyurghal* and other territorial/land assignments is I. P. Petrushevskii’s article “K Istorii Instituta SoTurgala,” in V. V. Struve ed. et al, *Sovetskoe Vostokovedenie* (Moskva, Leningrad: Izdatefstvo Akademii Nauk, 1949), 227-46. See also Maria Eva Subtelny, “Socioeconomic Basis of Cultural Patronage under the Later Timurids,” 479-505. In Iran at least *soyurghals* are generally regarded as an evolution of the earlier *iqta* grants described by Ann K. S. Lambton, “The *Iqta*: State Land and Crown Land,” in Lambton, *Continuity and Change in Medieval Persia* (London: Tauris, 1988), 97-129. These grants are often distinguished from generally smaller, taxable assignments known as *tiyul*. However, there is a great deal of debate about the meaning of these terms in Iran and Central Asia in the Timurid and Safavid eras. Vladimir Minorsky speaking of Safavid Iran says the *tiyul* commonly granted corresponded to the earlier *iqta*. *Tadhkirat al-Mulitk*, 28. Minorsky says that in Iran the *soyurghal* had been used in pre-Safavid times as a semi-permanent land grant for military purposes but that in the Safavid period it became connected more with religious endowments, as

These men and their territories were: Sultan Ahmad Mirza (1451-1494), the nominal governor of Timurid Mawarannahr, but in reality the ruler of little more than Timur's capital Samarqand and sometimes neighboring Bukhara; Babur's father, 'Umar Shaykh Mirza (1456-1494), the ruler of the rich Ferghanah valley east of Samarqand; Sultan Mahmud Mirza (1453-95), who until 1494 controlled territories along the upper Oxus, including Hisar, Termez, Qunduz and Badakhshan and Ulugh Beg Kabuli, the ruler of Kabul until his death in 1502. In addition to these four Miranshahi brothers a fifth Timurid, Sultan Husayn Bayqara, a descendant of Timur's first son, 'Umar Shaykh, controlled the second half of the remaining Timurid lands, not only Iranian Khurasan, with its splendid cultural center of Harat, but also the territory stretching from Khwarazm below the Aral Sea to Qandahar in central Afghanistan.

In addition to these independent and perennially feuding Timurid rulers, the descendants of two Ghingizid lineages contested for power in Mawarannahr and Khurasan in the late fifteenth and early sixteenth centuries. One of these Ghingizid lineages was represented by the sons of Babur's maternal grandfather, Yunas Khan. He was a descendant of Chingiz Khan's second son, Chaghatay. In the thirteenth century Chaghatay had ruled much of the Central Asian territory located between the Mongol states of China and Iran. However, in the immediate years before his death in Tashkent in 1487, Yunas Khan controlled only the western part of Mughulistan, the vast swath of territory between the oasis cites of Mawarannahr and north China where Turco-Mongol nomadic and semi-nomadic steppe culture still flourished in the late fifteenth century.²³ Two of Yunas Khan's sons, and therefore Babur's maternal

also happened in Timurid-Mughul India. *Soyurghal* is a Mongol term, *tiyul* Persian, and *iqta'* Arabic. It cannot be assumed that the terms were used in India or Iran in mutually exclusive ways. According to Lambton, "Under the Timurids, the *soyiirghal* in the sense of a provincial grant was not clearly distinguished from the *tuyul* [q.v.]. Both were used to signify the grant of a district or provincial government or its taxes, with or without immunities." Ann K. S. Lambton "Soyurghal," EI2, 9, 732.

²³ Chaghatay Khan's *ulus* or inherited territories included a large part of Central Asia, but in the mid-fourteenth century the former lands of the Chaghatay khanate were divided into Timurid lands in the west, roughly the territories of the former Soviet Central Asian republics, and Mughulistan in the east. For the status and history of this eastern section of the former khanate or Chaghatay (Mongol) *ulus* see among other sources: O. F. Akimushkin, "Khronologiya Pravitelet Vosto-

uncles, were major figures in Babur's early political struggles. They were Sultan Mahmud Khan (d. 1509), who became the ruler of Tashkent after his father's death. He was the *tuqqan* or relation with whom Babur took refuge in 1502. His younger brother and therefore another of Babur's maternal uncles, Sultan Ahmad Khan (Kichik or Alachah Khan) (d. 1504), sometimes joined forces with Sultan Mahmud Khan. He was the ruler of Aqsu and neighboring regions of the Alt! Shahr (Six Cities) country in central and eastern Mughulistan along the southern skirt of the Tien Shan mountains, about four hundred miles and thirty-five days journey east-north east of Andijan.²⁴ Ahmad Khan had gone to Mughulistan in 1485, says Babur's cousin, Haydar Mirza, in the same year when the then elderly Yunas Khan settled in Tashkent. This was two years after Babur's birth in the nearby Ferghanah valley.²⁵ At that time Mughulistan was still a region whose Mongol inhabitants, in Haydar Mirza's words, "hated cities."

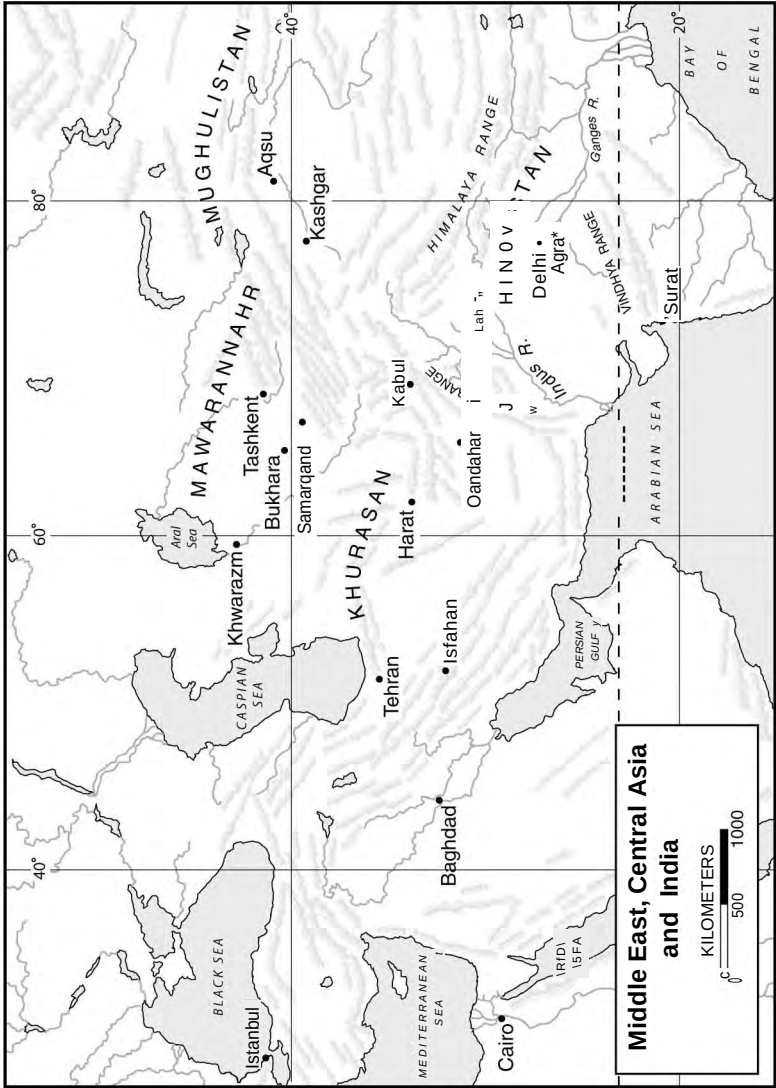
These two Chaghatay Khans, Mahmud and Ahmad, were in turn intermarried with members of another Mongol but non-Chingizid clan, the Dughlats, whose leaders had been appointed amirs of Kashgar by Chingiz's son, Chaghatay.²⁶ The relations between their lineages typified the shifting alliances of all the Timurids, Chingizids and non-Chingizid Mongols. In 1494 Kashgar, about 200 miles or twenty days journey east-southeast of Andijan, was held independently by Aba Bakr Kashgar! Dughlat, who had ruled there since 1480-81. However, other Dughlats served or

chnoT Chasti ChaghataTskovo Ulusa," B. A. Litvinskii. *Vostochnyi Turkistan i Srednyaya Aziya* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1984), 156-64 and Eiji Mano, "Moghulistan," in Haneda Akira ed., *Acta Asiatica* 41 (Tokyo: Toho Gakkai, 1981), 46-60. A lucid description of the khanate, its division into Timur's conquests and Mughulistan and the relation of Timur and the Timurids to the Chaghatay Mongols in Mughulistan is the article by Hodong Kim, "The Early History of the Moghul Nomads: the Legacy of the Chaghatay Khanate," in Reuven Amitai-Preiss and David O. Morgan ed., *The Mongols Empire and its Legacy* (Leiden, Brill, 1999), 290-318. The conservative Mongol values of Mongols in these eastern territories is discussed, along with their relations with the partly Sinicized Mongols of Yuan dynasty, the Mongol dynasty of China, by John W. Dardess, *Conquerors and Confucians, Aspects of Political Change in Late T'ang China* (New York, N.Y.: Columbia University Press, 1973).

²⁴ TR-T, f. 205b.

²⁵ TR-T, fs. 41-2.

²⁶ TR-R, p. 48-9 and 99 and Manz, *The rise and rule of Tamerlane*, 46.



Map No. 1
Middle East, Central Asia, Afghanistan and India

allied themselves with the Chaghatay khans, and Aba Bakr Kashgar! Dughlat's cousin, Muhammad Husayn Dughlat, was Sultan Mahmud Khan's governor of the Tashkent region when 'Umar Shaykh died and Babur inherited his father's appanage. One of these Dughlats was Haydar Mirza Dughlat, a sometime companion of Babur and himself the author of the semi-autobiographical Persian history of the Mongols, the *Tarikh-i Rashidi*.

The other Ghingluzid lineage was represented by Muhammad Shibam Khan (d. 1510), who traced his descent from Chingiz Khan's eldest son, Juchi. Shibam Khan, as he is generally known, had inherited and revitalized the largely Turkic tribal confederation known in the late fifteenth century as the Uzbeks, which his grandfather, Abu'l Khayr Khan, had formed in the fifteenth century on the Qipchaq steppe, an enormous territory stretching from the Volga to the Aral Sea. He was an enemy to both the Tlmurids and Chaghatay Mongols, and by the late fifteenth century Shibam Khan was moving on the wealthy cities of Mawarannahr: Bukhara, Samarqand and Tashkent. Abu'l Khayr Khan had directly intervened in Timurid politics in 1451 when he helped Abu Sa'id Mirza Miranshah seize Samarqand by joining him in a battle against his Timurid rivals, but by 1500 his grandson, Shibam Khan, was intent on conquest rather than intervention. His ambitions also included the wealthy region of Khurasan. By 1506 he had conquered both Mawarannahr and Khurasan and killed or driven out both Tlmurids and Chaghatays from these regions.

During their lives Babur's father, 'Umar Shaykh, three other Timurids, Ahmad Mirza of Samarqand, Mahmud Mirza of Badakhshan, Husayn Mirza of Harat, and the Chaghatay Mongol Mahmud Khan of Tashkent, coexisted in a hostile equilibrium within Mawarannahr and Khurasan. Ulugh Beg Kabuli seems to have remained in his eastern Afghan appanage and taken little part in the struggles with his brothers and cousins in Mawarannahr and Khurasan. With the exception of Ulugh Beg each of them, however, periodically tried to expand his power at the expense of the others, but none seemed to have conducted sustained campaigns aimed at destroying their rivals. Many of their "battles" amounted to little more than indecisive cavalry skirmishes.

Babur suggests the almost dilatory military life these men led when he remarks that 'Umar Shaykh Mirza fought only three significant battles, one of which he describes as no more than a skir-

mish. 'Umar Shaykh fought two of these battles against his close relatives: one against Yunas Khan, Mahmud and Ahmad Khan's father—who was of course 'Umar Shaykh's father-in-law and Babur's maternal grandfather—and a second with his elder brother Sultan Ahmad Mirza of Samarqand. He fought a third skirmish against some Uzbek raiders, as the latter had begun penetrating Timurid lands in Mawarannahr during his lifetime. Babur also reports that Sultan Ahmad Mirza fought two of his four major battles against his brother 'Umar Shaykh Mirza and his son-in-law, Sultan Mahmud Khan. Sultan Mahmud Mirza, whose territories were located south of his two brothers, and bordered on Khurasan, fought both of his major engagements against his cousin, Sultan Husayn Mirza Bayqara of Harat.

These Timurids and the Mongol Mahmud Khan never seriously tried to annihilate the others, perhaps because they had become comfortable urbanites who no longer possessed the all consuming will to power of Timur and Chingiz Khan. Only Shibam Khan possessed even a measure of Chingiz's and Timur's ruthless discipline and seemingly inexhaustible thirst for conquest. By the time of Babur's birth the entire Timurid and Chaghatay world of Mawarannahr and Khurasan had reached a kind of stasis of sedentary, middle aged rulers. Babur might write judgementally of his father, 'Umar Shaykh Mirza, that he was an exceptionally ambitious man, always seeking territorial expansion, one who "changed many truces into a battles and many friendships into enmity."²⁷ Yet if 'Umar Shaykh, as Babur also says, fought only three major battles, and never seized Samarqand or any other major city, he hardly seems to have been the model of relentless Timurid ferocity. In fact, Babur remembers him as a man who had grown so plump that he had to suck in his stomach in order to tie his tunic.²⁸

Sultan Ahmad Mirza, 'Umar Shaykh's older brother and periodic foe, had himself grown fat by the 1490's and, Babur implies, had abandoned campaigning in favor of pheasant hunting and falconry.²⁹ Sultan Mahmud Mirza was also fat, drank continually and kept catamites. His sons, Babur reports, were also infamously debauched. Neither he nor Sultan Ahmad Mirza, Babur notes, had

²⁷ BN-M, f. 7b.

²⁸ BN-M, f. 7.

²⁹ BN-M, f. 19a.

themselves ever fought really serious battles. Less is known of the personality of Babur's maternal uncle, Sultan Mahmud Khan, the Chaghatay Mongol ruler of Tashkent, but he too seems to have lapsed into a satisfied inertia, not surprising given the civilized tastes his father, Yunas Khan, had acquired during nearly two decades of exile in Iran.³⁰ Babur says of Mahmud Khan that he had good "manners and morals," (*akhldqu atvar*) but was a hopeless horseman and general.³¹ Certainly his Mongol uncle offered little sustained resistance to Shibam Khan Uzbek when the latter overran Mawarannahr in the first decade of the sixteenth century. After losing a major battle to Shibam Khan in 1503 he pathetically surrendered to the Uzbek leader in 1508/09, who had him and his sons executed.

In Babur's account at least, many Timurid rulers and even Mahmud Khan seem to have personified Ibn Khaldun's model of dynastic decay, in which the historian argued that North African and other nomadic dynasties inevitably deteriorated after seizing power. Ibn Khaldun believed that the social cohesion and ferocity nomads naturally had in the desert or steppe inevitably atrophied after they conquered sedentary populations and occupied their cities—due to intermarriage, the decline of military experience and the pursuit of pleasure. The deterioration became ever more marked in the generations of leaders that succeeded the founder, until they became incapable of defending themselves. Ibn Khaldun argued that after four or five generations new, more primitive, cohesive and dynamic nomads replaced degenerate dynasties, just as Uzbeks eventually defeated Babur and overran other Timurid political remnants and Mongol *khans* in late fifteenth and early sixteenth-century Central Asia.³²

Babur was particularly censorious about what he saw as the atrophy of Sultan Husayn Bayqara's warrior ethos, for the Sultan was the most prestigious Timurid ruler of the age. Babur's explanation for what he saw as Husayn Bayqara's marked decline in power seems almost to be written as an illustration of how Ibn Khaldun's model could be applied to Khurasan and Central Asia, if not in all respects at least in terms of the rulers' progressive loss of ambition,

³⁰ TR-T, fs. 61b-62a.

³¹ BN-M, f. 54b.

³² Ibn Khaldun, *The Muqaddimah* Franz Rosenthal trans. (Princeton: Princeton University Press, repr. 1980), 3 v.

dynamism and ferocity. Indeed, his critique of Husayn Bayqara, and the implications that the critique has for his characterization of other Timurid and even Chaghatay Mongol rulers, is the closest he comes to offering his readers a structural analysis of the causes of the Timurid and Chaghatay collapse in the late fifteenth and early sixteenth century. Babur's critique does not explain the political fragmentation of the region, but it does suggest or argue that this fragmentation was not the sole reason why Timurid *mirzds* and Chaghatay *khans* were unable to resist Uzbek expansion.

In Babur's view Husayn Bayqara's decline began virtually as soon as he captured Harat in 1469. According to Babur, when he seized the city following years of struggle, Husayn Bayqara no longer had the taste for the "anguish and effort of generalship and conquest."³³ His failure of will inevitably led, Babur argues, to the loss of support, since men who were paid from campaign booty left in search of more productive patrons.³⁴ Second, instead of productive campaigns he "did nothing night and day," Babur writes, "but revel and carouse,"³⁵ indulging in "*fesq o fujur*" immorality and debauchery," and by his example teaching his sons and followers to do likewise. Babur's comments are startling, because they represent the kind of analysis of underlying causes that is rarely to be seen in the Persian-language historiography of the period, or in the historiography of most periods of Islamic history for that matter. And while he does not explicitly discuss the notion of generational decline that is central to Ibn Khaldun's *Muqaddimah*, it is implicit in his comments about the example of Husayn Bayqara's conduct and in Babur's description of the military ineptitude of Husayn Bayqara's sons. Thus Babur appreciated his cousins' elegant parties when he visited cosmopolitan Harat in 1506, including their ability to carve roasted fowl, a social skill he did not possess—or probably did not even realize until then that he lacked. Still he could not refrain from observing these men were almost incapable of rousing themselves to lead counterattacks against the Uzbeks, following Shibam Khan's attack on Balkh in northern Afghanistan in the autumn of that year. He lamented that "While these *mirzas* were excellent conversationalists and possessed social graces they were strangers to command, strategy, brave acts and the tumult of bat-

³³ BN-M, f. 166a.

³⁴ Ibid., f. 166a.

³⁵ Ibid., f. 166a.

tie.”³⁶ Whatever one may think about the fairness of Babur’s criticism of Husayn Bayqara, who had died earlier in 1506 before Babur arrived in Harat, his evaluation of his cousins was based on first-hand experience and his knowledge of their pathetic inability to defend Harat when Shibam Khan arrived before the city in 1507.

Still his comments about Sultan Husayn Bayqara’s decadence, which he includes in the Kabul section of the *Vaqai*, have to be treated cautiously, for in making them he seems to have been reacting specifically to the great man’s failure to challenge the Uzbeks during the last six years of his life from 1500 to 1506. Babur was especially bitter that Husayn Bayqara failed to aid him in 1500, when he was besieged by Shibam Khan inside Samarqand, and he was exasperated by Husayn Bayqara’s later strategy to offer no more than a static defense against Uzbek campaigns south of the Amu Darya river. In his critique Babur does not distinguish between the Husayn Bayqara of 1475 or 1485 and the Husayn Bayqara of 1500 or 1506. Nor does he take into account the factors of age and illness. Certainly Babur does not seem to be consistent in his portrayal. Just a few pages before he describes Husayn Bayqara’s lassitude and indulgence, for example, he specifically mentions the Harat ruler’s bravery and frequent battles!³⁷ Even before that in the Ferghanah section he describes him as an “intelligent *mzrza* and an “experienced commander” in the course of recounting his attack on Hisar in 1495.³⁸ Yet, at the end of this section Babur bemoans the fact that the attack was never vigorously pursued and that ultimately Husayn Bayqara returned to Harat with very little to show for his efforts. In fact, like many of his other character sketches, Babur’s frequent but scattered references to Husayn Bayqara together comprise a complex portrait, one that has to be considered in any overall evaluation of late Timurid Harat. In fact it is a largely a positive, admiring portrait of an individual whom Babur, like subsequent historians, saw as indisputably the greatest Timurid ruler of the age. Ultimately readers have to conclude that in his Ibn Khaldun-like explanation for the collapse of Timurid Harat Babur identified a fundamental problem, but not one that he

³⁶ BN-M, f. 187b.

³⁷ Ibid, f. 164b.

³⁸ BN-M, f. 33.

meant to stand as an overall condemnation of Husayn Bayqara or his era. It was both a lament and an explanation for the end of the Timurid century. Indeed, as will be seen later, Babur himself, like Ibn Khaldun, reveled in the urban society and culture that both men understood to be a cause of dynastic decline.

The relatively comfortable late Timurid world that had existed when Babur was born disintegrated as his father's generation of rulers died between 1494 and 1506, and their sons fought to establish themselves in the new and unforgiving political environment of Uzbek expansion. First in Mawarannahr 'Umar Shaykh Mirza suddenly died in 1494 at age thirty-nine, characteristically not in battle, but when his dovecote collapsed and toppled over the side of his fortress wall at Akhsi into a ravine. He left behind three sons, Babur and his two younger half-brothers, Jahangir and Nasir Mirza, and five daughters. Sultan Ahmad Mirza of Samarqand died the same year, leaving five daughters, two sons having died in infancy. Sultan Mahmud Mirza, his uncontested successor to Samarqand died in 1495, just five months after inheriting the city—Babur thought debauchery was the cause! He left five sons—Sultan 'Ali Mirza, Sultan Mas'ud Mirza, Baysunghur Mirza, Sultan Husayn Mirza, Sultan Ways Mirza—and eleven daughters. The death of 'Umar Shaykh followed so soon by his two brothers first triggered a struggle for 'Umar Shaykh's Ferghanah appanage and then escalated into a generalized competition among these men's descendants and the Ghaghatays and Uzbeks for Samarqand and all Mawarannahr.

Sultan Husayn Bayqara and his sons did not intervene in the civil wars among his Miranshahi Timurid cousins, either before or after Shibam Khan Uzbek occupied Samarqand and then eradicated Timurid and Chingizid presence in the region. There may have been several reasons for their inaction. The Timurid world had been divided between Mawarannahr and Khurasan since the mid-fifteenth century, and Sultan Husayn Bayqara may have regarded these regions as two distinct states. He may also have been too distracted by conflicts with his sons to mount other campaigns. Thus in May 1497 when Babur was besieging Samarqand Husayn Bayqara was campaigning against his son, Badi^c al-Zaman Mirza, in northern Afghanistan. Then there is the question of his age, health and the general lassitude Babur says had long characterized both Husayn Bayqara and his sons. Whatever the actual weight of

these factors neither Husayn Bayqara nor his sons ever marched on Samarqand after 1494, and by the time Husayn Bayqara died in Harat in 1506 the Uzbeks had occupied Mawarannahr and Babur had fled to Kabul. His death effectively ended Timurid rule in Khurasan, for none of his many sons either singly or in concert seriously attempted to counter the Uzbeks. These included his most influential sons, Badʿ al-Zaman Mirza and Muzaffar Mirza, who had repeatedly rebelled against their father during his lifetime, and now retired to enjoy, very briefly, the good life in cosmopolitan Harat, and three other of Husayn Bayqara's fourteen mature sons who were still active in 1506 and had small appanages north and northwest of Harat: Abu'l Muhsin Mirza (Merv), Ibn-i Husayn Mirza (Tun & Qa'in) and Kipik Mirza (Muhammad Muhsin Mirza) (Mashad).³⁹

"Padshah" to Qazaq I: 1494-1498

When Babur inherited his father's appanage in his twelfth year in June, 1494 his nobles immediately feared Sultan Ahmad Mirza might take the opportunity to send an army to capture Babur in Andijan and occupy Ferghanah province.⁴⁰ His uncle did rouse himself long enough to march into the Ferghanah valley to do exactly that. The fact that Babur was not only Ahmad Mirza's nephew but had become engaged to one of his uncle's four daughters during a visit to Samarqand seven years earlier, merely serves as a further reminder of the limited degree to which kinship influenced political decisions.⁴¹ Sultan Ahmad Mirza's troops captured several major fortresses between Samarqand and Andijan that Umar Shaykh had controlled during his lifetime, before camping

³⁹ Like Mashad, Tun and Qa'in were in Khurasan. See W. Barthold, *An Historical Geography of Iran* Svatek Soucek trans. (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1984) for their locations.

⁴⁰ Historically, that is as early as the second century B. C., Ferghanah had been an agrarian area, where both rice and wheat were grown. However, it was also a region famous for its horses, some of which are represented in Chinese paintings. In fact, records of Chinese emissaries are the oldest extant descriptions of the valley. See Burton Watson trans., *Records of the Grand Historian of China. The Shih chi of ssu-ma chlen*, II, The Age of the Emperor Wu, 140-circa 100 B.C. (New York, N.Y.: Columbia University Press, 1961).

⁴¹ BN-M, f. 20a.

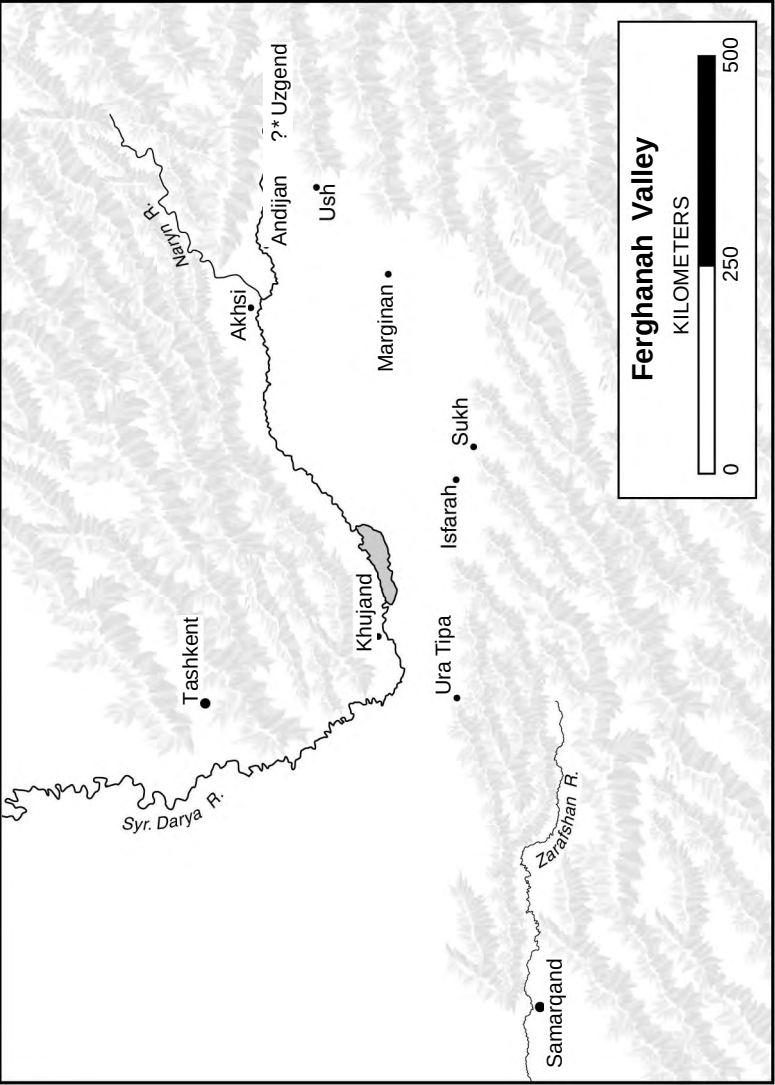
about eight miles to the west of Babur's base in Andijan fort. After Babur's offer to rule in Sultan Ahmad Mirza's name was rejected by his uncle's nobles, the Samarqand army pressed on.

Simultaneously Babur's Chaghatay Mongol uncle, Sultan Mahmud Khan of Tashkent, Sultan Ahmad Mirza's old ally against 'Umar Shaykh Mirza's ambitions, entered Ferghanah from the west. Aided by the defection of two of 'Umar Shaykh's Mongol *begs*, including Nasir Mirza's *beg atekheh*, Ways Laghari, Mahmud Khan quickly occupied Kasan where Babur's younger half-brother, Nasir Mirza, still resided. Ways Laghari for unexplained reasons then took his charge to Samarqand. Mahmud Khan then moved on to besiege Akhsi, 'Umar Shaykh's former fortress. The Mongol ruler of Kashghar, Aba Bakr Dughlat Kashgan, decided he too would take advantage of 'Umar Shaykh Mirza's death to expand across the mountains into Ferghanah and besieged Uzgend, at the eastern end of the valley. However, Babur's supporters fought Sultan Ahmad Mirza to a draw before Andijan; he died in July during the march back to Samarqand. They also succeeded in repulsing Sultan Mahmud Khan near Akhsi; then the Khan fell ill and retired to Tashkent.⁴² Turning their forces east Babur's loyal amirs then chased Aba Bakr Dughlat back across the mountains to Kashgar. While the eleven and half year old Babur and his guardians had lost control of significant fortresses in the western section of the valley, he had survived. He might have regained control of his father's entire appanage and perhaps ruled there securely for at least another five years if the deaths in quick succession of his two uncles and the ensuing rivalry of his cousins, Sultan Mahmud Mirza's sons, had not catalyzed his ambition to capture Samarqand.

Babur spent the campaign season in 1495, the late spring, summer and fall, trying to consolidate his control over the Ferghanah valley, first suppressing a revolt of the commander of Isfarah, a fortress town west-southwest of Andijan in April and May. In his sometimes excruciatingly detailed narrative Babur reports that after this initial success he decided to seek a reconciliation with Sultan Mahmud Khan and went to meet him near his capital, Tashkent.

Babur's description of this encounter is one his many anecdotes that offer insight into the nature of political realities at this period,

⁴² BN-M, f. 17b. See BN-M, fs. 16b-18a for a summary of the military movements immediately after 'Umar Shaykh's death.



Map No. 2. Ferghanah Valley

particularly the problematic value of legitimacy—and further commentary about the ambiguous significance of kinship relations in Turco-Mongol politics. His Mongol uncle was, he reported, “like a father and elder brother,”⁴³ or as he describes him during his later visit in 1502, his *tuqqan*. By visiting him Babur sought to conciliate his father’s old rival—and near relation—and by so doing, give a public impression of rising fortunes. As he frankly remarks “if I would attend him old resentments might be removed, which would be well-regarded both far and near.”⁴⁴ The Khan graciously received Babur, formally honored him and treated him kindly before sending his nephew on his way.

Babur gives the impression the meeting was a success, but his subsequent narrative indicates the opposite. A short time later Mahmud Khan occupied the city of Ura Tipa at the western end of the Ferghanah valley, the very town Babur’s forces tried unsuccessfully to recapture after he returned to Andijan from his uncle’s camp. A year earlier Sultan Ahmad Mirza had seized Ura-Tipa along with Khujand and Marghinan as he moved on Babur in Andijan. By 1495 the town had been inherited by Ahmad Mirza’s successor in Samarqand, Sultan Mahmud Mirza, who in turn had granted it to his son, and Babur’s cousin, Sultan ‘Ali Mirza. Mahmud Khan could certainly have offered the town to Babur, his sister’s son, but instead and not surprisingly he chose to increase his own power, and granted it to his governor of the Tashkent region, Muhammad Husayn Dughlat, who held it until 1503.⁴⁵ Mahmud Khan’s choice was probably an easy one. The Dughlats were a powerful Mongol lineage, long allied with the Chaghatay Khans; Babur was a relatively insignificant nephew, one among many competing Timurids. In subsequent meetings Mahmud Khan always treated Babur with the same hospitality and formal respect, while usually ignoring his young nephew’s pleas for military support.

Fratricidal warfare between Sultan Mahmud Mirza’s sons now offered Babur an opportunity not only to retake Ura Tipa and other towns previously held by his father, but to seize Samarqand itself. In June or early July, 1496 Babur and his *begs* learned that Sultan Mahmud Mirza’s heir to Samarqand, Baysunghur Mirza,

⁴³ BN-M, f. 31b.

⁴⁴ Ibid., f. 31b.

⁴⁵ BN-M, f. 32b.

then eighteen years old, had been defeated by his brother, Sultan ‘Ali Mirza, so recently expelled by Mahmud Khan from Ura Tipa, in a battle near Bukhara. Just before this Baysunghur Mirza had ordered his brother to be blinded in Samarqand, but the latter had escaped to Bukhara with the help of Khwajah Yahya, one of the sons of the influential sufi and patron saint of the late fifteenth century Timurids, the recently deceased Naqshbandi *shaykh*, Khwajah Ubaydullah Ahrar (d. 1490).⁴⁶ Babur later spoke admiringly of his deceased cousin, Baysunghur Mirza, as the model Timurid prince—“just, humane, good natured and learned,”⁴⁷ but it is easy to praise dead rivals, and in 1496 news of this deadly sibling rivalry prompted Babur to mount up “to realize our desire for Samarqand.”⁴⁸ As Babur with typically engaging frankness describes his political ambitions just before he occupied Timur’s capital a second time in 1500, “Given a capital like Samarqand, why would a person wish to waste time in a place like Andijan.”⁴⁹ In the years following his first assault on the city Babur twice gained and twice lost both Samarqand and Andijan before fleeing to Kabul in 1504. Once in Kabul he found himself in an analogous situation to that in Mawarannahr, and he later makes a similar observation about eastern Afghanistan’s imperial potential, noting, in effect, that no one would squander energy suppressing fractious Pashtun tribes around Kabul given more promising opportunities elsewhere.

During these eight years from 1496 to 1504 Babur and his cousins each constituted a constellation of small factions composed of immediate family members and hereditary family loyalists, the norm of Timurid politics since Timur’s death in 1405.⁵⁰ The core of these factions numbered as few as two to three hundred men, as was shown during the *fatrat* or *qazaqtiq* periods in which first Baysunghur Mirza and later Babur suffered catastrophic defeats. These factions grew or diminished in direct and immediate proportion to the military success or defeats of the moment. Some of those who joined or deserted on these occasions were pastoral nomads, occasionally Uzbek Turks but more often Mongols who were asso-

⁴⁶ See below Chapter 3 for a discussion of Ahrar and the Naqshbandi order.

⁴⁷ BN-M, f. 68b.

⁴⁸ BN-M, f. 37b.

⁴⁹ BN-M, f. 78a.

⁵⁰ Manz, *The rise and rule of Tamerlane*, Chapters 7-8.

ciated with Babur's numerous Mongol kin. Neither Babur nor his cousins though, were leaders of nomadic confederations like those of Chingiz Khan and Timur, although there were important Mongol clans serving or allied with the Chaghatay khans, many of whose families were still pastoral nomads.⁵¹ Some of these Mongols joined with and then abandoned Babur with such regularity that in his memoirs he equated virtually all Mongol troops with treachery.

In 1494 Babur inherited most of his advisors, tutors and commanders from his father, and some of these men who survived later battles followed him all the way to India. Most of these men were Turks or Mongols, some members of important clans or hereditary military units dating to Chingiz Khan's time, aristocrats in the sense they belonged to historically important lineages. The Dughlat amirs were one of the most important such clans. The principal exception in Babur's case was Khwajah Maulana Qazi, his religious tutor and advisor, a descendant of a historically influential religious lineage in Ferghanah.⁵² Typical of his Turco-Mongol supporters in 1494 were Shaykh Mazid Beg Qauchin, Babur's first *begatekeh* and Qasim Beg Qauchin the second "Lord of Babur's Gate," his principal military advisor and chief administrator.⁵³ Both men had served with 'Umar Shaykh Mirza as Zygs, the superior rank of men who held critical military commands and were often assigned to govern provinces.⁵⁴ Both were *qauchins*, members of an hereditary military class formed before Timur's time.⁵⁵ These two men were also typical in another sense; their later decisions illustrate the unpredictable loyalty of even Babur's closest advisors, at least based upon our limited knowledge of their motives. Shaykh Mazid Beg Qauchin, whom 'Umar Shaykh trusted to be Babur's tutor, deserted him in 1498 after he

⁵¹ TR-T, fs. 143a-144. Haydar Mirza Dughlat lists a number of well-known Mongol clans, such as the Barias, the Kunji and the Begchik, whose leaders he refers to as *amirs*, not *begs*. In contrast Timur and his sons and commanders led genuinely nomadic armies whose troops were accompanied by their families and herds. For a first-hand description of Chaghatay Mongol camps in northeastern Iran and how these were mobilized for campaigns see Clavijo's eyewitness account, Ross and Power ed., *Clavijo, Embassy to Tamerlane*, 190-91.

⁵² BN-M, f. 16.

⁵³ See BN-A, 606-08 and BN-B, p. 24 n. 2.

⁵⁴ BN-A, 590-92.

⁵⁵ For references to this social group whose special status dated to Chingizid times see Ratchnevsky, *Genghis Khan*, 81-82 and Manz, *The rise and rule of Tamerlane*, 186, n. 31.

abandoned Samarqand and then lost Andijan for the first time. Qasim Beg Qauchin, in contrast, remained loyal to Babur throughout these years, and served him as late as 1522 in Kabul as *beg atekkeh* to Humayun, Babur's eldest son and heir.

The fragile ties between young Timurid *mirzds* like Babur and their closest supporters indicate that none of these small factions constituted a tightly controlled, highly disciplined inner circle or *kesig* on the Chingizid model.⁵⁶ On the evidence of his own narrative Babur's campaigns possessed little coercive power over his senior commanders. Even after his victories in India in 1526 and 1527 some of his longest-serving *begs* left him because they hated the Indian climate! One of these men, Khwajah Kalan, was a *musdhib* a "companion," a long-time adherent and close confidant, one of his inner circle of advisors.⁵⁷ Men like Shaykh Mazid Beg and Qasim Beg may not have been secure hereditary nobility in the late feudal and early modern European sense, but they often flouted the wishes or orders of their nominal Timurid leaders, or simply betrayed them. Many had acquired lands through military assignments, which Babur identifies as *tiyul*, the grants generally thought to have been taxable and conveying less autonomy than the *soyurghal*. Qasim Beg Qauchin, whom Babur describes as "one of the old army *begs* of Andijan," probably owned estates and/or grazing animals in Ferghanah. However, Babur never discusses the legal or political significance of these assignments which, on the evidence of his text, were at this time de facto permanent holdings. It is impossible to say whether such men felt politically secure in the late-Timurid world of shifting military fortunes. Yet the quixotic loyalties of one of Babur's *begs*, Qambar Ali Mughul, indicates that some of these men felt confident enough to serve at their own pleasure.

⁵⁶ For the definition and bibliography of the term *kesig* see Ch'i-ch'ing Hsiao, *The Military Establishment of the Yuan Dynasty* (Cambridge, Ma.: Council on East Asian Studies, 1978), 148 n. 10. A discussion of the *kesig* which emphasizes its patrimonial character rather than its discipline is offered by Thomas T. Allsen, *Mongol Imperialism* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1987), 99-100.

⁵⁷ Babur refers to Khwajah Kalan as a "companion" in two successive folios concerning events of January 1520. BN-M, fs. 250a-b. The implication of each passage is that Babur recalled him from other duties so that he would resume his place as a member of Babur's immediate entourage.

⁵⁸ For the variant means of *tiyul* see Ann K. S. Lambton "Tiyul," in EI2, 10, Eases. 171-72, pp. 550-51.

A man with no distinguished Turco-Mongol lineage, one whose father had been a skinner, Qambar 'All had served Babur's maternal grandfather Yunas Khan, as an *aftabchi* or flask-bearer. Some time later he was promoted to be a *beg*. Babur says that Qambar 'All was actually wealthier than all his other fegs, possessing both more land and more retainers than they: *qalin vilayatliq ve khub naukartiq*. Some of these lands were evidently held as *tiyiil*, as Babur indicates Qambar 'Ali held the important town of Khujand, west of Andijan in 1494, and was later given two other nearby towns.⁶¹ It is impossible to know how Qambar 'All became so influential or so wealthy, but Babur gives the impression he was a canny, self serving man who carefully protected his own interests. Qambar 'All repeatedly left Babur in the midst of campaigns to return to his own holdings, then rejoining his service after the danger had passed. He first retired to his lands in 1498 when Babur lost Andijan as well as Samarqand,⁶² and after rejoining Babur in the late fall or early winter of 1499 when he had retaken Andijan, Qambar 'All asked permission to return to Khujand, and Babur says he had little choice but to let him go.⁶³ Next year during the winter of 1499-1500 having once again rejoined Babur's camp, Qambar 'All petulantly, in Babur's characterization, left camp again for Khujand, and returned only when Babur dispatched several *begs* to ask him to return.⁶⁴ Babur's evident frustration with Qambar 'All indicates how insecure he was in Ferghanah in the 1490's. He could not even rely upon this commoner whom he, his father and grandfather had promoted and rewarded. Apart from a very few genuine family loyalists such as Qasim Beg Qauchin, Babur governed and campaigned as a negotiator whose status as a Timurid conveyed legitimacy, but very little unrestricted power.

As Babur makes clear Qambar 'All and other *begs* each commanded large personal detachments, men whom they took with them when they left Babur's camp. *Begs* thus led factions of their

⁵⁹ BN-B, f. 15b.

⁶⁰ BN-M, f. 71b.

⁶¹ Ibid., f. 71b.

⁶² BN-M, f. 65b.

⁶³ BN-M, f. 71b.

⁶⁴ BN-M, fs. 73a-b.

own as they circled for advantage around Mawarannahr's Timurid *mirzas* and Chingizid *khans*. Most *begs* were virtually free agents who often left one Timurid for another or for a Chingizid. However, shifting allegiances should not be seen through the normative ideology of modern nation states. Pragmatic loyalties had long been the norm in Central Asia. Babur rarely expresses indignation when he describes how one of his own men changed leaders, unless it is one of his own kin.⁶⁵ A man who personified this tradition was Baba Quli, Babur's second "lord of the gate," and as a result, one might think, a loyal supporter, but a man who abandoned him when Sultan Ahmad Mirza marched on Andijan in 1494. It was Baba Quli who at that time gave 'Umar Shaykh Mirza's fortress of Ura Tipa to Sultan Ahmad Mirza.⁶⁶

Ranked below such men were *ichki begs*, a group of men with significantly less independent power, influence and wealth who were usually much more dependent on their patrons, whether Timurids, Chaghatays or non-Chingizid Turco-Mongol *begs*. In Babur's opinion the power to promote *ichki begs* or others to *beg* rank was an attribute of independent power or sovereignty, the status of a *padshah*.⁶⁷ Finally, each *beg* or *ichki beg* commanded varying numbers of *yigitler*, literally youths or warriors, but actually just individual horsemen of any age or lesser means, without their own following or independent means or prestigious lineage.⁶⁸ Babur often refers to men of all these ranks simply as *naukar*, liegemen or members of his military retinue.⁶⁹

Babur leaves no doubt that in his own mind none of these *begs* or any other non-Timurid or non-Chingizid Turco-Mongol could legitimately aspire to rule, yet in his years in Mawarannahr he had constantly to fear challenges to his youthful authority and Timurid legitimacy. In his narrative of this early period and subsequently when he describes his first insecure years in Kabul, he criticizes

⁶⁵ In pre-Chingizid Mongol times *nokhod* or "freemen" followed "any leader who could provide for them." Ratchnevsky, *Genghis Khan*, 13.

⁶⁶ BN-M, f. 14b.

⁶⁷ BN-M, f. 69a.

⁶⁸ Haydar Mirza refers to these individual warriors as *bahadurs*. TR-T, f. 143a.

⁶⁹ Babur's usage of these terms varies. For a detailed discussion see the entry "Bey" in BN-A, 590-92. In Mongol times these *naukar* were known as *nokhod*, a term which signified a status like the Timurid-era *jfpgzi/rr*. In modern Iran the term is usually used simply to mean servant.

men, who though they lacked "birth and lineage," still had sovereign pretensions. Babur uses this phrase to ridicule the obvious political ambitions of the Qipchaq Turk, Khusrau Shah, a some time ally/retainer of Sultan Mahmud Mirza. By the late 1490's Khusrau Shah controlled Badakhshan and the upper Oxus region and further expanded his influence as the Timurids self-destructed. By 1500 he had all but proclaimed his own sovereignty in these territories. In characterizing Khusrau Shah as a "worthless man" who lacked "nobility, culture, bravery and a sense of justice,"⁷⁰ Babur was mainly reacting to Khusrau Shah's murder of Bay-sunghur Mirza, whom Babur himself forced from Samarqand in 1497. He does not allude to Khusrau Shah's self-interested manipulation of the copper coinage of Hisar, which the Soviet numismatist, Elena Davidovich, cites as evidence to corroborate Babur's scathing denunciation of the man.⁷¹ Haydar Mirza, probably relying on his cousin's autobiography, himself criticizes Khusrau Shah for his "sovereign presumptions."⁷² Babur later also criticizes Khusrau's brother, BaqT Chaghaniam, for having the *naqarah*, the kettledrum, beaten at his gate.⁷³ These drums were usually beaten before fortresses and palaces, as Persian and Mughul miniature paintings attest, and therefore were regarded as sovereign symbols. Babur reports indignantly that Baqi Chaghaniam had the *naqarah* beaten, "even though he acknowledged Babur as *padshah*."⁷⁴

Babur speaks with similar resentment about the arrogance of two Mongols related to his mother's family, 'Ali Dust Tagha'i and his son, Muhammad, who, he says, began acting arrogantly in 1499, with the son holding court in Andijan itself "in the fashion of a sultan."⁷⁵ At this time, Babur bitterly remembers, he was powerless to challenge these men, and had to suffer humiliation in silence. Babur reacts similarly when he recalls the presumption of Muqim and Shah Shuja^c Arghun, Mongol adherents of the Harat Timurids. Shortly after Harat fell to Shibam Khan in 1507 they had the

⁷⁰ BN-M, f. 68a.

⁷¹ E. Davidovich and A. Mukhtarov, *Stranitsy Istorii Gissara* ("Irfon," Dushambe, 1969), 29. For a discussion of this coinage see also Davidovich, *Istoriya Denezhnogo Obrashcheniya Srednevekovoi Srednei Azii*, 202-23.

⁷² TR-T., f. 66a.

⁷³ BN-M, f. 159a.

⁷⁴ Ibid., f. 159a.

⁷⁵ BN-M, f. 75a.

temerity to implicitly claim status equal to Babur by sealing a letter to him in the middle of a page, where only equals or superiors placed their seal. Babur felt this an act of rudeness was itself symptomatic of the social and political decay which led to the fall of Timurid Harat.⁷⁶ In his mind the disappearance of such well-established political etiquette reflected the deteriorating authority of Timurids in the late fifteenth and early sixteenth centuries.

The Golden Road to Samarqand

When therefore in the early summer of 1496 fourteen year-old Babur and his *begs* decided to march on Samarqand, their original force of perhaps 600 men did not represent a tightly disciplined army, but one which, as events were to show, could dissolve virtually overnight. His first assault on the city was carried out in alliance with two of Baysunghur Mirza's brothers, sons of Sultan Mahmud Mirza: Sultan 'Ali Mirza from Bukhara and Sultan Mas'ud Mirza from Hisar, a city which had been part of his father's appanage before he inherited Samarqand. After a desultory siege of three months, Babur and 'Ali Mirza, the very cousin whom Babur had earlier tried to displace from Ura Tipa, decided to suspend operations for the winter. Mas'ud Mirza, who had, Babur writes, actually come to Samarqand because he fancied a young girl there, married her and took the girl home to Hisar, "abandoning his imperial (*mulkgzrliq*) ambitions."⁷⁷ In Babur's account his cousin's infatuation seems inexplicable and almost comic, but to later readers of the events of these years Mas'ud Mirza at least illustrates that young Timurids possessed emotions apart from dynastic ambition. It was a revelation Babur himself offers a few pages later. Still, given the instability of the period Timurids could not long survive such romantic self-indulgence, and not long afterwards Mas'ud Mirza was blinded by his nominal subordinate, the less sentimental and far more ruthless Khusrau Shah.

Resuming operations with Sultan 'Ali Mirza the following May, Babur inadvertently acquired 3-400 of Baysunghur Mirza's men near Samarqand. They had been cut off from the city and in the

⁷⁶ BN-M, f. 208a.

⁷⁷ BN-M, fs. 38a-b.

circumstances opted to join Babur, a good illustration of the pragmatic loyalties of many Turco-Mongols who probably found it difficult to foresee the fortunes of the many marauding Timurid teenagers.⁷⁸ When Shibam Khan, now poised on Mawarannahr's western fringes to exploit the Timurid civil wars, failed to aid Baysunghur Mirza, Babur's and Sultan 'Ali Mirza's combined forces took the city in November, 1497. Baysunghur Mirza fled with fewer than 300 remaining supporters to Khusrau Shah in Qunduz in northeastern Afghanistan, who subsequently had him executed.

At the time Babur probably saw his capture of Samarqand as a remarkable triumph and perhaps even as a Timurid renaissance. In retrospect and based on the evidence of his own memoirs, his victory represented the apogee of his early career in Mawarannahr, after which his fortunes sharply deteriorated, leading eventually to his expulsion from his homeland. He himself reports that when he and his cousin took Samarqand after a seven month siege, the inhabitants of the city and its surrounding districts were impoverished, lacking food, money and seed for new crops. As soon as the two men occupied the city Babur's men began to desert, "one by one and two by two," including all his Mongol troops, the first of many times Babur felt betrayed by Mongols. He had good reason, for one of the Mongols who left was Sultan Ahmad Tambal who, together with Mongol allies, seized Babur's younger brother, Jahangir Mirza and with the young man in tow, they now besieged Babur's home, Andijan. This non-Chingizid Mongol, previously a *beg* of Babur's father but also a man closely connected with Mahmud Khan, thus exploited the tensions of appanage politics and during the next several years tried to use Jahangir Mirza to further his own ambitions in the Ferghanah valley. Eventually he was to betray not only Babur but also Mahmud Khan, and was finally killed by the Uzbeks.

Desperate pleas for help from Babur's mother and grandmother in Andijan prompted Babur to abandon Samarqand in March 1498, where he had ruled "as *padshah*" for one hundred days. Leaving the city to his nominal ally, 'Ali Mirza, he marched back towards Ferghanah. However, shortly after leaving Samarqand he learned that the Andijan fortress had already fallen to Ahmad Tambal, who shortly thereafter murdered Babur's religious tutor, Khwajah

⁷⁸ BN-M, fs. 39a-b.

Maulana Qazi. The Khwajah was probably executed because he was far more significant than just an *‘alim* and spiritual mentor to Babur. He was, rather, one of Babur’s most loyal and active partisans, a powerful and wealthy man who helped organized Andijan’s defense and supplied an estimated 8,000 sheep to the garrison during the siege. Ahmad Tambal’s murder of the Qazi was the second of many subsequent reasons why Babur later speaks of this man with such revulsion.

Then just after Babur describes how he and his small band of loyalists took refuge for the winter in Khujand, which he characterizes as a “miserable place,”⁷⁹ he pauses to recall his emotions in one of the many passages that distinguishes his work from the one dimensional military-political narratives of earlier rulers, or those of most court historians. Here for the first time in the text he displays his own emotional vulnerability, that is his humanity, and in so doing also emphasizes his life’s struggles. “Since I had known myself,” he poignantly writes, “I had not known such grief and affliction.”⁸⁰ After recounting how seven to eight hundred of his men whose families had been in Andijan now deserted him, Babur remarks that suffering such “great difficulties, I involuntarily wept!”⁸¹ Accounts of weeping Timurids would startle any reader of traditional court histories, but even more important than that admission of normal human emotion is Babur’s remark *Ta dziimni bilip idim*. “since I had known myself....” By saying this, more particularly by using the reflexive Turki pronoun “özurn,” Babur offers an appreciation of the sense of maturity he recalls feeling by this time of his life, a memory that in his fifteenth year he possessed a conscious apprehension of himself as a distinct person. In modern Turkish a similar phrase carries the connotation of coming of age, of the maturation that accompanies puberty.

Babur’s sense of adulthood or personhood, or the way he felt or conceived of it, was also shared by at least two of his contemporaries. His way of describing how, by 1500, he had fully matured into an autonomous individual, echoes the sentiment of a similar remark of Mir ‘Ali Shir Nava’i, the famous late fifteenth-century Turk! poet and Husayn Bayqara’s principal minister in Herat.

⁷⁹ BN-M, f. 60a.

⁸⁰ BN-M, fs. 54a-b.

⁸¹ BN-M, f. 55b.

Writing in his treatise on the comparative literary virtues of Persian and Turki, the *Muhakamat al-Lughatain*, Naval says of his intellectual development, but using the predominantly Arabic and Persian vocabulary of an urbane intellectual, "Then I reached the age of comprehension."⁸² *Shuur*, the Arabic word that Naval employs has a variety of associated meanings that connote self-consciousness including sensibility, consciousness and perception. Babur's and NavaTs remembered sense of themselves closely resembles, in turn, the recollection of Haydar Mirza, who in the course of describing his service with a Mongol uncle twice alludes to the emotional and intellectual divide between childhood and maturity. First, when describing how his uncle kept him out of a battle in 1512, when he was just twelve years of age, he remarks that his uncle would not allow him to fight because he had not yet reached the age where he could tell right from wrong or stay out of trouble.⁸³ Then shortly afterwards writing in his typically florid Persian, Haydar Mirza remarks of his childhood state three years later in 1515, saying:

The eagle of my intelligence had not yet fully thrown off the fetters in the nest of the brain. The period of my life had not matured from the dawning glow of childhood to the attentive sunlight of youth.⁸⁴

He continues in the same elliptical style, obscuring the individuality that Babur's simpler prose evokes, to remark he was then just fifteen years of age. Babur's great-grandson, Jahangir (r.1605-36) makes a similar distinction between youth and responsible maturity when he writes in his memoirs for the year 1618 "since I arrived at the age of discretion...."⁸⁵ Unfortunately he does not specify the year he attained maturity.

This affecting emotional interlude anticipates many other such displays in the narrative and poetry of his later life, but at this point in the text Babur recalls that in the spring of 1498 he quickly recovered his optimism. Shortly after his mother and grandmother arrived in Khujand from Andijan—the safe passage of women being one of the courtesies of Turco-Mongol warfare—Babur re-

⁸² Nava'i, *Muhakamat al-Lughatain*, 26. His exact wording is:

چون شعور سنی غه قدم قویولدی...

⁸³ TR-T, f. 143b.

⁸⁴ Ibid., f. 143b.

⁸⁵ TJ, II, 12.

newed his efforts to restore his fortunes. Writing again in the ingenuous tone that gives his memoirs their unique quality, Babur rhetorically asks how could a person, that is a Timurid, do anything else, when he is “ambitious to rule and desirous of conquest.”⁸⁶ Babur once again petitioned his Mongol uncle, Sultan Mahmud Khan, to help him. In fact earlier in the year his uncle had responded to Babur’s pleas from Khujand to march on Andijan, but rather than attack the fortress he negotiated with Ahmad Tambal, not surprising considering Tambal’s close personal relationship with the Chaghatay Khan.⁸⁷ In fact Ahmad Tambal’s elder brother, Beg Tilbah, was the Khan’s *eshik agasi*, the “Lord of the his Gate,” that is his principal advisor/minister.⁸⁸

Remembering his uncle’s caution, Babur overlooks this relationship and attributes it to the fact that Mahmud Khan was a poor soldier even if a decent man.⁸⁹ This time, however, his uncle lent him four or five thousand troops to reoccupy Samarqand, but when they retreated in the face of nearby Uzbek raids Babur went to Tashkent himself and was assigned six or seven hundred different troops. He says he wanted these men to make another attempt to recover Samarqand, but by winter he and his men had failed and retired for the winter to the small settlement of Pashagar, a village formerly owned by Khwajah Ahrar, the deceased Naqshbandi sufi *shaykh* whom Babur, like most of his Timurid uncles and cousins, revered. They probably chose the village just because of this important connection. Spring found them wandering aimlessly in the pasture lands south of Ura Tipa, “bewildered,” as Babur says, “not knowing where to go, not knowing what to do.”⁹⁰

The Qazaq Tears

1498-1499 was the initial *fatrat* or interregnum in Babur’s early career, the first time he became a *qazaq*, a political vagabond, a throneless, wandering Timurid, like his cousin Baysunghur Mirza, whom Babur had so recently expelled from Samarqand. Babur

⁸⁶ BN-M, f. 55b.

⁸⁷ BN-M, f. 71b.

⁸⁸ BN-M, f. 55a. For this office see BN-A, 606-607.

⁸⁹ BN-M, f. 54b.

⁹⁰ BN-M, f. 60a.

repeatedly uses the term *qazaqtiqlar*—throneless, vagabond times—to characterize his and other Timurids' days of wandering in the political wilderness, fighting for fortresses and kingdoms, or like Babur, trying to recover those they had lost. He twice mentions Sultan Husayn Bayqara's *qazaqtiqlar*, the days before he seized Harat, his birthplace, in 1469.⁹¹ In these situations only considerable luck and military success generated the power and prestige that the charisma of Timurid or Chingizid lineage could not guarantee. If frequently and continuously repeated victories generated a dynamic charisma, composed of horses for mounts, sheep and goats for food, armaments and armor, sometimes coin, usually additional troops and the aura of invincibility or at least good fortune. Such hard-won wealth and prestige sometimes allowed displaced rulers or political vagabonds of good lineage to move from *qazaqtiq* status of ambitious brigandage to *tsliql*, or sovereignty, or from *fatrat* to *fursat*.⁹²

This process of generating active charisma was still observable in the early twentieth century in northwestern Iran, not far from the region where Husayn Bayqara spent his own *qazaqtiq* days. A hypothetical example was evocatively described for a pastoral nomadic setting in the early twentieth century by a member of the Turkic Shah Sevan federation living within the Iranian border, northeast of Tabriz in the Mughan steppe, near the Caspian Sea. Speaking in the 1960's and alluding to the turmoil of post-World War I Iran this man said to his educated questioner:

As you now acquire rank with your pen, just so in those times, [before 1923] whoever was smart would acquire rank. For example, one day I might raid a camp, or leave five men dead.

They would then call me *ashrar*, and fifty horsemen, say, would follow me.... The smart man who took his gun and brought in most by his nightly raids—they would call him smart, they would call him chief, he was reckoned important.... That was how the great tribes became powerful *dshrars*?⁹³

⁹¹ BN-M., fs. 164a-165a. See also BN-B, p. 258, n. 3. The author of the history of ShTbanT Khan, Kamal al-Dm 'A1TBina'T (1453-1512) uses the phrase *zamd-n-i qazaqi* "qazaq times" to characterize Shibam's early period of struggle. For the Persian text see Kazuyuki Kubo's edited text "*Shaybmd-n-dma*" in Mano and Kubo, *A Synthetical Study on Central Asian Culture in the Turco-Islamic Period*, 5.

⁹² Or as Said Amir Arjomand summarizes Max Weber's theory, "...quintessentially, power engenders charisma and ...the continuous exercise of power is self-legitimatory." *The Shadow of God and the Hidden Imam*, 6.

⁹³ Tapper, *Frontier Nomads of Iran*, 244.

This Shah Sevan tribesman used *ashrar*, an Arabic term meaning “sinful or seditious” as a latter day equivalent of the Turki *qazaq*, the word Babur employs for freebooter or political exile; he employed *ashrarlaq* exactly as Babur uses *qazaqhiq*. Babur was not a pastoral nomad, not a tribal leader; nor were most of his Timurid and Chingizid rivals in the late fifteenth century. Nonetheless, his unstructured, atomized political environment called for the same skills and offered similar rewards as did raiding for politically ambitious Shah Sevan tribesmen.

Similar stories about Timur’s rise to power were told in 1405 to the Castilian ambassador to Samarqand, Ruy Gonzalez de Clavijo. While sometimes thought to have been apocryphal, knowledge of twentieth century pastoral nomadic societies such as the Shah Sevan make these stories seem eminently plausible. Clavijo wrote:

According to the stories told us, Timur in his youth was wont to ride out with his four or five companions on foray, and one day they would lift a sheep and on another occasion a cow, taking these by stealth from the flocks of their neighbours. Then when home again Timur would make a feast of his booty, inviting his companions, and others would join for he was a man of heart and very hospitable, dividing what he had with friends. Others now came to join his following until at length he had some three hundred horsemen under his command, and with these he would ride forth through the countryside plundering and robbing all who came his way; but next dividing all he took among those who rode with him.⁹⁴

Clavijo’s report perfectly encapsulates nomadic raiding as well as the customary and expected largess of raiders. Babur’s own minutely documented generosity when he takes Delhi and Agra in 1526 may be at least partly attributed to this tradition. Only missing from Clavijo’s report and from that of the Shah Sevan tribesman is an account of the ease and frequency with which men might pragmatically shift their loyalty from one leader to another. All of these characteristics were earlier evident in Mongolia and in the person and career of Chingiz Khan.⁹⁵

In 1498 Babur was fortunate not to have to begin his career from

⁹⁴ See Tapper, *Frontier Nomads of Iran*, glossary, xvi and index, 412.

⁹⁵ Clavijo, *Embassy to Tamerlane 1403-1406*, 210-11.

⁹⁶ Ratchnevsky describes this tradition of largess given to solidify tribal followers, *Genghis Khan*, see especially pp. 23 & 148.

such a lowly position as the hypothetical Shah Sevan tribesman, or even the relative early obscurity of Timur or Chingiz Khan. He was a recognized Timurid. By his own count—or according to his recollection—he still had 240 men with him in the summer of 1499 and at least some of them, he writes, called him *padshah*?⁹⁷ Whether or not these men really called him anything more than *mirza* at this time, with their aid he began the process of recovering Ferghanah, first occupying Marginan, just west of Andijan, in the early summer of 1499. Then, following a popular rebellion against the Ahmad Tambal and his Mongols in Akhsi and Andijan, Babur reentered his old fortress in June or July. Within days he also reoccupied his father's capital at Akhsi about forty-five miles to the north-north-west, and began reasserting control over nearby towns and villages, as his Mongol opponents dissolved into small groups of refugees or fled with Ahmad Tambal.

Apart from his own men a number of Mongols remained behind. These men were the same Mongols who had helped to hold Andijan against Babur a year earlier and who had stripped his supporters and those of Khwajah Maulana Qazi of their possessions. Babur identifies them as adherents of his mother, a daughter of Yunas Khan, and other Mongols who in 1495 had been serving members of the Dughlat clan in Hisar, when Husayn Bayqara attacked the city.⁹⁸ They then fled north to Andijan, where they formally pledged their allegiance to Babur. He says they were *Mughul ululsi din*, from the Mongol *ulus*, the Mongol tribe, community or "nation," who were known for their *yamanliq ve bozuqchatiq*, their "viciousness and destructiveness," and then notes bitterly that they rebelled against him four or five times during his life.⁹⁹ He also remarks that they had repeatedly acted similarly with their own *khans*, a comment borne out in page after page of Haydar Mirza's history. Given their previous treachery Babur's men now suggested to him these Mongols be stripped of their stolen clothes, horses and sheep, and he agreed to confiscate those things the Mongols had taken during the recent *qazaqliq* times. However, this simple act of just retribution prompted these same Mongols to leave Andijan and once again join Sultan Ahmad Tambal, prompting Babur writing

⁹⁷ BN-M, fs. 61 & 65a.

⁹⁸ BN-M, fs. 32b & 65a.

⁹⁹ Ibid., f. 64b.

many years later, to reflect on and cite this episode as a lesson in statesmanship.

It is just how Babur analyzes this incident that makes his memoir seem not merely an intriguing personal narrative but also an idiosyncratic kind of “mirror for princes” guide for future sovereigns. The conclusion he draws while years later reflecting on the wisdom of this decision is an example of how Babur offers maxims or political truisms not as abstracted generalizations typical of the “advice” genre, but commentaries on specific incidents. He obviously had drawn an important lesson from this encounter with these Mongols that he wanted to pass on, probably to his eldest son Humayun. Thus while he writes “Indeed, it seemed just,” his men should reclaim their property, he concludes that politics not justice should have been his guide.

In the matter of seizing and holding kingdoms, although some acts may appear to be just and reasonable it is necessary and expedient to consider the 100,000 implications of every one. In consequence of our giving this one particular imprudent command there arose such tumult and rebellions. Eventually this single ill-considered order meant we had to leave Andijan a second time.¹⁰⁰

After further reflecting on the inherent treachery of Mongols that resulted, he says, from their *mughultiq natijeh* their “innate Mongol nature,” Babur resumes his narrative of his skirmishes and battles with the Mongol Sultan Ahmad Tambal, who held Babur’s brother, Jahangir Mirza, in his camp. Now in control of Andijan and Akhsi Babur and his men, who then probably numbered no more than 3-400, set off in August 1499 to retake the eastern Ferghanah for tresses of Ush and Uzgend, just southeast and east of Andijan respectively. Babur’s narrative of the next year’s events leading up to his second occupation of Samarqand conveys a sense of the confusion of this period with an immediacy borne of his typically detailed description of warfare and political intrigue.

Attacking the small fortress of Madu (Mazu) just southeast of Ush, commanded by Ahmad Tambal’s brother with 250 men, Babur’s equally small force initially lost many men killed by rocks thrown by the defenders on the walls high above a riverbed. However, after Babur seized control of the river and the water supply

¹⁰⁰ BN-M, f. 64b.

the Mongols surrendered and were taken off to Andijan in chains. Meanwhile Tambal himself moved his troops away from threatening Andijan to confront Babur near Ush, where the two "armies" faced each other for over a month, indulging in occasional skirmishes but little serious warfare. Finally, in the late fall of 1499 they clashed in a pitched battle involving both armored cavalry and foot soldiers with shields. In this Babur's first real battle, he was victorious, sending Tambal fleeing the field and capturing many enemy troops, who were immediately beheaded.

Despite this minor victory Babur and his men had to retire to Andijan because their meagre supplies were exhausted. Then they decided to spend the winter in the nearby hills, where the forests held abundant game. There they set fires to flush out goats and deer, and made typically Turco-Mongol hunting circles to encircle pheasants that they killed with falcons and darts.¹⁰¹ Meanwhile his *begs* raided Tambal's forces, bringing in heads of the unlucky men they caught, and drove off their enemy's herds to deprive them of food. Babur describes these attacks as *qazaqs*, or raids, not full scale attacks or campaigns; he doesn't even use the word *chapqun*, the term he later uses to describe raids he makes for sheep, goats or general booty in Afghanistan. However, just at the point, as "the enemy was being worn down and weakened,"¹⁰² Qambar 'Ali Mughul, Babur's wealthiest but most capricious *beg*, asked permission to go home and influenced others to do the same. With his force partly dispersed Babur retired to Andijan. Simultaneously Sultan Ahmad Tambal sent emissaries to Sultan Mahmud Khan in Tashkent, where Tambal's relative was not only the "Lord of the Khan's gate," but also the tutor or *beg atekeh* to the Khan's favorite son.

The former, Beg Tilbah, Tambal's elder brother and long in service with Mongol khans in the Alt! Shahr country east of Ferghanah, was allowed to join Tambal along with an estimated 5-6,000 troops under the Khan's favorite son. As they marched east into the valley they decided to besiege Kasan, immediately north of

¹⁰¹ The Arab historian Ahmad Ibn Arabshah gives a dramatically worded picture of Timur's Turco-Mongol hunting customs designed also to train warriors for battle. See Ahmed Ibn Arabshah, *Tamerlane or Timur the Great Amir* J. H. Sanders trans. (Lahore: Progressive Books, repr. 1976), 308-9.

¹⁰² BN-M, f. 71b.

Akhsi, Babur with the few horsemen still attending him then rode overnight from Andijan to Akhsi; many of his men arrived in his father's old capital suffering from frostbite in the bitterly cold winter weather. Despite their small numbers and condition, the news of their unexpected arrival apparently frightened off the large Tashkent force, for they inexplicably retreated before Tambal arrived from Uzgend. When Tambal reached the area his forces and Babur's engaged in some inconsequential skirmishes before settling down for a long standoff at the Pishkaran fortress east of Kasan.

During the winter months of 1500 Babur maneuvered to survive in a political environment marked not only by the hostility of Ahmad Tambal, who still held Babur's brother, Jahangir Mirza, but by the uncertain loyalties of local notables and his own men. While his men and Tambal's carried out raids against each other's camp he struggled to hold his forces together and maintain his authority. Qambar 'All, according to Babur, continued to act like a primadonna and threatened to return to his estates—he had left Babur and then returned at least twice in the previous two years. This time he actually began riding off when some of Babur's *begs* appealed to him to stay.¹⁰³ He was to repeat this behavior several more times in the following years, disappearing and rejoining Babur at his own choice. Recalling his behavior many years later in India, Babur bitterly characterized him as a “fickle, unreliable manikin,”¹⁰⁴ using the contemptuous Persian pejorative term for man, *mardak*, to convey his distaste for Qambar 'All's cynical, selfish behavior.¹⁰⁵

Babur consistently employs the contemptuous term *mardak* throughout his memoir, usually prefaced by a series of derogatory adjectives, to denounce men who had betrayed, simply opposed him or, in his view, had acted ignobly. In most cases he reserves this epithet for men with no Timurid or Chingizid blood; often he intends it to be a humiliating reference to someone's common status. Another man whom he characterizes as a *mardak* was a hill chief near Andijan who just at this time in the winter of 1500 was threatening to defect to Sultan Ahmad Tambal. Babur seems to

¹⁰³ BN-M, f. 73b.

¹⁰⁴ BN-M, f. 71b.

¹⁰⁵ In Persian the “k” suffixed to any word indicates contempt. Here it is suffixed to *mard* or man.

have feared this man, Sayyid Yusuf Mejemi, would take the many tribesmen he controlled to Tambal's side. According to Babur, Sayyid Yusuf had already changed sides two or three times between himself and Sultan Tambal in the past year and a half and had begun to make new overtures to Tambal. He complains that Sayyid Yusuf while greater than a chief, had unjustifiably begun acting like a *beg*, although no one had ever made him one.¹⁰⁶ After cutting off his route to Ahmad Tambal Babur brought Sayyid Yusuf into his own entourage, where he appears to have remained.

Babur uses *mardak* for the third time within the same folio to rail against the truce with Sultan Ahmad Tambal that was forced on him by Qambar All and 'Alī Dust Tagha'i in February 1500. He says he had not known of and would not have approved such an agreement, but that because these two *mardaks*, these two manikins, were great *begs* he had no choice. Ferghanah was divided between himself and Jahangir Mirza, that is between himself and Sultan Ahmad Tambal who still controlled his brother, with Babur taking Andijan and towns such as Uzgend in the east and Jahangir Mirza/Tambal given Akhsi and the areas to the north and west. The two brothers agreed jointly to attack Samarqand and after the city was taken Babur would rule from there and Jahangir Mirza from Andijan. In essence Babur and his brother's supporters seemed to be trying to replicate the appanage system of the previous generation but within their own nuclear family. His brother and Ahmad Tambal arrived in Babur's camp to pay their respects and formalize the agreement. They dispersed to Akhsi and Andijan respectively and both sides released prisoners they had captured in the previous year.

Returning to Andijan Babur found himself little more than a nominal sovereign at seventeen years of age. He writes that 'Alī Dust Tagha's manner towards him had changed utterly. The man who had surrendered Andijan to Sultan Ahmad Tambal now dismissed some of Babur's loyal supporters who had been with him during his *qazaqtiq* times, claiming that as some of these men had been friends of the martyred Khwajah Maulana Qazi, Babur's old religious tutor, they would revenge themselves on him. 'Alī Dust Tagha'i must have been a mature man in 1500 as he had served Babur's paternal grandfather, Abu Sa'id Mirza (d. 1469), as well as

¹⁰⁶ BN-M, f. 73b.

Babur's father. He was a relative of Babur's maternal grandmother, Isen Devlat Begim. In his character sketches of 'Umar Shaykh Mirza's principal *begs* Babur not surprisingly denounces him as cheap, rebellious, hypocritical and egotistical among his other failings,¹⁰⁷ although Babur himself and probably most Turco-Mongol warriors saw egotism as a manly virtue. To make matters worse in Babur's eyes 'Ali Dust's son, Muhammad Dust, began assuming royal airs, *salatin dasLun*, at this time by holding formal dinners as well as conducting court and starting a textile "workshop," an implicit claim of sovereign status. Babur believed they acted this way because Sultan Ahmad Tambal supported them, but whether his suspicions were correct or not his most telling comment on his situation in February and March 1500 was his admission that he was incapable of challenging their sovereign pretensions. "I had neither the authority nor power," Babur bitterly recalls, "to forbid such unprecedented behavior, but was debased by father and son."¹⁰⁸

Marriage— and Love

After Babur describes how some of his allies were driven off while others challenged his legitimacy, he unexpectedly returns to the subject of his adolescent self-awareness by describing how in March 1500 he was at least partly distracted from his political troubles by two novel emotional upheavals. He was married to his first cousin, Sultan Ahmad Mirza's daughter, 'Ayisha Sultan Begim, and almost simultaneously fell in love—with a boy in the Andijan bazar. Babur's description of these incidents is one of the most engaging passages in his memoir, remarkable for its apparently ingenuous display of emotions, which Muslim writers usually describe only in stylized verse forms.¹⁰⁹ Interrupting his relentless narrative of disastrous or inconsequential campaigns and catalogue of personal betrayals, Babur's marriage and passionate infatuation startle the

¹⁰⁷ BN-M, f. 14b-15a.

¹⁰⁸ BN-M, f. 75a.

¹⁰⁹ See above Chapter I, n. 93 for discussion of the use of poetry to convey emotion not usually expressed in prose, citing Reynolds ed., *Interpreting the Self, Autobiography in the Arabic Literary Tradition*, 94.

reader with their reminder of profound emotional attachments and fragile human relations amidst the wreckage of late Timurid political life.

Babur's engagement had of course been arranged, in his case when he visited his uncle Sultan Ahmad Mirza in Samarqand at age five. His description of the events following the actual marriage is unprecedented in its frankness but may describe a common reaction of a seventeen year old confronted with a bride seen only once before as a five year old boy—and the very normality of the emotions he describes is what makes the passage so remarkable. As he recalls these days:

Sultan Ahmad Mirza's daughter called 'Ayisha Sultan Begim, to whom I was affianced while my uncle and father were yet living, reached me in Khujand. I took [her] in the month of Sha'ban. Al though I did not have negative feelings [towards her], yet this was [my] first marriage. On account of bashfulness and modesty I went every ten or fifteen or twenty days. Afterwards I no longer had even that much feeling, but I was still more shy. Then once a month or every forty days my mother *Khariim* would repeatedly prod and harass me to visit her.¹¹⁰

Still, he visited often enough to conceive a child, a daughter who was born just after he seized Samarqand for the second time later in the year.

It is tempting to think but quite impossible to prove there might have been a connection between the emotional strain of this arranged marriage and the infatuation Babur recalls conceiving for a boy in the Andijan bazar during this same brief lull in his campaigns. "During those times," he writes, "there was a boy in the camp bazar named Baburi, his name being appropriate in that way." Then for the first time in his memoir Babur inserts a verse fragment into the text, a Turki poem.

I conceived an uncommon feeling for him.
Still worse, I made myself madly infatuated
with him.¹¹¹

After seeing this boy, Babur continues, "I had not felt affection for anyone. Indeed, I knew nothing of affection or love even from

¹¹⁰ BN-M, f. 75a.

¹¹¹ BN-M, f. 75b.

report!”¹¹² New emotional stirrings prompted him to do what so many other literate love-sick, adolescents have done then and now, he composed a trite poem to express his feelings. Using Persian, the lingua franca of Turco-Mongol aristocrats in heavily Iranized Mawarannahr, Babur writes:

May no person be as ravaged, lovesick and humiliated,
as I,
May no lover be as pitiless and unconcerned
as thou.¹¹³

Then with precisely the same phrase he used to describe his initial reaction to his young bride, Babur remarks that his “bashfulness and modesty” prevented him from looking at Baburi when he met him.

Babur obviously retained a powerfully vivid memory of his infatuation with Baburi, for he describes the psychological tumult he experienced with such evocative detail that he resembles one of the early nineteenth century Romantic poets or Goethe’s *Young Werther*. Muslims, of course, had a rich romantic literary heritage of their own and it is quite likely that his account was modeled on the distraught male lover in the Arabian love story *Layla and Majnun*, as rendered in Persian by several poets with whom he was familiar: Nizami, Jami and Amir Khusrau of Delhi, and in Turki by Mir ‘Ali Shir Navai of Herat.¹¹⁴ This was a common literary idiom on which infatuated lovers could draw. Babur himself invokes the story in one verse to explain his stylized, literary lovesick feelings. Other poets did the same, as exemplified by the seventeenth century Pashtu poet Khushal Khan Khattak in one of his lyrics, in which he writes:

I wander heedless and distraught about the wilderness,
In every way I could be called a latter-day Majnun.¹¹⁵

¹¹² BN-M, f. 75b.

¹¹³ Ibid., f. 75b.

¹¹⁴ Brief descriptions of Nizami⁵ and Jami’s poems are found in A. J. Arberry, *Classical Persian Literature* (London: George Allen & Unwin, repr. 1967), 124 & 447, and Amir Khusrau’s version in Mohammad Wahid Mirza, *The Life and Works of Amir Khusrau* (Delhi: Idarah-i Adabiyat-i Delli, repr. 1974), 197-99. Nava’i’s text in Latin script is given by Ulkii Qelik, Ali-ir Nevayi, *Leyli vii Mecnun* (Ankara: Atatürk Kültür, 1996).

¹¹⁵ D. N. Mackenzie ed. and trans., *Poems from the Divan of Khushal Khan Khattak*

Whether or not this story informed Babur's own prose account or supplied him with vocabulary to explain his feelings, he dwells more on this episode than any other emotional memory which he thinks to record in the text. As he continues:

One day in this period of love and affection, *mihru mahabbat*, I was walking in a lane with friends when I came face to face with Babun. I became so embarrassed I was almost completely nonplussed, unable look directly at him or speak to him. Bashful and ashamed I passed by.¹¹⁶

He says that at that moment he recalled an apposite Persian couplet of the writer, Muhammad Salih, who was later to become a court historian of Shibani Khan. He may actually have remembered the verse at this time, for in this section he makes a characteristically careful distinction between this Persian verse of Salih's, the one he himself composed and other Persian and Turki verses which he obviously added when he wrote this section of the text in India. Whether he recalled this couplet exactly then or a few days later Babur chose the perfect verse to punctuate the story of his confusion.

Whenever I observe my love I am badly disconcerted,
My friends look at me and I look away.¹¹⁷

As he himself says, in these circumstances this verse was wonderfully appropriate.

In the days following this chance encounter Babur recalled that he had recklessly indulged his newly discovered emotions. His account corroborates in an uncanny way the observation of Firdausi, the author of the eleventh century Persian-language epic poem, the *Shah-namah*) who observes of adolescents, "For whoever tasted the wine of youth saw naught in the world but himself."¹¹⁸ Babur describes the self-absorbed carelessness and oblivious manner of a newly infatuated youth with the compelling sense of authenticity that gives his memoirs such power.

(London: George Allen and Unwin, 1965), 127. Babur's poem is cited below, Chapter III.

¹¹⁶ BN-M, f. 75b.

¹¹⁷ Ibid., f. 76a.

¹¹⁸ Quoted in a slightly different translation by Finn Theisen, *A Manual of Classical Persian Prosody* (Wiesbaden: Otto Harrassowitz, 1982), 36.

“In that excess of desire and affection,” he writes, “on account of youthfulness and overwhelming passion, I wandered shoeless and bareheaded through street and lane, in vineyard and garden, neither respecting friends or strangers nor caring for myself or others.”¹¹⁹

“Sometimes,” he continues, “I wandered out alone like a madman into the hills and steppe. Sometimes I searched in gardens and neighborhoods, lane by lane. It was not my decision to walk or sit; it was not my choice to come or go.”¹²⁰ Babur concludes this section with an unidentified Turk! verse:

Neither have I the power to go nor have I the strength to stay,
You have enslaved me in this condition, O heart.¹²¹

Return to Samarqand

It is tempting to imagine Babur might have also intended this verse to be a metaphor of his political situation, his compelling desire to re-take Samarqand, a subject which he now returns to in the narrative as abruptly as he had left it to recall his emotional turmoil. Suddenly, just about the time Babur was wandering lovesick about the lanes and outlying districts of Andijan, the road to Samarqand opened again. Sultan ‘Ali Mirza, Babur’s cousin and nominal ally whom he had left in Samarqand in 1498, faced a rebellion of a group of his father’s Mongol *begs* known as Tarkhans.¹²² Simultaneously, and perhaps in concert with the Tarkhans, Mahmud Khan sent a Mongol army from Tashkent to take Samarqand on his own account. Allied briefly the two groups of Mongols quickly fell out, and unable to take the city the Tarkhans then sent a message to Babur inviting him to reoccupy the city. In May or June 1500 Babur set off again from Andijan toward Samarqand, learning just as they left that Sultan Ahmad Tambal’s brother had broken the truce with Babur, probably with Tambal’s blessing or instigation. Not only did he refuse to evacuate Uzgend, as required by the agreement, but he seized the major fortress of Ush.

Given this threatening situation to the east and his suspicion of

¹¹⁹ BN-M, f. 76a.

¹²⁰ Ibid., f. 76a.

¹²¹ Ibid., f. 76a.

¹²² See BN-B, p. 31 & n. 4 and TR-R, p. 55 n. 3.

his *begs*, Qambar ‘Ali Mughul and ‘Ali Dust Tagha’i, Babur decided to press on to Samarqand where, he was told, Khwajah Yahya Ahrari, the son of his Naqshbandi sufi patron saint, Khwajah Ahrar, supported him.¹²³ However, just as he and his men planned to take the city by stealth they learned that Shibam Khan had occupied Bukhara and was marching on Samarqand, which he entered shortly afterwards. Babur and his men then retreated to Timur’s second capital Shahr-i sabz, south of Samarqand, to join the Tarkhans.¹²⁴ He heard that Sultan ‘Ali Mirza offered the city to the Uzbeks in exchange for his father’s old lands. Having been deprived of support by the Tarkhan’s rebellion he may well have done so, but whatever the exact agreement it did him little good. He was executed by Shibam Khan almost as soon as the Uzbek leader arrived outside the city. Shortly afterwards Uzbeks, probably on Shibam Khan’s orders, killed the Naqshbandi *shaykh* Khwajah Yahya Ahrari and two of his sons whom Shibam, Babur writes, had earlier expelled from Samarqand. While Shibam denied responsibility for the Ahrari murders he had good reason to fear their half-century religious and political connection with Timurids. Babur sarcastically remarks of Shibam’s denial, which he obviously disbelieved, that the denial was worse than the act. He added that if rulers could not control their men the authority of *khans* and *padshahs* was meaningless!¹²⁵

In the midst of these events ‘Ali Dust Tagha’i and his son, Muhammad Dust, defected to Sultan Ahmad Tambal, confirming Babur’s earlier suspicion of their loyalty. Or perhaps their actions led him, writing in India so many years later, to reflect on signs that now suggested to him their earlier disloyal intentions. Then just after Shibam Khan took Samarqand Babur’s new-found allies, the Tarkhan Mongols, abandoned him and joined Khusrau Shah who by then was the *de facto* ruler of the northeastern Oxus region,

¹²³ This is one of the few instances in Babur’s entire narrative where another historian, in this case Mulla Bina’i, supplies corroborating details. See Kubo ed., *Shaybani-nama*, 66-71.

¹²⁴ Shahr-i sabz is the name of the region of Timur’s birthplace also known as Kish, as well as the city. For a history of the region and the architectural remains of the city see M. E. Masson and G. A. Pugachenkova, “Shakhri Syabz Pri Timure i Ulugh Beke (“Shahr-i Sabz From Timur to Ulugh Beg”),” J. M. Rogers trans. *Iran* 26 (1978), 103-26.

¹²⁵ BN-M, f. 81a. Kubo, *Shaybani-nama*, 77.

including southern Mawarannahr and northern Afghanistan. By this time Khusrau Shah had blinded the romantic Timurid Sultan Mas'ud Mirza, whose youthful guardian he had been, and murdered Mas'ud Mirza's brother, Baysunghur Mirza, as part of his campaign to become an independent ruler in this former Timurid appanage.¹²⁶ In Babur's eyes Khusrau Shah had become as great an enemy to the Timurids as Sultan Ahmad Tambal, and he later speaks of this man with equal hatred and contempt.

At this point in the narrative Babur once again recalls his despair. "We were deprived," he writes, "of city and province, uncertain as to whether to leave or to remain,"¹²⁷ a literal verbal echo of his lovesick state in Andijan and a reprise of his hopelessness after first abandoning Samarqand in 1498. Babur now thought of fleeing from the Uzbeks to Mughulistan to seek the help of his younger Mongol uncle Sultan Ahmad Khan (Kichik Khan), but this idea was obviously no more than a reflection of his desperation, as the Mongol lands were far too distant. Instead, he decided to circle around Samarqand to the south and east through Khusrau Shah's territories, a difficult choice as the Qipchaq Turk had virtually declared war on his former Timurid overlords. Babur and his men quickly rode southeast to the Kamrud river and then struggled north up the river valley over a perilous steep, narrow pass to the Zarafshan river due east of Samarqand, suffering desertions and the loss of horses and camels as they went.

Camping on the north side of the Zarafshan Babur and his "lightly armed" men debated what to do next. By the evidence of Babur's narrative they must have felt desperate; their situation was little better than that following his retreat from Samarqand in 1498. Babur reports he had 240 men—"good and bad"—with him in camp, while Shibam Khan was moving about the area with an estimated 3-4,000 Uzbeks, leaving Samarqand garrisoned with an additional five to six hundred men. Not only was Babur himself vastly outnumbered but his mother, wife and relatives were also vulnerable to Uzbek attack. After Babur had left Andijan in May or June they had also abandoned the town, probably because they felt threatened by Sultan Ahmad Tambal.¹²⁸ At this time they were staying in Ura Tipa, just north of his camp and like Babur himself

¹²⁶ BN-M, fs. 58a-b.

¹²⁷ BN-M, f. 81a.

¹²⁸ BN-M, f. 86b.

they were within a days march of Uzbek forces in Samarqand.

Thus when Babur and his small force now decided to try to take Samarqand by surprise they were acting from weakness rather than strength, as Babur makes clear by his description of their plan. He and his men calculated, he says, that the Uzbeks would not have had time to consolidate their control of a city long governed by Timurids. Babur writes that Samarqandis would never help the Uzbeks and therefore if he and his men acted quickly he thought “something might come of it!”—a good precis of the fortuitous and contingent nature of his career before 1526. After explaining their plan to scale the walls by stealth in the early morning Babur concludes “Whatever was God’s will would be.”¹²⁹ At this point in the narrative Babur recalls that the night before the attack he had a dream in which his Naqshbandi patron saint, Khwajah ‘Ubaydullah Ahrar, appeared and assured him of victory. What Babur describes is a dream sequence that may have been prompted by the spiritual training of Ahrari Naqshbandis like himself, in which *murids* or disciples were shown how to have *suhbat*, or spiritual communion with Ahrar.¹³⁰ This rare reference to spiritual solace reinforces the sense of fatalism Babur evidently felt at this time. Had he commanded 5,000 men before Samarqand his anxiety might not have needed to call forth Ahrar’s comforting image. Yet “I actually took Samarqand a few days later,” he writes after describing the dream.¹³¹

With this improbable success Babur experienced at age 19 the greatest triumph of his early career. In the midst of relating how he and his men seized Samarqand he interrupts the narrative with one of his several autobiographical bookmarks, reminding them first, that he had restored the honor of the Timurid dynasty and second, that he had outdone all other Timurids by his achievement. He had, he proudly reports, even surpassed the great Husayn Bayqara of Harat, whom Babur had earlier characterized as *karim al-tarafayn* doubly noble because of his descent from two Timurids.¹³²

In Babur’s eyes Husayn Bayqara and his sons represented the Timurid elite; in another passage he refers to Husayn Bayqara as

¹²⁹ BN-M, 83a.

¹³⁰ See below chapter 3 for a discussion of Naqshbandi spiritual exercises.

¹³¹ BN-M, f. 83b.

¹³² BN-M, f. 163b.

the *asil padshah*, the high-born emperor.¹³³ When therefore he spends a page favorably comparing the magnitude of his second occupation of Samarqand with Husayn Bayqara's conquest of Harat in 1470 he is making one of the most important political statements in the *Vaqai*. Writing in India he is implicitly claiming to possess the stature in the Timurid world in 1527-29 that Husayn Bayqara enjoyed prior to his death in 1506. After describing how "the great, the noble and the important men of the city" came to welcome him back to Samarqand in the fall of 1500, Babur proudly observes he had expelled the "Uzbek strangers and enemies" who had occupied Samarqand earlier in the year, and recovered the "devastated and pillaged province" for "our family."¹³⁴ "Sultan Husayn Mirza," he remarks, "had similarly taken Harat by surprise," but to a discerning person, Babur points out, it was obvious that the two events were not comparable.

First, this is because Sultan Husayn was an experienced padshah of mature years.

Second, this is because his adversary was Yadgar Muhammad Nasir Mirza, an inexperienced boy of eighteen years.

Third, this is because Mir 'Ali Mirakhur, a person who knew the conditions within the enemy [camp] sent people to the Mirza [who] caught the adversary unawares.

Fourth, this is because his adversary was not in the fortress but in the *Bdgh-i faghdn*, the Ravens³ Garden. Muhammad and his followers were so falling-down drunk that night, that Yadgar Muhammad Mirza had only three men at his gate and they were also drunk.

Fifth, this is because, the first time he thus came by surprise he took [the city].¹³⁵

Even if Babur is belittling Husayn Bayqara's achievement his account still reminds readers to be cautious about accepting court historians' epic portrayal of such encounters in their histories. In this comparison neither Babur nor Husayn Bayqara fought a memorable battle to win a great city.

Babur then contrasts the ease with which Husayn Bayqara took Harat with his own experience before Samarqand in 1500. "When I took Samarqand," he writes:

¹³³ Ibid., f. 163b.

¹³⁴ BN-M, f. 85a.

¹³⁵ Ibid., fs. 85a-85b.

I was in my nineteenth year. I had neither seen nor experienced very much.

Second, this is because my enemy was such a man as Shibaq Khan, a person of mature years, who was extremely knowledgeable and experienced.

Third, this is because no person came out to me from Samarqand, although I was beloved by the people of the city, but no one could think of doing so for fear of Shibaq Khan.

Fourth, this is because my adversary was in the fort and the fort was taken and the adversary driven off.

Fifth, this is because once [in 1498 we] came with designs on Samarqand and [our] adversary was alerted. The second time God made it right. Samarqand was won.¹³⁶

Just in case his readers might suspect that these favorable comparisons are just a little bit exaggerated, he concludes with his first rendition of the perennial autobiographical claim that he is telling the truth. "No criticism of people is intended from these words," he writes, "This statement is accurate as given above. I do not intend to aggrandize myself by writing this. What was written was the truth."¹³⁷ Babur fails to point out, of course, that whereas Husayn Bayqara had held Harat for thirty-six years he himself was driven out of Samarqand a short time later.

In the autumn and winter of 1500, though, poets composed chronograms to commemorate the date of his victory. Writers such as the poet and historian Mulla Banna! who had recently been patronized by Shibani Khan, now eulogized Babur, forecasting his rise from the status of a Timurid prince to that of an Iranian monarch. He wrote that "My *mirza* who will be *shah* of sea and land," while pointedly remarking in another poem that he could not continue to produce more verse without food and clothing or some kind of grant!¹³⁸ Shibani Khan himself withdrew with his army and recently arrived relatives to Bukhara. Nearby forts reaffirmed their Timurid allegiance as Uzbeks were driven out or commanders adjusted to new political realities. "Our affairs," Babur observes, "were very much improved."¹³⁹ His mother, wife and relations also arrived from nearby Ura Tipa, which they had only reached after

¹³⁶ Ibid., f. 85b.

¹³⁷ Ibid., fs. 85b-86a.

¹³⁸ BN-M, fs. 87a-b

¹³⁹ BN-M, f. 86b.

suffering many unspecified hardships on the trip from Andijan. Crowning this triumphal moment Babur's first daughter was born to his young wife, 'Ayisha Sultan Begim, just after she arrived in Samarqand. Unfortunately the baby died after little more than a month, which if Babur had been superstitious, he might have taken as a bad omen.

However much Babur's fortunes had improved he still commanded only a few hundred men. Winter was setting in and Shibam Khan, surprised perhaps but not defeated, remained close at hand with thousands of horsemen in Bukhara. "After the Samarqand conquest," therefore, Babur "repeatedly sent ambassadors and commanders to seek help on every side from *khans* and sultans, *amirs* and border lords."¹⁴⁰ This effort produced fewer than 1000 men, a few hundred of whom ostensibly came from his brother Jahangir, but were commanded by Khalil, Ahmad Tambal's younger brother, who had fought against Babur the previous year. None of these reinforcements, most of whom were probably Mongols, seem to have had any particular connection to Babur's family but they were enough for him to chance a pitched battle with Shibam Khan in April or May of the following year, 1501. Just prior to the battle Babur heard that fifteen hundred horsemen from Sultan Mahmud Khan and another one to two thousand commanded by one of the Tarkhans were camped nearby and would arrive within a day, but he says that astrological considerations convinced him to begin the battle prematurely. These considerations were, he writes with typical candour, "probably worthless; [we] hastened without cause."¹⁴¹ However, in this case Babur may have just been second guessing himself so long after the fact. It is quite likely that the troops, which he implies could have tipped the balance in his favor, were just biding their time to see how the battle developed. In particular his Mongol uncle, Sultan Mahmud Khan, had usually been reluctant to help his nephew beyond offering friendly greetings and vague promises.

About ten days after marching beyond the walls of Samarqand to a nearby meadow, time spent equipping his army and digging defensive works, the armies of Babur and Shibam Khan fought the pitched cavalry battle of Sar-i Pul, the "bridge-head" just northeast

¹⁴⁰ BN-M, f. 86b.

¹⁴¹ BN-M, f. 89a.

of the city but south of the Zarafshan river. Babur doesn't give an estimate of the troop strengths on either side, but by early afternoon he suffered a devastating defeat with the loss of many commanders and men. The fallen included, curiously, Khalil Sultan, whose loyalty seems inexplicable in view of his part in his brother's struggles with Babur in Ferghanah. Many survivors fled to nearby Ura Tipa or south to Qunduz or Hisar in Khusrau Shah's territories. Many of the Mongols with Babur began plundering his remaining troops as soon as the battle seemed lost, prompting another of his bitter remarks on the "habits of the wretched Mongols who acted this way not just this once but always."¹⁴² Babur and a few men forded and swam to the northern side of the river where more of his men were unhorsed, plundered and killed by these "vile Mongols."¹⁴³ Finally they were able to recross the river to the west of the battle zone and make their way back to Samarqand, where they reentered the walled inner city on the northeastern side. Babur lost the battle to a superior force, an experienced commander and, perhaps most of all, to a disciplined nomadic cavalry who were capable, as Babur enviously remembered a quarter of a century later, of charging, wheeling and retreating in strict formation.¹⁴⁴ Shibam's army probably more closely resembled Timur's than the ad hoc coalition Babur had patched together in the previous months.

Now surrounded inside Samarqand Babur and his small force were besieged by the Uzbeks, who at least once made a sustained but unsuccessful attack on the walls with seven or eight hundred men using ladders. However, in the ensuing months Shibam Khan was largely content to blockade the city at a distance while staging small-scale attacks and feigning others in order to drive the defenders to the state nervous of exhaustion that Babur himself describes. In the late summer the harvest came and went with no food entering the city. By then "the condition of people deteriorated even to the extent that the poor and indigent began eating dogs and don keys."¹⁴⁵ Babur dispatched envoys and men in every direction, but

¹⁴² BN-M, f. 90a.

¹⁴³ BN-M, f. 90b.

¹⁴⁴ BN-M, f. 90a.

¹⁴⁵ BN-M, f. 93b.

“help came from no one.” He then goes on to lament—and realistically observe:

Since [even] in those times when we were strong and powerful and had not suffered any kind of defeat or loss no one offered help or support, why should anyone help us now? Given this earlier experience it was probably pointless to try to hold out.... [Even] a brave and experienced *padshah*like Sultan Husayn Mirza did not help us, did not send an envoy to encourage us [but] sent...an envoy to Shibam Khan.¹⁴⁶

Babur’s inability to secure aid from his most powerful Timurid relative at a time when five thousand men might have saved Samarqand may have been partly due to Shibani’s Khan’s growing reputation and Babur’s own marked lack of prestige. Husayn Bayqara may also have been unwilling to intervene for a variety of personal reasons ranging from his arthritis and his advanced age to his reluctance to leave the urban pleasures of Harat for a new campaign. Whatever considerations may have influenced Husayn Bayqara, his inactivity, or his failure even to write to Babur while contacting Shibani Khan, suggests he did not possess the sense of shared interest that distinguished the Uzbek federation or the feeling of common Timurid dynastic interest that Babur later claimed motivated him to travel from Kabul to Harat in 1506 to counter the growing Uzbek threat to that city.

No help arrived, either from Husayn Bayqara or his uncle Mahmud Khan. “In despair troops and peasants, one by one and two by two abandoned the fortress.”¹⁴⁷ Important men and those close to Babur began going over the walls, even such prominent *begs* as Ways Laghari fled. “We became,” writes Babur, “completely desperate. All hope was lost.”¹⁴⁸ Leaving behind his sister, Khanzada Begim, for Shibam Khan as a kind of marital ransom, Babur, his mother, a few women and a few remaining *begs*, including interestingly, Qambar (Ali Mughul, fled the city around midnight.¹⁴⁹

¹⁴⁶ BN-M, f. 94a. The meaning of part of this passage, rendered here as “Given our experience it was probably pointless to hold out,” is obscure. See the variant textual readings supplied by Mano, n.l p. 138.

¹⁴⁷ BN-M, f. 94b.

¹⁴⁸ Ibid., f. 95a.

¹⁴⁹ Haydar Mirza Dughlat describes this abandonment as a “ransom.” TR-T, f. 118a. Babur’s daughter, born in 1523, Gulbadan Begim, reports that Babur agreed to marry his sister to Shibam Khan as a price of his escape. HN, f. 3b.

Whatever the exact nature of the agreement Babur had made with Shibam Khan he and his entourage still fled as refugees, hungry and fearing for their lives if captured. During the next four or five hours they wandered about lost in the irrigation canals and lanes surrounding the city, a maze described by the English geologist W. Rickmer Rickmers early in the twentieth century.

Such an irrigated plain is a perfect maze of ariks [ariqs] and ditches, roads and paths crossing each other in every direction. In between are fields, groups of trees, villages, also bits of swamp and untilled steppe. Finding one's way is extremely difficult, even more so than on a glacier or among desert dunes, for steering by the compass is impossible owing to the multitude of irritating obstacles.¹⁵⁰

They finally got clear of the city's suburbs by dawn and riding hard to the east all the next day they finally stopped in the afternoon to kill one of their horses for food. Only the next morning did they arrive at a friendly village where they were given meat, flour melons and grapes. "We went," Babur remembers, "from such distress to such abundance, from such misfortune to such safety."¹⁵¹ At this point in the text Babur says that four or five times in his life he had endured cycles of "hardship and rest, difficulties and repose" and this was the first time. Yet by the evidence of his narrative, his earlier withdrawal from Samarqand was equally traumatic and resulted in his first *qazaqliq* period. On only two other occasions was he in such danger, in 1502 and in 1512, after his final defeat by the Uzbeks and third expulsion from Samarqand. And at that later date he still held Kabul, even if he finally abandoned Mawaran-nahr.

The Timurid Denouement

His mother and two other women accompanied Babur on his frantic flight from Samarqand, but many other Timurid women were left behind. His elder sister, Khanzadah Begim, was in fact taken captive and married by Shibam Khan.¹⁵² Others who had also

¹⁵⁰ W. Rickmer Rickmers, "The Duab of Turkistan (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1913), 61-2.

¹⁵¹ Ibid., f. 96a.

¹⁵² BN-M, f. 8b.

been left behind in Samarqand for want of horses were allowed to leave and over the next few months straggled out and walked to forts still loyal to Babur or within Sultan Mahmud Khan's territories. Even the Uzbeks, who were considerably more ruthless than most late Timurids, usually spared women. Babur met Atun, one of his mother's female servants as he passed Pishgar, northeast of Samarqand, which she had reached by herself on foot. Years later he rewarded Atun for her loyalty by the grant of a village near Kabul.¹⁵³ His aunt, Mihrnigar Khanim and his maternal grandmother, Isen Devlat Begim, were also allowed to leave Samarqand. His grandmother managed to join Babur with a retinue of ill-nourished family members and servants only months later at Dikhat, a village near Ura Tipa, where he had finally halted on his flight from Samarqand with the three women and his handful of "unarmed" *begs* and warriors. Babur may have chosen Dikhat because its inhabitants had an estimated forty thousand sheep and could presumably spare enough for him and his men during the winter.¹⁵⁴ After establishing a camp there he once again went hat in hand to see his Mongol uncle in Tashkent, where he also found his aunt Mihrnigar Khanim, who had made her way there from Samarqand.

Umidvar idiny "I hoped," Babur writes conveying the powerless deference he must have then felt, *kirn Khan dadam ri ayat ve 'indyat maqamida bulub*, "that my uncle the Khan in his condescension and graciousness," *vilayat ve parganah bergayelar*, "would grant province or district." Consistent with his earlier behavior toward Babur, the Khan promised him something, in this case Ura Tipa, then held by Muhammad Husayn Mirza Dughlat, but probably did so just to get rid of his nephew, who left Tashkent for that fort. At Ura Tipa Babur spent a few days with his Mongol in-law, who was also the husband of Khubnigar Khanim, one of Babur's maternal aunts. He was the Dughlat to whom Mahmud Khan had given the fort originally in 1495. He did not relinquish it to Babur, who even while writing this memoir near the end of his life seems to have been unwilling to concede that Sultan Mahmud Khan had never been prepared to offer him more than token encouragement or that

¹⁵³ BN-M, f. 241, where Babur mentions stopping at "Atun's village," presumably by his manner of reference but not absolutely certainly, the same woman.

¹⁵⁴ BN-M, fs. 99b and 97a.

the his uncle might have preferred to support his Mongol kinsmen over his spectacularly unsuccessful Timurid nephew. Reflecting on Muhammad Husayn Mirza's refusal to give up the town Babur rather touchingly muses: "I don't know [if] he acted on his own or whether there was a signal from on high."¹⁵⁵

Returning disappointed to nearby Dikhat Babur spent the winter in the village as his situation steadily deteriorated. His fortunes had been spiraling downward from the moment he and his men rode out of Andijan in 1496 on their way to attack Samarqand for the first time. He twice arrested his decline—reoccupying Andijan and then recapturing Samarqand—but at each of these moments the number of his original supporters had declined and the geographic extent of his authority had contracted. By the winter of 1501 he controlled no forts, virtually no territory and commanded—or more accurately—cajoled merely a handful of followers. During this in terregnum in the winter of 1501-02 Babur spent hours, or days, wandering about *yalang ayaq*, "barefoot," in the mountains. Some of his remaining troops left for Andijan, apparently Qambar 'All among them, because they could not bear this *qazaqtiqlar* existence.¹⁵⁶ Andijan was then being held by Sultan Ahmad Tambal, who still had Babur's brother, Jahangir Mirza with him. Then in the middle of what was an extremely severe winter Shibam Khan sent raiders across the frozen Khujand River in Babur's direction and to counter them Babur rode out with what he says were a small number of men, several of whom died in the terrible cold.¹⁵⁷ As the Uzbeks retired before he arrived, Babur himself rode back to Dikhat, but he camped in the safer nearby hills as the Shibam was rumored to be planning a spring campaign against Ura Tipa.

In what was perhaps an act of somber reflection on his stark situation Babur now engraved some lines from the Iranian poet Sa'di's *Bustan* on a rock by a spring near where he camped.¹⁵⁸ It was customary, he writes, to inscribe verses and aphorisms on rocks in these hills. Evoking a sense of melancholy stoicism which must have fit his mood very well, the lines from the thirteenth century poet describe the transitory nature of life in a fashion typical of classical Iranian poetry, whether 'Umar Khayyam or Sa'di himself.

¹⁵⁵ BN-M, fs. 96b-97a.

¹⁵⁶ BN-M, f. 97b.

¹⁵⁷ BN-M, f. 98a.

¹⁵⁸ Sa'di's work is summarized by Arberry, *Classical Persian Literature*, 186-213.

In this particular verse Sa^cdi tells how Jamshid, one of the legendary kings of pre-Islamic Iran, had inscribed these lines on another spring in an earlier time.

I heard that the fortunate Jamshid inscribed on a stone at
a fountainhead:

At this spring many like us who boasted,
Passed away in the twinkling of an eye.
With valor and might we seized the world,
And yet we did not take it with us to the grave.¹⁵⁹

Babur may have felt the pathos of this inscription to have been all the greater as his spring bubbled out near a tomb.

When warm weather again brought Shibani Khan raiding on the outskirts of Ura Tipa Babur became desperate. "It crossed my mind," he writes, that "to wander homeless and penniless from mountain to mountain, without place or province was absurd," and so once again he went off to see his Mongol uncle in Tashkent.¹⁶⁰ Arriving there in June 1502 he found himself scarcely better off than before, except that, as he said, Mahmud Khan was a relative and not a stranger. Most of Babur's retainers had fled, and consistent with his past behavior Mahmud Khan largely ignored Babur, who partly occupied himself by visiting his relatives, including Shah Begim, his maternal grandmother. Babur also used his enforced leisure to write more poetry.

He had already revealed his ambition to be recognized as a poet when he pointedly copied one of his verses on the outside of a letter he had sent in 1500 to the Harat poet and literary patron, Mir 'Ali

¹⁵⁹ BN-M, f. 99a. For a photograph of what appears to be this inscription see A. Mukhtarov, "Inscriptions With Babur's Name in the Upper Reaches of the Zarafshan," *Afghanistan* No. 25 (Sept. 1972), 49-56. There is no reason to believe this inscription was a forgery as villagers who knew of the inscription had not tried to sell or publicize it. The author says, however, that this inscription is dated 917 a.h. and that Babur may have forgotten that he had it done after evacuating Samarqand the third and last time in 1512. Yet, it was 918 a. h. when Babur abandoned Samarqand for the last time, so this suggestion does not resolve the discrepancy either. However, from the photograph he includes in his article 907 rather than 917 appears to be the date inscribed just below and to the left of Babur's name. There looks to be a . or 0 with a very slight vertical slash, but not a 1. In any event the author also mentions several other inscriptions in the area attributed to Babur, some definitely dated to 907 a. h.

¹⁶⁰ BN-M, f. 99b.

Shir Naval, just after he took Samarqand in 1500. He had written a few lines of Turk! and Persian verse during the second Samarqand occupation, and in the hills above Dikhat Babur composed two lines of Turk! verse to welcome a poet who came from nearby Hisar apparently seeking patronage. Babur's memory of this encounter or, more particularly his decision to mention the two lines he wrote at this turbulent time, suggests how seriously he took poetry and how much he wished readers to see him as a literate, cultured man.

Indeed, Babur begins his narrative of his visit to Tashkent, not with a discussion of his desperate political situation, but by introducing a Turk! *rubai* he had written earlier. Concerned whether his rhyme scheme was appropriate for Turki verse Babur says he presented the *rubai* to Mahmud Khan who, he remarks, "was a refined man who recited poetry, although he had few successful *ghazals*."¹⁶¹ Disappointingly the Khan did not give Babur a categorical answer, "apparently because he had not thoroughly studied the technicalities of verse."¹⁶² Babur's discussion of this poem seems to be a clever compositional device to advance the narrative, because the verse returns the narrative to politics. The poem was not just a literary exercise but a *cri de coeur*, a cry for help by a terminally frustrated Timurid prince. By reciting it to—and at—Mahmud Khan Babur made a gentle remonstrance to his uncle, an oblique literary protest, perhaps the only expression he could possibly make to the Khan himself given his refugee status. In the *rubai* Babur alludes to his desperate state in the first two lines.

No one cares for a man in peril,
No one gladdens the exile's heart.¹⁶³

Babur probably found Mahmud Khan's failure as a poet less significant than his political and military deficiencies, for he returns to the narrative by recording a condescending description of an inconsequential expedition Mahmud Khan organized to prevent Sultan Ahmad Tambal from seizing Ura Tipa, then still held by the Khan's Dughlat appointee.

Whatever diversion Babur found in poetry or accompanying this

¹⁶¹ Ibid., f. 100a.

¹⁶² Ibid., f. 100a.

¹⁶³ Ibid., f. 100a.

expedition, during which he composed another mournful verse, it was not enough to dispel his gloomy awareness that “He had no kingdom or hope of a kingdom.”¹⁶⁴ Finally, in desperation he planned to flee Mawarannahr altogether.

This kind of vagabondage, homelessness and despair became intolerable. I said [to myself] that living with such difficulties it would be well if I would take myself off. Rather than people seeing me in such misery and wretchedness it would be well if I went on my own. Resolving to go to Khitai [north China] I decided to take myself off.¹⁶⁵

Khitai, the old Qara Qitai territories north of China proper, was evidently Babur’s code for Mughulistan, where he could visit his younger Chaghatay Mongol uncle, Ahmad Khan, or as he usually refers to him, Kichik or “Young” Khan. On the evidence of his narrative Babur felt trapped in Tashkent, and believed rightly or wrongly that if he could get Mahmud Khan’s permission to leave he could begin to resurrect his career further east, where he may have felt that the turbulent state of the Mongol-dominated region offered opportunities for young adventurers.

Just as he was considering this plan Ahmad Khan himself appeared in Mawarannahr, arriving in Tashkent with an army of 1-2,000 horsemen, summoned there by his older brother Mahmud Khan after Shibam Khan had occupied Samarqand. Babur’s plans for “Khitai” were shelved and he suddenly found himself part of a large army marching against Sultan Ahmad Tambal, whose former close ties with Mahmud Khan and his family now seem to have completely ruptured, perhaps due to Tambal’s expanding power in Ferghanah. Assigned a contingent of Mongol troops Babur joined the campaign against Tambal. He and his allies, with an estimated and probably exaggerated combined force of nearly 30,000 men gathered from Tashkent, quickly took Ush, and most other fortresses nearby renewed their allegiance to Babur. However, Andijan still remained in Tambal’s hands. Babur also moved to capture his old fortress, but Tambal surprised his force in a dawn attack on Babur’s poorly situated, unguarded camp. It was his own inexperience that caused him to be negligent, Babur writes in one of several admissions of tactical failures that startle and engage the reader

¹⁶⁴ BN-M, f. 101a.

¹⁶⁵ BN-M, f. 101b.

unaccustomed to such royal candor in pre-modern histories. In the following melee Babur came face to face with Tambal himself, who severely wounded him with his sword just as Babur also suffered an arrow wound to his thigh. Many of Babur's men were lost and he himself retreated back to Ush, where his Chaghatay Mongol allies administered a new dose of political realism as well as eventually seeing to his wounds.

Having just lost many of the troops assigned to him by Mahmud Khan, Babur now met with his uncle near Ush. Given his conspicuous failure, he cannot have been surprised when the latter announced he was transferring the forts which had come over to Babur to the Khan's younger brother, Ahmad Khan, as Ahmad Khan's own lands in Mughulistan were so distant. Babur was to be given Akhsi and the territory north of Syr Darya river, and when they retook Samarqand he was to have that city while all Ferghanah was to go to Ahmad Khan. "They probably deceived me with these words," reflected Babur as he wrote more than twenty years later. "Later events would have shown what was possible. Yet there was nothing for it. Whether I liked it or not, I agreed."¹⁶⁶

Yet shortly afterwards as Babur was riding with Mahmud Khan back to see Ahmad Khan, Qambar 'All Mughul rode up alongside Babur and gave him, Babur reports, the kind of calculating advice that kept Central Asian politics in turmoil. Qambar 'All told Babur he should retain Ush, Uzgend and Marginan as a base, make an alliance with Sultan Ahmad Tambal, attack and drive out the Mongols and divide up Ferghanah with Tambal. It must have occurred to Babur that he had few troops of his own, that Tambal had just defeated and nearly killed him and still held Babur's brother Jahangir Mirza as a Timurid surrogate for his own ambition. Whatever his exact thoughts at this moment he rejected Qambar 'All's advice, replying, he remembers with evident satisfaction, that the Khans were his close relatives and he would rather be their *naukar*, their dependent, rather than Tambal's *packshah*, his king.¹⁶⁷ His advice rejected, Qambar 'All defected back to Tambal a short time later.

¹⁶⁶ BN-M, f. 108a.

¹⁶⁷ BN-M, f. 108b.

After being treated by a Mongol surgeon at Ahmad Khan's camp, Babur was assigned two thousand Mongol troops so he could take Akhsi, which the Khans had assigned to him in their provisional distribution of territory in Ferghanah and Samarqand. Mahmud and Ahmad Khan themselves began besieging Tambal in Andijan. Akhsi was then held by one of Sultan Ahmad Tambal's brothers, who made a tentative agreement with Babur and admitted him and his men into the outer fortress, allowing them to camp in buildings Babur's father had constructed there. He was joined there by Jahangir Mirza, who had now escaped from Tambal. At about this time Tambal opened the final act of the Timurid century in Mawarannahr by offering fealty to Shibam Khan and inviting the Uzbek leader into the Ferghanah valley.

With the Uzbeks coming from the west, the Khans were forced to raise the siege of Andijan and they retreated eastward out of the valley. This left Tambal free to reinforce his brother in Akhsi, which he did despite Babur's presence in the outer fort with one to two hundred men. In describing Tambal's surprise entry into the citadel Babur admits that someone should have been stationed at the bridge entrance to Akhsi, and once again concedes that the oversight was due to inexperience.¹⁶⁸ Unlike his earlier admission of poor planning, in this passage he writes in the third person, implying that this particular military disaster might have been due to some other, unnamed person's fault. Once again the oversight resulted in battle with Tambal, this time within Akhsi. Once again Babur was defeated and lost most of his men. By the time he got clear of the town only eight men remained with him, and as his men's horses flagged, he fled alone into the nearby hills pursued by Tambal's men as dusk fell.

With his pursuers close enough behind to shout to Babur untruthfully that Tambal had captured both his brothers, Babur retreated further into the hills. Eventually Babur agreed to accompany two of the men who had come from Tambal, who swore an oath on the Quran they would now serve Babur and help him find a path that would allow him to rejoin his Chaghatay uncles. With these two men he spent a second day and night as a fugitive. He recalls how he felt the second evening after the battle when he stood with these two men shivering in the winter cold in an aban-

¹⁶⁸ BN-M, f. Illa.

doned garden in the small village of Karnaon. "It was winter. It was very cold. They found an old *pusIm* [a sheepskin coat]; I put it on. They found a cup of millet soup; I drank it. I was greatly comforted."¹⁶⁹ Then just before the text breaks off in the midst of Babur's narrative of these wanderings, he describes his melancholy reflections when one man who joined him later that second evening admitted he had come as an agent of Tambal's brother.

Learning this left me with a strange feeling. Nothing in the world is worse than worrying about life. 'Speak the truth!' I said [to the head man] 'If things are liable to get worse I will perform my ablutions.' I well understood my impotence. I went into a corner of the garden. Thinking of myself, I said whether a man live 100 or 1000 years he will come to an end.¹⁷⁰

Yet Babur survived even this debacle, although it is impossible to say exactly how. Some of his men were near and Jahangir Mirza still led half of Babur's small force somewhere to the north. Eventually Babur found his way to his Mongol uncles, reassembled his small force and fought with the Khans in June 1503, when they were all defeated by Shibam Khan.¹⁷¹ Shibam then rewarded Tambal and his brother Bayizid with Andijan and Akhsi, while Tambal's brother, Beg Tilbah, was given Marginan. However, this arrangement lasted for less than a year, because Tambal almost immediately tried to expand his own territory by conquering Tashkent. At this point Shibam Khan returned to Ferghanah, defeated and executed Tambal, his brother and their allies, and made his kinsman, Jani Beg Sultan the ruler of the valley.¹⁷²

Following this loss Babur no longer had any Timurid or Chingizid relatives to turn to in Ferghanah, and evidently spent the next year in hiding in the mountains near the village of Sukh, southeast of Isfarah. In June-July 1504 he finally emerged with the remnants of his men, his mother and a few relatives on a march south-southwest to find a new kingdom in Khurasan. He may initially have hoped to get help, position or territory from the last surviving Timurid ruler, the aging Sultan Husayn Bayqara of Harat.

¹⁶⁹ BN-M, f. 117b.

¹⁷⁰ BN-M, fs. 118a-118b.

¹⁷¹ See Annette Beveridge's critique of the passage that purports to explain how Babur was rescued. BN-B, pp. 182-85 and Appendix D, ix-xv.

¹⁷² Azimdzhanova, *Gosudarstvo Babura v Kabule i v Indii*, 39-40.

"In the month of Muharram (June-July 1504)," writes Babur, "with Khurasan as my goal, I descended from Ferghanah province to Ilak Yaylagh, a summer pasturage of Hisar province."¹⁷³ By his estimate he had between two to three hundred men," great and small who placed their hope in him," about the same number of loyal adherents as during his first *qazaqliq* days in 1498, although only a few of Babur's original *begs* or warriors from 1494 had survived. His men had little if any armor and few horses or weapons. They were "mostly on foot, holding staves, wearing poor boots and rough cloaks."¹⁷⁴ Babur and his entourage were reduced to a miserable state similar to but even worse than what they had experienced after their flight from Samarqand two years earlier. Now in 1504 "conditions were so desperate that we had [but] two tents among us. My [main] tent (*chadar-im*) was assigned to my mother [while] at each camp I sat in a small Turcoman tent (*cdajaaq*)."¹⁷⁵ Yet as Babur moved south through Hisar with this ragged band he began to receive encouraging reports that the forces of Khusrau Shah, the Timurids' nemesis, were beginning to disintegrate in the face of Uzbek raids and the threat of a full-scale Uzbek assault on Badakhshan. Babur reports that even though he had originally intended to go to Khurasan, now something "was hoped for from this province and Khusrau Shah's retainers [since] every few days a person would come from the province, the people and the Mongols with hopeful words."¹⁷⁶ As he approached the Oxus he received a message that Baqi Chaghaniam, Khusrau Shah's younger brother, pledged his good will and offered to join him.¹⁷⁷

After Babur crossed the Oxus Baqi Chaghaniam rode to meet Babur, accompanying him as he marched south. Babur is careful to describe his relations with Khusrau Shah's younger brother as an

¹⁷³ BN-M, f. 120a. Citing Soviet archeological expeditions to this area, Azimdzhanova mentions that in the 1950's Tajik Academy of Sciences researchers who were studying Hisar were shown "old swords, chain armor, glass beads and money with Babur's name." However, she doesn't date this material, which Babur could also have left there in 1512, following his last defeat by the Uzbeks and his third and final loss of Samarqand. Azimdzhanova, *Gosudarstvo Babura v Kabule i v Indii*, 51 and n. 11.

¹⁷⁴ BN-M, f. 120a.

¹⁷⁵ Ibid., f. 120a.

¹⁷⁶ BN-M, f. 120a.

¹⁷⁷ BN-M, f. 120b.

alliance rather than one of fealty, and as they jointly moved south towards Bamian, west-northwest of Kabul, it is clear why he chooses his words so carefully. Babur complains that although Baqi Chaghaniam exercised great authority in their combined entourage he refused to offer Babur and his impoverished, hungry men even one of his huge flock of thirty or forty thousand sheep until they were half way to Kabul, when he finally gave fifty sheep. Not surprisingly Babur describes him in with a characteristic string of epithets he uses for people he disliked as "avaricious, miserly, spiteful, bad natured, malevolent, ill-tempered person," restraining himself only to the extent he refers to Baqi Chaghaniam as a *kishi*, a person, rather than as a *mardak*)¹ Nonetheless, Babur must have needed him badly, because he later appointed him governor of Kabul and Lord of the Gate, positions in which he controlled all the commercial taxes of the city. Also joining Babur at this time was one of his other least favorite but influential *begs*, Qambar 'Ali Mughul, so recently with Tambal and then Khusrau Shah. He now returned to Babur as unceremoniously as he had left, but was shortly afterwards sent packing because, Babur not surprisingly remarks, he was not trusted. Another of Babur's former men who had abandon him, evidently for Khusrau Shah, during the last *fatrat*, the interregnum, also returned and announced that Khusrau Shah's Mongol troops had shifted their allegiance to Babur.

These Mongols evidently sensed that Khusrau Shah was incapable of resisting Shibam Khan, and so began deserting him just as in the past other Mongol contingents had abandoned Babur. Their willingness to shift their allegiance to someone who was nothing more than a refugee, one who commanded or, more accurately, led no more than a few ill-clothed and poorly equipped men, one who neither controlled territory nor had an immediate prospect of military success, dramatically demonstrated the life-saving power of legitimacy. Apart from some undefined and unrecorded aspect in his personality that might have drawn men to him in his desperate state, Babur's only apparent lure for these defecting troops was his Timurid identity. He was young, spectacularly unsuccessful and almost defenseless, yet a short time later thousands of Mongols abandoned Khusrau Shah and joined his service. Given this demonstration of the Mongols⁵ quixotic loyalties and his own earlier

¹⁷⁸ BN-M, f. 59a.

experience at Samarqand, Babur can hardly have been surprised when, several years later, many of these same Mongol troops turned against him.

The final reversal of the fortunes of Khusrau Shah and Babur was now ironically prefaced by the celebration of a wedding in the small fortress of Ajar. Babur's brother Jahangir married a daughter of Sultan Mas'ud Mirza, Babur's former ally before Samarqand, the romantic but now also tragic figure who had been blinded by Khusrau Shah. After this brief pause Babur and Baqi Chaghaniam moved quickly south into the mountains as they learned that Shibam Khan had occupied Andijan and had turned his army towards Hisar and the Oxus. Shibam's immediate goal was probably Khusrau Shah's important town of Qunduz, just south of the upper Oxus. Unwilling to defend Qunduz, Khusrau Shah fled to wards Kabul. His commandant in Qunduz, with what can only be regarded as great good sense, declared for Shibam Khan, while 3-4,000 Mongol households from Hisar and Qunduz joined other Mongols who had already declared for Babur.

Khusrau Shah himself, who had blinded one Timurid, assassinated another and insolently offended Babur by ignoring him earlier in his career, now saw his power evaporate in a few weeks. By the end of August this man who had previously commanded twenty-thirty thousand troops outfitted in splendid livery, this man who had "neither birth, nor lineage nor honor nor worth nor prudence nor bravery," this man who, therefore, utterly lacked legitimacy, yet one whom Babur scornfully remembered for nearly having the Friday prayers read in his name, that is for his arrogance in all but declaring sovereignty in a Timurid and Chingizid world, this little man now had to beg Babur, his brothers and their ragtag band for mercy.¹⁷⁹

Babur recalls with unfeigned delight Khusrau Shah's humiliation as they met on the banks of the Andarab river, near its confluence with Surkhab, north of Kabul.

In the middle of the month of RabT^c al-awwal after crossing the Andarab river with a small troop in the vicinity of Dushi I sat down under a large plane tree. Khusrau Shah came with a large, splendid

¹⁷⁹ For Babur's recitation of Khusrau Shah's faults that made him an illegitimate ruler see BN-M, f. 68a.

retinue. According to custom and etiquette he dismounted at a distance. At the interview he knelt three times

He did so three more times when he withdrew. As he made [polite] enquiries and offered gifts he knelt once again. He did exactly the same with Jahangir Mirza and Mirza Khan. This old, fat little man (*mardaty* who for so many years did exactly as he pleased, who stopped short of [declaring] sovereignty only by not having his own name read in the *khutbah*, had knelt twenty-five or twenty-six times. [Now] becoming sick with coming and going he nearly collapsed. His many years of command and rule were utterly lost.¹⁸⁰

Khusrau Shah then made two "strange comments" to Babur, one of which perfectly summed up the ruthlessly pragmatic allegiances of the period. He told Babur that his *naukarlar*, his retainers, had left him four times before and had returned. Then almost on cue, at least as Babur dramatically describes the scene, "Great and small, good and bad, *begs* and their retainers, group by group with their families and herds began coming from them to us. Between the midday and evening prayer the next day not one of those people remained in his [Khusrau Shah's] presence."¹⁸¹ Twenty to thirty thousand men changed sides in one day. Even Babur, who rarely invokes divine intervention to explain events, might be excused in this instance for quoting the Quran on God's omnipotence, exclaiming afterwards, "How wonderful is his power!" How wonderful, that "without a battle or a skirmish in the presence of two hundred or two hundred and forty wretched, impoverished men such as ourselves [Khusrau Shah] became so contemptible, weak, helpless and exhausted that he no longer controlled his retainers, his property or his life!"¹⁸² Khusrau Shah was, however, allowed to leave for Khurasan with his family, gold and jewels; Baqi Chaghaniam had negotiated his older brother's safety earlier when he joined Babur at the Oxus. Nonetheless, as his "strange" comment to Babur suggested he might, Khusrau Shah subsequently had one last fling at power. Sometime later he gathered a small force and tried once more for Qunduz, where he was captured by Uzbek forces, executed and his head sent on to Shibam Khan.¹⁸³

It was Baqi Chaghaniam also who convinced Babur to move on

¹⁸⁰ BN-M, f. 123b. The Uzbeks raided Dushi just after Babur left. f. 124b.

¹⁸¹ BN-M, f. 124a.

¹⁸² BN-M, f. 124b.

¹⁸³ BN-M, fs. 155a-156b.

Kabul rather than following an ill-defined plan to march toward Khurasan. Until his death in 1502 Babur's Miranshahi uncle, Ulugh Beg Mirza Kabuli, had controlled the easternmost Timurid outpost of Kabul. Afterwards various *begs* pushed his son aside and one of them, Muqim Arghun, nominally controlled the city in this fall of 1504. After his astonishing turn of fortune on the banks of the Andarab Babur immediately began moving south towards Kabul, strengthened by the diffuse but substantial contingents of Khusrau Shah's Mongols and now better prepared for battle with 7-800 coats of mail and helmets. Otherwise, Babur reports, he inherited only some porcelain china from Khusrau Shah. Harassed by Uzbek raiders who arrived at the Andarab the day after he and his men decamped, Babur sent a small force back to attack them while he hurried toward Kabul. More of Khusrau Shah's men, mainly Mongols, joined Babur with their families. These groups probably represented what the Castilian ambassador to Timur, Clavijo, had seen of his people/armies in 1405.

When Timur calls his people to war all assemble and march with him, surrounded by their flocks and herds, thus carrying along their possessions with them, in company with their wives and children. These last follow the host, and in the lands which they invade their flocks, namely and particularly the sheep, camels and horses, serve to ration the horde.¹⁸⁴

By this time Babur's large, disparate group of men and nomad households must have resembled a sprawling refugee column as much as an army. He himself remarks that Khusrau Shah's men, "Oppressive and undisciplined," began terrorizing local inhabitants. Babur had a man clubbed for stealing a pot of oil and the man died. "All the people," he remarks, "were cowed by this public punishment."¹⁸⁵

With his mother and her entourage joining him again after another perilous journey through the Afghan mountains, Babur and his brothers—Jahangir Mirza nominally commanding the right flank and Nasir Mirza the left—decided to besiege Kabul. Meanwhile they negotiated directly with Muqim Arghun. After Babur made a display of strength immediately before Kabul's Charmgarar gate near the Kabul river, Muqim agreed to transfer his *begs* to

¹⁸⁴ Clavijo, *Embassy to Tamerlane 1403-06*, 191.

¹⁸⁵ BN-M, f. 126a.

Babur's service and turn over Kabul in exchange for his life, property and continued service of his closest *naukarlar*. Muqim was offered land near Pamghan, north-northwest of Kabul, but eventually chose instead to leave for Qandahar, where his father and brother held the city and its productive agricultural lands for Husayn Bayqara in Harat.

As the transfer of power was being discussed social order dissolved inside the city walls; "disturbances and attacks," perhaps looting and killing, broke out while Babur was still camped outside. Finally, as he describes the scene in his usual laconic style: "I myself rode off, had four or five people shot with arrows and one or two cut to pieces. The tumult ceased."¹⁸⁶ Now master of Kabul Babur began to rebuild his political fortunes. While initially he was preoccupied with Uzbek threats amidst his own clear intention to restore a Timurid empire in Mawarannahr, he was ultimately forced by the geographic logic of his situation and the strength of the Uzbek confederation gradually to reorient himself to India. The change came slowly, however, and Babur did not finally decide to attack eastwards into Hindustan until well after he failed in his third and last attempt to conquer and hold Samarqand seven years later.

¹⁸⁶ BN-M, fs. 127b-128a.

CHAPTER THREE

BABUR'S CULTURAL PERSONALITY

خان را موغولی غول صورتی می شنیدیم و خیال میکردیم که مغولی باشد که
وضع و اطوار او مثل سایر اتراک صحرایی.
اما چون حانرا دیدیم ، مردی خوش محاوره و خوش تکلم و
بتواضع و بافضیلت بوده اند
*

I heard that [Yunas] Khan had a demon-like Mongol face, and
I imagined him to be a Mongol with the disposition and
manners of other Turks of the steppe. But when I saw the Khan
he was a well-spoken, courteous and well-educated man.

Khvajah Ubaydullah Ahrar on Babur's maternal
grandfather, the Mongol, Yunas Khan.¹

When against all odds Babur marched unopposed into Kabul in 1504 in his twenty-second year, he began a second phase of his life that eventually led to the occupation of Delhi and Agra just over twenty years later. The nature of the state that he founded directly reflected what might be called his cultural personality, his learned behavior, that is his social assumptions, political and cultural values and even his aesthetic standards. In contrast to the relatively meagre insights he provides into his emotional life and his personal relations with family and friends, he exhibits his cultural personality to a degree that is rare in autobiographical works of this or earlier periods. Sometimes explicitly but more often implicitly he reveals the values that determined his policies as a Timurid ruler. No other Asian or European author before Rousseau provides such a wealth of insights into the cultural biases that influenced his life. No other founder of an early modern empire makes so clear the fundamental principles of his state, in this case the Timurid-Mughul Empire of South Asia.

¹ TR-T, f. 34b.

In Babur's case the outlines of his cultural inheritance are suggested by the accounts of his grandfather, the Mongol Yunas Khan. In his semi-autobiographical history of the Mongols Haydar Mirza Dughlat discusses the Khan at length. He reports that those who had met him, such as Babur's Naqshbandi *shaykh* Khwajah Ubaydullah Ahrar, while expecting to find a rough-hewn Mongol, discovered instead a cultured man who did not even physically resemble the typical Turco-Mongol of the steppe. As one who had spent years of exile in Iran, Yunas Khan had returned to Mawarannahr with the polish of a Perso-Islamic courtier wedded to the military skills of a steppe aristocrat. Unlike most of his erstwhile Mongol followers he also "loved" cities. Babur and his Timurid cousins were two more generations down the social and cultural evolutionary path to Perso-Islamic sedentary society. They still possessed some traits of the Turco-Mongol military aristocracy, but otherwise they represented a sedentarized, Persianized aristocratic class who personified a civilized ideal that was in most ways indistinguishable from cultures throughout the Mediterranean and Near Eastern world.

The Timurid Inheritance

Babur's cultural personality embodied the Turco-Mongol, Perso-Islamic culture that was shared to varying degrees by Timurid and Chingizid lineages and members of the warrior aristocracy of Mawarannahr, Mughulistan and Khurasan in the late fifteenth century. The pairing of Turco-Mongol with Perso-Islamic conveys a general idea of the hybrid culture of this region's ruling elite, where Islamized Turco-Mongols with their pastoral nomadic and military traditions ruled over and were influenced by Muslim Iranian or Iranized sedentary populations. Turco-Mongol, Perso-Islamic culture had evolved in these Timurid lands of Mawarannahr and northeastern Iran over half a millennium.² In some

² For general historical background see Svat Soucek, *A History of Inner Asia* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2000), K. Z. Ashrafyan, "Central Asia Under Timur from 1370- to the early fifteenth century," in M. S. Asimov and C. E. Bosworth ed., *History of Civilizations of Central Asia* (Paris: UNESCO, 1998), IV, I, 319-45, and R. G. Mukminova, "The Timurid States in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries," in Asimov and Bosworth ed., *History of the Civilizations of*

limited linguistic and literary ways Iranian and Turkic interaction dated to pre-Islamic contacts on Iran's northeastern frontier, but the characteristic traits of Babur's day began to be formed in the late tenth century when the Muslim Qarakhanid Turks established themselves in Bukhara and Samarkand with their predominantly Iranian or Iranized Muslim inhabitants. Simultaneously a branch of Oghuz Turks, the Saljuqs, themselves Muslims to varying degrees, forced their ways into Khurasan.³ In 1040 with wide-eyed amazement of the truly rustic Turkic pastoralists they occupied the Perso-Islamic cultural center of Nishapur. Then Chingiz Khan and subsequently Timur, himself a Muslim, imposed their rule, follow-ers and customs on the entire region.

In the case of the Muslim Turks who both preceded and followed the heathen Mongols, as well as the Muslim and non-Muslim Turks who constituted a major proportion of Mongol armies, their populations far exceeded the relatively small numbers of Mongol troops and camp followers who entered Mawarannahr, Iran and Afghanistan.⁴ The relatively small number of Mongols who remained behind in the region is at least partly indicated by the fact that in the twentieth century only in Afghanistan is there a distinct population of ethnic Mongols.⁵ The predominantly Turkic invaders and

Central Asia, 347-63, for introductions to the history of Mawarannahr or Transoxiana and the period of Timur and his Timurid successors. For the immediate Turco-Mongol background see Manz, *The rise and rule of Tamerlane*, 1-18.

³ For a lucid summary of this period and a brief discussion of Islamization see Peter B. Golden, "The Karakhanids and Early Islam," in Denis Sinor ed., *The Cambridge History of Early Inner Asia* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1990), 343-370. Clifford Edmund Bosworth discusses the Oghuz/Saljuq move-ment into Khurasan in *The Ghaznavids, Their Empire in Afghanistan and Eastern Iran 994-1040* (Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press, 1963), Chapters 7 & 9.

⁴ See Golden, "The Turkic Peoples Under the Qinggisids" in Golden, *An Introduction to the History of the Turkic Peoples*, 291-95.

⁵ These are not the Hazarachs, who are now believed to be a predominantly Iranian people, some of whom intermarried with Turco-Mongol conquerors and absorbed their vocabulary to a very limited degree. The only ethnic group in twentieth century Afghanistan who call themselves Mongol was, in the mid twentieth century, primarily located in the Ghurat region within the province of Harat in western Afghanistan. See H. F. Schurmann, *The Mongols of Afghanistan* ('s-Gravenhage: Mouton, 1962), especially pp. 159-217. Babur mentions that in his day some Hazarachs and "Nikdtn" in the "western mountains" spoke the Mughul language. BN-M, f. 131b. He also mentions Mughul as one of the languages spoken in Kabul.

migrants who overwhelmed the Iranian inhabitants of Transoxiana also succeeded in imposing their languages and dialects throughout Mawarannahr and even the areas in Mughulistan to the north and east inhabited by nomadic or semi-nomadic Mongols. Turki was the most commonly spoken tongue in both Timurid lands and Mughulistan, although Persian retained its literary supremacy throughout Iran, Mawarannahr and Afghanistan.

The general nature of the Timurids' Turco-Mongol, Perso-Islamic inheritance can be seen both in Timur's policies and even more so in those of his descendants. These were the men who ruled Mawarannahr and Khurasan during the Timurid century from Timur's death in 1405 until Sultan Husayn Bayqara's death in Harat in 1506. They were Turks and Mongols who lived largely sedentary lives in Samarqand, Harat and nearby cities, speaking both Turk! and Persian and participating to varying degrees in Perso-Islamic artistic and scientific culture. Timur conquered Mawarannahr and much of the eastern Islamic world with nomadic and semi-nomadic Mongol and Turkic warriors, and Turco-Mongol commanders composed the inner circle of Timurid advisors and courtiers throughout the entire century. Yet while Timur began life as a pastoral nomadic tribesman he helped to ensure his descendants would become firmly rooted in the sophisticated Perso-Islamic urban culture of Khurasan and Mawarannahr.

Rather than scorning cities in the manner of Chingiz Khan and many Central Asian Mongols, Timur built a monumental capital at Samarqand, using artisans he kidnapped from the great urban centers of Isfahan, Baghdad, Damascus and Delhi, and named suburbs of his capital after these great cities of the Islamic world. His conscious evocation of Muslim urban centers in Samarqand is unmistakable evidence of his own self-image, the ruler of a new and unsurpassed, urban-based Islamic empire. Whatever Timur's own knowledge of and attitude toward Islam and Islamic history, and both Hafiz-i Abru and Ibn Khaldun, who meet Timur in Damascus in 1401, indicate that it was quite sophisticated, he erected monumental Islamic architecture and especially patronized the shrine of the sufi, Shaykh Ahmad Yasavi, near Tashkent.⁶ He also

⁶ For an impression of Timur's considerable knowledge of Islam and Middle Eastern history see V. V. Barthold, *Four Studies on the History of Central Asia*, II, *Ulugh-Beg*, T. Minorsky trans. (Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1963), 22-23. Regarding Ibn

ostentatiously played chess with Sayyids, descendants of the Prophet Muhammad; at least he did so when residing in Samarqand in 1405 at age seventy.⁷ Appearing publicly with these men was probably meant to advertise his faith, or at least his formal commitment to Islam. He often learned about Islam and its history from recitations of Persian histories; no comparable Turk! religious and historical literature existed. Timur also commissioned illustrated manuscripts of both old and new historical works, nearly all of them in Persian.⁸ Persian was then what it remained for later Timurids, the language that gave Turco-Mongols entry into the Perso-Islamic civilization of Mawarannahr and the Iranian plateau.

Elements of Perso-Islamic and Turco-Mongol culture can also be detected in the policies of Shah Rukh and his son, Ulugh Beg, the rulers, respectively, of Harat and Samarqand during first half of the fifteenth century. Their policies give some general idea of how these cultural influences could be present in varying combinations in the personalities of different individuals from the same background. Both Timurids were urban Muslims, Turks who also spoke Persian. Both patronized Islam and Perso-Islamic literary and artistic culture, presiding over the construction of Islamic architectural monuments and the production of illustrated Persian manuscripts. Both men also sponsored historical texts that illustrated their Turco-Mongol heritage. Yet there were also significant contrasts in their policies as rulers of Harat and Samarqand.

Historians often place Shah Rukh and Ulugh Beg at the extreme ends of an ideological spectrum, with the father personifying the aggressively Islamizing sultan and his son publicly adhering to Turco-Mongol traditions. While this dichotomy, like most such stark distinctions, is overdrawn, these men did exhibit distinct cultural personalities. Their attitudes may have had something to do with their respective residences in Harat and Samarqand, the first located in one of the ancient centers of Iranian culture and the second bordering the steppe with its greater Turco-Mongol population. Whether their contrasting environments influenced their

Khaldun's comments in particular, see Fischel, *Ibn Khaldun and Tamerlane: Their Historic Meeting in Damascus*, A.D. 1401 (803 A.H.), 31 and 72, n. 58.

⁷ As testified to by Ruy de Clavijo, *Embassy to Tamerlane 1403-1406*, 235.

⁸ Timurid material culture is ably and beautifully depicted in the volume by Lentz and Lowrey, *Timur and the Princely Vision*.

policies is difficult to assess without knowing more about their personalities. However, Shah Rukh did legitimize his rule with Islam. Thus he used the Arabic/Islamic title of sultan, and publicly emphasized his adherence to Islamic law, the *shahah*. He sponsored a revival of orthodox Sunni learning and ostentatiously enforced “Muslim” morality in the streets.⁹ He also stressed the superiority of Muslim law to the *yasa*, the customary law of the Mongols. Indeed in his religious policies Shah Rukh seems consciously to have modeled himself on Ghazan Khan, the first Mongol ruler of Iran to convert to Islam.¹⁰

Ulugh Beg also exhibited a commitment to Islam, but one expressed more in intellectual and institutional rather than moral or ideological terms. He constructed *madrasahs* in Bukhara and Samarqand, as well as a sufi *khanagah* and a mosque in Samarqand, although it is worth noting that one of the Samarqand *madrasahs* was a center of mathematical and scientific instruction.¹¹ Yet in contrast to his father he also invoked Turco-Mongol traditions to bolster his legitimacy by taking for himself Timur’s title of *kiirgen*. Unlike his father he also publicly exhibited his ties to Chingizid *khans*, by keeping them confined in a splendid garden in Samarqand.¹² Ulugh Beg also ruled over a much gayer city in Samarqand, where “there were carousals with music and singing. Wealthy inhabitants of other cities even had musicians of both sexes come from Samarqand.”¹³ Certain Samarqand *‘alims* even publicly defended these entertainments.¹⁴ Ulugh Beg’s decision to make Samarqand a center of astronomical and mathematical research may

⁹ Beatrice Forbes Manz, “Mongol History rewritten and relived,” *Mythes historiques du monde musulman (Revue du monde musulman et de la Méditerranée)*, 2001, 144. See also Maria Eva Subtelny and Anas B. Khalidov, “The Curriculum of Islamic Higher Learning in Timurid Iran in Light of the Sunni Revival under Shah Rukh,” *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 115.2 (1995), 210-236. The authors discuss the curriculum of the Shah Rukh’s madrasah and also mention the important combination of Sunnism and sufism among the *‘ulama* of the Timurid period.

¹⁰ Beatrice Manz makes this important and revealing point. “Mongol history rewritten and relived,” 143-45.

¹¹ Aydm Sayih, *Ulug Bey Semrkandeki Him Faaliyeti Hakkinda Giyasildin-i KasCnin Mektubu* Turk Tarih Kurumu Yaymlardm 7, 39 (Ankara: Turk Tarih Kurumu Basimevi, 1960), 40.

¹² Barthold, *Four Studies on the History of Central Asia*, II, *Ulug-Beg*, 85.

¹³ H.R. Roemer, “The Successors of Timur,” in CHR 6, 110.

¹⁴ Barthold, *Four Studies on the History of Central Asia*, II, *Ulug-Beg*, 114.

also have been influenced by his less censorious or ideological form of Islam and greater inclination towards his Turco-Mongol roots. Whatever the reasons his lavish patronage and interest in these fields certainly distinguished him from his father, whose cultural policies were focused on religion and literary/ artistic production.

Ulugh Beg's patronage for and personal interest in astronomy and mathematics might have been inspired by scientists whom Timur brought to Samarqand or by a childhood visit to the famous Mongol observatory at Maraghah.¹⁵ The city may already have been a minor center for astronomical scholarship when he came to power.¹⁶ However, the model for astronomical research in this period was indeed the Maraghah observatory in Iran that he had seen years earlier. Ghazan Khan himself had visited this observatory in 1300. Mongols, even converts to Islam such as Ghazan Khan, were far more sympathetic to the secular sciences than pious, conservative Muslims.¹⁷ They had none of the doctrinaire religious objections to scientific and astronomical work that members of the *flama* often expressed. The ironic possibility exists, therefore, that while Shah Rukh may have been influenced by Ghazan Khan's religious policies, Ulugh Beg's astronomical studies may have echoed the Mongol leader's practical scientific interests. In any event Ulugh Beg is known to have been taught by such major philosophical/scientific figures as Qadi-zada Rumi and Jamshid ibn Mas'ud.¹⁸ And not only did he take a direct interest in mathematical and scientific research, but had the observatory built whose scholars produced the revised astronomical tables that the Timurid historian

¹⁵ Sayih, *Ulugh Bey...*, 39. For an introduction to Ulugh Beg's scientific interests and astronomy in the Islamic world see Barthold, *Four Studies on the History of Central Asia*, II, *Ulugh-Beg*, 129-34, Lentz and Lowrey, *Timur and the Princely Vision*, 144-53, Ahmad Dallal, "Science, Medicine and Technology," in John Esposito ed., *The Oxford History of Islam* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1999), 161-83 and D. Pingree, "Ilm al-Hay'a," EI2, 3, 135-38. It is important to note that Timurid astronomical knowledge was transmitted to Timurid-Mughul South Asia, but except for astrological calculations it was used not by the Timurid-Mughul emperors themselves, but the Rajput ruler Jai Singh. See G. R. Kaye, "The Astronomical Observatories of Jai Singh," *Archeological Survey of India*, New Imperial Series, XV (Calcutta, 1918).

¹⁶ Ibid., Sayih, *Ulugh Bey*, 39.

¹⁷ Thomas Allsen discusses Maraghah and Mongol interest in astronomy. *Culture and Conquest in Mongol Eurasia* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2001), 161-75.

¹⁸ Barthold, *Four Studies on the History of Central Asia*, II, *Ulugh-Beg*, 130, and in greater detail in Sayih, *Ulugh Bey...*, 33-53.

Daulatshah saw as a completion of Ptolomey's astronomical work, *The Alamgest*. Indeed, "in the 1420s and 1430s Samarqand was the astronomical and mathematical capital of the world."²⁰ Daulatshah's assertion that Ulugh Beg was the wisest and most learned king since Alexander, the student of Aristotle, cannot be dismissed as mere rhetoric when his scientific achievements are taken into account.²¹

Babur: The Social Milieu

Babur was heir to the Timurid traditions exhibited in different ways by the policies of Shah Rukh and Ulugh Beg. However, due to his literary legacy the Turco-Mongol, Perso-Islamic strands of his cultural personality stand out in more distinct relief than for any other individual in the history of Mongol and Turkic rule in Central Asia and Iran. Whatever else is uncertain about the use of his autobiography as a source for judging political events, there is little doubt about its usefulness as a guide to his Timurid mentalite. The obvious introduction to these elements in his own heritage is his description of his father, 'Umar Shaykh Mirza.

Babur spent his earliest years with his father and mother in Akhsi, before moving at an unspecified age with his *beg atekeh* to Andijan. Like most late fifteenth-century Timurid rulers Babur's father lived a largely urban life, which meant for him as for Timur himself when not on campaign, a life outside houses in kiosks and garden pavilions. 'Umar Shaykh's life was largely sedentary too, with the exception of occasional raids and attacks, and based upon Babur's testimony neither his father nor any of his father's brothers

¹⁹ Lentz and Lowrey, *Timur and the Princely Vision*, 97. Ptolemy's *Alamgest* is discussed at length and with scholarly precision by several contributors to the volume edited by J. B. Harley and David Woodward, *Cartography in the Traditional Islamic and South Asian Sciences* 5, 2 Book I *The History of Cartography* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1992).

²⁰ Kevin Krisciunas "The Legacy of Ulugh Beg," quoted by Edward S. Kennedy, *Astronomy and Astrology in the Medieval Islamic World* (Aldershot, Gt. Britain: Variorum, 1998), XI, 11.

²¹ Two valuable studies of astronomical and mathematical scholarship in Samarqand during Ulugh Beg's reign are by T. N. Kary-Niyazov, *Astronomicheskaya Shkola Ulugbeka* (Moskva: Akademii Nauk, 1950) and S. Kh. Sirazhdinov ed., *Iz Istorii Nauki Epokhi Ulugbeka* (Tashkent, "Fan," 1979).

spent much time campaigning. 'Umar Shaykh resided principally in Akhsi, the largest town in the Ferghanah valley, but still an extremely modest settlement when compared with Samarqand, Bukhara or Harat. As Babur remembered him, his father, who died in his eldest son's twelfth year, was an unpretentious man "who dressed and ate without ceremony (*bitakalluf*)"²²

By describing 'Umar Shaykh as unceremonious Babur probably accurately depicted a Timurid who lived modestly on limited resources, presiding over a simple court in the bucolic Ferghanah valley. 'Umar Shaykh was not an imperious figure; few late fifteenth century Timurids were. His lack of pretension may have inclined Babur to the comradely informality he almost ostentatiously observed as he fought for survival in Mawarannahr and later for a Timurid empire in Kabul and India. Babur probably meant to praise his father when he used *hilkalluf* for elsewhere in his memoir he uses the word approvingly to describe men who did not too rigidly observe Timurid or Chingizid social or political etiquette, or to compliment unpretentious scholars, such as 'Abd al-Ghafur Lan, the disciple of the great fifteenth-century Harat poet, Jami.²³ Babur prized unaffected behavior, but within limits. In one passage he uses the term pejoratively, when he mildly criticizes his young Mongol uncle, Kichik Khan, whose tent, when Babur met him, was a disheveled mess.²⁴

His father retained the military skills and social habits of the Turco-Mongol military class, but like other late fifteenth-century Timurids, combined these traits in varying measures with the observance of Islam and the mastery of social skills and literary knowledge of a cultured Perso-Islamic ruler. He was, his son asserts, "brave and manly" (*shujd o mardanaK*), a good swordsman, if only an "average archer," but good with his fists.²⁵ Like many members of his class—including Babur himself later in life—'Umar Shaykh was "a great drinker," also fond of the intoxicating concoction, *majun* and good company at the drinking parties he held once or twice a week, where he often recited poetry. He constantly played backgammon and sometimes gambled.

²² BN-M, f. 7a.

²³ BN-M, f. 178b.

²⁴ BN-M, f. 108b.

²⁵ BN-M, f. 7b.

Alcoholic drinking rituals were a common feature of pre-Islamic Iranian aristocratic society, as well as at such ethnically Turkic but culturally Perso-Islamic courts as the Ghaznavids.²⁶ However, the obvious precursor for 'Umar Shaykh's sessions were those of Timur himself As described by the Castilian ambassador, Clavijo:

It is the custom of the Tartars to drink their wine before eating, and they are wont to partake of it then so copiously and quaffing it at such frequent intervals that the men soon get very drunk. No feast we were told is considered a real festival unless the guests have drunk themselves sot....the man who drinks very freely and can swallow the most wine is by them called a Bahadur, which is a title and means one who is a valiant drinker.²⁷

As Clavijo's account suggests drinking was done in public, and so too in late Timurid times. So also in the ancient Near East where "the drinking of alcohol was not a solitary activity but a highly social event."²⁸ Nowhere is this made more clear than when Babur describes the time in Harat in December 1506 when he decided to abandon Islamic abstinence. In an almost comic description he relates how he was not able to drink because the social conditions were never quite right. At no time, apparently, did he think of first trying a drink by himself. Not until five or six years later did he begin drinking. After that he replicated the drinking culture of his father and repeatedly describes the convivial, informal and often wildly unrestrained dinners, drinking and poetry sessions with his *begs* that he recalled with great affection. While he sometimes spoke critically of gatherings where drinking degenerated into lewd, uncontrollable behavior, later in the caste-divided society of India he describes these occasions as the civilized Timurid social ideal.

Babur seems dispassionately honest about his father's military skills, but affectionate when he describes his social habits, which also included 'Umar Shaykh's "amorous temperament," marked by "lovers marks and brands" (*nd I u daghi*). He certainly approved his father's commitment to orthodox Sunni Islam, remarking that he

²⁶ See William L. Hanaway, "Blood and Wine: Sacrifice and Celebration in Manuchiri's Wine Poetry," *Iran* 26 (1988), 69-80.

²⁷ Clavijo, *Embassy to Tamerlane 1403-1406*, 231.

²⁸ P. Michalowski, "The Drinking Gods: Alcohol in Mesopotamia," in Lucio Milano ed., *Drinking in Ancient Societies, History and Culture of Drinks in the Ancient Near East* (Padua, Italy: Sargon srl, 1994), 29.

was “in manners a morals a Hanafi Muslim of pure faith,”²⁹ a man who never neglected the five daily prayers and frequently recited the Quran. Like Babur he was also a *murid* of the most important Naqshbandi *shaykh* in late fifteenth century Mawarannahr, Khwajah 'Ubaydullah Ahrar. Babur also admired 'Umar Shaykh's education and verbal polish, describing him as learned (*rawdñ sawadtp* eloquent (*fasih*) and sweet-speaking (*shirin zabarip* all Perso-Arabic, Arabic or Persian adjectives for the knowledge and conversation of a urbane Iranized aristocrat. By describing his father as learned Babur may have in mind particularly 'Umar Shaykh's knowledge of four “classical” Persian poets, Nizami (1140-c.1202), Amir Khusrau (1253-1325), Rumi (1207-40), and Firdausi (d. 1025/26), author of the Iranian royal epic, the *Shah namah*.

'Umar Shaykh was also “just,” doubtless an attribute of idealized pre-Islamic and non-Islamic rulers, but expressed by Babur as *'adalat*, in Arabic/Islamic terms. Babur's use of *'adalat* was not fortuitous but reflected a basic distinction 'Umar Shaykh himself made between his Turco-Mongol social and military life and his perception of himself as a Muslim ruler. Babur records one of his most telling observations about 'Umar Shaykh's compartmentalized sense of these identities when he discusses his father's headgear, clothing of great symbolic importance in this as in other societies. It was exemplified in the twentieth century by Mustafa Kemal Atatürk's insistence that “modern” Turks had to substitute the brimmed European hat for the Ottoman fez in republican Turkey. According to Babur, 'Umar Shaykh sometimes wore a turban and at the other times the *bdlr* the Mongol cap worn by his Chaghatay relatives in Mughulistan.³⁰ “He wound his turban twisted,” Babur remembers, “In those days all turbans were *dastarpichor* four-twists [and] the turban sash hung down. When it was hot he wore the Mongol cap (*borkp* except when he held court.”³¹ 'Umar Shaykh's choice of headgear symbolizes the selective observance of Islamic and steppe norms among the late Timurid ruling class. Muslims

²⁹ BN-M, f. 7b.

³⁰ BN-M, f. 103a, where Babur refers to the headdress of his maternal uncle, the Mongol Kichik Khan, and his men as “Mughulcheh borklar.”

³¹ BN-M, f. 7a. For photographs and brief descriptions of various Central Asian and Iranian caps and turbans see Sigrid Westphal-Hellbusch and Gisela Soltkahn, *Mützen aus Zentralasien und Persien* (Berlin: Museum für Völkerkunde, 1976).

wore turbans and by the late fifteenth century many Turco-Mongol Muslim rulers who might relax with the familiar Mongol cap would not use it to preside at court, where justice, if not sovereignty, was administered according to Islamic norms.

Babur must have been aware as any Central Asian Muslim of his day that the turban identified Muslims. Apart from observing his father and other Turco-Mongols, later in life he read al-Juzjam's anti-Mongol history, *Tabaqat-i ndsiri* in which Juzjam relates a story about an encounter between some Arab Muslim merchants and Chingiz Khan.

Among the merchants they found a few persons from the west, 'Arabian Musalmans, turban-wearers, and they were sent for; and to the person who was the chief, and most intelligent among the party, Chingiz Khan related his dream. The *Tdzi* [Arabic]-speaking merchant said: 'The turban is the crown and diadem of the 'Arab, for head dresses of that description are the tiaras of the 'Arabs; and the Prophet of the Musalmans—Muhammad the Chosen One—the blessing of God be upon him!—was a turban-wearer, and the Khalifahs of Islam are turban wearers.³²

Babur may also have heard stories, such as that told by Haydar Mirza, about the significance of turbans in the partially Islamized world of early fifteenth century Mughulistan, illustrating how seriously newly converted Muslim rulers viewed the headgear worn by their followers. In the history of his Mongol ancestors, the *Tarikh-i Rashzdi*, Haydar Mirza tells a story about Muhammad Khan, whom he describes as the last of the Mongol *khaqans*. Muhammad Khan was, he writes, a sincere Muslim and a just man (*adalat u dad*) who brought most of the Mongol "nation" (*ulus*) into Islam during his reign. One of the "severe" measures Muhammad Khan took to force Mongols to adopt Islam, Haydar Mirza reports, was to punish them for refusing to substitute the turban for the Mongol cap, tantamount to denying Islam. If one of his Mongols refused to wear a turban, the Khan ordered a horseshoe nail to be driven into the man's head.³³

Babur also remarks on the selective use of headgear by Sultan

³² Abu 'Umar Mmhaj-ud-Dm Usman ibn Siraj al-Dm al-Juzjam *Tabakat-i nasin* H.G. Raverty trans. (New Delhi: Oriental Books Reprint Corporation, repr. 1970), II, 974-75.

³³ TR-T, f. 20b.

Husayn Mirza Bayqara. According to Babur, Husayn Bayqara “wore either a *borkor* or a *qalpagh* [Turkoman hat]. Occasionally on religious days he put on a small, three-fold-turban, wound broadly and badly [and] thrusting a heron’s feather into it, would go to prayers.”³⁴ The sense that late fifteenth century and early sixteenth century Harat still retained a distinct Turco-Mongol atmosphere is corroborated by Bihzad’s paintings of Husayn Bayqara’s court, where he and many courtiers are pictured wearing these caps.³⁵ In contrast court scenes from late sixteenth-century Safavid Iran and Mughul India nearly always depict entirely turbaned gatherings. Babur, in fact, implicitly locates Husayn Bayqara on the Turco-Mongol side of the Turco-Mongol, Perso-Islamic cultural spectrum. Not only did he fail to observe Muslim fasts,³⁶ but he looked and acted more like a Turk than ‘Umar Shaykh. He was “slant-eyed” (*giyik gozluq*) and composed Turki poetry, and he wore fine red and green silk clothes reminiscent of Mongols who, like Babur’s uncle Kichik Khan, dressed for ceremonial occasions in Chinese brocades.³⁷ These outward signs of persistent Central Asian cultural strains are consistent with Husayn Bayqara’s interest in Turki, which was elevated to a literary language by his boon companion, Mir ‘All Shir Nava!

Yet Husayn Bayqara was hardly a Turkic cultural chauvinist; he presided over a florescence of Turki, Persian and Islamic culture in Harat. Babur’s description of writers, artists and scholars at Husayn Bayqara’s court reminds readers that the high culture of the city was overwhelmingly Perso-Islamic, as indeed it was at ‘Umar Shaykh Mirza’s court, although to a much more modest degree. In Harat Persian literature and Iranian arts predominated; Muslim theologians and sufis flocked to the richly endowed mosques and religious colleges. Jami the last great Persian classical poet and influential Naqshbandi shaykh was a member of the inner court circle, and Bihzad, the talented specialist in Persian miniature painting was the best known artist at court. Most of the poets Babur

³⁴ BN-M, f. 164a.

³⁵ Ebadollah Bahari, *Bihzad, Master of Persian Painting* (London: Tauris, 1996), 71.

³⁶ BN-M, f. 164a.

³⁷ For a discussion of the Mongolian appetite for *nasij*, gold brocade cloth, see Thomas T. Allsen, *Commodity and exchange in the Mongol Empire* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1997).

mentions also wrote in Persian, often trying to produce variants of well-known Iranian works. In addition the city attracted talented Arabists and religious scholars, such as the Shaykh al-Islam, Sayf al-Dm Ahmad, a descendant of the important medieval Central Asian theologian, Taftazam. As Babur writes of Husayn Bayqara's reign, "His was a wonderful age; in it Khurasan, and Heri [Harat] above all was full of learned and matchless men."³⁸

Babur's glowing praise for Husayn Bayqara's Harat reminds us what he most admired about his own upbringing and what afterwards he learned about other late fifteenth century Timurid rulers. While surrounded by Turco-Mongol lineages he respected his father's Sunni Muslim faith, his knowledge of Persian poetry and historical texts. He admired his bravery but also his polished, civilized speech. He spoke warmly of 'Umar Shaykh's biweekly parties and his father's charming, outgoing personality which enlivened these gatherings. Both father and son enjoyed the camaraderie of these parties, gatherings which may have helped to generate a sense of camaraderie in fragile, fissiparous late Timurid states.³⁹ Babur's own cultural personality is foreshadowed but only partly by these childhood memories. It is fully delineated in the remainder of the text which offers rich information about his particular life.

The Culture of Language

There are many ways to examine and evaluate the composition of Babur's cultural personality. One is to examine the text itself. Both his use of the Turk! language and the type of Turk! he uses offer many clues to the ways in which Turco-Mongol and Perso-Islamic strains combined in Babur. First by using Turk! Babur implicitly but unmistakably defines his intended audience, a crucial consideration for understanding his overall purpose in composing this

³⁸ BN-M, f. 177b. For a brief but stimulating introduction to Timurid culture and especially sophisticated Harat Timurid culture see Maria Eva Subtelny, "The Timurid Legacy: A Reaffirmation and Reassessment," *Cahiers D'Asie Centrale* 3-4 (1997), 9-19. 'Abd al-Hakim Tabibi gives a late twentieth century Afghan's paean to Harat culture in *Tankh-i Harat dar 'ahd-i Timuriydn* (Tehran: Intisharat-i Hirmand, 1368/1989).

³⁹ An idea also suggested by Catherine B. Asher in her article, "Babur and the Timurid Char Bagh: Use and Meaning," *Environmental Design* 9, 11, 51.

memoir. Turki may best be characterized as the principal Turkic language of Mawarannahr in the Timurid period.⁴⁰ By writing in Turki he addressed the memoirs to his immediate Turki-speaking companions and to literate speakers of the language in Samarqand and elsewhere in Central Asia and the bordering regions. By writing in Turki Babur made it unmistakably clear he meant to enhance his stature as a Timurid ruler, a leader of the Turco-Mongol aristocracy of Mawarannahr. After all he wrote his memoirs in India, but did not compose them in Persian, which he could have done for an elite Indo-Muslim audience. After more than twenty years in Kabul he must have known the language at least as well as Haydar Mirza, who wrote the *Tankh-i Rashidi* in Persian. Nor did he have them translated into Hindustani, a language he did not know, to appeal to the Indian population at large. Nor are any Pashtu translations known, despite his love for Kabul and defeat of the Afghan Ludi dynasty in 1526; in fact Pushtu did not exist as a literary language at this time.

The Turki text reminds readers of what Babur makes clear in the *Vaqai*: he envisioned his Indian period as a brief, unpleasant sojourn during which he would subdue a wealthy but otherwise distasteful region he could exploit to fund an Afghan or Central Asian-based Timurid state. He always thought of himself as a Turco-Mongol, Central Asian conqueror of India, not as an Indian ruler. Throughout his four years in India he always planned to return to Kabul—and never ceased to long for his Central Asian homeland. A quatrain known as a *tuyugh* and probably written in India, is one of several poems he composed to express his nostalgia in exile, in this case for the Naryn river and Lake Issigh Koi, just north and east of the Ferghanah valley.

جانغه سالدی دهر غر بت نارینی
 کوز یاشیم بولدی مغولنیک نارینی
 بو ارادا مین دیکانديک بولماسا
 کوزلاي ايسیک کول و اندین نارینی

*

⁴⁰ For a concise discussion of [Chaghatay] Turk! see Eckmann, *Chaghatay Manual*, 1-10. Karl H. Menges categorizes Turkic languages in his work, *The Turkic Languages and Peoples* (Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2nd ed. 1995), 59-66.

Time has forged the anguish of exile in my soul,
 My tears have become the Mongolian Naryn [river],
 Were I not here, as I say,
 Let me see the Issigh Koi [lake] and beyond.⁴¹

If Babur's choice of Turki identifies him socially and politically, the kind of Turk! Babur writes hints at the relative importance of Perso-Islamic elements in his cultural heritage.⁴² According to Babur all the inhabitants of Andijan knew Turki. Yet, he must have been referring to these peoples' pronunciation or perhaps by Turki he meant a popular dialect as well as a written language. It is difficult to imagine that unlettered residents of the Andijan bazar or the town's rural hinterland would have spoken in the style, and the vocabulary of Babur's memoirs.⁴³ While he expressed himself directly, forcefully and simply when measured against the baroque literary style of contemporary Persian literati, his Turki prose is highly Persianized in its sentence structure, morphology or word formation and vocabulary. When Babur wrote in 1527 and 1528 Persian was still the overwhelmingly dominant literary tradition in Central Asia as well as among Muslims in Afghanistan and north-

⁴¹ This quatrain is not included in the Istanbul edition of Babur's poems but it is found in the collection published by A. N. SamoTlovich in Petrograd in 1917 which I. V. Stebleva used for her article "Some Notes on the Literary Skill of Zahiruddin Muhammad Babur," in *Gerhard Doerfer Festschrift, Journal of Turkish Studies* 13 (1989), 245-47. Stebleva discusses the *tuyugh*, a form of quatrain distinguished by the use of homophones, p. 246. Bilal Yucel includes this quatrain as verse no. 414 in his edited collection of Babur's verse. Yucel, 285.

⁴² Menges discusses the lexical composition of Turkic languages at various phases of linguistic development in Central Asia, both Mawarannahr and Mughulistan. In the pre-Islamic Turkic epics the largest number of loan words came from Mongolian and then Persian. Menges traces the principal loan words in Uighur, the language of 7th to 9th century eastern Turkistan (Mughulistan) to Chinese, Indic and Iranian sources. Arabic and new Persian vocabulary flooded Mawarannahr following the Islamic conquests of the 7th and 8th centuries, with Arabic quickly becoming dominant in religious and philosophical texts. Large numbers of Mongolian words were absorbed into Turkic languages during Chingizid ascendancy, a high percentage of them military or administrative terms. *The Turkic Languages and Peoples*, 165-79.

⁴³ See Use Laude-Cirtautas' reference to the decidedly non-Iranized Turk! spoken in Andijan in the twentieth century. "On the Development of Literary Uzbek in the Last Fifty Years," 39, n. 16. Based on the author's personal experience in Uzbekistan in 2000, while Persian or "Tajik" was spoken widely in Samarqand, in Andijan only scholars were familiar with the language and its literature.

ern India. Persian literary norms were especially dominant in Turk! poetry, as Babur's own poetry attests.⁴⁴ Not only that, but when Babur alludes to earlier poets and plays on poetic themes, he cites classic Iranian writers such as Hafiz rather than Turk! writers and Iranian or Iranized literary heroes such as Layla and Majnun rather than Central Asian figures.⁴⁵ The same was also nearly universally true of Ottoman verse until the late eighteenth century.⁴⁶

The structural influence of Persian on Babur's prose is most obvious in his repeated use of the relative clause in place of the characteristic Turkic participle or gerund constructions that characterizes both earlier Turkic languages as well as the "modern" Turkish of the republican period, a language based upon the speech of "Turks," of the Anatolian countryside.⁴⁷ Within the first few folios of his text he uses the Turki word *kim*, (who what or which), to construct relative clauses on the model of the Persian synonym *kih*. "The Saihun river," Babur writes while describing his Ferghanah homeland," which *\kim* is known as the Khujand water, enters this province from the northeast."⁴⁸ He repeatedly uses the phrase *dirlar kim...*, "they say that...." a translation of the Persian, *miguyand kih*, to introduce noun clauses in his discussion of the Ferghanah countryside. On the same model he lifts longer phrases directly from Persian. The phrase *bih in martabah kih*, "to such a degree that..," becomes only slightly transformed in Turki to *bu martabah-da...kim*. Similar examples can be found throughout the text.

Babur's use of these common Persian or Indo-European constructions reflected the dominance of the Persian literary tradition in Turki prose as well as poetry during his lifetime. His father, after

⁴⁴ Stephen F. Dale, "The Poetry and Autobiography of the *Babur-Namaf*," *The Journal of Asian Studies* 55, 3 (August 1996), 635-664.

⁴⁵ See his reference to Hafiz—and Salman—in *ghazal* 81 and his use of the Layla and Majnun story to symbolize his own literary infatuation in *ghazal* 31. Stebleva, 289 & 239. See also Yiicel, no. 85, pp. 168-169 and no. 34, p. 138.

⁴⁶ Kemal Silay, *Nedim and the Poetics of the Ottoman Court* (Indiana University Turkish studies Series 13 (Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana University Press, 1994).

⁴⁷ See for example Talat Tekin, *A Grammar of Orhon Turkic* (Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana University Press, 1968) and Fikret Turan, "On Sentence Structure of Early Oghuz Turkish," *Central Asiatic Journal* 42, 1 (1998), 99-109.

⁴⁸ BN-M, f. 2a.

⁴⁹ BN-M, f. 7a.

all, read Persian poets and Persian-language histories, not Turk! ones. Babur also quotes classical Persian poets and mentions he was familiar with several Persian historical texts, Yazdi's *Zafar namcdpa* chronicle of Timur's career, and Juzjam's, *Tabaqat-i ndsin*. Apart from Mir 'Ali Shir Naval and Sultan Husayn Bayqara, he never mentions a Turk! writer. More importantly, he only quotes Persian verse when he chooses aphorisms to legitimize observations he makes in his memoirs. There were few extant Turki or proto-Turki prose works he could have known or used as literary models that antedated the Timurid period.⁵⁰ One of the earliest is the mid fourteenth century Khwarazmian religious text, *Nehecul Feradis*, one written in an even more "simple and open" style than Babur's own memoirs.⁵¹ However, no evidence exists to indicate that Babur was aware of this particular work. If he took his cue from any Turk! prose text it would probably have been Mir 'Ali Shir Naval's 1499 essay, *Muhakamat al-Lughatain*, a work considerably more Persianized than Babur's own prose.⁵² Even Naval, who ironically wrote the essay to argue for the natural primacy of Turki as a literary language, found it impossible to write free from Persian influence.

Babur's Turki contains as much Persian vocabulary as Persian assimilated from Arabic, if not more.⁵³ Central Asian Turkic

⁵⁰ BN-M, II, Index no. 8, 441.

⁵¹ Janos Eckmann, "On Soz," in *Harezmi, Kipcak ve Qagatay Turkgesi Uzerine Aragtirmalar* (Ankara: Ataturk Kultiir...no. 635, 1996), 44, and E. N. Nadjip, "Prozaicheskoe Sochinenie XIV B. "Nakhdz al-Faradis" Istoriya Izucheniya Kharakternye Osobennosti Yazika" in E. N. Nadjip, *Issledovaniya po Istorii Turk-skikh Yazikov* XXIV w. (Moskva: "Nauka," 1989), 137-46.

⁵² Mir 'AlTShir NavaT, *Muhakamat al-Lughatain* Robert Devereux trans. (Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1966). See also G. F. Baikova, "Bdbur-.Name" Yazik, Pragmatika Teksta, Stif (Moskva: "Vostochnaya Literatura," 1994), 223-24.

⁵³ See Gerhard Doerfer, "The Influence of Persian Language and Literature Among the Turks," in Richard G. Hovannisian and Georges Sabagh ed., *The Persian Presence in the Islamic World* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1998), 241, where the author estimates 50-60% of Ghaghatay vocabulary was Persian. See also A. J. E. Bodrogligeti, "Babur Shah's Chagatay Version of the *Risdla-i Validlya*: A Central Asian Turkic Treatise on How to Emulate the Prophet Muhammad," *Ural-Altaische Jahrbücher* v. 54 (1984), 1-61, where the author discusses not only Persian and Arabic borrowings in this 1528 text, natural enough considering it is a religious treatise originally written in Persian, but also remarks on Babur's use of "southern Turkic dialectical characteristics" not found in Babur's memoirs. In his discussion of the early Turk! translation (1393) of Sa'di's *Gulistan*, Bodrogligeti provides a sophisticated discussion of the lexical and grammatical influences of Arabic and Persian in Turk! poetry and prose. A

speakers had undoubtedly used for centuries many of the Persian words Babur writes repeatedly, such as *mardanah*, manly or courageous, and *padshah* monarch and *padshahi*, royal.⁵⁴ He may have heard some of them for the first time when his father read Firdausi's, *Shah namah*.⁵⁵ Otherwise Babur's prose contains dozens if not hundreds of Persian-based Turki compounds, such as his term for conquest or imperialism, *mulkgirliq*, literally "the condition of kingdom-seizing." The word is constructed from *mulk*, itself an Arabic term for state but long part of Persian political vocabulary and *gir*, the present stem of the Persian verb *gereftan*, "to take" and the Turki abstract suffix *-liq*. Only the suffix had been changed from the original Persian word, *mulkgiri*. Considering its usefulness in Central Asian politics, this word had undoubtedly already been absorbed from Persian sources into common Turki parlance. He himself uses the word to describe his own and others' expansionist ambitions.⁵⁶

The first sentence in which this composite noun appears itself exemplifies the linguistic mixture of Babur's Turki:

چون عمر noخ میرزا o-a-ajil j j زاعیه لبق 6LuuJL
ای.اJt_i aJt^c کی رلیق دغدغه ل-ا ایردی.

*Chun Umar Shaykh Mirza buland himmatli'iqve uluq daiyahliq
badshah irdi hamishih mulkgirliq daghdaghahsi bir irdiU*

"As 'Umar Shaykh Mirza was an ambitious and covetous ruler he was always bent on conquest."

In this sentence the first and fourth words, *chun*, "as", and *boland*, "tall" or "great," are Persian, the fifth, *himmat*, "ambition," is an Arabic term with the Turk! suffix, *uluq*, "large" or "great," is a Turki word while *daiyahliq*, "desire," is another Turki-suffixed Arabic noun. *Badshah* is Persian and *irdi* is a Turki verb. The use of *badshah* as well as *mulkgirliq* is a reminder of the prevalence of

Fourteenth Century Turkic Translation of Sa'di's Gulistan (Sayf-i Sarayi's Gulistan Bi't-Turki) (Bloomington, Indiana: c. 1970).

⁵⁴ BN-M, II, Concordance, 300, 104.

⁵⁵ BN-M, f. 7a.

⁵⁶ BN-M, f. 56a. Babur later uses the ending with the variant spelling -lik.

⁵⁷ BN-M, f. 5b.

Iranian political terminology among Turco-Mongol rulers, who often invoked Iranian imperial vocabulary to express their own political ambitions. The second phrase begins with the Persian adverb *liarnlshih*, “always,” followed by *mulkgirliq*, another Arabic noun, *daghdaghahsi*, “inclination,” here with the Turki possessive ending and finally the Turki verb, *bar irdi*. The grammar is Turki, but apart from two Turki words, *uluq* and the verb, the vocabulary is Persian or Arabic and in the case of Arabic words, very likely absorbed from Persian sources.

Babur’s Turki is thus a composite language, evidently reflecting his own upbringing in Andijan’s predominantly Turki environment, combined with Persian literary and Iranian political influences and Arabic borrowings, taken either from Persian or directly from the Quran or Islamic religious texts.⁵⁸ It cannot have been a vocabulary of his Ferghanah youth. He must have acquired many of his Persian and Arabic words and expressions during his Kabul days. Almost every sentence of his memoirs contains mixtures of Turki, Persian and Arabic vocabulary. His most purely Turki sentences are those in which he is discussing life or the environment of his Central Asian homeland, as when he says that “Khujand’s hunting and fowling are very good,” using all Turki words with the exception of the Persian, *besydr*, “very.”

خجند نينك اولاغى و قوشلاغى بسيار يخشى دور.

*Khujandning aulaghi ve qushlaghi besydr yakshi dur.*⁵⁹

As far as Arabic is concerned Babur uses common parenthetical expressions and adverbial phrases such as *fi-ljumlāh* “in brief,” or *fi-l-hdl* “now,” words that had probably been absorbed into the speech of educated Turki speakers. He shifts overwhelmingly to

⁵⁸ Gerhard Doerfer in his article, “The influence of Persian Language and Literature Among the Turks,” argues that Arabic words in Turkish nearly always come from Persian. Hovannisian and Sabagh ed., *The Persian Presence in the Islamic world*, 241. That may be true for many common terms and phrases, but as will be seen below Babur had to have assimilated much of his Islamic religious vocabulary directly from the Quran or from his study of Islamic law. See especially Babur’s work the *Mubayin* or especially the section known as the *Kitab al-zakat*, discussed below, written about 1521, essentially a treatise on “Islamic” taxation policies, which reflects Babur’s sophisticated knowledge of Islamic law, which he began studying formally in Kabul in June, 1519. BN-M, f. 237a.

⁵⁹ BN-M, f. 4a.

Arabic vocabulary only when he discusses Islamic religious issues or ethical questions.⁶⁰ In religion, he reports, Samarqand people are all Sunni, *pdk* (Per.) *mazhab* (Ar.J, "doctrinally pure," *mutasharn* (Ar.J, "followers of the law" and *mutadaiyin* (Ar.J, "steadfast in faith."⁶¹

ایلی تمام سنی د پاک مذہب د متدینان دور.

Eli tamdm Sunni va pdk mazhab va mutasharn u mutadaiyin il dur.

However, when Babur ritually uses devotional or pious Islamic formulas he expresses very few purely in Arabic. *Insha'lldh* occurs only four times in the entire text. When Babur invokes god he normally uses the Mongol word *lengyz* originally the overarching steppe sky, for the deity of the Arabic Quran. Mir 'Ali Shir Naval, in contrast, uses Allah or the Iranian/Indo-European *khuda* far more frequently than *tengri*. Babur's preference for *tengri* as well as his modest use of Arabic phraseology elsewhere in the text may reflect not only his birthplace in the overwhelmingly Turki-speaking Ferghanah valley, but also his status as a member of its military aristocracy rather than a cosmopolitan *adib* like Naval, or an '*alim*, like his childhood religious tutor in Andijan, Khwajah Maulana Qazi. An example of this usage within what may be characterized as an unusually highly Arabicized Turco-Mongol, Perso-Islamic sentence, is one of Babur's rare invocations of god, usually done to punctuate his narration of a crises.

تینکری تعالی کیم اوز قدرت کامله سی بیلہ ہر ایشتم نی
ہر محل دا انداق کیم باید و شاید بی منت مخلوق راست
کیلتوروب تور.

*Tengri ta'ala kim dz qudrat kamilah si bileh har ishtim ni har mahalda
andaq kim bayad shayad bi minnat makhluq rdst kilturub turS*³

"God, the most high, who alone with his perfect power, and without the help of any created being, has caused all my affairs in every instance to turn out properly."

⁶⁰ Blagova, "Babur-Name," 225.

⁶¹ BN-M, f. 44b.

⁶² G. F. Baikova, "Babur-Name" Tazik, *Pragmatika Teksta, Stil*, 120.

⁶³ BN-M, f. 16b.

Babur sometimes uses Turk! and Persian or Perso-Arabic or Arabic synonyms interchangeably according to no obvious pattern. The phrase “known as” or “called,” for example, he alternately renders as the Turk! *atliq* or the Arabic *mashur*, the latter probably taken directly from Persian sources. In other instances, though, Babur seems to chose or at least use Turk! or Persian and Arabic vocabulary in a way that conveys a cultural point. When he describes his uncultured uncles, the Timurid, Sultan Ahmad Mirza of Samarqand, and the Chingizid, Kichik Khan of Mughulistan, both of whom he characterizes as simple and rustic, he uses a Turki verb *olgaymaq* (ولگایم 131) to say that they grew up or matured.⁶⁴ Yet, when Babur alludes to the sophisticated Mir ‘Ali Shir Naval’s upbringing in cosmopolitan Harat he uses instead the Perso-Arabic phrase *nushu u nama*, the only time he uses the phrase in his memoir.⁶⁵ *Nushu* is derived from an Arabic root that means both “to grow or develop” but also “to compose or write”, and *insha*, “elegant composition” or simply “creative,” is a noun derived from the same verb. By using the Arabic term in his description of Naval he evokes the cultured, urban milieu of the last great Timurid court, a world apart from the “country cousin” character of his Timurid and Chingizid uncles.⁶⁶ Whether he consciously chose to use words in this way or simply employed the vocabulary in the way that seemed most natural at the time, his selective usage makes an important distinction between these men’s cultural personalities.

Turks, Turks and turk Turks

Just as Babur’s use of Turk! and its linguistic characteristics offer certain insights into his cultural personality, he also reveals several aspects of his political and social attitudes by the various ways he uses the word Turk—ethnically, politically and sociologically, posi-

⁶⁴ BN-M, f. 18b and f. 103b.

⁶⁵ BN-M, f. 2b.

⁶⁶ In respect to NavaTs Turk! see the glossary of his literary language compiled in fifteenth century Harat. A. K. Borobkov, “*Bada’i’ al-Lugat’ Slovar’ Tali’ Imam Geratskovo K Sochineniyam AH Shera Navoi*” (Moskva: VostochnoT Literatury, 1961). An interesting glossary/dictionary of Turk! and Persian produced in India during the reign of the emperor Aurungzeb (1658-1707) is by Muhammed Yakub Chingi, *Kelur-Name* A. Ibragimova ed. (Tashkent: “Fan,” 1982).

tively and pejoratively.⁶⁷ Babur occasionally implies that he thinks of “Turks” generally as an ethnic group, a people who speak a common language and sometimes at least, have distinct racial characteristics. When he describes the population of Andijan early in his memoir he remarks: “Its people are Turks, he observes, and “each of the city folk (*shahri*) and merchants (*bazari*) knows Turk!.”⁶⁸ Otherwise he principally identifies Turks as a distinct group in the Kabul and Indian sections of the memoirs, when he is distinguishing them from other people (*il* or *qaum*). When, for example, he talks about the difficulty of governing Kabul he says:

Kabul and Ghazni were full of evil and strife. Turks and Mongols, tribesmen and retainers, Afghans and Hazarahs. Various people and *ulus* were congregated there.⁶⁹

Then following his victory at Pampat in 1526, Babur discusses pursuing the Afghan forces which he has just defeated, and recalls he “summoned Turkish and Indian amirs” {*Turk umarayi ni ve Hind umarayi-ni*} to a war council.⁷⁰ Apart from his reference to Sultan Husayn Bayqara’s “slanted eyes,” only one other time does Babur suggest that when he refers to Turks he also had in mind racial as well as linguistic identity. He does so when he describes his cousin, Baysunghur Mirza’s physical appearance, and remarks “He had big eyes, a round face, a medium build [and] Turcoman features.”⁷¹ Otherwise he uses Turk in much more specific ways.

⁶⁷ For a discussion of the earliest known usage of the term *turk* see P. B. Golden, “Imperial Ideology and the Sources of Political Unity Amongst the Pre-Qinggisid Nomads of Western Eurasia,” *Archivum Eurasiae Medii Aevi* II, 39-45. See also Peter Jackson, “JuzjanT’s use of the word “Turk” in Peter Jackson, *The Delhi Sultanate, A Political and Military History* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1999), Appendix I, 326. JuzjanT primarily used “Turk” to identify Turkic *ghulams* or “slave” troops and only occasionally for Turkic pastoral nomads.

⁶⁸ BN-M, f. 2b.

⁶⁹ BN-M, fs. 187b-188a.

⁷⁰ BN-M, f. 299a. In this passage, though, it is less clear “Turk” is used ethnically, as some of these commanders are likely to have been from Chaghatay lineages.

⁷¹ BN-M, f. 68b. For a brief, early appreciation of Turks as a distinct ethnic group see E. Denison Ross’ edition of the 1206 Persian text of the Ghaznavid writer Fakru’d-Dm Mubarakshah Marvar-rudT, *Tankh-i Fakhru’d Din Mubarakshah* (London: Royal Asiatic Society, 1927). The author includes a Turk! quatrain with Persian translation to help make his point about the superiority of the Turks. In the eleventh century at least, “Turkmen” was used to identify southwestern Turks and also was applied to their dialect, whereas the eastern Turkic dialect was

In political terms Babur employs Turk both to identify Timur's Turco-Mongol confederation, the *lurk ulusi* and his own lineage, and to claim dynastic legitimacy.⁷² He makes only a single direct reference to Timur's confederation, where he distinguishes it from the Mongol *ulus*—*Mughul ve Turk ulusi*.⁷³ However, he may be referring to the then fragmented remnants of the *ulus* when he describes the situation in 1507 after the Chingizid Shibani Khan Uzbek captured Harat. Babur remembers, that "Strange people and ancient foes, like the Uzbeks and Shibani Khan [Uzbek], had taken possession of all the lands in the hands of Timur Beg's descendants. Turks and Ghaghatays who still remain in corners and margins, have joined the Uzbek, some willingly, some reluctantly."⁷⁴ He seems to be referring here not merely to Timurid mirzas, Timur's descendants, but to former members of the *Turk ulusi*, just as his reference to Ghaghatays may refer not merely to his maternal relations, ChingTzids descended from Chingiz Khan's second son Chaghatay, but may refer to their followers as well.⁷⁵ The lack of other references to the Turk *ulus* in the text may reflect the realities of late Timurid politics, where Timur's *ulus* was only a distant memory rather than a political reality.

Babur more commonly uses Turk in a political/military sense when he discusses or justifies his Timurid political legitimacy. He explicitly connected himself to Timur on his genealogical seals where he identified himself as "Ibn 'Umar Shaykh" then traced his ancestors back through Miran Shah to Timur.⁷⁶ In his memoirs he only once explicitly refers to himself as a Timurid, when he includes himself as one of the "Timurid sultans" (*timuriyehsalatirii*)?⁷⁷

called "Turk!," the word Babur always uses to identify his language and literature. See Bosworth, *The Ghaznavids*, 214.

⁷² See Beatrice Forbes Manz on the Ulus Chaghatay, *The rise and rule of Tamerlane* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1989), chapter 2.

⁷³ BN-M, f. 45b.

⁷⁴ BN-M, f. 213a.

⁷⁵ See Beatrice Forbes Manz, "The Development and Meaning of Chaghatai Identity," in Jo-Ann Gross ed., *Muslims in Central Asia*. Expressions of Identity and Change (Durham, North Carolina: Duke University Press, 1992), 27-46.

⁷⁶ Annebel Teh Gallop, "The genealogical seal of the Mughal emperors of India," in *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* 3rd Ser. 9, 1 (April, 1999), 107. Babur's grandson, Akbar (r. 1556-1605), also had seals made that traced his genealogy to Timur, as did later Timurid-Mughul emperors. AA, I, 54.

⁷⁷ BN-M, f. 34a. Otherwise he uses *Timuri* only twice, as a name for a melon, *mir Timuri*. BN-M, fs. 5a & 48b.

Babur asserts his dynastic claims in the text implicitly by equating his *khanivadih* or family with Timur's line. Referring to his second seizure of Samarqand in 1500, Babur remarks that "For nearly one hundred years the capital [Timur's capital] had been in our family [*khanivadih*],"⁷⁸ and while describing his visit to Harat in 1506 Babur self-importantly observes "I had twice taken my seat on the ancestral throne [*ata takhtidd*] of Samarqand by direct force. I had fought and struggled with the alien enemy [the Uzbeks] for the sake of this family/ dynasty [*khanivadih*]." Later he employs Turk as a lineage and political synonym for *khanivadih*. Thus while narrating his first serious military campaigns in the Panjab in 1519 against the small state of Bherah, Babur cites Timur's conquests as precedent for his claims. "Timur Beg had gone into Hindustan; from the time he went out again, these several countries [i.e. Bherah, Khushab, Janab and Chiniut] had been held by his descendants and the dependents and adherents of those descendants."⁸⁰ Referring to these same four territories Babur writes: "As it was always in my heart to possess Hindustan, and as these several countries, Bherah, Khushab, Janab and Chiniut had once been held by the Turk, I pictured them as my own."⁸¹ In making these claims he may have been aware that Shah Rukh was recognized as an overlord by the so-called Sayyid monarchs of Delhi, and that Ulugh Beg, treated the last Sayyid ruler as *his* feudatory in a letter dated to the late 1440's, assigning him the government of Delhi!⁸² Then alluding perhaps to Timur's sack of Delhi in 1398, Babur reports that "Thinking of the Turk-occupied provinces as our very own," he sent to the Afghan ruler of north India, Ibrahim Ludi, a royal present, "a goshawk and asked for the provinces that had long been dependencies of the Turk."⁸³ Finally, Babur concludes these references when he quotes a *rubai* he sent in August 1526 to the

⁷⁸ BN-M, f. 85a.

⁷⁹ BN-M, f. 187b.

⁸⁰ BN-M, f. 224b.

⁸¹ BN-M, f. 223b.

⁸² Peter Jackson, *The Delhi Sultanate, A Political and Military History* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1999), 322, citing the fifteenth century historian Muhammad Bihamadkham and Ishtiyag Ahmad Zilli, "Development of *Insha* Literature to the End of Akbar's Reign," in Muzaffar Alam et al, *The Making of Indo-Persian Culture* (Delhi: Manohar, 2000), 343, quoting the late sixteenth-century compilation *Munsh'at-i Namakin*.

⁸³ BN-M, f. 226b.

still-entrenched Ludi governor of the nearby Bayanah fortress who refused to recognize his authority. "Along with royal letters of threat and promise"⁸⁴ in which he demanded Nizam Khan's surrender, Babur wrote in his poem: "Strive not with the Turk O Mir of Bayanah."⁸⁵

Babur's identity as a Turk legitimized his imperial aspirations and conquests but he also implicitly recognizes the legitimacy of Chingizids. He was disappointed that his Mongol uncle, Mahmud Khan of Tashkent, refused to support him with more than kind words, often helping instead other Mongols such as Sultan Ahmad Tambal. Babur caustically ridicules other Turks or Afghans who affected sovereign habits, but he never questions whether Mahmud Khan or any of his maternal Chingizid relatives could rightfully struggle for power. Babur implicitly grants that right even to Shibam Khan Uzbek, a man he despised for destroying Timurid power in Mawarannahr. He seems to assume that Timurids, who had ruled in Mawarannahr, Iran and Afghanistan for nearly a century, had the most compelling sovereign claim to these territories. While Babur does not say so explicitly, according to his cousin, Haydar Mirza, Babur's paternal or Timurid grandfather, Sultan Abu Sa'id Mirza (d.1469) had done so years earlier when he told Babur's maternal or Chingizid grandfather, Yunas Khan, that he was now padshah or sovereign, and not a Mongol vassal as Timur had technically been.⁸⁶

Babur thought of Turks, Timur's kin, as a legitimizing political identity, but he also used it in a sociological sense to identify one of a number of populations whom he calls *sahranlshin*, that is steppe dwellers, or, evidently, pastoral nomads. In doing so he made a distinction that some Central Asian Turks themselves made centuries earlier when they distinguished themselves as Turks from the *Tat*, the sedentary Iranian population of the oasis cities.⁸⁷ In his descriptions of Ferghanah and the Samarqand region Babur says that the *sahra nishin* are Aymaq and Turk, Mongol and Turk, while around Kabul they are Afghan and Hazarah, the latter the Mon-

⁸⁴ BN-M, f. 298a.

⁸⁵ Ibid., f. 298a.

⁸⁶ TR-T, f. 29a.

⁸⁷ Golden, "Imperial Ideology and the Sources of Political Unity Amongst the Pre-ginggisid Nomads of Western Eurasia," *Archivum Eurasiae Medii Aevi* II (1982), 41-42.

gol-influenced but mainly Persian-speaking population of the mountainous areas west of Kabul. Babur does not say how he distinguishes among these four pastoral nomadic populations, particularly since some Hazarachs also spoke Mongol, but in the case of Aymaq, Turk and Afghan real or putative descent from acknowledged Mongol, Turkic or Afghan tribes is probably the defining criteria. To some degree the distinction may also be a linguistic/ethnic one, at least between the Aymaqs, Turks and Afghans. In Babur's mind the association between Turks and pastoral nomadic life was still very strong. In one instance he seems to use the word as a kind of generic term to designate pastoral nomadic groups in general, as when describing a group of villagers near Ura Tipa in the western Ferghanah valley. He says of them that "Although the people are Sarts [settled people] and villagers [sedentary] they are herders and shepherds like Turks."⁸⁸

Babur implicitly distinguishes himself from individuals or tribes who lived like *sahra nishin* Turks or Mongols or Afghans, whether they actually lived in the countryside or not. Timur's *Turk ulusi* may have been largely nomadic but Babur distances himself from the *sahra nishin* Turks of his day, often characterizing them with one of a half-dozen Arabic, Persian and Turk! synonyms to convey their simple, robust, unsophisticated nature. They are, he writes, *sadih* or *sadiq*, "simple," *rusta* "rustic," *mardanah*, "manly," *qazaqanah*, "vagabond-like" or, they are *turk*, a synonym he uses for simple, rustic and vagabond-like, and perhaps brave as well.⁸⁹ A typical example of the way Babur uses *turk* as an adjective is his description of his Timurid uncle, Sultan Ahmad Mirza, the ruler of Samarqand, whom he depicts as one who resembled a nomad or possibly a peasant, despite being raised in cosmopolitan Samarqand. "Although," Babur writes, "Sultan Ahmad had grown up in the city, he was rustic and artless (*turk ve saddi*)." Put another way Sultan Ahmad was a Turki-speaking, turk Turk, a simple Timurid who spoke Turki. Or Tengri Birdi Samanchi, one of Sultan Husayn

⁸⁸ BN-M, f. 97a.

⁸⁹ In a thirteenth century Persian text the word *rustai* was used in Iran in the sense of peasant or countryman. CHI 5,284. It is also found in the *Neheciil Faradis* (see above n.31). See E. I. Fazilov, *Starouzbekii Yazik* (Tashkent: Fan), 1966, II, p. 233.

⁹⁰ BN-M, f. 18b.

Bayqara's Turco-Mongol nobles, he characterizes as "a simple (*turfy*, brave (*mardana*) young swordsman."⁹¹ Haydar Mirza, occasionally uses *turk* in the same way, as when he observes of Babur's Timurid line, which he called "Chaghatay," that in Babur's early life "the Ghaghatay were very simple (*turfy*, they were not urbanized (*bdzart*) as they are at present."⁹² In the Ottoman Empire an identical usage persisted down to the twentieth century with the rustic, unsophisticated country folk of rural Anatolia described as Turks to distinguish them from the cultured "Ottomans" of Istanbul and the great cities of the empire. In an anonymous seventeenth century Ottoman treatise on the janissary corps, the slave troops recruited from Christian populations, the author contemptuously refers to members of the Muslim Anatolian peasantry as "Turks, murks."⁹³

Babur's description of the *sahrd nishin* and those who acted like them contains a mixture of nostalgia and condescension that literate urbanites the world over have felt for their "simple" but "brave," "artless" and "rustic" country cousins. They were the noble savages of his day, morally more pure than city dwellers, but still a rough, unsophisticated lot. Particularly in the case of Turks the idea that they were culturally "turk" was a common stereotype dating back to the time that Turkic slaves were brought into the 'Abbasid Caliphate in large numbers. The Arab historian Ibn Hassul portrayed them this way when he wrote:

The Turks know not how to flatter and coax, they know not how to practice hypocrisy or backbiting, pretence or slander, dishonesty or haughtiness on their acquaintance, or mischief on those that associate with them. They are strangers to heresy and not spoiled by caprice....⁹⁴

More to the point of Babur's own perspective as a political Turk, that is a Timurid, but certainly not a *sahrd nishin* Turk of the

⁹¹ BN-M, f. 175b.

⁹² TR-T, f. 70b. Babur also speaks caustically of Afghans who opposed or offended him, as when he says of some who wished to sit in his presence, "These Afghans are very simple (*rusta'i*) and stupid (*bihusti*) people...." BN-M, f. 262b.

⁹³ Pal Fodor, "State and Society, Crises and Reform in 15th-17th Century Ottoman Mirror for Princes," *Acta Orientalia Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae* 40 (1986), 229. I am indebted to Ms. Lisa Balabanlilar, Department of History, Ohio State University for this reference.

⁹⁴ Quoted by Bosworth, *The Ghaznavids*, 209.

Ferghanah countryside, Babur criticized the Turks, Mongols and Afghans as destroyers of settled village and urban life, the kind of life that generated agricultural income and supported the cultured social life he admired in Samarqand and Harat and tried to replicate in Kabul and northern India. He reported that in Ferghanah many towns had been ruined and depopulated because of the depredations of Mongols and Uzbeks. He found similar conditions in parts of Afghanistan when he arrived there in the early sixteenth century. *Mdmurah yoq*, "It was unpopulated," he writes of one Afghan district.⁹⁵ Babur approvingly writes of Majd al-Dm Muhammad, a minister of Sultan Husayn Bayqara, that he "made the districts inhabited and populated" (*mdmur ve abadari*)⁹⁶ using Arabic and Persian synonyms for settled agrarian life. He says of the Afghan district where he witnessed the destructions wrought by Afghan tribes that he had it settled {*mdmuraK*} which made the road safe.⁹⁷

Mdmur is derived from the Arabic root *'amarcp* the root of the term *'umran*, often translated as "civilization," but more accurately rendered as "society." The word *'umran* "is derived from a root which means 'to build up, to cultivate,'⁵ and is used to designate any settlement above the level of individual savagery...."⁹⁸ Ibn Khaldun uses it when he distinguishes *'umrcin badauf* rural agrarian and nomadic society from *'umran hadarp* sedentary/urban society.⁹⁹ However, *'urnrdn* also connotes 'population,' "and Ibn Khaldun frequently uses the word in this sense."¹⁰⁰ This seems to be precisely the meaning that Babur has in mind when he pairs it with *abadan*. Babur also seems to have shared Ibn Khaldun's perception of the contrast and hostility between nomadic and sedentary society, a contrast observed even earlier by the Arab historian Jahiz about the society of northeastern Iran.

⁹⁵ BN-M, fs. 1 and 132a.

⁹⁶ BN-M, f. 177a

⁹⁷ BN-M, f. 132a.

⁹⁸ Franz Rosenthal, "Translator's Introduction," in Ibn Khaldun, *The Muqaddimah* Franz Rosenthal ed. and trans., I, Ixxvi.

⁹⁹ See Muhsin Mahdi's insightful discussion of Khaldun's use of these terms. *Ibn Khaldun's Philosophy of History* (London: George Allen and Unwin, 1957), 193 and n. 7.

¹⁰⁰ Ibid., Ixxvii.

The difference between the Turk and Khurasan! is not like the difference between the Persian and the Arab, or between Rum! and Saqlab! or Zanj! and Habash!, let alone what is even more disparate in constitution and in the difference separating it; on the contrary, it is like the difference between the Meccan and Medinan, or Bedouin and sedentary, or plainsman and mountaineer, or like the difference between the mountain-dwelling Tayyi³ tribesmen and the plains dwelling Tayyi^{3,101}.

Babur's portrayal of the contrasting characteristics of the desert and the sown is almost identical to that of Ibn Khaldun, if lacking the North African's Aristotelian-structured theory. Throughout his memoir Babur speaks like a sophisticated urbanite who saw progress in the settlement of tribes and the agrarian development of the countryside. The kind of social disorder that Babur associated with such *sahra nishin* as the Afghans was engagingly personified by his young uncle, Kichik Khan. Describing him as "rather simple and somewhat rough spoken" Babur says that while he was an observant Muslim, "as he had grown up in a remote place the tent and place where he sat was in disarray, like that of a vagabond, strewn with melons, grapes and saddlery."¹⁰² The key words in this passage are: *bitakallufanih* unceremoniously, which Babur had earlier used to describe his father but meaning something closer here to chaotic, disordered or disheveled, and *qazaqanah*, vagabond-like.

Babur associated *sahra nishin* Turks—or Uzbeks, Afghans and Mongols—with social disorder, economic ruin and political chaos. At one point he complains of the innate qualities of Mongols that made them untrustworthy, although it is often difficult to see that their quixotic loyalties distinguished them greatly from Babur's contentious Tlmurid relatives. However, when Babur spoke of "the consequence of Mongolness,"¹⁰³

...مغول ليق dh n 4yjt...

Mughutiqling natijih...

he probably had in mind not just the political betrayal that this particular sentence alludes to but the full range of Mongol-caused social and economic destruction that he had written about else-

¹⁰¹ Quoted by Bosworth in *The Ghaznavids*, 206.

¹⁰² BN-M, fs. 103b and 108b.

¹⁰³ BN-M, f. 65a.

and economic consequences. In fact Haydar Mirza might equally have said that these Mongols would never settle down unless they became Muslims. The populations of Iranian and Central Asian cities were Muslim; sedentarization meant Islamization and vice versa.

Babur's attitude toward inhabitants of such major cities as Samarqand and Harat encompasses the same contradictory feelings that are visible in Ibn Khaldun's writings.¹⁰⁸ Babur admired their culture while often decrying their decadence. He does not use Turk or turk in any sense to label, describe or characterize urban inhabitants, except in his brief early reference to Andijan or in his occasional characterization of men such as Sultan Ahmad Mirza as "simple." Otherwise when Babur discusses his Timurid relatives or other city dwellers he writes either to praise their cultural polish and intellectual sophistication or to decry their moral decadence and political decline. One man whom he admired greatly and seemed to epitomize for Babur the political Turk or Timurid as ideal ruler was his cousin Baysunghur Mirza. "He was," writes Babur, "a just, good natured and learned prince.... He was generous in moderation. He wrote the *tdlq* script very well. He was also not a bad painter and recited [his own] poetry."¹⁰⁹ Baysunghur Mirza exhibited, that is, the aristocratic virtues of balance, justice and cultural accomplishment admired by Yunas Khan, Haydar Mirza and Babur himself, and exhibited to a significant degree by 'Umar Shaykh Mirza. He was the antithesis of the rough-hewn, destructive, steppe-dwelling *sahra nishzn* Turks, Mongols and Afghans.

While he admired the aristocratic virtues and cultural sophistication of such men Babur also believed many Timurids and their followers to be morally corrupt. He never says this of *sahra nishzn* nor his country Timurid or Chingizid cousins who acted like nomads, however much they drank and caroused! Here his characterization not only echoes Ibn Khaldun, but also, one might add, the historians of most complex societies who share the apparently universal human assumption that rural people were closer to being "good" than urbanites who inevitably suffer moral decline. As has been

¹⁰⁸ Best read in the unabridged edition. See Ibn Khaldun, *The Muqaddimah* Franz Rosenthal ed. and trans.

¹⁰⁹ BN-M, f. 68b.

seen Babur ascribes the fall of Timurid Harat to Sultan Husayn Bayqara's decadence, which was manifested in his sons⁵ effeteness, a generalized urban vice. In this way too these men exemplified Ibn Khaldun's theory, for in Babur's estimation, they had lost their ferocity and forgotten how to defend themselves.

Ibn Khaldun's attitudes represent more than just a useful point of reference for Babur's attitudes toward rural and urban populations. Ibn Khaldun articulated more fully than any other Muslim or Middle Eastern scholar the unsettling perception of an intelligent, cultured city dweller that the sedentary culture he embodied and valued gradually but inevitably produced social and moral decay and ultimately political collapse. Babur never paused to reflect on this dilemma, but it is inherent in his autobiography. When he catalogues the elegant life (*pur zarqfat*) of such Harat Timurids as Husayn Bayqara's sons, his cousins, Badf al-Zaman Mirza and Muzaffar Mirza, the nearly synonymous phrases he uses to describe his cousins' social graces are *suhbat ve suhbatdrayaliq* and *ikhtilat u dmizesh*, conversation and comradeship, friendship and sociableness.¹¹⁰ Far from condemning these qualities he had seen his father display Babur admired them, and throughout the text writes movingly of his delight in gatherings where the Turco-Mongol elite conversed, drank, listened to music and poetry. Babur did not criticize his Harat cousins for these qualities but for their maddening lack of military skills. If he had read Ibn Khaldun, Babur would not have been surprised to learn the cultural splendor he admired and reveled in while visiting Harat sapped the manliness and bravery he had observed in his father.

The comradeship of social gatherings Babur so enjoyed was important to him for other reasons beyond his delight in good food, witty conversation and, by 1519 at least, wine and the drug-laced confection, *majun*. This had to do with another aspect of Ibn Khaldun's theory, the social cohesion of pastoral nomadic societies. Based upon his own experience with tribal levies in North Africa, Ibn Khaldun believed that pastoral nomads were successful as military forces because their close kinship ties and continuous shared hardships generated a degree of social cohesion that established, urban-based states could not match. Babur was not a nomad

¹¹⁰ Ibid., 187b.

and many of his and his father's *begs* were not close relatives. Nonetheless he grew up in a relatively informal political culture which, by force of circumstance, continued to be true for the remainder of his career. Comradeship was a critical element in his military and political fortunes, as he suggests in a description he gives of his trip back from Harat to Kabul in the winter of 1506-07. Having stayed too long enjoying the pleasures of Harat he and his companions, including Qasim Beg Qauchin and perhaps two to three hundred troops, became trapped by heavy snows and had to take refuge in a cave. Babur remembered he refused to sit inside the small cave while many of his troops had to remain outside because, he writes, it would have been neither "manly" (*muruwat*) nor "comradely" (*hamjihitliq*). Then as Babur does so often in the text he culturally ratifies this decision by citing a Persian proverb, "Death with friends is a nuptial."¹¹¹ His writing about this event in Agra in 1527 or 1528 may serve as a reminder that even after occupying the city in 1526, Babur depended on comradeship with his senior commanders to maintain the cohesiveness of his army. Only during the reign of his grandson, Akbar (1556-1605) was the Timurid-Mughul state transformed into an empire.

Islam

Babur thus was an urbanized Turk/Timurid. Like Ibn Khaldun he was also a practicing Muslim. As Babur's description of his father indicates, he grew up in a Sunni Muslim religious environment. Moreover he took Islamic society to be the norm. Thus he never discusses conversion, unlike Haydar Mirza who was familiar with the history and contemporary culture of partly Islamized Mughulistan. Nor does Babur even allude to non-Muslims in his narrative of his Ferghanah years; if the nearby *sahra nishin* were anything other than Muslims he never mentions it. In his day even his dishevelled, vagabond-like young Mongol uncle Kichik Khan from the Alt! Shahr "was renowned for justice and Muslim virtues!"

¹¹¹ BN-M, f. 194b.

کیچیک خان نینگ عدل و مسلمانلیق بیلہ شہرتی بار ایدی.

Kichik Khanning fidtl ve Musalmanliq bileh shurati bar idi.

The pervasive influence of this heritage can be seen in such everyday signs as the calendar he used and how he kept time. He dated and timed his memories in Islamic units. He chronicles the events of his life, the *vaqai* of his memoirs, on the Islamic lunar calendar, not the Iranian solar or the duodecennial, twelve-animal, East Asian calendar that the Mongols brought to Mawarannahr and Iran in the thirteenth century.¹¹² When he designates months, they are Arabic/Islamic months; his festivals were Muslim festivals. In India in 1527, for example, he celebrated 'Id and recalled where he had been on previous celebrations to end Ramadan. He usually recalls the time of day according to whether it was before or after one of the five daily prayers. Only occasionally does he time battles by the height of the sun over the horizon.

An *filrn* from a prominent Ferghanah religious lineage gave Babur religious instruction. Babur reports that after his father's death he adhered to the teachings of this man, Khwajah Maulana Qazi.

J Jblj (J⁰⁻¹) قاضی نینک قدمیدین J Jblj Alal

متقی ایدیم.

Atamdin sung Khwajah Qa&ningyumn qadamidin zahid ve mutaqqi idim.

After my father(died) I was steadfast and god-fearing in Khwajah Qazi's auspicious footsteps.¹¹³

He was a descendant of a distinguished line of Burhan al-Dm 'Ali Qilich al-Marghmam (b. c. 1135-d.1197), the author of a well known Hanafi text, the *HidayatX* Khwajah Maulana Qazi was also a disciple of Khwajah Ubaydullah Ahrar, the most influential Naqshbandi *shaykh* of the period. At birth Babur had also been formally committed to Ahrar, joining many other Timurids as a disciple of the Shaykh and a member of the Naqshbandi order. As a student of Khwajah Maulana Qazi and disciple of Ahrar, Babur

¹¹² For an introduction to these dating systems see Ahmad Birashk, *A Comparative Calendar of the Iranian, Muslim Lunar and Christian Eras* (Costa Mesa California and New York: Mazda Publishers, 1993), 11-38.

¹¹³ BN-M, f. 189b.

¹¹⁴ BN-M, fs. 3b & 16a.

had both a respected Hanafi Sunni education and membership in an influential sufi order.¹¹⁵

Given his education it is not surprising that Babur often spoke admiringly of men who were pious and devout, as he did of his father and many others. One of Sultan Husayn's Turkic nobles, Wall Beg, he describes as a Muslim, "observant of his prayers, simple and sincere (*turk ve sadiq*)" and one of his own long-time supporters, Qasim Beg, Babur characterizes as an "upright, god fearing Muslim."¹¹⁷ As has been noted, he reported favorably on the fact that "The people of Samarqand are all Sunnis, doctrinally pure (*pdk mazhab*), upright adherents of the *shan ah*"^{ns}

Babur expresses his fundamental religious convictions unmistakably when he mentions that in 1519 he ordered the massacre of the population of Bajaur, northeast of Kabul, because, he says, they had become pagans and Islam had been lost among them.¹¹⁹ Babur also manifests his Sunni antagonism for Shihs on several occasions, as when he criticizes Aq Begim, one of Sultan Husayn Bayqara's wives. After remarking she was a "stupid, talkative woman," Babur goes on to say Aq Begim "was also a *rafizt*" a Shi'ah or heretic.¹²⁰ No evidence can be found in any of Babur's writings to support the notion he seriously considered abandoning his Sunni upbringing. His brief flirtation with the Shi'i faith during his third occupation of Samarqand in 1511 was a political act to placate his then Iranian Safavid allies—and it was seen as such by Haydar Mirza and others.

As his use of the Turco-Mongol term *tengn* indicates, Babur's Islam retained a Central Asian linguistic and cultural tinge, just as Iranians' use of the Indo-European word, *khudd* is one linguistic mark of the Persian element in Perso-Islamic culture. He himself explicitly comments on the coexistence of Turco-Mongol and Islamic norms in late fifteenth century Mawarannahr, while unequi-

¹¹⁵ Ferghanah, Samarqand and Mawarannahr generally were within Bukhara's theological orbit. For the pre-Mongol period see Shahab Ahmed, "Mapping the World of a Scholar in Sixth/Twelfth Century Bukhara," *American Oriental Society* 120, 1 (January-March 2000), 24-43.

¹¹⁶ BN-M, f. 171b.

¹¹⁷ Ibid., f. 14b.

¹¹⁸ Ibid., f. 44b.

¹¹⁹ Ibid., f. 218a.

¹²⁰ Ibid., f. 169a.

vocally declaring the supremacy of Islam. Thus in the course of describing the military review held by his maternal uncle, the Mongol Mahmud Khan of Tashkent in June, 1502, which he regarded as a great and somewhat inexplicable curiosity, he observes that "Just as Chingiz Khan legislated, the Mughuls observe Chingiz Khan's code (ta z/A;)." ¹²¹ This military review was, in fact, a completely Mongol event and its exotic quality may be the reason it is commemorated in one of the miniatures of the *Vaqai* painted at Akbar's court around 1590. Known as the "Proclamation of the Yak-tail Standards," the miniature depicts what Babur describes as a Mongol ceremony, whose significance he did not quite understand because he didn't know the language. The ceremony concluded as Mahmud Khan and others threw *qumiz*, fermented mare's milk, toward the standards, after which the army cheered three times and then galloped around the standards. ¹²²

Babur makes clear his own feelings about the relative importance of the Turco-Mongol and Islamic traditions when he writes about his reception by Timurid cousins near Harat four years later:

Previously our ancestors had shown unusual respect for the Chingizid code (*torah*). They did not violate this code sitting and rising at councils and court, at feasts and dinners. [However] Chingiz Khan's code is not a *nass qdti* (categorical text) that a person must follow. Whenever one leaves a good custom, it should be followed. If ancestors leave a bad custom, however it is necessary to substitute a good one. ¹²³

Babur's phrase, *nass qatz* or categorical text, is a synonym for the Quran, which for him—and also for Haydar Mirza—had displaced the Chingizid code as the normative text, at least in moral and legal matters. Yet Timurid legitimacy was still paramount, and Mongol military and social traditions endured.

While Babur's fundamental faith is beyond question, the intensity of his religious feelings should not be exaggerated. From the evidence of his prose and verse he was a ritualistic, observant Muslim and not an unusually pious or evangelical one. Apart from

¹²¹ BN-M, f. 100b.

¹²² BN-M, fs. 100a-b. The legitimizing significance of this Mongol ceremony is discussed by T. D. Skrynnikova, "Siilde—The Basic Idea of the Chinggis-Khan Cult," *Acta Orientalia Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae* 56, 1 (1992-93), 51-9.

¹²³ BN-M, f. 186b.

describing the faith and practice of others, occasionally alluding to the performance of the daily prayers and quite rarely invoking or claiming god's blessing—usually during moments of extreme military crises—Babur scarcely refers to Islam. He conveys deeply felt spirituality only when he speaks of his patron saint, the deceased Naqshbandi sufi *shaykh* Khwajah Ubaydullah Ahrar (d.1490). Like his father, though, Babur accepted Islam as defining or at least legitimizing administrative and legal practices. As usual the evidence for this is much richer for Babur than in Babur's description of his father, but 'Umar Shaykh's habit of wearing his turban rather than his Mongol cap at court is has its literary/legal parallel in Babur's treatise, the *Mubaiyin*.

Written around 1521 in the form of a Turki masnavi, the work was apparently intended as instruction for his son Humayun. The *Mubaiyin's* first two and last two chapters are mainly theological essays on Muslim religious duties, but its third section, known as the *Kitab al-zakat*, discusses the principles and forms of taxation.¹²⁴ It is worth remembering that Babur says he began studying *fiqh*, religious law, in Kabul with one Mullah Muhammad in June, 1519, and his own work may be the direct result of that tutorial. Babur may have owed his detailed knowledge of Islamic law to these studies. At that time or during his youth in Ferghanah he evidently read the twelfth century Hanafi text, *Hidayat*, by Khwajah Maulana Qazi's ancestor, Burhan al-Dm 'Ali Qilich Marghmam, a native of the Ferghanah valley.¹²⁵ Babur knew of this work, which was, not so incidentally, a text studied in Delhi by the influential fourteenth century Indian Chishti *pir*, Nizam al-Dm Auliya?.¹²⁶ An interesting

¹²⁴ S. A. Azimdzhanova, *Gosudarstvo Babura v Kabule i Indii* (Moscow: "Nauka," 1977). See especially Chapter XII, "Babur's Taxation Policy." 137, *K Istorii Fergany Vtoroi Poloviny XV v.* (Tashkent: Akademii Nauk, 1957), 14-15, Nekotorye Ekonomicheskies Vzglyady Zakhir ad-Dina Muhammada Babura, Izlozhennyye v "Mubaiine," *Trudy Dvadsat' Pyatogo Mezhdunarodnovo Kongressa Vostokobedov* (Moskva: VostochnoT Literaturny, 1963), 203-08 and "Nekotorie Ekonomicheskies Vzglyady Zakhiriddina Muhammada Babura," *Iz Istorii Razvitiya Obshchesvenno-Ekonomicheskoi Mysli v Uzbekistane v xv-xvi vv.* (Tashkent: Izdatekstvo Akademii Nauk UzbekskoT CCP, 1960), 81-113, for the Turki! text of part III of the *Mubaiyin*. I am indebted to Maria Eva Subtelny for a copy of the latter text.

¹²⁵ Azimdzhanova discusses the similarity of Babur's text to the *Hidayat*. *Gosudarstvo Babura v Kabule i Indii*, 149.

¹²⁶ Azimdzhanova, *Gosudarstvo Babura v Kabule i Indii*, 149. Babur refers to the *Hidayat* in fs. 3a and 45a. The text became a respected guide to Sunni practice

feature of the text, or at least the Leningrad manuscript, is that Babur concludes by mentioning that he is sending it to the "learned" of his homeland for their comments and corrections, one of many ways in which he reiterates the Central Asian locus of his intellectual, religious and political life.¹²⁷

In section three of the *Kitab al-zakat* Babur discusses agricultural taxes and methods of land revenue collection as well as commercial taxes on merchants. He conducts his survey entirely within the context of Islamic norms, even making a distinction between merchants from Islamic and non-Islamic lands. No hint is given of non-Muslim Mongol or Turkic practices.¹²⁸ Even if many land and commercial revenue practices might have originated in pre-Islamic Iran, the legitimization of specific taxes by Muslim authors helps to explain why 'Umar Shaykh and others thought of themselves as Muslim rulers when it came to governing and, like 'Umar Shaykh, wore turbans when presiding at court, however petty that court might be. By writing the *Mubaiyin* Babur confirms the evidence of his memoir that he saw Perso-Islamic sedentary agrarian and urban society as the norm, however much he enjoyed drinking with his Turco-Mongol companions.

Another sign of Babur's commitment to the culture of Islam in the more general sense of the term as a civilization, is his repeated use of the phrase *akhlaq u atwdr*, "morals and manners," in the Ferghanah section when evaluating the moral or just the personal qualities of an individual.¹²⁹ It is possible to make too much of his

in Muslim India, so much so that British officials in late eighteenth century Bengal ordered it translated into English as an authoritative guide to Muslim "law." See Charles Hamilton trans., *The Hedaya, or Guide; a Commentary on the Mussulman Laws* (Lahore: New Book Co. repr. 1957). See Khaliq Ahmad Nizami in his Introduction to Nizam al-Din Awliya's work, *Morals for the Heart* Bruce Lawrence ed. and trans. (New York, N.Y.: Paulist Press, 1992), p. 18 and n. 68.

¹²⁷ Azimdzhanova, "Nekotorie Vzglady⁵ Zakhir ad-Dina Muhammeda Babura Izlozhennye v 'Mubarine,'" 207.

¹²⁸ See for contrast the transition from Mongol to Perso-Islamic administration described by Ann K. S. Lambton, *Continuity and Change in Medieval Persia* (London: LB. Tauris, 1988), 185-220.

¹²⁹ Babur frequently uses this phrase or its variant for his character sketches of Timurids or members of the Turco-Mongol warrior/ administrative class. His use of the phrase primarily in this first section may reflect the fact that it is the most carefully constructed, polished section of the *Vaqat*. He does not include these sketches or use the phrase in his narrative for the years after 1506.

use of this phrase. Sometimes he simply prefaces a character sketch with these terms. On other occasions he uses them specifically when he discusses an individual's religious practices, as when he describes and implicitly praises his father's orthodox Hanafi belief and observance of the five daily prayers.¹³⁰ In yet other passages Babur praises a person's *akhlaq u atwar* when he is describing a whole set of attributes that one might identify with the idealized Timurid courtier, as when he praises one Sayyidim 'Ali, one of Khusrau Shah's former men, for his bravery, grace, conversation, and gatherings, despite the fact that his religious practices were somewhat suspect.¹³¹ In Babur's usage then the phrase seems to imply a standard for aristocratic civilized behavior, a code that includes but was not confined to Islamic belief or practice. Babur had been directly exposed to literature that inculcated such virtues. One such man who wrote a treatise on *akhlaq* was the former *qdz* of Harat and a court official of Sultan Husayn Bayqara, Ikhtiyar al-Dm Hasan bin Ghiyas al-Dm al-Husayni. This man visited Babur in Kabul sometime after the Uzbek occupation of Harat in 1507. He held conversations with Babur, to whom he rededicated his treatise titled: *Akhlaq-i Humdyuni*.¹³²

However, Babur's Islamic heritage was far more complex than just these elements of a Sunni Muslim's education. Part of his religious upbringing and outlook was composed of his reverence for shaykhs of the Naqshbandi sufi order. His childhood tutor, Khwajah Maulana Qazi, himself exemplified just this typical religious mix of most Timurids, whose apparently unreflective Sunni traditionalism was often animated by a deeply felt sense of spiritual relationship to a Naqshbandi *shaykh*. Like his religious tutor Babur was a disciple of Khwajah Ubaydullah Ahrar, the most influential Naqshbandi shaykh of the second half of the Timurid century.¹³³ A

¹³⁰ BN-M, f. 7a.

¹³¹ BN-M, f. 192b. His characterization of Sayyidim 'Ali and others inevitably calls to mind the sixteenth century Italian classic by Baldesar Castiglione, *The Book of the Courtier* (London: Penguin, repr. 1976).

¹³² See Muzaffar Alam, "Akhlāq Norms and Mughal Governance," in Muzaffar Alam et al, *The Making of Indo-Persian Culture*, 73-75.

¹³³ The Ahrari Naqshbandi's were spiritual descendants of the fourteenth century Bukharan shaykh Baha⁵ al-Dm Muhammad Naqshband (d. 1389). Khwajah Ahrar's great wealth and political influence with the Timurids is discussed and documented by O. D. Chekovich, *Samarkanskies Dokumenty xv-xvi vv.*

native of the Tashkent region Ahrar had become the spiritual teacher of the Timurids and, after his death, the patron saint of Babur and others. It would not have been difficult for either Babur or his tutor to combine orthodox practice with discipleship to Ahrar, for this Naqshbandi shaykh practiced a restrained form of sufism characterized by close adherence to the *shariah* Islamic law, especially the example or *sunnah* of the Prophet Muhammad. The characteristic restraint of the order was represented by the absence of music or dance that was used to induce ecstatic states in some sufi orders such as the Chishtiya. Instead most Naqshbandis of the fifteenth century at least practiced the "silent *dhikr*" rather than, for example, the vocal chanting of God's name.¹³⁴

If the "silent *dhikr*"^J is usually seen as a signature spiritual trait of the fifteenth-century Naqshbandi order, its social and political equivalent ought to be Khwajah Ahrar's persistent involvement in political affairs of Timurid Mawarannahr. Indeed, Ahrar himself was a not very well-educated Naqshbandi Shaykh whose guide to the goal of oneness with God deemphasized both seclusion and

(Moscow: Nauka, 1974). Jo-Ann Gross discusses Ahrar's religious persona in her dissertation "Khoja Ahrar: A Study of the Perceptions of Religious Power and Prestige in the Late Timurid Period," Ph.D. dissertation, N.Y. University, 1982. See also her article "Multiple Roles and Perceptions of a Sufi Shaikh: Symbolic Statements of Political and Religious Authority," in Marc Garborieau, Alexandre Popovic, and Thierry Zarcone ed., *Naqshbandis* (Istanbul/Paris: Editions ISIS, 1990), 109-21 and Jurgen Paul, "Forming a Faction: The Himayat System of Khwaja Ahrar," *International Journal of Middle East Studies*, 23 (1991), 533-548. R. D. McChesney includes photographs of Ahrar's Samarqand tombstone and shrine in his book, *Central Asia, Foundations of Change* (Princeton, N.J.: Darwin Press, 1996), plates 19 & 20.

¹³⁴ The practice is discussed in many texts but for a recent summary based on primary sources see Jurgen Paul, *Doctrine and Organization. The Khwajagan/Naqshbandiya in the First Generation after Baha'uddin* (Berlin: ANOR, 1998), 18-30. See also the extended discussion of the scholarship on this practice by Isenbike Togan, "The Khasi, JahrT controversy in Central Asia Revisited," in Elizabeth Ozdalga ed., *Naqshbandis in Western and Central Asia* (Istanbul: Swedish Research Institute, 1999), 17-45. There is now a rich literature on the Naqshbandiyyah *silsilah* in Central Asia and elsewhere. See among other works Jurgen Paul, *Die politische und soziale Bedeutung der Naqshbandiyya in Mittelasien im 15. Jahrhundert* (Berlin and N.Y.: W. de Gruyter, 1991), Fritz Meier, *Zwei Abhandlungen über die Naqshbandiyya* (Istanbul: Fritz Steiner Verlag, 1994) and Fritz Meier, *Meister und Schüler im Orden der Naqshbandiyya* (Heidelberg: G. Winter, 1995) and for the Indian history of the order see among other works Arthur Buehler, *Sufi Heirs of the Prophet. The Indian Naqshbandiyya and the Rise of the Mediating Sufi Shaykh* (Columbia, South Carolina: U. of South Carolina Press, 1998).

austere practices in favor of *suhbat*, communion with sufi masters and through such communion, the absorption of their spiritual power. Ahrar may have emphasized the effectiveness of this practice in which the disciple practices *rabida*, the concentration on the image of his *shaykh*, whether present, absent or deceased, in order to absorb his spiritual energy, because he was simply too busy with politics to supervise the practice of *dhikr*.¹³⁵ Whether he chose this method for this reason or because of his own rather rudimentary education he was an exceptionally worldly sufi who accumulated vast landholdings in Mawarannahr during his lifetime, partly perhaps as a result of his constant involvement in the social and political conflicts of his day.¹³⁶ Ahrar's sons continued his political activities by supporting one Timurid claimant or another in the internecine struggles of the late fifteenth-century. It was undoubtedly their close association with the Timurids that led Uzbeks to kill one of them and two grandsons following Babur's expulsion from Samarqand, although Uzbek rulers in the sixteenth century themselves patronized this family line of the Naqshbandi order.

In his memoirs Babur never mentions that he participated in formal sufi ceremonies, although he must have known basic elements of fifteenth century Naqshbandi practice and perhaps even subtle aspects of Naqshbandi theology. Quite apart from his own teacher and many Timurids and other Turco-Mongols of his circle who were Naqshbandi disciples, Babur was intimately familiar with the poetry of the fifteenth century Persian-language writer, 'Abd al-Rahman Jami, who articulated Naqshbandi doctrines in much of his work. Babur mentions Jami with effusive respect in the section where he describes his visit to Harat in 1506.¹³⁷ Whatever his own knowledge of Naqshbandi theory and practice, twice in his memoirs Babur recalls practicing what might be interpreted as a form of *suhbat* in which he evokes Khwajah Ahrar's image and benefits from his spiritual power. The first time occurred before his second occupation of Samarqand in 1500, when he called forth Ahrar's image before seizing the city. On the second occasion in November

¹³⁵ Paul, *Doctrine and Organization*, 34-37 & 71-7.

¹³⁶ Much of this land was later converted into *waqf* generally known as religious or charitable endowment. Some of these endowment documents have been edited and published by O. D. Chekovich, *Samarkandskie Dokumenty xv-xvi vv.*

¹³⁷ BN-M, f. 177b.

1528, Babur versified a tract of Ahrar's in order to be cured of a severe illness. He uses, as he pointedly remarks, the meter of Jami's own religious poem, *Subhaful abrar*, the *Rosary of the Pious*.¹³⁸ Babur writes that in comparison to the length of his earlier illnesses, on this occasion he was cured in record time.

One of the cities where Khwajah Ahrar acquired land holdings was Kabul, which he had converted into *waqf* endowments before his death in 1490 to support a mosque and madrasah and his own descendants.¹³⁹ As Ahrar is never known to have visited Kabul he may have acquired his holdings there at least partly through the influence of Babur's Timurid uncle, Ulugh Beg Kabuli. In his section on Kabul, most of which is missing, Babur doesn't mention the Ahrar Naqshbandi presence in the city. While the later history of this endowment is virtually undocumented it probably played an important role in the time of Babur's son Humayun, and was very likely the original economic base of the family of Baqi Billah Birang, the *murshid* or teacher of Shaykh Ahmad Sirhindi, the founder of the influential Indian branch of the order later known as the *Mujaddidi*.

Persian Wisdom Literature

If Babur respected Chingizid customs, accepted the Quran as the categorical text and revered Naqshbandi shaykhs, he also constantly invokes in his memoirs another kind of cultural authority, literature of Perso-Islamic poetry, which he mines as an inexhaustible source of aphorisms. He always quotes Persian poetry of the Islamic period when he wants to demonstrate a truism, irrefutably drive home an argument or legitimize a casual observation. As is true of most cultures pre-Islamic Iran produced its share of *andarz*

¹³⁸ BN-M, fs. 346a-b.

¹³⁹ For a translation and commentary on this *waqf* see Dale and Payind, "The Ahrar! Waqf of Kabul in the Year 1546 and the Mughul Naqshbandiyyah," 218-33. Ahrar! descendants still enjoyed income from this endowment up to the time of the Soviet invasion in 1979. For a report on the Naqshbandiyyah in Afghanistan just before that invasion see Bo Utas, "The Naqshbandiyya of Afghanistan on the Eve of the 1978 Coup d'Etat," in Ozdalga ed, *Naqshbandis in Western and Central Asia*, 117-27.

or wisdom literature, much of it attributed to Sasanid monarchs, and Iranian poets probably derived many of their pithy sayings from the general truths, moral maxims and advice of the Sasanian period.¹⁴⁰ Throughout the eastern Islamic world the aphorisms of Iranian-Muslim poets became popularly accepted truisms about life and politics, not categorical texts, not divinely sanctioned religious law, but truisms delivered by the most prestigious representatives of Perso-Islamic literary culture.

Babur usually cites verses from the thirteenth century Iranian poet Sa'di's two most popular works, the *Bustan*, "The Perfume Garden" and the *Gulistan*, "The Rose Garden." A typical example is when he cites a verse to punctuate his criticism of the merciful act of one of his longest serving *amirs*, Qasim Beg, who in 1507 had freed some Hazarah prisoners. "Mis-timed compassion" Babur called it and cited a quatrain from the *Gulistan*:

To do good to the bad is one and the same
As the doing of ill to the good;
On brackish soil no spikenard grows,
Waste no seed of toil upon it.¹⁴¹

Elsewhere he quotes the *Gulistan* again for his presumably male, Turco-Mongol audience, perhaps with a wink and a nod, when describing one of Husayn Bayqara's wives. "A bad woman in a good man's house is like his hell in this world."¹⁴² At other times he concludes arguments with a verse expressing sentiments of such universally accepted truth that they are difficult to identify. One such verse, "Wise men have said an illustrious reputation is a second life," he may have taken from Sa'di, or just as likely from Firdausi's *Shah namah*, which he mined as a source of aphorisms in the same way he exploited Sa'di.¹⁴³

¹⁴⁰ For a discussion of Sasanian wisdom literature see especially S. Shaked, "Andarz and Andarz Literature in Pre-Islamic Iran," *Elr* 2, 11-16, G.-H. Yusefi, "Andarz Literature in New Persian," *Elr* 2, 16-24 and Ehsan Yarshater, "Iranian National History," *CHR* 3 (I) the Seleucid, Parthian and Sasanian Periods, 399-400, and more briefly in J. T. P. De Bruijn, *Persian Sufi Poetry*, 86-88, who discusses it as a/ the source of Persian mystical didactic poetry.

¹⁴¹ BN-M, f. 197a. This particular translation is that of Annette Beveridge, but with the order of her lines reversed to restore the original sequence. BN-B, p. 313.

¹⁴² BN-M, f. 169a.

¹⁴³ BN-M, f. 185b.

In some instances Babur may relate an incident with the purpose of demonstrating a well-known truism from Iranian literature that he might expect his audience to recognize. A possible example is the story that he tells about his father to illustrate 'Umar Shaykh's repute as a just sultan. Using the Arabic-Islamic term *'addlat* once again Babur writes:

Umar Shaykh was so just that when he heard of a caravan from China being lost in the snow of the mountains of eastern Andijan, and that only two of its thousand heads of houses escaped, he sent accountants to record all the caravan's goods, and even though no owners were present and he was in need, within a year or two summoned the heirs from Samarqand and Khurasan so that the goods were returned.¹⁴⁴

Babur's story bears a striking resemblance to one of Sa'di's moral lessons, which also might be the source of the previous adage on kingship.

When in your realm a merchant dies
A base thing it is to touch his property,
For later when lamenting they weep over him,
Relatives and kin will relate to each other
How a poor wretch died in a foreign clime,
While a tyrant took the goods that he left....
Many's a fair-name of fifty years standing
That one foul name has trampled down."¹⁴⁵

Did Babur invent the story; probably not. Yet he may have thought of recording it because he recalled Sa'di's moral. Babur naturally fails to mention that his father had good economic reasons for his "just" actions, as his appanage straddled the strategic Ferghanah valley, one route for the coveted and taxable silk road.

The Tlmurid Symposium

The various Turco-Mongol, Islamic and Persian strains in Babur's cultural personality are most commonly on display in the *Vaqai*

¹⁴⁴ BN-M, fs. 7a-b.

¹⁴⁵ G. M. Wickens, *The Bustan of Sadi* (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1974), 29.

when he describes the principal communal institution of late-Timurid social, political and cultural life. This was the gathering that he usually identified as *suhbat ve suhbatarayaliq*, “conversation and camaraderie” or sometimes simply as *majlis* or “gathering.” Readers of the *Vaqai* come away from the text with the feeling that few things in life mattered more to Babur than these social gatherings, which he repeatedly describes during his narration of the Kabul and Indian years. It is tempting to say he spoke with almost religious fervor about such gatherings in this phrase that echoed the Naqshbandi sufi *suhbat* or gatherings of adepts. Apart from the idiosyncratic Naqshbandi *suhbat*, the convivial gathering of the *suhbat ve subatarayaliq* was one of three communal institutions of the period. The others were weekly gatherings in the congregational or Friday mosque and visits to the *hammam*, the communal or public bath. However, Babur for all his Sunni orthodoxy never mentions attending Friday prayers in a congregational mosque, although he may commonly have done so, at least in Samarqand, Harat or Kabul. Nor does he ever recount any visits of his own to a *hammam*, except to recall sleeping off the effects of a drinking party one night in Kabul in October 1519.¹⁴⁶ Still the mosque and hammam were inevitable corollaries of Muslim public life, and after his victories in India he ordered the mosque and bath buildings in Kabul to be repaired. Yet it is the *suhbat ve suhbatardiyatiq* that is the leitmotif of Babur’s narrative and demonstrably the institution he valued most throughout his life.

Babur experienced the most elegant of these gatherings in Harat, but the ones that he seemed to remember most fondly in later life were the innumerable informal drinking sessions that took place in and around Kabul, years before his successful invasion of India. He describes a typical gathering that began on October 30th, 1519 and continued for the next few days. This session was preceeded by what he describes as a little *suhbat* in Kabul for sixteen people on October 29th. Then Babur and some of his men rode north from Kabul to the beautiful hillside village of Istalif to view the fall foliage. The first night it rained so hard the *begs* and *ichki begs* all crowded into Babur’s tent that had been erected on the edge of the *Bdgh-i Kalan*, the “Great Garden.” The following day they enjoyed

¹⁴⁶ BN-M, f. 246b.

what Babur identifies as a *chaghir majlisi*, a wine-party or gathering. All drank throughout the day until the evening, resumed drinking the next morning with the so-called "morning draught," became drunk and then slept until the mid-day prayer. After waking they moved on to the nearby village of Bihzad where they appreciated the *khazan*, the lovely autumn foliage. Along the way they consumed some of the drugged confection *majun*, which they so often took during these gatherings. Then they drank again until the evening prayer in a gathering Babur now refers to as a *suhbat*.¹⁴⁷

His evocation of the gatherings where he and his compatriots ate, drank, recited poetry and listened to music recalls the *symposium* of pre-classical Greece, shorn of such Greek religious goals as communing with Dionysius. This symposium fulfilled multiple cultural, social and political functions: a center for transmission of traditional values, a place of organization for political action, a place of pleasure and a focus for the patronage of poetry and music.¹⁴⁸ Like the Greek symposium Babur's gatherings were primarily aristocratic social events. In their emphasis on drinking and shared pleasure, in the frequent recital or spontaneous composition of poetry, in their common progression from quiet pleasure to raucous debauch, certain aspects of the *symposia* seem to describe precisely what "entertainments" meant to Babur—and what, to his dismay, they often became.

Euphrosyne... expressed a state of delight produced by wine and by the pleasure of the occasion, generating the appropriate mood for constructive dialogue and the appreciation of poetry. [Although] Like other festivities, the ceremony of wine often transformed itself into an occasion for intemperance and excess. The image of the banquet interrupted by debauchery and violence was a frequent motif in myth and epic.¹⁴⁹

Babur's appreciation of communal meals, wine and poetry also seems analogous to Roman appreciation of dining with one's

¹⁴⁷ BN-M, f. 246b.

¹⁴⁸ Oswyn Murray, "Symposium" in Simon Hornblower and Anthony Spawforth ed., *The Oxford Classical Dictionary* (Oxford and N.Y.: Oxford University Press, 1996), 1461, and especially, Oswyn Murray, "Forms of Sociality," in Jean-Pierre Vernant ed., *The Greeks* Charles Lambert and Teresa Lavender Fagan trans. (Chicago and London: University of Chicago Press, 1995), 218-53.

¹⁴⁹ Massimo Vetta, "The Culture of the Symposium," in Jean-Louis Flandrin and Massimo Montanari ed., *Food, A Culinary History from Antiquity to the Present* (New York, N.Y.: Columbia University Press, 1999), 98 & 99.

friends, known to Cicero and others as *convivium*)⁵® Babur would have appreciated what Plutarch said, “We do not sit at table only to eat, but to eat together.”¹⁵¹ The seventeenth century Sunni Muslim Pashtu poet, Khushal Khan Khattak, similarly observed:

What one consumes in solitude,
Will fill the gut and nothing else;
What one consumes in company,
And sociably, is the true feast.¹⁵²

From a political perspective the *suhbat ve subatdrdalyaliq* was the only institution that regularly brought together members of the aristocratic elite, forming close ties of friendship and loyalty in a society where even kinship bonds were notoriously fragile and unreliable. These gatherings also functioned as a kind of parliament, where important political questions were discussed and decisions taken. When offering his son Humayun some of his probably unwelcome political advice in 1528, Babur pointedly told him that he, Babur, had gained the trust of his longtime companion and supporter, Khwajah Kalan through *ikhtilap* social intercourse.¹⁵³ A few pages later he is writing to Khwajah Kalan himself, then in Kabul, nostalgically recalling that “conversation and wine are pleasant with *hamsuhbaq* “comrades” and *hamkasah*, “boon companions.”¹⁵⁴ Babur’s explicit use of such social gatherings as forums for political bonding is also exemplified by way he describes his invitation to a recently cowed Afghan commander in 1526. Babur pointedly remarks that he invited this man, Fath Khan Sherwam, to a *majlis* to share wine, where he also “distinguished” (*sarafrdf*) the Afghan with a gift of a turban and some of his own clothes.¹⁵⁵ Neither of these acts was original with Babur; shared meals and clothes were a well-

¹⁵⁰ Mirielle Corbier, “The Broad Bean and the Moray: Social Hierarchies and Food in Rome,” in Flandrin and Montanari ed., *Food, A Culinary History from Antiquity to the Present*, 136, and Katharine M. D. Dunbabin, “Ut Greaco More Biberetur: Greeks and Romans on the Dining Couch,” in Inge and Hanne Sigismund Nielsen, *Meals in a Social Context, Aspects of the Communal Meal in the Hellenistic and Roman World* (Oxford: Aarhus University Press, 1998), 81-101.

¹⁵¹ Massimo Montanari, “Food Systems and Models of Civilization,” in Flandrin and Montanari ed., *Food, A Culinary History from Antiquity to the Present*, 69.

¹⁵² Mackenzie, *Divan of Khushal Khan Khattak*, 116.

¹⁵³ BN-M, fs. 349b-350a..

¹⁵⁴ BN-M, f. 361.

¹⁵⁵ BN-M, f. 303.

established Middle Eastern/Islamic form of royal recognition. Never mind that neither of these rituals was ultimately successful in winning this Afghan's loyalty.

Whether these symposia had an immediate political purpose or were simply part of the daily social and cultural ritual of aristocratic life, they were usually held in natural settings or urban garden pavilions, the carefully constructed formal reorderings of nature. The aesthetics of these settings seem to have been as important to Babur as the drinking and literary rituals of the *suhbaf* and through out the text he expresses unfeigned delight at the beautiful gardens he remembered from Ferghanah and Samarqand, and the entrancing mountain scenery of the Kabul region. It is symptomatic of the importance that natural beauty or these garden replicas had for him that he spends more narrative energy on describing their attractions than on any other subject except military and political affairs. The first building he ever ordered to be constructed was apparently a garden portico built near Ush in the southeastern Ferghanah valley in 1496-97, when he was no more than fourteen. His description of this building is included within a longer passage in which he displays an aesthetic sense that was an acquired trait of Timurid culture—a sensitivity to the appeal of dramatic perspective and the beauty of the natural landscape.¹⁵⁶ It is also typical of Babur that he used the occasion in an autobiographical way to trumpet the superiority of his own site selection when compared with an earlier building erected by his Mongol uncle, Sultan Mahmud Khan—who later, of course, he shows to be an indifferent literary scholar and ineffectual military leader. Ush, Babur writes,

Has a good climate, abundant running water and a fine spring. There are many sayings about Ush's virtues. Southeast of the walled town is found a symmetrical mountain named Bara Kuh. At this mountain's summit Sultan Mahmud Khan built a courtyard. Further down this mountain's crest I built a porticoed courtyard in 1496-97.

¹⁵⁶ Babur and the Timurids were not significantly different in this respect from the Chinese appreciation for natural beauty and the dramatic prospect, or that perhaps, of most human beings. For an introduction to Chinese aesthetics of nature and art see among other numerous sources the works of James Cahill, *The Compelling Image: Nature and Style in Seventeenth-Century Chinese Painting* (Cambridge, Mass: Harvard University Press, 1982) and *Parting at the Shore: Chinese Painting of the Early and Middle Ming Dynasty, 1368-1580* (Tokyo: Weatherhill, 1978).

Although [his] courtyard sits at such a height mine is better located for the entire town and suburbs are at its foot. Andijan's river runs through the midst of the Ush districts to Andijan. On both sides are gardens, all of which overlook the river. The violets there are fine. There are many streams and in the spring it is very nice; tulips and roses bloom profusely.¹⁵⁷

It is also indicative the relative importance these settings had for him that following his occupation of Kabul in 1504 and again after taking India in 1526 he never mentions visiting or constructing a mosque or a madrasah, but takes page after page lovingly to describe the construction of new gardens. In 1508-09 he ordered the construction of a *Chahdr-Bagh* [Char-Bagh] in the warm Adinapur temperate zone east of Kabul.¹⁵⁸ Then immediately after his victory in India he rode out around Agra looking for a suitable location to build new *chahdr-bdghs* or symmetrically ordered formal four-part gardens, intersected with waterways and planted with flowers, fruit trees and aromatic plants.

Such gardens were not, of course, unique to Timurid Mawarannahr, although the *chahar-bagh* may have been refined more completely at that period.¹⁵⁹ Aristocratic pleasure gardens were constructed throughout the Islamic Middle East and Muslim Spain, where some of the most famous examples of garden architecture are known to have been built. An example of a private garden in eleventh-century Cordoba sets the mood that Babur often evoked when describing his favorite haunts, although he would not have approved of the zigzagging stream.

Its courtyard is of pure white marble; a stream [*jadwal*] traverses it, wriggling like a snake. There is also a basin into which all waters fall. The roof [of the pavilion] is decorated with gold and blue and in these colours also are decorated the sides and various parts. The garden [*rawd*] has files of trees symmetrically aligned and its flowers smile from open buds. The foliage of the garden prevents the sun seeing the ground; and the breeze, blowing day and night over the garden, is loaded with scents... Abu Amir [Ibn Shuhayd] enjoyed therein spells of well-being and rest both in the morning and after noon. Fate gave him at that time whatsoever he desired, and the

¹⁵⁷ BN-M, f. 3a.

¹⁵⁸ BN-M, f. 132a.

¹⁵⁹ See Maria Eva Subtelny. "Agriculture And The Timurid *Chaharbagh*." The Evidence From a Medieval Persian Agricultural Manual," in Attilio Petruccioli ed., *Gardens in the Time of the Great Muslim Empires* (Leiden: Brill, 1997), 110-128.

pleasures of sobriety and inebriation alternated with each other in his experience. He and the proprietor of the garden who is buried alongside him were companions in the youthful pursuit of the gratification of the sense and allies in joy.¹⁶⁰

The cultivated society of al-Andalus in the tenth and eleventh century has been described almost as if Babur were praising the gatherings of his refined cousins in Timurid Harat, as a "brilliant period of like-minded laity, minded to poetry...congregating to gether in garden symposia."¹⁶¹

Babur was in fact heir to the garden tradition of Timur and his successors, most of whom lived neither on the steppe nor in city fortresses but in suburban gardens. Sultan Husayn Bayqara presided over the culmination of this tradition in late fifteenth century Harat, most notably in his *Bagh-i Jahan Aray* or World-Adorning Garden that was built over a quarter of a century. Probably modeled on one of Timur's own gardens, the *Bagh-i Jahan Aray* functioned both as the center of government and the preferred scene of drinking parties and assemblies of all kinds. The garden, indeed, played such an important role in Timurid life that it has been endowed by modern scholars with an almost mythic significance, that it may even possibly have had for some of its more reflective denizens.¹⁶² It is certainly true that "It would be erroneous to view Babur's importation of the Timurid garden concept into the subcontinent... as simply a romantic yearning for the past," but whether or not he explicitly thought of the Timurid gardens he built in Agra and the surrounding region "as an embodiment of

¹⁶⁰ D. Fairchild Ruggles, *Gardens, Landscape, and Vision in the Palaces of Islamic Spain* (University Park, Pa.: Pennsylvania State University Press, 200), 131. See also James Dickie, "The Hispano-Arabic Garden: Its Philosophy and Function," *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 31 (1968), Pt. 2, 237-48. See especially p. 238 where the author argues for a Buddhist symbolic origin of the design the original Iranian *chahar bagh* and an Iranian origin for the Arab and therefore also the Hispano-Arabic four-part garden.

¹⁶¹ Fairchild-Ruggles, *Gardens, Landscape and Vision in the Palaces of Islamic Spain*, 166.

¹⁶² See for example Thomas W. Lentz's erudite and suggestive essay, "Memory and Ideology in the Timurid Garden," in James L. Westcoat, Jr. and Joachim Wolschke-Bulmahn ed., *Mughal Gardens* (Washington, D.C.: Dumbarton Oaks, 1996), 31-57. For a cautionary note about attributing metaphysical significance to "Islamic" gardens see Gülru Necipoglu, "The Suburban Landscape of Sixteenth-Century Istanbul as a Mirror of Classical Ottoman Garden Culture," in Attilio Petruccioli ed., *Gardens in the Time of The Great Muslim Empires*, 32-72.

Timurid rule, traditions and memory,” is another question that can only be surmised. What seems lost in this dichotomy is the significance of these gardens as manifestations of a culturally programmed aesthetic sense that was also reflected in the innumerable miniature paintings that depict garden pavilions, which in turn perpetuated the aesthetic. What is certain is that in physical terms Babur’s eventual conquest of India came to be expressed hardly at all in religious monuments but pervasively as the imperialism of landscape architecture, the civilized ideal of the late Timurid period. Within those aesthetically pleasing spaces he and his *begs* conducted the symposia of pleasure, poetry and government.

CHAPTER FOUR

THE PADSHAH OF KABUL

Eleven or twelve languages are spoken in Kabul province: Arabi, Farsi, Turki, Mughull, Hindi, Afghani, PashaT, Paraji. Gaban, Lamgham, Barakl. It is not known whether in any other province there are such different people and diverse tongues.¹

Babur on Kabul

By occupying Kabul in September 1504 Babur ended his latest *qazaqtiq* phase, which also turned out to be his last stateless period. He retained control of the city throughout the remainder of his life. Even if the city was a “trifling place,”² and entire Kabul *vildyat*, a “negligible” province, it initially offered him a measure of protection from Uzbek attacks.³ The province was, he writes “secure... difficult for foreign enemies to penetrate.”⁴ As he points out snow usually made all but one of the Hindu Kush passes impassable for four to five months during the winter, and after the melt-off began in April flooded rivers in the narrow mountain valleys prevented large forces from crossing the mountains for an additional two to three months.⁵ Kabul could only be attacked easily from the west

¹ BN-M, f. 131b. Apart from the six first readily recognizable languages, the others such as PashaT and Paraji are either dialects of Persian or other Iranian languages. See Georg Morgenstierne, “Afghanistan,” “Languages,” *Elr* I, 501-25 and Morgenstierne, *Indo-Iranian Frontier Languages* (Oslo: H. Ashehoug, 1929-). PashaT is usually classified as a “Dardic” language, linguistically similar to KashmTrT. See also D. I. Edelman, *Xazyki Mira, Dardskie i Nuristanskie Tazyki* (Moskva: “Indrik,” 1999), 72-80.

² BN-M, fs. 128a & 144b. Babur was apparently writing this part of the *Vaqaiʼ* between January 1527 and June 1529. At least f. 173b was written at that time. See Annette Beveridge’s note, BN-B, p. 276, n. 7.

³ BN-M, fs. 144b and 128b. In his words the city was *muqir* and the province, *mukhtasar*.

⁴ BN-M, f. 130a.

⁵ BN-M, f. 130b. See Babur’s description of these northern passes. Prior to the construction of the Salang tunnel in 1964 only the Shibar or Shibartu pass could

along the Harat-Qandahar road which was relatively flat and easily traversed even in winter, but in 1504 the last major Timurid ruler, Sultan Husayn Bayqara, still controlled Harat and through his sons, much of Khurasan.

Still, in 1504 it was hardly a forgone conclusion that Babur would survive in Kabul. He commanded few reliable troops, including, of course, his own untrustworthy brothers and relatives. Nor did he have any funds. Not only was Shibani Khan poised to resume his attacks on the last bastions of Timurid power in the spring, but Kabul province itself was a difficult territory to rule. It was home to an unstable medley of disparate ethnic and social groups—Afghans, Turks, Mongols, Arabs, Iranians—some of whom were nomads, many of whom were peasants, with merchants moving carefully among them in armed caravans. Most Afghan tribes were either autonomous or completely independent; many remote agricultural villages were unpacified and paid no revenue. Unlike Andijan where everyone knew Turki, the population of this region spoke “eleven or twelve languages.”⁶ As for his realistic characterization of the resources of the city and province, Babur was probably implicitly telling his readers that unlike the great Timurid cities of Samarqand and Harat, Kabul did not possess a sufficient agricultural hinterland to support a populous urban center, although it was a major trade emporium between India, Iran and Mawarannahr.

Yet despite the myriad difficulties he faced, Babur gradually consolidated his authority in Kabul. His narrative of events for the next five years, when the memoir abruptly breaks off for a decade, contains a remarkable, uniquely candid description of the fundamental problems involved in ruling Kabul and eastern Afghanistan. It is not only the earliest extant account of this region, but also one that seems uncannily familiar to anyone who knows its later history. Initially Babur attempted to use the city as a base to defend Timurid power south of the Amu Darya and then to resuscitate a state in Mawarannahr. By 1512 he failed to achieve either goal and

usually be crossed in the winter. It is reached via Charikar and the Ghurband valley and eventually leads into Bamian. Birthe Frederiksen describes and maps the route in her book *Caravans and Trade in Afghanistan* (London: Thames and Hudson, 1996), 112-114. For a description of the crossing of the Hindu Kush in May 1832 see Burnes, *Travels into Bokhara*, II, 147-78.

⁶ BN-M, f. 131b.

Kabul then became of necessity a staging ground for his South Asian Timurid renaissance.

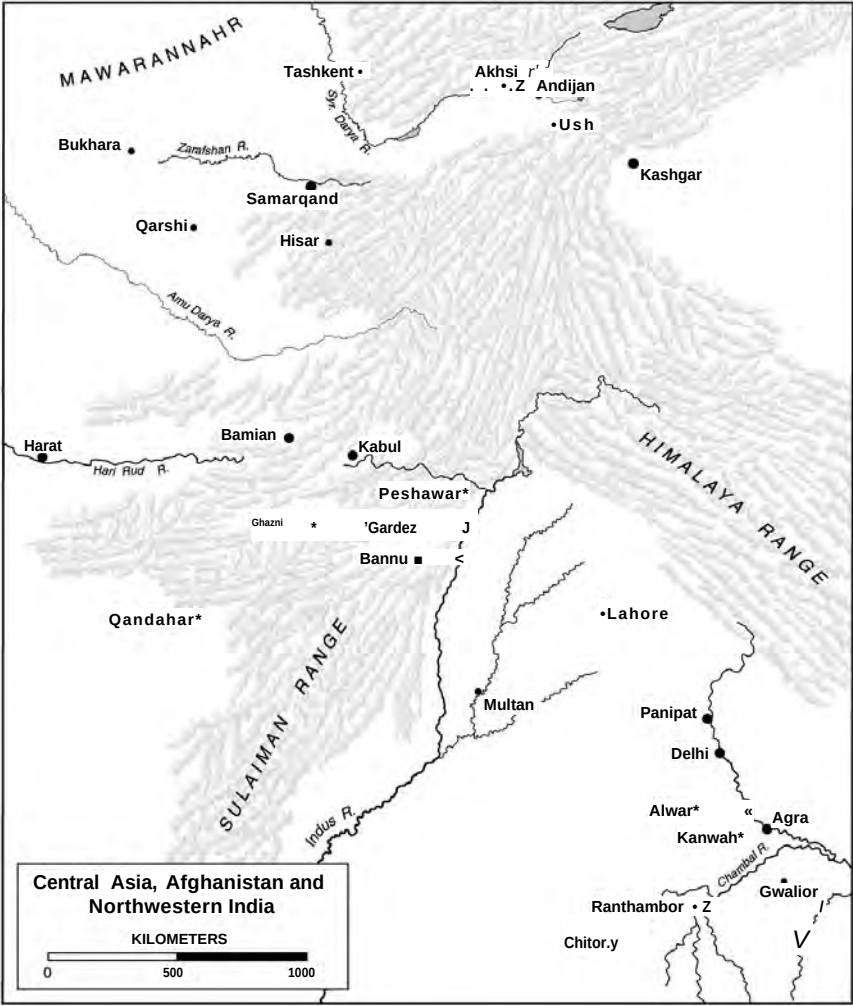
State Formation in Kabul

In September 1504 Babur immediately began working to secure his position in the city and province of Kabul. Kabul was, as he carefully explains in his gazetteer, a *vilayat* or province that included fourteen *tumans*, a Mongol term for 10,000 fighting men, but in late Timurid times a word commonly used to refer to a subdivision of a *vilayat* or a district. As a further explanation for his readers he notes, inter alia, that the word *tuman* is used in Samarqand and Bukhara but that in Andijan and Kashghar the Turk! term *orchin* is employed, while in India districts are called by the Persian term, *parghanah*. In his descriptions of some subdivisions of Kabul he also uses the Turkic term *buluk*, evidently to refer to a territorial unit smaller than a *tuman*, but not exactly a subdistrict of every *tuman*.⁷

As for the Kabul *vilayat*. He describes it as extending on the east to Lamghanat [Laghman], Pareshawar [Peshawar] and “some Indian provinces,” on the west to *Kuhistan*, literally the mountainous regions, including Ghur, where the Mongol-speaking Hazarachs and Nikdiri lived, then on the northern side of the Hindu Kush mountains to Andarab and Qunduz provinces, and on the south to Farmul, Bannu, Naghar and “Afghanistan.” By Afghanistan Babur evidently meant the region of the Sulaiman mountains southeast of Kabul and not Qandahar, which was the first capital of the Pashtun Durrani state in 1747. He doesn’t appear to be absolutely consistent when he distinguishes the Kabul *vilayat* from the provinces around it such as Lamghanat and Ghazni, unless he is using the term itself in subtly distinct ways. The confusion may stem from the simple fact that as Babur himself points out, certain areas like Ghazni were sometimes identified as a *vilayat*, and sometimes as a *tuman*.⁸

⁷ Thus Babur identifies the village of Chaghan-sarai, at the entrance to Kafiristan, as a *buluk*, but not as part of a *tuman*. BN-M, f. 134b.

⁸ BN-M, f. 137b. In his initial description of the Kabul *vilayat* Babur equates Lamghanat on the east with Qunduz to the north of the Hindu Kush. That is,



Map no. 3. Mawarannahr, Afghanistan and Northwest India

Thus, Babur reports that he allotted the Kabul *vilayat* to his brothers and certain “guest-begs,” saying that Jahangir Mirza received Ghazni while Nasir Mirza was assigned certain *tumans* which he includes in the Lamghanat *vilayat*. He mentions that although he gave his old Andijan *tiyuls* or land grants, he assigned nothing at all from “my own province,” implying that he kept all of Kabul *vilayat* as demesne land, which is consistent with his later statements and those of his daughter, Gulbadan Begim, not surprising, of course, since, as she herself notes her information was based on her father’s autobiography!⁹ Adding to the confusion is the fact that Babur does not include a Kabul *tuman* in his list of fourteen districts in Kabul province. Yet he does specifically list a number of villages “dependencies” of Kabul which may have comprised Kabul *tuman*. These included his favorite picnic grounds at Istalif, about twenty miles to the north and Pamghan [Paghman], nearly fifteen miles to the northwest. After he arrived in Kabul he assigned Pamghan, “the best place in Kabul,” to Shah Begim, a wife of his grandfather Yunas Khan.¹⁰ Yet whatever confusion may exist about the exact boundaries and subdivisions of Kabul province there is no doubt about the significance of the city in Babur’s life. Not only was it the basis of his Indian empire, but nearly all his children were born there and he loved the city and its nearby gardens.¹¹

Initially Babur’s goal of securing his new base was made difficult by the necessity of providing for his brothers, followers and allies. He alienated a considerable amount of revenue by parceling out territory to his brothers, the “guest-begs,” an apparent reference to Baqi Chaghaniani and his followers, to his old Andijam companions and then his close relatives. Baqi Chaghaniani alone received control over Kabul’s *tamgha* or customs duties, the city’s main revenue source, as well as being appointed as *darugliah*, the chief administrator of the city and Babur’s own deputy as the “Lord of

he seems to mean that Lamghanat, like Qunduz, is not included in the Kabul *vilayat*, but is on its boundary. Babur identifies Lamghanat as a *vilayat* and not as a *tuman*. He also says that Ghazni was in the “third clime,” while Kabul *vilayat* was in the fourth.

⁹ See Annette Beveridge’s comments, *The Babur-nama in English*, 227 n. 5.

¹⁰ BN-M, f. 200b.

¹¹ Gulbadan Begim, *Humayun-Nama*, f. 40b.

the Gate.”¹² Babur probably had little choice but to appoint him in the fall of 1504, as most of his men had originally come from Khusrau Shah, although Babur dismissed Baqi Chaghaniam the following year.¹³ Thus his financial situation in the autumn of 1504 must have been desperate. His most immediate task was simply to feed the families of the tribes who had come south with him from Samarqand, Hisar and Qunduz and the thousands of Khusrau Shah’s men who had joined him just a few weeks earlier. Compared to the rich pastures of Ferghanah and northern Afghanistan, the bare mountains and narrow valleys around Kabul could not easily support large numbers of pastoral nomads or supply a sufficient agricultural surplus for a large emigre population.

In the late fall Babur fed these tribes by stripping thirty-thousand donkey loads of grain from Kabul and Ghazni provinces. He also imposed a tribute of horses and sheep on the Sultan-Mas’udT Hazarabs.¹⁴ Writing in the relative security of Agra two decades later Babur expressed embarrassment at these early, desperate efforts to sustain himself. He says that the amount of Kabul’s harvest “was not known,”¹⁵ and that the province was devastated by this collection, an astonishing admission for a ruler at this period, one he may include as another lesson for his son and heir Humayun. He makes a similar admission about a levy of grain he took from people of the Kahraj valley in eastern Afghanistan in 1519, reporting that in consequence these “rustic mountain folk ...were ruined.”¹⁶

State formation, a grandiose-sounding abstraction, was a messy, violent business in sixteenth century Afghanistan, just as it was to be after the formation of the first Afghan state in 1747 or again in the last decade of the twentieth century after the Soviets destroyed the state that had taken more than two centuries to evolve. Ulugh Beg Kabuli had reigned in Kabul until 1502, but based upon the evidence of Babur’s narrative his uncle directly controlled only a small percentage of the Kabul *vilayat*, perhaps only a corridor that

¹² BN-M, fs. 159a-b. Beatrice Manz describes the nature of the *darughahin* Timur’s day. *The rise and rule of Tamerlane*, 170.

¹³ BN-M, f. 159b.

¹⁴ BN-M, f. 144b.

¹⁵ BN-M, f. 144b.

¹⁶ BN-M, f. 219b.

stretched from Ghazni in the southwest to Ningnabar in the east—Husayn Bayqara or his supporters still held the valuable city and district of Harat as well as the important city of Qandahar and much of Khurasan. Independent Pashtun, Hazarah and Mongol tribes controlled most of the remaining territory in the mountainous regions of eastern and central Afghanistan. Ulugh Beg and Babur faced the same situation that sharply restricted the authority of the early nineteenth century Afghan ruler, Ahmad Shah Durrani in and around Kabul. Ahmad Shah's political choices were succinctly described by the British-Indian official Mountstuart Elphinstone. Writing about the situation in 1809, Elphinstone observed that Ahmad Shah's authority was limited to the plains around the towns, the areas inhabited by Tajiks or Iranians and the non-Afghan—that is Indian—provinces. He went on to remark that “an ordinary monarch might endeavor to reduce the tribes to obedience by force; but one Afghaun king [Ahmad Shah Durrani] has already had the penetration to discover that it would require a less exertion to conquer all the neighbouring kingdoms, than to subdue his own countrymen.”¹⁷ That was Babur's solution too when later he successfully invaded India.

Based upon later knowledge Babur reports that the total income of Kabul province from agriculture, nomads and trade,—*vilayat*, *sahra nishin* and *tamgha*—was 800,000 shahrukhis.¹⁸ He spells out various types and rates of taxes, or *zakat*, in the fiscal section of his 1521 text the *Mubaiyin*, although no records exist to show the extent to which these taxes were systematically imposed or successfully collected. Most of these taxes, which are identified in Arabic terminology, reflected standard practice and apparently reflected Babur's knowledge of Burhan al-Din al-Marghinani's text, the *Hidayat*. There were, Babur indicates, three categories of taxes: from land, trade and domesticated animals. Land or agricultural taxes were of two kinds: *Ashr* and *khardj*, the first levied principally from gardens and/or fruit trees and the second, by implication, from fields producing grain of various kinds. The *khardj* was in turn

¹⁷ Mountstuart Elphinstone, *An Account of the Kingdom of Caubul and Its Dependencies in Persia, Tartary and India* (Delhi: Munshiram, repr. 1998), 173 & 176.

¹⁸ BN-M, f. 140a. *Vilayat* here evidently refers to agricultural land.

¹⁹ See Book I: “Of Zakat,” in which the author discusses taxes on domestic animals, precious coins, agriculture etc. Hamilton, *The Hedaya*, 1-25.

divided into two categories, one a fixed tax on the harvest itself of one-third to one-half, and the second based on the actual measurement of the land. Land that produced two harvests was to be taxed twice. The second category of taxes, *savaim* literally, flocks, dealt with domestic animals, including camels and horses as well as sheep, goats and cattle. Based upon the age of animals and the amount of time in pasture, this tax was collected in kind, for example, one sheep from flocks between forty and 120, two from flocks of 120 to 200 etc. The third category of taxes was levied from trade of two types: commercial activities in bazars levied in cash and external or long-distance trade arriving in and/or passing through the city. Bazar merchants were taxed at the rate of approximately 5% of gold coins and 2.5% of silver coins of cash-on-hand. Taxes on external trade varied according to whether merchants came from "friendly," that is Muslim countries, in which case they were taxed at the rate of 5%; others could be taxed at double this rate.²⁰

A large proportion of the total revenue Babur extracted from Kabul probably came from commerce. Agriculture in the province was not very productive and many remote villages paid no taxes at all.²¹ As for the tribes in the region, many simply ignored the Kabul government as they continued to do during the remainder of the millennium. However, Kabul lay astride the principal trade route between India and Central Asia, as well as also participating in commerce between India and "Khurasan," that is western Afghanistan and northeastern Iran.

On the land route between Hindustan and Khurasan there are two trading towns. One is Kabul; another is Qandahar. Caravans come to Kabul from Ferghanah, Turkistan, Samarqand, Bukhara, Balkh, Hisar and Badakhshan. From Khurasan they go to Qandahar. As the midpoint between Hindustan and Khurasan Kabul is an excellent mercantile center. If merchants went to China or Rum they would make just such a profit. Every year seven, eight or ten thousand horses come to Kabul. Below from Hindustan come ten, fifteen, twenty thousand caravans of heads of families bringing slaves, cotton cloth, refined and unrefined sugar and aromatic roots. Many merchants are not satisfied with 300 or 400 percent profit.²²

²⁰ Azimdzhanova, *Gosudarstvo Baburav Kabule i v Indii*. See especially Chapter XII, "The Taxation Policies of Babur."

²¹ BN-M, fs. 129b, 134a-b & 135b.

²² BN-M, f. 129a.

Apart from the useful information about trade patterns: Central Asian horses going to India in exchange for slaves, cloth, sugar and medicinal herbs, Babur's commercial data indicates why it was so important for Kabul rulers to keep the roads open, that is to say, the tribes under control.²³

Much of Babur's history of his Kabul years is devoted to describing *chapqun*son tribes. As he makes clear the *chapqun* usually had a dual purpose, pacification and plunder. These raids might secure crucial roads and depending on the tribe, they produced income and supplies. If repeated often enough, the raids enabled him to transform simple robbery into organized state theft—taxation. Such raids were a well-established Central Asian tribal institution, and sometimes many years of successful *chapqun*s led to full-scale pastoral nomadic empires.²⁴ The first one Babur describes took place in the desperate days in the fall of 1504, and apparently when winter was coming on. He tried to collect what he describes as a large tribute of sheep and horses from the Sultan-Mas'udi Hazarahs. He reports that the Hazarahs, who had been raiding the roads near Ghazni, refused to pay tribute, and he concedes that the subsequent raid on this tribe did not, as he discreetly phrases it, "turn out as wished."²⁵ His vague, euphemistic description of the *chapqun* is probably not completely due to its failure. Successful or not when Babur took part in events he describes them in great detail with few generalizations. In this case he stayed behind in Kabul. As he is careful to state with his usual precision later in the text, he himself did not go on a raid until the following winter, an event he describes in the first person, singular and plural.²⁶

²³ This well-established commerce is described by Stephen F. Dale, *Indian Merchants and Eurasian Trade, 1600-1750* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1994) and Scott C. Levi, *The Indian Diaspora in Central Asia and its Trade 1550-1900* (Leiden: Brill, 2002).

²⁴ From the Turkic root *chap-* which Gerhard Clauson characterizes as "an onomatopoeic verb...with several meanings...the only connecting link between which seems to be that they all describe noisy action." *Etymological Dictionary of Pre Thirteenth Century Turkish* (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1972), 394. In the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries it was used in both Ottoman and Chaghatay Turkish in the sense of raid or plunder.

²⁵ BN-M, fs. 144b-145a.

²⁶ BN-M, f. 161b. Babur uses the passive tense to describe the first raid, i.e. the Hazarahs were attacked. He does not say "I" rode or "we" attacked which he commonly does when describing other raids.

The 1504 raid represented the first, tentative step in Babur's state-building process, and it produced far more sheep than submissive Afghan followers. Nonetheless he needed to feed his men and gain control over the main roads, so slightly more than a year after the *chapqun* near Ghazni he personally led a raid on the Turkman Hazarahs, north-northwest of Kabul. Citing the highway robbery of these Hazarahs in an area northwest of Charikar, where they may have threatened the crucial road leading north to Badakhshan, Babur and his men attacked an Hazarah encampment in a narrow, mountain valley, almost impassable due to the deep snow. After losing a few of his men who recklessly exposed themselves to Hazarah arrows without armor, Babur's more heavily armed force drove the Hazarahs back into hills. The Hazarah women and children also fled, leaving their camp to Babur and his men. After fruitless attempts to pursue the Hazarahs in the deep snow the Timurids camped overnight in captured Hazarah tents and headed back the next day.

This seems to have been a modestly successful raid, netting both animals and dead Afghans. Babur remarks that he himself collected four or five hundred sheep and twenty-five horses, although he doesn't say if he was able to drive the animals out of the single, narrow path that led out of the snow-covered valley. He does recall that his men smoked out and killed seventy or eighty Hazarahs camped in a cave just outside the valley.²⁷ Yet while the raid might have temporarily cowed these particular Hazarahs, it did not produce lasting political results. That would have required far greater resources than Babur possessed in 1506 or at almost any subsequent period of his life.

Interspersed between these two brief raids Babur led his men on two campaigns, which in each case he describes as a *yurush*, an expedition, one originally undertaken to Hindustan in January 1505 and another to attack the nearby fortress of Qalat in the late summer or early fall of the same year. Babur often uses *yurush* to indicate a prolonged campaign undertaken for specific military objectives, but while the January campaign lasted for more than four months its purpose was not an invasion of India but plunder. His young cousin Haydar Mirza, who joined him in Kabul about

²⁷ BN-M, fs. 160-62a.

four years later, writes that Babur launched the campaign because Kabul could not support Khusrau Shah's "20,000 men" who had joined him earlier.²⁸ He also notes that this particular expedition was, as Babur implicitly makes clear by his narrative, a disaster. India was probably chosen over districts near Kabul, which he and his men also debated, because January was the perfect time to campaign in the subcontinent. The Timurids could leave behind the bitterly cold, snowy terrain of Kabul and Ghazni for the pleasant, sunny weather of the Indus plains. In fact Babur and his men never crossed the Indus in 1505 because Baqi Chaghaniam suggested they "raid" Kuhat in Bangash district, located south of Peshawar on the west bank of the Indus, where informants said they would find many herds. The *yurush*, indeed, turned into a series of vicious *chapqunson* Afghans in Bangash and nearby Bannu and Dasht districts. These attacks produced a certain amount of plunder in the form of cattle, grain and cloth, but eventually led to a massive loss of horses and transport animals.

Afghans who resisted being plundered were slaughtered by Babur's better armed horsemen. Afghan villagers nearly always fought on foot and were easy targets when they chose to resist or challenge mounted men in the open. As the Timurids left Kuhat with their plunder riding due west up the Hangu road, they killed or captured more than 150 Afghans who evidently had come out from the pillaged town to shout at the Timurids from the hillsides. The heads of those killed were brought to camp, others were captured, brought to the camp and beheaded. All the heads were piled into a "minaret" of skulls. Both Chingiz Khan and Timur had marked their victories with these grisly mementos. Clavijo describes one of them in northern Iran, where "Outside Damghan at a distance of a bowshot we noticed two towers, built as tall as a height to which one might cast up a stone, which were entirely constructed of mens' skulls set in clay."²⁹ Babur, though, never mentions building such minarets during his struggles in Timurid Mawarannahr, despite many allusions to beheading of captives. Like his ancestors he evidently reserved the tactic to terrorize foreigners.

²⁸ TR-T, f. 97b.

²⁹ Clavijo, *Embassy to Tamerlane* 1403-1406, 173.

The next day another minaret was built of the heads of about 100 “rebellious” Afghans near Hangu, who dared challenge the Timurids from behind a *sangar*, a stone fortification. After having to leave behind most of the recently stolen cattle in the rugged, narrow road leading to Bannu, Babur dispatched Jahangir Mirza to deal with another small group of Afghans defending a mountain *sangar*. He quickly overran the small stone fortification, killed and beheaded its defenders, seized some fine textiles he found there and left behind another human minaret. These brutal raids and pointed mementos about the cost of resistance did persuade some local Afghans to offer submission to Babur’s troops, and thus could be said to mark a tentative expansion of Timurid power in the area.³⁰

Babur says that he and his men originally had planned to return to Kabul after raiding Bannu, but they changed plans when someone said that the nearby plain was populated and the roads were good. In the ad hoc fashion that characterized nearly every aspect of this misnamed *yurush*, they abruptly postponed their return and decided to raid the plain to the south. Pursuing the fleeing population into the hills just west of the Indus they seized a few more animals and textiles before fighting off an attack of the Isa Khel Afghans. Moving further south they attacked a few more villages and plundered and murdered some prominent Afghan merchants, seizing characteristic items of commerce that were traded between India and Afghanistan and Marwarannahr: sugar, textiles, horses and “aromatic roots,” the latter either medicinal herbs destined for Afghanistan and Mawarannahr or the pungent asafoetida root coveted in South Asia. By now it was early March, Jd al-Fitr on the Islamic calendar and nearly Nau Ruz, the Iranian solar new year, and Babur proudly reports that on the banks of the swollen Gumal river he composed a *ghazal*, a lyric poem, cleverly commemorating the conjunction of the two festivals.³¹

Then after much ill-informed debate about the best road back to

³⁰ For a better understanding of Afghan tactics, which seem to have been unchanged in the late nineteenth century, see H. D. Hutchinson, *The Campaign in Tirah*, 1897-98 (London: MacMillan, 1898), especially chapter 5, the photograph on p. 550 and the map on p. 70.

³¹ BN-M, f. 150a. As he often does Babur quotes only a few lines of this poem. The entire verse is found in his *diwan*, his collected literary works. The poem is discussed below in chapter 5.

Kabul he and his men decided to avoid the difficult Gumal pass, where the spring snow-melt made the river almost impassable. They moved further south along the eastern slopes of the Sulaiman range stealing cattle as they went, and eventually turned back to the west at the Sakhi Sarwar pass. There at the eastern mouth of the pass in an ironic finale to this campaign Babur had one of his soldiers cut to pieces for troubling the residents of a sufi shrine.³² The unnamed soldier might understandably have failed to distinguish between ordinary Afghans, presumably Muslims, whom a presumptive Timurid emperor might slaughter with impunity, from Muslim residents of a prestigious shrine, most probably Afghans, whom an aspiring ruler would ostentatiously protect in order to further his reputation as a pious ruler. But not just that. Born into a discipleship of Khwajah Ahrar, Babur genuinely revered sufi *shaykhs* or *pzrs*. One of his first acts after entering Delhi in 1526 was to circumambulate the tombs of Nizam al-Din Auliya⁵, the Chishti *pir* and Khwajah Qutb al-Din Ushi, a native of Ush in Ferghanah.³³

After Babur's force turned inland along the Sakhi Sarwar pass they entered the dry, rocky landscape of the Sulaiman range. No fodder was available and spring rains added to the already cresting rivers. It is impossible to tell from Babur's description of the difficult return march if he and his men were able to keep any of their plundered sheep and cattle. Based on the evidence of his narrative it seems extremely doubtful. They continued to raid Afghan villages as they wound their way through the long pass. He mentions they began abandoning horses after several marches. Lacking pack animals Babur himself had to leave his own large felt tent behind, and one night after torrential rains filled his remaining tent with water up to his shins, he had to spend the entire night sitting uncomfortably, '*usrat*, literally in distress, surrounded by water on an artificial island of *kilims* he piled in the middle of the tent.³⁴ As the march progressed towards Ghazni members of the army began leaving horses behind at each camp so that two or three hundred horses were abandoned and even important men such as "Mahmud Oqhlqchi, who was one of my prominent *ichkiy*

³² BN-M, f. 151b.

³³ BN-M, f. 267b.

³⁴ BN-M, f. 152a.

leaving all his horses behind, went on foot.”³⁵ Finally, after swimming the horses and camels across another rain-swollen river the army or, more accurately, the raiding party, reached Ghazni. There Jahangir Mirza, who had been assigned the town and its surrounding districts, acted as host, fed the men and offered what Babur describes as *pishkashlar* or tributary presents, obviously in his mind an appropriate gesture to an older brother and sovereign. When they returned to Kabul, writes Haydar Mirza, many of Khusrau Shah’s men “dispersed,” although he doesn’t say either where they went or whether they left as cohesive military or social groups.³⁶

Brothers in Empire

Babur makes only passing references to his brothers Jahangir and Nasir Mirza in his Ferghanah narrative. He mentions that in 1494 seven year-old Nasir Mirza was in Kasan with his *begatekeh*. Ways Laghan, when Mahmud Khan marched on Akhsi. After describing how Ways Laghari and his friend Mir Ghiyas Tagha’i gave up Kasan to Mahmud Khan, after which Ways Laghari handed over Nasir Mirza to Sultan Ahmad Mirza, Babur doesn’t mention his youngest half-brother again until he relates the events leading up to his final disastrous battle with Sultan Ahmad Tambal within Akhsi in 1503. When Babur arrived at Akhsi just after forming an alliance with his Mongol relatives to retake Ferghanah, he describes meeting Nasir Mirza in the company of Shaykh Bayizid, one of Ahmad Tambal’s younger brothers, who then held the fort for Tambal. He does not explain where Nasir Mirza had been during the intervening years, but the reader infers that he, like Babur’s other brother, Jahangir Mirza, had been passed around as a human bargaining chip, and had been acquired by Tambal as part of his apparent effort to capture all three of ‘Umar Shaykh Mirza’s sons. The next time Babur mentions him, Nasir Mirza is commanding the right flank of Babur’s army before Kabul in 1504.

If Nasir Mirza had been anything more than a captive pawn during the Ferghanah period Babur almost certainly would have

³⁵ BN-M, f. 152b.

³⁶ TR-T, f. 97b.

commented on his brother's role. However, after Babur occupied Kabul and assigned him districts east of Kabul city in Lamghanat province, Nasir Mirza began to act like a typical younger half brother in a decentralized Turco-Mongol state. Quite apart from their status as half-brothers Babur and Nasir Mirza scarcely knew each other, and as Babur tells it Nasir Mirza began acting independently virtually as soon as moved to his assigned district. When Babur marched east along the Kabul-Ningnabar road in January 1505 to raid India he met Nasir Mirza, who was supposed to follow him in a few days. Instead his brother and men launched an ill-planned attack on the nearby mountain fortress of Darah-i nur. After being repulsed Nasir Mirza retreated back to his district but whether because of a "perverse heart" or for other reasons, never followed Babur.³⁷ Instead he spent the winter drinking and carousing with his companions.

In the spring Nasir Mirza and his men forced Mongol clans or tribes, their families and herds who had come to Ningnabar and Lamghanat, to move northwest to the banks of the Baran river. These Mongols were probably some of those who had fled south from Badakhshan and Qunduz with Babur, who by tone of his narrative implicitly criticizes their forced relocation by Nasir Mirza. Control over tribal families gave Nasir Mirza access to their flocks and some influence over their fighting men, two critical resources in the Kabul region in 1505. When Nasir Mirza began moving these particular families to the northwest he may have already decided to march on Badakhshan, which the Uzbeks had not successfully pacified. Babur believed that Nasir Mirza only heard about the Uzbeks' troubles after arriving on the banks of the Baran river, but whatever the exact sequence of events Nasir Mirza drove these tribal families further north towards Badakhshan in May or June of 1505. Indigenous Badakhshan! chiefs had evidently invited him to come.³⁸

Many if not all of these tribal families transferred their loyalty to the Uzbeks shortly after they arrived in Badakhshan, the region and province of northeastern Afghanistan. Yet the following spring Nasir Mirza and his local allies actually defeated an Uzbek army of several thousand men. He promptly sent news of his victory to

³⁷ BN-M, f. 154a.

³⁸ BN-M, f. 155b.

Babur, who acknowledges he received the news in the Kahmard region north of Bamian as he was riding to Harat to form an anti Uzbek alliance with the Harat Tlmurids, Sultan Husayn Bayqara and his sons.³⁹ If Nasir Mirza expected that he would reconcile his elder brother to his activities by swiftly informing Babur of his victory he was mistaken. Babur regarded his brother's Badakhshan campaign as a rebellion against his own authority. He makes this clear when he describes, with considerable relish, how Nasir Mirza fell out with his Badakhshan! allies and was defeated by them in the spring of 1507. "*Ajab qaderidur*" he exclaims in with exactly the same words he used to describe Khusrau Shah's humiliation on the banks of the Andarab, "How wonderful is his power. Two to three years earlier Nasir Mirza in rebellion forcibly moved *il ve ulus* tribe and nation, from Kabul to Badakhshan, fortifying valleys and fortresses. With what ideas did he march?"⁴⁰ Nasir Mirza had retreated back to Kabul with "seventy or eighty naked and hungry men." Babur then concludes his narrative of the year 912 a. h. with a stylized depiction of his brotherly forgiveness and royal compassion when Nasir Mirza appeared before him. "Abashed and embarrassed for his past deeds and his manner of departing," he writes of Nasir Mirza's Badakhshan adventure, "He was covered with shame. Yet I showed no sort of harshness and kindly enquired and calmed his distress."⁴¹

Nasir Mirza is scarcely mentioned in the remainder of Babur's surviving narrative, which breaks off in the spring of 1508 and is not resumed until 1519. He takes part in the conquest of Qandahar in the summer of 1507 and is later assigned the city, but afterwards retreated back to Ghazni in the face of Uzbek attacks and died in 1515 in unexplained circumstances. His career, all told of course from Babur's perspective, illustrates the common ambition of all Timurid *mirzas* to secure their own independent appanages. Badakhshan represented Nasir Mirza's one attempt to secure a territory far enough away from Kabul to offer the chance at establishing autonomous or independent rule. Babur asked a rhetorical

³⁹ BN-M, f. 184a. Babur probably took this mountainous route because Muqim Arghun, his father and brother still ruled in Qandahar on the far easier southern road.

⁴⁰ BN-M, f. 202b.

⁴¹ BN-M, f. 203a.

question when he wrote about his brother's adventure, "With what ideas did he march?" He must have understood Nasir Mirza's intentions well enough. By sending Babur news of his initial success Nasir Mirza probably intended this gesture to represent an offer to become Babur's nominal feudatory, expecting to remain an autonomous Timurid ruler in the north. Despite Babur's irritation with his younger half-brother it may have occurred to him that Nasir Mirza sought to realize in Badakhshan what their father 'Umar Shaykh had successfully achieved years earlier in Ferghanah, de facto independence from his elder brother, the nominal ruler of all Mawarannahr, Sultan Ahmad Mirza of Samarqand.

Jahangir Mirza's relations with Babur seem to have been shaped by a similar ambition to secure an autonomous or independent appanage, but as is true of Nasir Mirza's ambitions, Jahangir Mirza's intentions have to be inferred from Babur's self-interested commentary. While narrating events in 1504 Babur alludes to his past irritation with Jahangir, saying there had been many "resentments and sharp words between himself and Jahangir over kingdom and retainers."⁴² Yet it is impossible to be certain what Babur is referring to in this passage, for Jahangir never acted independently in Ferghanah between 1494 and 1504. After 'Umar Shaykh died Jahangir joined Babur in Andijan, and seems to have remained with him until May or June 1497, when he was captured by Babur's arch-rival, Sultan Ahmad Tambal. Perhaps Jahangir and Tambal had spoken or even conspired together before Tambal deserted from Babur's forces in Samarqand. That would explain Tambal's demand that Ferghanah should be given to Jahangir Mirza, a demand made after Tambal had left Samarqand but apparently before he captured Babur's brother. However, it isn't consistent with Babur's subsequent portrayal of Jahangir as a captive, whose escort, one of Babur's trusted Mughul aides, was killed by Tambal. Several times Babur refers to occasions in which *Tambal Jahangir ni alib kilibj*³ Tambal "took" or "brought" Jahangir from one place to another in the confusing skirmishing that occurred between himself and his Mongol enemy. Yet in February 1500 Jahangir was present at a meeting at which he and Tambal

⁴² BN-M, f. 121b.

⁴³ See for example BN-M, fs. 66a and 69b.

met Babur to ratify an agreement giving Jahangir the Akhsi region. Jahangir could presumably have rejoined Babur at this point if he had chosen to do so. Babur doesn't raise this possibility, but merely remarks that at the conclusion of this meeting both men "paid their respects," *maldzamat qildilar*, and then left for Akhsi.⁴⁴ Perhaps Jahangir had become Tambal's willing captive, lured by prospect of ruling from Akhsi. It would have been natural for Jahangir to covet Akhsi as his legitimate appanage, as he had lived there with his father before 'Umar Shaykh's death.

Jahangir Mirza remained with Tambal through 1503 and then escaped from him at Marginan to join his older brother just before Tambal and his men defeated Babur within Akhsi. In the interval Jahangir seems to have spent most of the time at Akhsi—Babur sent a messenger to him there just before he left for his second attempt on Samarqand in 1500. After occupying the city a second time he reports that "from Jahangir 100-200 men commanded by Khalil Sultan, Tambal's brother came to help,"⁴⁵ but when he writes this does Babur really mean to imply that his brother acted on his own initiative? It is extremely unlikely that Jahangir could have commanded Tambal's brother's loyalty or obedience. Jahangir continued in Akhsi with Tambal during Babur's *qazaqtiq* days after he fled Samarqand and the Uzbeks. His subsequent flight from Tambal in 1503 to join Babur in Akhsi might have been motivated by a realization he would never rule independently allied with Tambal and possibly because of resentment of Tambal's brutal manner—if Babur's characterization of his enemy can be believed. Finally, only two things can be said with certainty about the brothers' relations in Ferghanah: it would have been entirely natural for Jahangir to regard Akhsi as his legitimate appanage and Babur writing years afterward resented his brother's independent ambition. Babur concludes the passage in which he alludes to the "resentments and sharp words" between him and his brother by observing that in 1504 as they paused at the Ajar fortress to celebrate Jahangir's marriage, Jahangir had become a "companion" who acted, *tuqqanliq ve khidmatgartiq*, in a "familial and deferential manner."⁴⁶

⁴⁴ BN-M, f. 74b.

⁴⁵ BN-M, f. 88a.

⁴⁶ BN-M, f. 121b.

Babur's discussion of Jahangir's past and present behavior concludes a longer passage in which he implicitly raises the issue of the inherent tensions between Timurid brethern. Just after mentioning Jahangir's marriage he says that Baqi Chaghaniam, his newfound ally, advised him repeatedly to get rid of Jahangir and the potential political problems he represented by sending him off towards Khurasan, "with graciousness and liberality." After all, Baqi Chaghaniam argued in a irrefutable if hoary aphorism, "Two padshahs in one province and two commanders in one army are the cause of dissension and desolation, the occasion of rebellion and ruin."⁴⁷ The text then follows with another aphorism, a rhyming couplet: "Ten dervishes can snore under a single *kilim* [a flatweave], but two *padshahs* cannot coexist in a single *iqlim* [a clime]," and these lines from Sa'di's *Gulistan*.

If a religious man eats half a loaf,
He liberally offers the other half to dervishes.
But if a king should seize a clime.
Exactly thus he will desire another.⁴⁸

In this instance Babur apparently supplies the couplet and Sa'di's verse to signal his agreement with Baqi's advice and typically legitimize his argument by citing the wisdom of one of Iran's classical poets.

Yet Babur then writes that he couldn't treat Jahangir Mirza this way "since it was not in my nature to injure kinsmen or clients who had somehow failed in their duty to me."⁴⁹ Here as in several other points of the narrative he emphasizes his concern for family and retainers, an ideal associated in his eyes with deference due to his status. Based on the accumulated evidence of the text and the comments of Haydar Mirza, Babur seems to have genuinely felt this concern and to have acted on his family feelings on many occasions. However, in what may be intended as another lesson for Humayun, Babur shows his brotherly compassion to have been

⁴⁷ BN-M, f. 121a.

⁴⁸ Ibid., f. 121a.

⁴⁹ BN-M, f. 121b. The phrase translated here as "somehow failed in their duty to me" is an elaboration of Babur's typically terse prose, *bir necha bi adaliq vaghd bolse*. The key word is *bi adaliq*, by which Babur appears to mean failing to do him the service his rank or position demanded.

misplaced, for he concludes this section by demonstrating that Baqi Chaghaniam's advice had been correct, as eventually Jahangir was influenced to assert his independence. Yet, for the next year and a half he served with Babur, and his fling at establishing an appanage larger or richer than Ghazni was a quixotic affair, lasting only a few months. Nonetheless, the affair is interesting because Babur's elliptical references to his brother's conduct are amplified by his cousin, Haydar Mirza, in his chapters on this period.

According to Babur, Jahangir took offence at some imagined slight and left Ghazni for Bamian just at the time Nasir Mirza was driving nomadic families before him into Badakhshan.⁵⁰ In fact the coincidence of these events raises the possibility that Jahangir might have taken a cue from his younger brother or had been cooperating with him. Babur expresses concern that Jahangir might gain control over some of the nomadic households his younger brother had forced north, but he doesn't explain where Jahangir might have been headed. Haydar Mirza on the other hand says that Jahangir Mirza acted at that precise moment for one specific reason. He learned that Sultan Husayn Bayqara had died in Harat and because he was "discontented with the narrow limits of his territories," he wrote to Babur telling him he was going to Khurasan and form an alliance with Husayn Bayqara's sons.⁵¹ Babur, already marching toward Harat himself, now in May or June 1506 made a forced march to Bamian, arriving there before his brother, who then moved off to the northwest. In Babur's version of events Jahangir then attempted to win over some of the nomad clans who had left his brother Nasir Mirza, but after failing in that he had to return to his brother, just as Nasir Mirza was forced to do a short time later after his loss in Badakhshan. Eventually Babur and Jahangir marched off together to Harat, and on the return journey Jahangir fell ill, collapsed and, for Babur's future interest, conveniently died.⁵²

⁵⁰ Ibid., f. 183b.

⁵¹ TR-T, f. 94.

⁵² TR-T, f. 96b.

Fin de siecle Harat

In the late winter or early spring 1506 Sultan Husayn Bayqara appealed to his sons, *begs*, and, through a special envoy, to Babur to join an anti-Uzbek alliance. This was the second time Husayn Bayqara had called on Babur since he arrived in Afghanistan. About the time Babur had camped at Ajar in 1504 to celebrate Jahangir Mirza's wedding, a letter had arrived from Husayn Bayqara asking him to join with his sons in fortifying northern and central Afghanistan against the Uzbeks. He asked Babur to fortify mountain slopes around Kahmard and Ajar, evidently not realizing his nephew's desperately poor condition at that moment. Babur writes that these letters, some of which he still possessed in 1527-28, had left him *na-umidlik*, with a sense of hopelessness, as his uncle was not planning to attack the Uzbeks but merely establish a static defense line. Here was the greatest Timurid—"in age, territory and army" planning passively to receive the Uzbek enemy. "How could, *il ve ulus* tribe and people, have hope?"⁵³

Now finally in 1506 Husayn Bayqara announced he was going to attack the Uzbeks and Babur remembers that he could not refuse a summons from a ruler "such a sultan as Husayn Mirza who sat in Timur Beg's place." In fact, he writes, "If others marched on foot, we would march on our heads, if others marched with clubs, we would march with stones."⁵⁴ Babur also candidly notes in this same passage that he had to get his troops moving west towards Khurasan anyway to prevent Jahangir Mirza from gaining control over any of the Mongol households who had left Nasir Mirza. As Babur passed Bamian moving north-northwest towards Balkh close behind Jahangir, he received word that Husayn Bayqara died as he marched north to challenge Uzbek forces. "In spite of this news," Babur writes "we continued on towards Khurasan to protect the good name of the dynasty—although there were also other considerations"⁵⁵ This candid admission was evidently another allusion to his desire to bring Jahangir to heel, which he was able to accomplish shortly afterwards, when Mongol households in the region south of Balkh pledged their allegiance to Babur, leaving his

⁵³ BN-M, f. 122a.

⁵⁴ BN-M, f. 163a

⁵⁵ BN-M, f. 184b.

brother no choice but to return to him. Then as Uzbeks besieged Balkh and sent raiders south, Babur received more letters urging him to join the anti-Uzbek coalition of Husayn Bayqara's sons and begs in Harat. "Having already come one to two hundred stages," Babur pointedly observes, why should I myself not go?⁵⁶ He turned west-southwest through the mountainous terrain of Gurziwan in the direction of Harat.

On the 26th of October 1506 Babur arrived near the banks of the Murghab River, about 110 miles northeast of Harat where some of his Timurid cousins had arrived from Harat to greet him. The cousins⁵ early encounters constituted a series of polite but deadly serious social maneuvers in which the cousins warily greeted one another while carefully asserting their Timurid status. At first Babur met with Abu'l Muhsin Mirza on open ground, both dismounting, walking forward to meet and then remounting. Then as they rode together to the Harat camp Babur saw two more of Husayn Bayqara's sons, younger brothers to Abu'l Muhsin, who being younger brothers, Babur tartly remarks, should have come further out to greet him. However, he graciously excuses their faux pas, observing that "their delay was probably due to drowsiness caused by *'aish u 'ishrat*, debauchery and revelry, and not to either arrogance or sullenness." This was an excuse any Turco-Mongol warrior could understand. With another older brother, Muzaffar Mirza, offering apologies they rode off to the tent of Husayn Bayqara's eldest son, and principal heir, Badfi al-Zaman Mirza.⁵⁷

Babur then describes the ritualized Timurid *pas de deux* which he and his cousin performed as they strained to be polite while preserving their honor. "We reached Badfi al-Zaman Mirza's reception tent," recalls Babur.

It had been arranged exactly like this, that upon entering I would bend the knee; Badi^c al-Zaman rising, would come to the edge of the carpet, and we would see one another. Entering the tent I bent the knee and briskly advanced. Badi^c al-Zaman rising more slowly, came forward more languidly. Qasim Beg [Qauchin] as he was a supporter whose good name was inseparable from my good name, tugged at my sash. I understood [and] moved more slowly. The meeting then took place at the prearranged place.⁵⁸

⁵⁶ BN-M, f. 185b.

⁵⁷ BN-M, fs. 185b-186a.

⁵⁸ BN-M, f. 186a.

With cushions placed around the circumference of the large tent Babur, Jahangir Mirza and other guests were carefully seated according to precedence. Now the joint rulers of Harat, Badi^c al-Zaman Mirza and Muzaffar Mirza sat together with Babur and Abud Muhsin in a place of honor to their immediate right. Immediately to Badi^c al-Zaman Mirza's left sat his son-in law, an Uzbek named Qasim Sultan. Jahangir Mirza was seated to Babur's right and below him. Seated alongside Jahangir was Abd al-Razzaq Mirza, Ulugh Beg Kabuli's son, who had joined Babur in Kabul shortly after his arrival there and accompanied him to Harat.⁵⁹ Left of the Uzbek but below him sat Zu'n Nun Arghun, the father of MuqTm, whom Babur had chased from Kabul, and finally along side him sat Babur's man, Qasim Beg.⁶⁰

Evidently alluding to the underlying tension of this meeting, Babur writes that even though food was then served, *suhbat yoq*, "this was not a companionable gathering."⁶¹ However, it apparently was an elegant affair in which the meal was conducted according to Mongol custom. Although Babur does not, uncharacteristically, describe the details of Mongol social etiquette he remarks in passing that his ancestors had previously adhered scrupulously to the *torah*, the Chingizid code, in all things including "feasts and dinners." Babur implies that his cousins were at fault for rigidly adhering to these customs, however hallowed by tradition, remarking that 'If ancestors leave a bad custom...it is necessary to substitute a good one.'⁶² His comments appear to reflect his long-held resentment that Badf al-Zaman Mirza particularly had been discourteous, a complaint he makes explicit as he describes his next visit to his elder cousin's camp, when, he reports without elaboration, Badf al-Zaman did not act respectfully.

Here again in the text Babur leaves an autobiographical signpost about his status in the Timurid world, similar to the passage where he compares his second capture of Samarqand to Husayn Bayqara's seizure of Harat. Alluding to Badf al-Zaman Mirza's behavior he writes:

⁵⁹ BN-M, fs. 149a and 186b.

⁶⁰ See BN-M, fs. 172a-b for Babur's description of the Arghuns and their relationship with the Harat Timurids.

⁶¹ BN-M, f. 186b.

⁶² BN-M, f. 186b.

It is true that I was young but my place of honor [in the Tunurid house] was great. Twice I had taken the ancestral capital, Samarqand, in battle. No one had fought with this foreign enemy for the *khanivadih* [the family or dynasty] as I had done. It was unconscionable to delay in showing me respect.⁶³

In this passage Babur argues his case for his Turco-Mongol audience. Perhaps he did not expect them to recall the desperate circumstances of his two occupations of Samarqand. Perhaps he did not expect his readers to reflect that his seizure of the provincial outpost of Kabul with a rag-tag force probably did not strike the sons of the “twice-noble” Husayn Bayqara as particularly significant. Perhaps he did not expect them to consider that in occupying Kabul Babur had displaced his cousins⁵ Arghun feudatory, thereby weakening their own power. Perhaps Babur did not expect his readers to consider any other Timurid’s point of view. Perhaps he was right.

After resolving these serious issues of precedence and status Babur camped for more than a month on the banks of the Murghab River, wiling away his time at elegant feasts, with partridge and goose kebabs at Badfi al-Zaman Mirza’s, who “was famous for his social gatherings.” Nearly forgotten, apparently, was the Harat *mzrzd*’s original purpose in marching to the Murghab, Shibam Khan’s siege of Balkh. Babur remarks it had taken them “three to four months to move out of Harat, reach an agreement and assemble.” Meanwhile Shibam Khan captured Balkh and then retired back to Samarqand with his main force when he heard the Timurids were on the march. He need not have worried; the Harat *mirzds* excelled at carving roast partridge, but seemed incapable of mounting a serious military campaign. Then when Babur wanted to set off to attack a force of an estimated four or five hundred Uzbek raiders operating only about sixty or seventy kilometers to the northeast, the *mirzds* did not march, but would not let Babur go either because, he writes, it impugned their honor. By that time it was November, so they decided to postpone the Uzbek campaign until next spring and retire back to Harat, insisting that Babur come along for what in Babur’s description sounds like the Timurid

⁶³ BN-M, f. 187a.

winter social season of 1506, a continuous round of feasts, drinking parties and visits to relatives.⁶⁴

Babur says he did not want to remain in Khurasan, knowing it would take at least a month to return to Kabul at that time of year. His writing was probably informed by the hindsight of a coup that occurred in the city during his absence, so it is not surprising when he says that in November 1506 he wanted to return because Kabul was not completely pacified. In fact with this knowledge it is understandable why he writes that Kabul and Ghazni were *pur sharr u s'iur*, full of wickedness and depravity.⁶⁵ Yet Babur must have realized even in November 1506 that Kabul, which he had seized only two years earlier, was hardly secure. Still, he decided to join his cousins in Harat. It was impossible, he writes, to turn down the repeated entreaties of such *padshah* such kings, suggesting how grand these Harat cousins seemed to him, however much he insisted on receiving their formal acknowledgment of high Timurid status. Harat under Husayn Bayqara was the great Timurid city of its day, in fact the cultural center of the Perso-Islamic world, so it is understandable that a young aspiring Timurid like Babur says he also agreed to stay because he had a powerful desire just to see the city.⁶⁶

Babur arrived in Harat on the 2nd or 3rd of December and stayed there for twenty days. He portrays his stay as a continuous round of sight-seeing and parties, prefaced by a visit to several of his paternal aunts who lived in the city. While in Harat he resided, in fact, in Mir 'Ali Shir NavaTs house, which must have been an extraordinary moment for the young aspiring poet who had written to Naval six years earlier, just a year before the great man's death. Babur doesn't mention what feelings NavaTs house may have evoked. Most of his narrative energy in this Harat section is given over to a discussion of how he felt attending drinking parties when he himself did not drink, having abstained since childhood, even when his father had offered him wine!

After his father's death and under the religious tutelage of Khwajah Maulana Qazi he continued to abstain. In later times,

⁶⁴ BN-M, f. 187b.

⁶⁵ BN-M, f. 187b.

⁶⁶ BN-M, f. 188a.

presumably after Ahmad Tambal killed his tutor and mentor, Babur says he began to crave wine—"out of youthful spirit and carnal longing." Yet by then he couldn't find anyone to offer him any, demonstrating that he regarded drinking as a social ritual not a private act. Now in 1506 here he was "in a splendid city like Harat where the means of luxurious pleasure were at hand and the resources for abundant enjoyment were available," so he decided to indulge. He was stymied, though, by questions of etiquette; he could not first take wine from Muzaffar Mirza without offending his older brother, Badi^c al-Zaman Mirza, and so the moment was postponed until the two Harat Timurids jointly entertained. Unfortunately they never seem to have done so during Babur's visit, so it was five or six years later that he finally took wine, after which he quickly warmed to the Turco-Mongol drinking culture.⁶⁷

Perhaps it was predictable, given Timurid sibling rivalry, that Muzaffar Mirza and his elder brother would compete with each other as they did in staging lavish parties for their country cousin rather than hosting a joint gathering. This was the social consequence of appanage politics. When Badi^c al-Zaman Mirza learned his younger brother had entertained Babur he countered with a spectacular affair set at a kiosk in one of the city's large gardens. Amidst willow trees brought in decorated with strips of gilded leather Babur enjoyed another feast, but one which again served to contrast his provincial background with the high sophistication of his hosts.⁶⁸ When a roast goose was placed before him he did not touch it because he had never carved a bird before. After enquiring why he hesitated Badi^c al-Zaman carved it himself. His cousin was, Babur remarks, "unrivalled in such matters."⁶⁹ It was such skills Babur alluded to when he observed his cousins excelled in social gatherings and polite conversation but complained of their lack of aggressiveness and military preparedness.⁷⁰ Carving was only a small sign of the Harat Timurids' *pur zarafat* their refined manners or urbane sophistication, which included "quiet, delicate and melodious" poetry recitals conducted to the accompaniment of the *nai*

⁶⁷ BN-M, fs. 189a-b.

⁶⁸ Eiji Mano discusses this passage with his usual erudition in his article, "The Weeping-willows Passage in the *Babur-nama* Proceedings of the 27th Meeting of Haneda Memorial Hall (Kyoto: Institute of Inner Asian Studies, 1993), 28-35.

⁶⁹ BN-M, f. 191a.

⁷⁰ BN-M, f. 187b.

or flute and the *chank* (*chenkp* a hammer dulcimer, harp or jews harp, and elegant dancing.⁷¹

Bracketed as they are by Babur's earlier complaints about his cousins' military incompetence and his subsequent description of the Uzbek capture of Harat in June or July 1507, his descriptions of Harat social life convey a *fin de siècle* atmosphere. A century earlier Timur had died, and less than seven months after Babur left Harat the city fell, virtually without a fight. Writing with the first hand information gathered from refugees who fled the Uzbeks to Kabul, Babur reports that when Shibam Khan crossed the Murghab in May or June 1507 Badi^c al-Zaman and Muzaffar Mirza were *sarasimah*, "stupefied," and unable to act. By the evidence of Babur's narrative, the brothers and Zu'n Nun Arghun moved out just east of the city to confront the Uzbeks but once in the field were paralyzed with indecision. "They neither gathered additional troops nor organized a line of defense." Rather each marched off on his own. After Zu'n Nun Arghun charged thousands of Uzbek troops with fewer than two hundred men, and was captured and beheaded, the two *mzrz*s retreated back to Harat, stayed overnight and then fled, leaving their wives and families behind.⁷² They and a few defenders held out within the inner fortress for two weeks before surrendering.

This inglorious denouement of Timurid power in Khurasan was immediately followed by its pitiful climax as Shibam Khan engaged in what Babur terms all manner of "crude and vile" acts and also eradicated Timurids in the region. Babur could hardly be expected to speak in measured tones about a man who had single-handedly

⁷¹ BN-M, f. 190a. Annette Beveridge translates *chank* as Jews harp. BN-B, f. 190a. Arat translates the word in the same way. BN-A, f. 190a. Babur uses the word *chank* for literary effect in his thirty-ninth ghazal. See I. V. Stebleva, *Semantika Gazeli Babura* (Moscow: Nauka, 1982), 94-94 and 247. The metaphorical use of musical instruments in Persian poetry is discussed by A. L. F. A. Beelaert, "The Complaint of Musical Instruments: The Evolution of an Image in Classical Persian Poetry," in Bert Fragner et al ed., *Proceedings of the Second European Conference of Iranian Studies* (Rome: Istituto Italiano Per il Medio ed Estremo Oriente, 1995), 81-96 and Plate XIII. In Iran the *chang* usually refers to the harp. See Jean During et al, *The Art of Persian Music* (Washington D.C.: Mage, 1991), 101-04. For information on instruments in late-twentieth century Central Asia see the delightful book by Theodore Levin, *The Hundred Thousand Fools of God*, Musical Travels in Central Asia (And Queens, New York) (Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana University Press, 1996), glossary, 290.

⁷² BN-M, f. 205b.

destroyed the late-Timurid world. Yet, his description of Shibam's first days in Harat makes the Uzbek chieftan seem like quite a restrained if rustic conqueror when measured against the violent standards of the day, especially when compared to the actions of the Safavids when they later took the city and indulged in the violent religious persecution that characterized their militantly Shi' regime. In fact, Babur's litany of Shibam's offenses seems almost comically inconsequential and, if accurate, indicates little more than that Shibam was an arriviste, clumsily trying to gain instant social status and cultural recognition in cosmopolitan Harat. According to Babur, Shibam almost immediately married Muzaffar Mirza's wife, before the proscribed interval had passed, instructed elite Quranic scholars, despite his vulgarity, criticized the painting of Bihzad, the outstanding miniaturist of the day, and not the least of his offenses against civilized behavior in Babur's eyes, wrote an "insipid and tasteless couplet" which he had posted in the city square for popular admiration.⁷³ As for the literati of Harat, they were given over to the charge of Mulla Banna!, the poet who had sought Babur's patronage in Samarqand, but left him for Shibam Khan a short time later. Before this Banna! had been Mir 'Ali Shir Naval's rival in Harat, so now he returned home in a kind of triumph. In Babur's mind the fact that Shibam ably recited the Quran and prayed five times a day hardly compensated for other "irreligious, uncivil and bizarre words and deeds." It is not surprising that he fails to mention that one of Shibam's first acts after entering Harat was to institute a very intelligent reform of the coinage!⁷⁴ This occurred, of course, after he had extracted substantial indemnities and tribute from the Harat population.⁷⁵

As Shibam was having his rustic way with Harat, Bad! al-Zaman Mirza fled to Iranian Azerbaijan, where he was eventually captured by Ottoman troops and taken to Istanbul. Muzaffar Mirza fled toward his previous appanage at Astarabad, near the Caspian, and disappears from Babur's narrative. Two of Husayn Bayqara's

⁷³ 'W *bzmazah bayt*." BN-M, f. 206b.

⁷⁴ Elena A. Davidovich, "The Monetary Reform of Shibam Khan in 913-914/1507-08," in Devin DeWeese ed., *Studies in Central Asian History in Honor of Yuri Bregel*, 129-85.

⁷⁵ Khwandamir, *Habzbal-siyar*, III, 377-78.

other sons, the younger *mvrzds* who in their hangovers had been dilatory about greeting Babur on the Murghab, fled to nearby Mashad where Uzbeks captured them and, after they embraced, writes Babur, beheaded them seated together on the ground.⁷⁶

Before Babur had left Harat and inadvertently saved himself from his cousins⁵ fate, he found time in the midst of sight-seeing and parties to become engaged once more, to another of Sultan Ahmad Mirza's daughters, Ma'sumah Sultan Begim. She had been brought to the city by her mother sometime well before the *fatratlar*, says Babur, the disturbed times, an evident allusion to his life before 1496. Her mother was related to the Arghuns, the Mongol clan whose members exercised so much influence at Husayn Bayqara's court, and that connection probably explains her presence in the city. Babur gives two versions of this engagement, one of many examples of the complexity of his text. In the first, which he includes in the Ferghanah gazetteer as he is enumerating Ahmad Mirza's family, he writes succinctly, "Upon coming to Khurasan I saw her, liked her, asked for her and had her brought to Kabul."⁷⁷ In this version, a kind of precis for genealogical purposes, Babur's abbreviated style apparently conceals as much as it explains, for when he describes meeting this girl in Harat at the house of Payindah Sultan Begim, his paternal aunt and a wife of Husayn Bayqara, it is Ma'sumah Sultan Begim who is drawn to Babur. "She saw me, he writes, "and immediately on seeing me, felt deeply taken with me."⁷⁸ After negotiations between the girl's mother and Payandah Sultan Begim, a marriage was arranged, and the girl joined Babur in Kabul the following year. However, she died tragically giving birth to a daughter who took her mother's name, Ma'sumah Sultan Begim.

It is sometimes difficult even to imagine the existence of a domestic social life beneath the ever-shifting surface of Timurid politics.⁷⁹ Babur's descriptions of his visits to relatives, and of his

⁷⁶ BN-M, fs. 206b-207a. Khwandamir describes their deaths with considerable rhetorical relish. *Habib al-siyar*, III, 384-86.

⁷⁷ BN-M, f. 20a.

⁷⁸ BN-M, fs. 191b-192a.

⁷⁹ One person who does is Ruby Lal in her article, "The 'Domestic' World of Peripatetic Kings: Babur Humayun, c. 1494-1556," in *The Medieval History Journal* 4, 1 (2001), 43-82.

betrothals, marriages and children at least reveal a human constant in an otherwise chaotic world. Yet having mentioned these events he quickly returns the narrative to his preoccupation with political survival. In political and military terms Babur had accomplished nothing by marching to Harat, and by mid-December as snow began to fall in the mountains of central Afghanistan, “extremely anxious about Kabul,”⁸⁰ he decided to return to his recently-won kingdom.

Kabul and Qandahar

There is nothing in Babur’s description of the initial phase of the return journey to Kabul to indicate that at the time he knew anything was wrong there. He reports that the march went very slowly, halting in camp for a day or two at a time so that unnamed *yigitler* could visit their *vildyatlar*, their home territories, to collect taxes and for other business. As Babur was then moving almost due east along the Hari Rud river these men must have been Khusrau Shah’s former retainers who had long lived in central Afghanistan; his own Ferghanah Turks and Mongols would not have held estates in these regions. Babur says that some of these men rejoined his column, but that others did not reach Kabul until two or three weeks after he did. Some never returned because they decided for unspecified reasons to leave Babur and take service with the Harat *mirzas*. He names only one, Sayyidim ‘Ali, whom he obviously regretted losing. Babur describes him at length—brave, witty, generous—one of Khusrau Shah’s best *naukars*, but he does not condemn the man for changing Timurid patrons. Life in Ferghanah had taught him this was commonly accepted behavior. If Sayyidim ‘Alī had left him for Shibam Khan Uzbek he might have reacted very differently.⁸¹

By now it was late December or early January and snow fell continuously as Babur continued to march away from Harat along the river. At the village of Chacharan, which Zun Nun Arghun “held,” *ta‘alluqah idi*. “We purchased all Zu’n Nun’s grain.”⁸²

⁸⁰ BN-M, f. 192a.

⁸¹ BN-M, fs. 192a-b.

⁸² BN-M, f. 192b.

Debating whether to take the southern but longer Qandahar road or retrace the shorter route in an arc through the mountains they decided on the latter. Babur in recognizable, self-serving, autobiographical style blames Qasim Beg Qauchin for persuading him to ride into the mountains in the winter, which was a predictably disastrous decision. After first loosing the road in heavy drifts they forged on in snow so deep that his men took turns trampling down the snow on foot so the horses could be led through.

In nearly a week of trampling the snow we were unable to progress more than a mile or two a day. I was one of the snow-trampling people with ten or fifteen *ichkis*, Qasim Beg and his two sons, Tengri Birdi and Qambar ⁶AI and also two or three *naukar*. Those men tioned going on foot we trampled the snow. Each person would trample the snow moving seven, eight or ten yards forward. At each step they would sink to their waist or chest while trampling the snow. After a few steps the lead man would halt, exhausted and another man would take his place.⁸³

Speaking of the this trip through the mountains Babur says he experienced more peril and misery in these few days than at any other time of his life,⁸⁴ a memory seemingly ratified by the evocative power of his narration. As they battled through drifts uphill toward the Zirrin Pass in the general direction of Bamian the weather closed in. He and his men were trapped in a blinding snowstorm,⁸⁵ forcing them to halt by a small cave. Babur says that at first he refused his men's entreaties to take shelter inside the cave, as there didn't seem to be enough room for everyone. Evoking a warrior ethos that he must have felt would strongly appeal to his Turki-speaking audience Babur notes that he could hardly go inside to warmth and leave his men outside in cold. "That would be far from manly, quite contrary to comradeship."⁸⁶ The next day they pressed on, spent another miserable night outside on the mountain ridge exposed to the bitter cold, many suffering from frostbite. Finally, though, they traversed the pass, fought their way through deep snow to the valley below and found

⁸³ BN-M, f. 193b.

⁸⁴ BN-M, f. 193b.

⁸⁵ Beveridge with her usual care discusses the exact route. BN-B, p. 310, n. 2. It can also be traced in Irfan Habib's *Atlas of the Mughal Empire* (Delhi: Oxford University Press, repr. 1986), 1a-b "Northern Afghanistan."

⁸⁶ BN-M, f. 194b.

refuge, food and warmth with the people of Yakah Aulang village.

Babur describes their relief in terms reminiscent of his feelings when he reached safety after fleeing the Uzbeks besieging Samarqand in 1500.

Namdz-i khuftan, at the time of the night prayer, we dismounted at Yakah Aulang. The Yakah Aulang people heard of our halting [and provided] warm houses, fat sheep, limitless green grass and hay and wood and dung for fire. Being delivered from such cold and snow, finding such a village and warm houses, being delivered from such hardship and suffering, finding thick bread and fat sheep, is a condition that those experiencing such hardships will know; it is a relief that those who have known such suffering will understand.⁸⁷

After a day spent recuperating in the village Babur and his men rode on through Bamian, crossed the Shibartu Pass about fifty miles northwest of Kabul and attacked, plundered and captured some Hazarahs, whom Babur describes as bandits—*rahzan ve sarkashlar*—and considered torturing them to death as an example. In the midst of this punitive attack, which yielded some badly needed sheep, cattle and horses, Babur learned of an uprising in Kabul. It was led, he asserts by Muhammad Husayn Dughlat, previously the governor of Ura Tipa for Mahmud Khan, and Sultan Sanjar Barias, a nephew of his great aunt, Shah Begim, a wife of Yunas Khan. They and their predominantly Mongol troops had made Babur's cousin, Ways Mirza, a brother of Baysunghur Mirza, "padshah," and seized the city, but had failed to take the citadel, where Babur's loyalists were holding out. Little is known about Sultan Sanjar Barias⁵ earlier history, but Ways Mirza was with Babur in 1504 when he interviewed and humiliated Khusrau Shah on his way to Kabul, and Muhammad Husayn Dughlat had joined Babur in Kabul in 1505. Both men were, like Babur himself, refugees from the Uzbeks.

Babur says Sultan Sanjar and Muhammad Husayn Dughlat justified their coup by spreading the rumor that Badf al-Zaman Mirza and Muzaffar Mirza had imprisoned him in the Harat fortress. Writing about this episode his young cousin, Haydar Mirza Dughlat, tries to justify his father's role. Perhaps getting his information from Babur's own account, he writes that reports had arrived in Kabul about Babur's imprisonment, and thus it was

⁸⁷ BN-M, f. 195b.

reasonable to put Ways Mirza, another Timurid, on the Kabul throne.⁸⁸ Yet given their earlier history and connections the three were likely moved by other more prosaic and personal motives than saving the Timurid dynasty. After all, Babur had chased Ways Mirza's brother, Baysunghur Mirza from Samarqand in 1497, indirectly leading to his death at the hands of Khusrau Shah. Ways Mirza and Muhammad Husayn Dughlat had also been allies in Ferghanah, and with Mahmud Khan's support and Mongol troops, had made an abortive march on Samarqand just before Babur's second occupation of the city in 1500.⁸⁹ Whether their actions were reasonable or not—and Haydar Mirza did not arrive in Kabul until 1508—Babur and his men surprised Sultan Sanjar Barias, Ways Mirza, Muhammad Dughlat before they could occupy the citadel, and retook the city after a brief and not very bloody struggle.⁹⁰

After quickly capturing all three men—Muhammad Husayn Dughlat was found hiding in a pile of bedding in the women's quarters—Babur spared their lives, explicitly citing their family connections. Not only was Ways Mirza the grandson of Shah Begim and Sultan Sanjar Barias her nephew, but Muhammad Husayn Dughlat had also once been married to Khubnigar Khanim, Yunas Khan's third daughter and therefore another of Babur's maternal aunts. Muhammad Husayn Dughlat was allowed to go Khurasan, where he was later killed by Uzbeks, and Ways Mirza later left for Qandahar, but rejoined Babur before he attacked the city. Even though he spared these men's lives Babur speaks bitterly of their betrayal, which he interprets as a conspiracy of his maternal, that is Chaghatay relatives, despite Ways Mirza's paternal Timurid genealogy.

In his mind his mother's kin had always treated his own immediate family badly. He recalls that during the several times he and his mother had been refugees in Mawarannahr, Shah Begim, Ways Mirza and his mother Sultannigar Khanim had shown them neither compassion nor respect, not to speak of giving them lands or cattle. Yet Babur had welcomed them to Kabul and out of respect

⁸⁸ TR-T, fs. 95b-97a. After Babur's victories in India he appointed Ways Mirza's son, Muhammad Sultan Mirza, to the governorship of Kannauj. BN-M, f. 167b.

⁸⁹ BN-M, f. 76b.

⁹⁰ BN-M, fs. 198a-200a and TR-T, fs. 96b-97a.

for their *tabaqah*, their lineage, supported them with choice revenue assignments.⁹¹ Not only had the three men found refuge with him but Shah Begim and Yunas Khan's childless eldest daughter, Babur's maternal aunt, Mihrnigar Khanim, had also found safety in the city in 1505. Shah Begim had been given the choice assignment of Paghman, one of the best districts in Kabul province. Yet, Babur argues, Shah Begim herself must have known of Ways Mirza's treachery, for grandmother and grandson were constantly in each other's company in Kabul.

His belief that he had acted honorably while his mother's relatives had long ignored and then betrayed him obviously rankled deeply with Babur, for he concludes his account of this incident with another of his autobiographical editorials. "This is not written," he notes, "with the intent of complaining. It is the truth that is written. It is not written with the idea of praising oneself. What is being documented truly happened. As I have taken it upon myself in this history to record every word and every act truthfully, consequently I have documented everything known about relatives, whether good or bad. I have recorded all the faults and virtues which are known of relations and strangers."⁹² Babur, of course, like most autobiographers, does not say he intends to list all his own faults and virtues. In fact while he frequently admits he made political or military mistakes he never admits to any of the multitudinous character flaws he notes in others, whether relatives or strangers! No wonder so many readers have found his personality so attractive, for if his text is taken at face value Babur never once acted dishonorably or uncharitably toward anyone, especially not towards his Chaghatay or Timurid relations.

Still for all his autobiographical bias Babur offers a unique narrative insight into the life of an aspiring emperor, and following the account of the victory in Kabul he typically interrupts the

⁹¹ BN-M, f. 200b.

⁹² Ibid., f. 201a. The text has '*ata agha*' which has generally been translated in English as "father and elder brother." Yet Babur had no elder brother. "Elder brother" might also refer to a cousin, but even that meaning doesn't really seem to fit in which Babur criticizes both men and women. As it stands the phrase probably means simply relations in general. Perhaps *agha* is a copyist mistake for *ana*, in which case the phrase may be translated either as "mother and father" which was often used in certain old Turkic dialects/languages simply to mean "relatives." See Nadelyaev. *Drevnetyurkskii Slovar*³, 65.

political narrative, and describes an excursion to see the spring flowers and foliage in Baran, Chash Tupah and the Gulbahar or “spring-flower” hills north of Kabul. This is an area along the northern reaches of the Baran river known to a local unnamed poet he quotes as *jinnat* or “paradise.”⁹³ The passage is one of many instances when Babur expresses his delight at the natural beauty in the hills surrounding Kabul, however poor that city may have been as an imperial base. During this brief respite from the harsh realities of late-Timurid life, he completed the ghazal which begins, “Petal upon petal my heart is like a rosebud,” his poem echoing the aesthetic moment, but not describing exactly the flowers he saw.

Shortly after this idyllic picnic Babur and his men resumed raiding. Carefully distinguishing between pacified or subject tribes such as the Muhmands, whom he refused to allow his men to plunder, he reports that the Timurids now went after the Khilji, camped on the edge of the Katawaz plain about twenty-five miles southeast of Ghazni.⁹⁴ Nasir Mirza, who had so recently come crawling back to Babur after his disaster in Badakhshan, joined this expedition. Babur estimates that they seized nearly 100,000 sheep, although this figure seems staggeringly high. In fact the number is ridiculously improbable. It is even more difficult to count sheep than armies, and evidence from Babur and others indicates that historians' estimates of troops are nearly always inflated, often wildly so. In any event after stealing many, many sheep Babur and his men massacred the Khilji who resisted the Timurids' incursion and erected another “minaret” of their skulls. Then they held a classic Central Asian hunt on the Katawaz plain.

A Turco-Mongol custom, Chingiz Khan had institutionalized these customary hunts as training exercises for the massive encircling maneuvers his armies conducted on the treeless Mongolian steppe. In fact, while describing a hunt in 1502 that followed the yak-tail ceremony, Babur mentions how conflicts over commands of the prestigious flanking positions in Mongol battle formations could be settled by appointments to lead those positions in hunts.⁹⁵ Forming a huge *charkah*, a Turco-Mongol hunting circle, Babur and his men killed deer and wild asses -without counting them this time.

⁹³ Ibid., fs. 202a and 136.

⁹⁴ BN-M, fs. 203a-204.

⁹⁵ Ibid., f. 100b.

Babur compliments himself on his prowess in killing the heaviest ass of all. He reports that Sherim Tagha'i, a maternal uncle of Babur's mother and one of his companions in his flight to Kabul in 1504, was "amazed" by the plumpness of the animals they hunted.⁹⁶ Such hunting scenes are one of the staple subjects of Timurid-Mughul miniature painting, with similar self-congratulation of Babur's descendants then carefully recorded by sycophantic court historians.⁹⁷

Hunting animals blended almost seamlessly into military campaigns as was true in Mawarannahr, and shortly after Babur returned to Kabul he set off to seize Qandahar.⁹⁸ News had arrived of the Uzbek occupation of Harat in July 1507, and refugees from the city began arriving in Kabul a short time later. Between Kabul and Harat stood Qandahar, then held by Shah Beg Arghun and Muhammad Muqim Arghun, technically Mongol feudatories of the Harat Timurids and sons of Zu'n-Nun Arghun, whom Babur had chased from Kabul in 1504. Two years earlier Babur had set out to take Qandahar, but cancelled the attack, because, he writes, he fell ill and an earthquake simultaneously struck Kabul.⁹⁹ Now in the spring of 1507 with the Uzbeks in Harat he badly needed Qandahar for the defense of Kabul—and presumably also for the agricultural and commercial wealth in and around the city. Babur reports he received letters from the Arghuns about the Uzbek threat and asserts that "Muqim himself had unmistakably sent him an *firzdcishlf* a "petition" implicitly acknowledging subordinate status, in which Muqim invited him to the city.¹⁰⁰

It is impossible to determine whether or not Muqim and his brother intended to acknowledge Babur's suzerainty in these letters. They may have first flattered Babur's sovereign claims when he was still in Kabul and then changed their minds as his force approached Qandahar. Whatever their original intentions the Arghuns refused to give up the fort when Babur and his force of

⁹⁶ Ibid., f. 204a.

⁹⁷ See among other numerous examples "Shah Jahan hunting" in Milo Cleveland Beach and Ebba Koch, *King of the World* (London: Azimuth Editions, 1997), p. 84, no. 33.

⁹⁸ Apart from Babur's detailed account his campaign is only briefly alluded to in other sources. The historian Ruzbihan Khunji, for example, just mentions it briefly in the history he completed in 1509, the *Mihman-namah-yi Bukhara*, 184.

⁹⁹ Ibid., fs. 157a-b.

¹⁰⁰ Ibid., f. 207a.

nearly two thousand men neared the city. The Arghuns symbolically proclaimed their independence and implicitly rejected any notion of feudatory status by ostentatiously sealing one of their later letters in the middle of the document, in Babur's view a *rusta anih* and *durusht* reply, a "crude and stupid answer," since only equals or superiors, he asserts, would so recklessly affix their seal in this way.¹⁰¹

As they marched west from Kabul Babur and his men encountered a group of Indian merchants in Qalat, about eighty-four miles east of Qandahar, perhaps stalled there by news of the fighting in Harat. Remembering that his men suggested they should plunder anyone who was in a war zone, Babur describes his reaction to their suggestion in terms that suggest he may have intended this passage as yet another designed to serve as political wisdom for his son Humayun. In it Babur says he refused to allow his men to strip the merchants, and draws a parallel with his earlier denial of their request to plunder his Muhmand subjects. In the earlier instance, Babur observes, they had acted justly and shortly afterwards God rewarded them with huge numbers of Khilji sheep. On this occasion he told his men that God would likely give them similarly great benefits for sparing these blameless merchants, and notes he and his men merely *took pishkish* "customary presents" from them, suggesting by the term *pishkish* the expected tributary gift of a subordinate to a superior.¹⁰²

Babur was not just splitting hairs; his men would have stripped the Indians bare. In mentioning this encounter he may have been thinking of his earlier testimonial to his father's concern for the property of the merchants who perished in the mountain snows east of Andijan. Even—or especially—the Mongols understood merchants⁵ role in providing them with luxury goods and taxation revenues. Indeed, they formed trading partnerships with merchants known as *ortaqs*, just as Mughul nobles were to do later in India.¹⁰³ Babur had already commented earlier in the Kabul section on the importance of commercial revenues for the city—its largest single source of income. He probably had in mind this revenue as the boon God would grant if he spared these merchants.

¹⁰¹ Ibid., f. 208a.

¹⁰² BN-M, f. 207b.

¹⁰³ Dale, *Indian Merchants and Eurasian Trade 1600-1750*, 33 & n. 87.

As Babur and his men marched from Qalat to Qandahar, Ways Mirza reappeared and joined Babur along with another of Babur's cousins, Abd al-Razzaq Mirza, the son of Ulugh Beg Kabuli, the former Timurid ruler of Kabul. 'Abd al-Razzaq Mirza came out from Qandahar. The wife of Babur's half-brother, Jahangir Mirza, also arrived with her son to pay her respects, probably seeking Babur's protection after the recent death of Jahangir Mirza, who had fallen ill and been left behind on Babur's forced march from Harat to Kabul. Then as the army approached the outskirts of Qandahar a member of the Arghun family abandoned his family for Babur's camp, and immediately went into action, unhorsing and beheading one of the defenders of the city.¹⁰⁴ The defection of one of the Arghun family was seen as a good omen, but it scarcely compensated for the temporary disappearance of nearly half of Babur's estimated force of two thousand men on the outskirts of Qandahar. "Since leaving Qalat," Babur recalls, "our men had suffered greatly from hunger," so about 1000 scattered to forage for food.¹⁰⁵ The passage not only reveals one compelling reason why Babur's men wanted to plunder the Indian merchants, it also suggests the army lived entirely off the land, and that the "100,000" Khilji sheep were back in Kabul, perhaps feeding the garrison there.

Just as half the army scattered to find food the Arghuns attacked with an estimated four to five thousand men, another troop estimate that cannot be proven but only suspected. Babur and his remaining force turned to confront them. He describes with evident pleasure how he had organized his troops to win his first significant victory in a set-piece battle.

"Although our men were few," he writes:

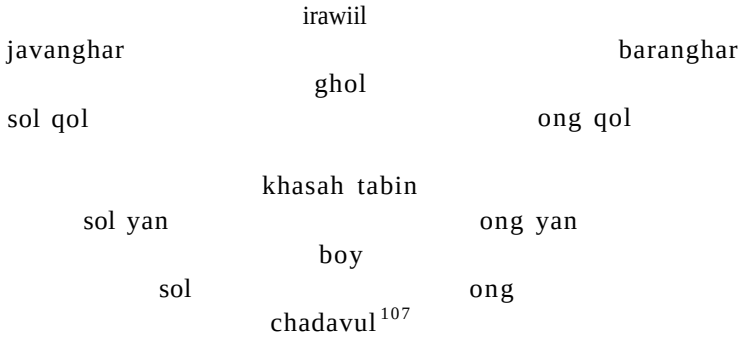
I prepared an excellent battle order. Never before had I arranged things so well. In the *khasahd bin*, the imperial troop, for which I selected all proven warriors, I appointed commanders of tens and fifties, [after] dividing them up into [sections] of tens and fifties. Each [section] of ten and each [section] of fifty stationed at the right and left, were prepared: they knew their positions, their orders and were ready for the onset of battle. Right and left flanks, right and left wings, right and left sides, right and left, mounted, formed up

¹⁰⁴ BN-M, fs. 208a-b.

¹⁰⁵ Ibid., f. 209a.

without difficulty and without the help of a *tovachi*, an adjutant, each [section] was properly positioned and so rode forth.¹⁰⁶

In an elaborate note Babur carefully explains these divisions of his force. He identifies three major subsections: the *irawiil* or vanguard, the *ghol*, the center, and the two wings, the *baranghar* or right wing and the *javanghar* or left wing. The *ghol* itself, he writes, is subdivided into two principal sections: the *khasah tdbzn*, the imperial troop, and two sides: an *ong qol*, a right arm and a *sol qol* or left arm. He further divides the *khasah tdbm* into five subsections the *boy* or inner circle with its *ong*, right, and *sol*, left, and its *ongyan*, right side and *solyan*, left side. However, when describing actual battles Babur rarely identifies all these subsections but usually only names leading members of the vanguard, the center, and the right and left wings.



Babur provides an exceptionally elaborate account of his commanders at Qandahar, which offers some insight into how he organized troops for such battles. Neither then nor at any other time in his life did he have a Chingizid-like control over ferociously disciplined troops that he could position and order about at will. His campaigns were the outcome of continuous negotiation and ad hoc arrangements. He usually appointed as commanders whatever Timurids were at hand, while groups of large, semi-independent

¹⁰⁶ Ibid., f. 209a. See also Arat's discussion and illustration of Babur's *yasal* or battle order. BN-A, 664-666. Gerhard Doerfer describes not only the Timur's *yasal* but that of other Central Asian and Iranian armies—the Qarakhanid, Mongols and Safavids, *Türkische und Mongolische Elemente im Neupersischen* (Wiesbaden: Franz Steiner, 1975), IV, no. 1791, pp. 82-92.

¹⁰⁷ Ibid., 209b.

Mongol contingents fought together. At Qandahar Babur himself commanded the center and Timurids were members and presumably at least nominal commanders of the vanguard and the right and left wings. Apart from Timurids, longtime family retainers of various lineages constituted the leadership of the vanguard and left wings, with major Mongol contingents concentrated on the right wing. Nasir Mirza was in the vanguard, Ways Mirza the right wing and Abd al-Razzaq Mirza, Ulugh Beg Kabuli's son, the left wing. The vanguard also contained Sayyid Qasim, a Jalayir Mongol and the Lord of Babur's gate, Baba Aughuli, a man who had been in the vanguard with Sayyid Qasim when raiding Afghans in 1505, and Muhibb 'Ali Qurchi, one of Khusrau Shah's former men whom Babur most admired.

In the right wing with Ways Mirza were important Mongol forces. They seem to have fought well at Qandahar, but four years later in 1511 when given the chance many showed they preferred to be led by a Mongol *khan* rather than a Timurid, no doubt reinforcing Babur's bitter feelings about his maternal relatives and Mongols in general.¹⁰⁸ Two of these men were his mother's kin: Sherim Tagha'i, one of his mother's maternal uncles and in 1494, one of Babur's protectors when his father died, and Yarik Tagha'i, by his name another of his mother's relatives and one of the small number of men to remain with Babur in 1498, when he lost both Samarqand and Andijan. Then there was the leader of the Mongol Begchik *tuman* Ayub Beg Begchik, a man who evidently brought a large contingent of Mongol troops with him to Kabul. He had formerly been an adherent of Babur's maternal uncle, Mahmud Khan, and commander of the *tuman*—a man who in 1502 claimed by hereditary Mongol tradition the leadership of the right wing of Mahmud Khan's army. Ayub Beg's two brothers, Muhammad Beg and Ibrahim Beg, were also present, although Ibrahim's relationship with Ayub is not clear, as he had served Babur since 1497 and remained with him during his Indian campaigns. In the left wing the most important figures after the Timurid Abd al-Razzaq Mirza were Qasim Beg Qauchin, one of 'Umar Shaykh's commanders and long one of Babur's most trusted men, and his sons Tengri-Birdi and Qambar 'Ali. In the *boyand* immediately to its left and right were a group of lesser men, *ichkis*, none of whom, Babur

¹⁰⁸ TR-T, f. 119b.

writes, had yet been appointed as *begs* or senior commanders. He identifies some as Mongols, a few as “Turkmen”; many others had been serving Babur since his campaigns in Mawarannahr. Some, such as Sultan Muhammad Duldai Barias, survived to become major figures during the next two decades.

Babur defeated his Arghun opponents in a pitched cavalry battle in which the Mongol right wing apparently played a critical role. In fact, by the unmistakable evidence of his subsequent narrative, Mongol cavalry contingents were critical to all his subsequent victories—over the Uzbeks at Pul-i Sangin in 1511, the Ludis at Panipat in 1526 and the Rajputs at Kanwah in 1527. The swift encircling movements that Mongols practiced in their frequent hunting exercises apparently were used to great effect in each case. Apart from describing the disposition of his forces as he does at Qandahar, Babur never offers a systematic assessment of his tactics or the relative value of any of his commanders or troops. He does, though, mention that in the traditional Mongol battle formation the right and left wings were the most prestigious commands, and it is impossible to overlook the prominence he gives to the Mongol contingents fighting on the wings on each occasion.¹⁰⁹ Mongols may have betrayed him during his early campaigns in Ferghanah and then again in 1512 after the Uzbeks had driven him from Samarqand for the final time, but they more than any other *naukars* may have been responsible for his pivotal triumphs in India.

Following the Qandahar battle Babur and his troops entered the city where they were stunned with the riches they found. “Such a huge amount of silver coin had never been seen in those provinces,” Babur writes,¹¹⁰ and he appointed *bakhshzs*, scribes or accountants to inventory the Arghun brothers’ two treasuries. The fact that each Arghun had a “treasury” reflects the individual/personal nature of their rule in Qandahar, even though they were at least technically subordinate to the Harat government.¹¹¹ By this evidence it is apparent that the Arghun brothers were autonomous rulers who extracted local wealth largely for their own purposes

¹⁰⁹ BN-M, f. 100b.

¹¹⁰ BN-M, f. 212a.

¹¹¹ Despite the wealth of information on Harat, this Timurid city-state’s political character and degree of control over outlying cities and districts is still largely unexplored.

and not, primarily, for their nominal Timurid overlords. The scale of their accumulation astonished Babur when some days later he returned to his camp outside of the city and found all the Arghun riches displayed. "This was not the camp. What had happened to the place we knew?" Babur remembers thinking.¹¹² There were beautiful thoroughbred horses, camels, mules, textiles and, of course, bags of silver *tangahs*. Nasir Mirza, whom Babur appointed to govern Qandahar, had already appropriated a camel load of *tangahs* for himself, which his older brother conceded to him. On the march back to Kabul Babur distributed the remainder of the booty to his officers for their own support and their soldier's pay. He mentions in passing that no one paid any attention to the sheep that had been seized.

In leaving Nasir Mirza behind in Qandahar Babur placed his brother in a situation where he feared to stay himself, that is in Shibam Khan's immediate path. Abd al-Razzaq Mirza was only slightly less exposed to danger just east in Qalat, which Babur granted him after the Qandahar victory. Qasim Beg Qauchin sensibly advised Babur it was dangerous to stay in Qandahar. He was quickly proven correct for news arrived in Kabul sometime shortly after Babur returned there in triumph that Shibam Khan had reached Qandahar and forced his way into the city, leaving only the citadel in Nasir Mirza's hands. He was invited there, writes Babur, by the defeated Arghuns. News of the Uzbek siege arrived sometime in August or early September and created panic in Kabul. Writing with the remarkable candor that makes his memoirs such a unique source, Babur describes himself to have been paralyzed with indecision.

The *begs* were summoned [and] a counsel held. These were among the matters discussed, that such a foreign people as the Uzbeks and such an old enemy as Shibam Khan had seized all of the provinces of Timur Beg's descendants. Of Turk and Chaghatay who survived in corners and on the margins, they either willingly or unwillingly joined the Uzbeks. I alone remained in Kabul, the enemy very strong, ourselves extremely weak. Neither reconciliation nor resistance was possible. In the face of such power and strength we had to think of some place for ourselves. Given this brief opportunity it was imperative to get further away from this powerful enemy. Either the

¹¹² Ibid., f. 212a.

Badakhshan side or the Hindustan direction had to be chosen. It was imperative to decide on a direction.¹¹³

Qasim Beg Qauchin and SherTm Tagha'i suggested Badakhshan, where no strong figure then ruled, but Babur opted for Hindustan.

In 1507 Babur did not plan to invade India, but was desperately looking for a refuge, some place to hide in the Afghan-Indian borderlands. He left behind in Kabul Abd al-Razzaq Mirza, who had fled from Qalat and arrived in Kabul just as Babur marched out, a sign of his desperation as Abd al-Razzaq might reasonably have claimed the city as his father's appanage. Given the ruthless politics of the time it is remarkable that Abd al-Razzaq did not seize Kabul for himself, particularly as Babur himself remarks that the Afghans thought he was abandoning the city for India.¹¹⁴ Babur also gave permission for Ways Mirza and his grandmother, Shah Begim, to go to Badakhshan. They hoped to exploit Shah Begim's lineage as a descendant of the ancient kings of Badakhshan to create a new Timurid state there. As he marched eastward from Kabul toward Lamghanat in September 1507 Babur may have recalled his *qazaqtıq* days in Ferghanah, for once again he was perilously close to loosing both his kingdom and very possibly his life as well.

Harassed by Afghans who apparently smelled blood in the political water as he retreated from Kabul, Babur's force marched east and eventually reached Adinahpur in Ningnahr district. The desperate, unplanned character of this march is reflected in Babur's narrative when he writes that before arriving at Adinahpur "No thought had been given of a place to camp. Nothing had been settled, neither a place to go nor a site for camp."¹¹⁵ This sense of panic-stricken flight is reinforced by Babur's next comment, that his men now had to forage for food, raiding Kafir rice fields in nearby 'Alishang district. They had apparently ridden out with no supplies, none of the plunder they had laboriously acquired over the summer. In the midst of describing these desultory wanderings, Babur then says, writing in the enigmatic passive, that it "was not considered" to be a good idea to go to Hindustan and some men were sent back to Kabul with unspecified messages.

¹¹³ Ibid., f. 213a.

¹¹⁴ Ibid., f. 213b.

¹¹⁵ Ibid., f. 214a.

By now it was winter and as Babur and his men continued to ride from village to village in the Afghan countryside east of Kabul, Nasir Mirza sent news that Shibam Khan had withdrawn from Qandahar because a commander of a fortress near Harat where Shibam's haram was lodged, had rebelled. With the immediate Uzbek threat over Babur returned to Kabul, bestowed Ghazni on Nasir Mirza, Ningnabar district on Abd al-Razzaq Mirza and had himself proclaimed *padshah*. "Until this time," he writes, "Timur Beg's descendants had been called *mirzd* even when they were sovereign. Now I ordered that [people] should call me *padshah*."¹¹⁶ By taking this Iranian title Babur seems to have been claiming an imperial sovereignty far greater than the notion of a Timurid appanage, however his modest his possessions at this time. Then on 6 March 1508 his son and eventual heir Humayun was born and with him a new Timurid dynasty.

With Shibam Khan withdrawn, the Harat Timurids dead or dispersed and the birth of a son Babur must have enjoyed at least a fleeting sense of well-being in the spring of 1508. Perhaps this also prompted him sometime in 1508/09 to have his new imperial title cut into rock south of Kabul near a place where he used to drink, a place known in his great-grandson's day as *takht-i shah*, the throne of the king. The inscription reads, according to his great-grandson, Jahangir "The seat of the king, the asylum of the world, Zahir al-Dm Muhammad Babur, son of 'Umar Shaykh Giirgan."¹¹⁷ Yet the fragile reality of his situation was substantially unchanged. At this stage in his career his assumption of the *padshah* title represented an aspiration rather than a symbol of political reality. Shibam Khan still dominated Khurasan while Babur exercised limited control in Kabul province, with Nasir Mirza and Abd al-Razzaq Mirza drawing revenues from two of its important districts and many if not most of the Afghan tribes and the Kafirs autonomous or openly hostile. Beyond the potential Uzbek threat and the problematic nature of his Afghan state, there was the constant problem of unreliable military contingents. Some of those who fought with him in Qandahar rebelled in May or June of this year.

¹¹⁶ Ibid., f. 215a.

¹¹⁷ TJ, I, 108. As is mentioned in the Introduction, no coins of Babur's period of residence in Kabul between 1504 and 1525 are known to be extant. These could give additional insight into his imperial titles—as well as data about economic and commercial policies.

Babur mentions that some of Khusrau Shah's former Mongol contingents, as well as some Chaghatays formerly serving Khusrau Shah, united with several thousand Turkmans gathered outside Kabul, where they were joined by Abd al-Razzaq Mirza. According to his Mongol cousin Haydar Mirza, who arrived in the city as a young boy of ten about a year and a half later, in November/December 1509, Babur with 500 men defeated these Mongol, Chaghatay and Turkoman contingents in an intense struggle, Babur himself wounding "five different champions of the enemy."¹¹⁸ Abd al-Razzaq was captured and pardoned—only to be executed later after another "rebellion"—and relative peace returned to Kabul for the next year and a half. Nonetheless, Haydar Mirza's estimate of the number of reliable troops Babur commanded in 1508 once again underlines his fundamentally precarious position—vis-a-vis Shibam Khan, the newly arisen Safavid power in Iran or the Ludi Afghans ruling in Delhi and Agra, all of whom could muster ten times that number of troops at relatively short notice. His survival was due mainly to Kabul's isolation, its location on the borderlands of Uzbek, Safavid and Ludi territories. Anyone thinking about Babur's probable future at this time could reasonably have concluded that Timurid Kabul was an anachronism, a doomed political artifact.

Literary Interregnum: 1508-1519

Just as Babur begins to describe the Mughul-Turkman rebellion of 1508, his narrative breaks off and does not resume until 1519. This gap and a subsequent one for the six-year period between 1519 and 1525 leaves the biographer of Babur deprived of the personal details that distinguish a life from a chronicle. It is not possible to continue the biography for these years, but only to sketch a brief, largely lifeless political history. Information about Babur's career for the decade from 1508-19 comes from brief references to him in Persian chronicles and the first-hand information of Haydar Mirza, who by his own testimony was almost constantly in Babur's com-

¹¹⁸ TR-T, f. 98b. Haydar Mirza says he left Badakhshan, where he stayed for about a year with Ways Mirza, in Rajab 915 (October, 1509). TR-T, fs. 1Ca-lida, and stayed with Babur until sometime in 918 (1512). Ibid., f. 114a.

pany for about three years between October/November of 1509 and September/October, 1512. Haydar Mirza at least is able to give first-hand accounts of conditions in Kabul in 1509-10 and Babur's defeat of Uzbek armies and his third entry in Samarqand in 1511. Yet he was a young boy at the time, and even his most valuable descriptions do not compensate for loss of Babur's unique narrative, with its emotion-laden content. Khwandamir, the most ambitious and thorough of all the court historians writing about this period, has little original to say about these events and almost nothing of importance to relate about Babur's last Samarqand campaign. As the Soviet scholar Azimdzhanova observes: "Usually loquacious and generous with details, the author of the *Habzb al-siyar* upon reaching the events of 1511 becomes restrained and laconic....The point is that Khwandamir, speaking about Babur's life, bases it mainly on his memoirs."¹¹⁹ Yet while most histories offer only fragmentary political narratives they nonetheless reveal an unmistakable continuity of these years with Babur's earlier life, both in his preoccupation with Timurid interests in Mawarannahr and as well as his astonishing resilience in the face of repeated military disasters.¹²⁰

Samarqand: the Last Hurrah

In December 1510 Ways Mirza wrote to Babur from his base near Qunduz, east of Balkh, that Shibam Khan had been killed in a battle with Shah Ismahl Safavi. According to the Safavid historian Iskandar Beg Munshi, Ways Mirza had gone to meet Shah Isrnahl at the celebration of the Safavid victory in Harat.¹²¹ Ways Mirza then returned to Badakhshan and invited Babur north to form a Timurid alliance to retake Mawarannahr. Babur hurriedly left Kabul in late December with his wives and children, taking the only route not then blocked by snow, presumably the Shibartu pass leading into Bamian.¹²² Ways Mirza might not have been so eager

¹¹⁹ Azimdzhanova, *Gosudarstvo Babura v Kabule i v Indii*, 85-6.

¹²⁰ S. A. Azimdzhanova discusses the sources available for the years 1510-1512 of Babur's life, *Gosudarstvo Babura v Kabule i Indii*, 85-87.

¹²¹ Iskandar Beg Munshi, *History of Shah 'Abbas the Great*, I, 63.

¹²² His daughter, Gulbadan Begim, names some of those Babur took with him on his march north. HN, f. 7b. Her phrase is: *ahi u 'iydl u farzand*.

to see his cousin except that his grandmother's lineage had not given him legitimacy; he was then living in poverty in the small fortress of Zafar hemmed in by Uzbeks, who controlled the wealthy agricultural lowlands, and hostile Badakhshan! natives.¹²³ When Babur arrived in Qunduz in February/March 1511 he found that Ways Mirza had been joined by an estimated 20,000 Mongols. These men had originally been contingents of Babur's Chaghatay uncles; Shibani Khan had forcibly resettled them in Khurasan after he had defeated the Chaghatay Khans at Akhsi in the spring of 1503. With Shlbam's death they were free to return east and Ways Mirza may have seen them as the basis of an anti-Uzbek army. Bolstered by these Mongol reinforcements Babur and Ways Mirza crossed the Oxus in the "late winter," 1511 to attack important Uzbek forces in Hisar, probably because this would open the road to Samarqand. However, after both armies failed to locate the other in the mountainous terrain east of Hisar near Waksh, the Uzbeks retired back to Hisar and Babur and Ways Mirza returned to Qunduz.

At this juncture Babur once again had to confront Mongol unrest as his new Mongol allies and old Mongol retainers, including Sherim Tagha'i, conspired to set Babur aside in favor of Sa'id Khan, a son of Babur's maternal uncle, Kichik Khan, the "rustic" but "good Muslim" Mongol uncle who had entered Ferghanah in 1502. However, Sa'id Khan, who had come to Kabul as a refugee in 1508 and enjoyed Babur's hospitality there until he marched with him to Qunduz, refused to betray Babur.¹²⁴ Perhaps he really was grateful for Babur's help and the two carefree years he was able to spend in Kabul drinking and carrying on love affairs — once with one of the Begchik princes.¹²⁵ Instead he opted to lead the Mongols to Ferghanah, recently abandoned by the Uzbeks.¹²⁶ Babur writes that he appointed him Khan and sent him to Ferghanah, but he may only have ratified a fait accompli in order to rid himself of the Mongols.¹²⁷ Sa'id Khan left for Ferghanah on 13 May 1511.¹²⁸ Sherim Tagha'i and Ayub Begchik stayed behind with Babur, but

¹²³ TR-T, fs. 112a-113a.

¹²⁴ Ibid., f. 119b.

¹²⁵ TR-T, f. 111a "...az amTrzadehha-yi Mughul-i Begchiknezhadi..."

¹²⁶ TR-T, f. 119b.

¹²⁷ BN-M, f. 200b.

¹²⁸ TR-T, f. 127b.

their subsequent actions suggest their loyalty was always pragmatic and conditional. They too, as with the Mongol forces who joined Said Khan, may always have preferred to serve a Chingizid *khan* rather than a Timurid *mirza*.

Babur and his allies planned to move on Hisar, the strongly fortified city north of the Oxus formerly controlled by Khusrau Shah, but now held by two important Uzbek leaders. Haydar Mirza estimates that the “Chaghatays,” that is Babur’s forces, had no more than 5,000 men in Qunduz, but most of those must have joined Babur after he arrived. He himself says that he had only about 2,000 men when he marched on Qandahar, and it seems unlikely he could have brought more than that number over the mountains in the winter to Qunduz. Haydar Mirza is probably referring to the total Babur commanded when he marched on Hisar. These included 3,000 Mongols from Khurasan who stayed with Babur when the rest went to Ferghanah, and they were supplemented by an Iranian force of unspecified size that Shah Ismail sent to aid Babur. The latter arrived with Ways Mirza, whom Babur had dispatched as an emissary to Shah Ismail—along with pledges of *itaat va inqiyad* fealty and submission.¹²⁹ He did so after the Safavid Shah had sent to Babur as a token of friendship, his sister, Khanzadah Begim, whom Babur had abandoned in Samarqand when he fled the city in 1501. She had been married to and later divorced by Shibam Khan and married by Shibam to an influential sayyid, who had in turn died in the Safavid-Uzbek battle at Merv in which Shibam also died. She was discovered by Ismail in the Uzbek camp following the battle.

By the evidence of later events Babur’s “fealty and submission” included his acceptance of Safavid sovereignty in Mawarannahr and public recognition of Ismail’s Shi’i Muslim faith. Later when the allies succeeded in taking Samarqand Shah Ismail’s name was read in the Friday prayer and his Shi’i formula stamped on coins.¹³⁰ The most irrefutable evidence of the latter concession is an undated

¹²⁹ Ibid., f. 118a.

¹³⁰ In his account of the period the historian Khwandamir, who lived mainly in Harat and wrote for the Safavids until he emigrated to India in 1528, says that Babur agreed to acknowledge Safavid sovereignty in these traditional Islamic ways. *Habib al-siyar*, IV, 524. Timurid-Mughul historians either gloss over or deny this, but numismatic evidence and the eyewitness accounts of Haydar Mirza and Ruzbihan Khunji make Babur’s concession certain. For a useful discussion of this probably needless historiographical controversy see the observation of N. Elias in

coin presumably struck after Samarqand was taken that gives Babur's title merely as Sultan Babur Bahadur and following the *Shahada*, 'All wall Allah, with the names of the twelve imams inscribed around the edge.¹³¹ It is also equally obvious from what Babur writes about his own faith that this can never have been more than a political concession wrung from him by the far more powerful Iranians. Indeed, his actions are not the least surprising in view of the fact that at least three other Timurids minted Shfti coins when it served their political purposes.¹³² Then too whenever Babur speaks about the Shift faith in his memoirs he does so with revulsion and contempt. Thus in the midst of praising the personality of his much admired Timurid cousin Baysunghur Mirza, he remarks that his cousin's teacher "was reported to have been a Shfta" and as a result "Baysunghur Mirza was similarly infected."¹³³ Whether or not Baysunghur Mirza was a Shfta is not the issue here—and Babur is careful to indicate that this was all hearsay. What is significant is the revulsion with which Babur speaks of the Shfti faith, as an "infection" and also as a "wicked belief," that his cousin renounced and became *pak*, pure or orthodox.

Sometime after Saftd Khan left for Ferghanah, Babur and Ways Mirza again marched toward Hisar, where a formidable coalition of Uzbek commanders awaited them.¹³⁴ The forces first confronted each other on the Surkhab or Wakhsh river due east of Hisar at the Pul-i Sangin, the "Stone Bridge" where Babur's ancestor, Timur, had once won a decisive victory.¹³⁵ After facing each other across

the Denison Ross translation of Haydar Mirza's memoirs. TR-R, pp. 246-7 & n. 2.

¹³¹ Stanley Lane-Poole, *The Coins of the Moghul Emperors of Hindustan in the British Museum* (Delhi: Inter-India Publications, repr. 1983), 5. Not surprisingly very few of these coins survive. Some of are overstruck coins of Shah Rukh.

¹³² These Timurids were, Abu SaʿTd, Husayn Bayqara and Abu'l Qasim Babur. See R. E. Darley-Doran, "Timurids," "Numismatics," *EI2* 10, fascs. 171-72, 525.

¹³³ BN-M, f. 68b.

¹³⁴ The history of Hisar, including photographs and plans of the fortress and religious buildings is given the E. Davidovich and A. Mukhtarov, *Stranitsy Istorii Gissara* (Dushambe: "Irfon," 1969).

¹³⁵ The bridge is described by W. Barthold, *Turkistan Down to the Mongol Invasion* 3rd ed. (London: Luzac for E.J. W. Gibb Memorial, 1968), 69. It is located on the map accompanying the Elias and Ross edition of Haydar Mirza's memoirs, due east of Hisar.

the river for a month Uzbek forces swam the river downstream in an apparent flanking maneuver, causing Babur's outnumbered army to march into defensible positions in the mountainous terrain on the left bank of the river. If Haydar Mirza's first-hand account is accurate, and it is the only one known to exist, the battle was fought and won by the left wing, where Ways Mirza had been reinforced by 3,000 of the Mongols who had come from Khurasan. These Mongols had remained behind and joined Babur's coalition when others had gone to Ferghanah.

Some and perhaps most of these latter troops were, Haydar Mirza writes, men who were hereditary retainers of his recently executed father and they may have stayed behind in Qunduz because of these ties rather than Babur's influence. Indeed, it may have occurred to Babur when Haydar Mirza first came as a refugee to Kabul two years earlier that a Dughlat, a highly placed and now fatherless Mongol boy, might ultimately be useful to him. One of these Mongols, Jan Beg Atekeh, was Haydar Mirza's *pedar-i rizai* his foster-father, and as this battle began the troops which Jan Beg Atekeh led seem to have been nominally under Haydar Mirza's command. At least, writes Haydar Mirza, Babur didn't recognize these men, although they were part of his newly-formed coalition. Using a phrase lifted from the florid Persian historical texts he admired, Haydar Mirza describes this encounter saying, "Meanwhile, his [Babur's] auspicious glance fell upon this troop [and] he asked, 'What group are they?'" Learning they were Haydar Mirza's *mulazaman*, his "retainers," Babur told his ten year-old cousin he was too young to go into battle himself. He kept Haydar Mirza beside him and sent the Mongols off to reinforce Ways Mirza.¹³⁶

The fact that Babur didn't even recognize this Mongol contingent is yet another illustration of the evanescent nature of the coalitions that formed, dissolved and reformed in different combinations as Timurids, Mongols and Uzbeks struggled for supremacy or simple survival in the early sixteenth century. Haydar Mirza makes it quite clear that these Mongols owed their primary loyalty to him as one of the few survivors of the Dughlat clan. In all probability they joined Babur only because his young cousin accompanied him. Yet in Haydar Mirza's eyewitness account of the

¹³⁶ TR-T, f. 120a.

battle Jan Beg Atekeh's contingent did the crucial fighting which ensured victory in this battle, just as other Mongols had played a crucial role at Qandahar and were to do in India. He reports that Babur took up position across a narrow track in the hills several miles from the Surkhab river with Ways Mirza commanding the left wing on the other side of deep ravine. Unable to force Babur's position, the Uzbeks sent a force Haydar Mirza estimates at 10,000 men in a flanking attack over a hill to Babur's left where Ways Mirza was positioned.

Jan Beg Atekeh and his Mongol horsemen arrived there just as Ways Mirza was being overrun and forced the Uzbeks back. Fighting then ebbed back and forth on the left wing until evening when Babur's own men, who had not been directly involved in combat, decided to dismount and make camp for the evening in their positions. Haydar Mirza remembers that Hamza Sultan, the senior Uzbek who commanded the center opposite Babur's lines, now decided to retire back to the river to ensure a water supply for his men. Seeing this, the Uzbeks fighting Jan Beg Atakah's Mongols turned to retreat, which in turn precipitated a chaotic melee in the Uzbek center. "By the time of the evening prayer" Hamzah Sultan and two other Uzbek leaders were captured and brought before Babur, and "What Shibam had done to the Mongol *khaqans* and the Chaghatay Sultans [the Timurid Mirzas] Babur now did to them."¹³⁷

The remnants of the Uzbek army were chased up to the "Iron Gate," the narrow defile "a mile long, and at times only a few paces in width" almost due west of Hisar that gave access through the mountains to Shahr-i sabz and the road to Samarqand.¹³⁸ Then Babur and his troops regrouped at Hisar, where they were joined by Iranian reinforcements and other unidentified troops "from all parts of the world."¹³⁹ Nearly sixty thousand men, writes Haydar Mirza, marched to confront the main Uzbek forces in Samarqand and Bukhara.¹⁴⁰

¹³⁷ TR-T f. 120b.

¹³⁸ This "Iron Gate," as distinguished from that near the Caspian Sea is described in 1404 by Clavijo in great detail. *Clavijo, Embassy to Tamerlane*, 204-06 and by the late-Victorian English geologist W. Rickmer Rickmers in his fascinating volume on the geology of the region *The Duab of Turkistan*, 476-77.

¹³⁹ Ibid., f. 120b.

¹⁴⁰ TR-T, f. 120b.

Deciding to bypass strongly defended Samarqand and the nearby fortress of Qarshi, Babur and his Iranian allies opted to attack the more lightly defended Bukhara. In the words of Haydar Mirza who, pouring the ink of metaphor onto the pages of history, writes: they “placed the foot of pursuit into the stirrup of haste” and rode day and night to reach the city.¹⁴¹ It is extremely unlikely that Babur’s newly enlarged army really constituted anything close to 60,000 men, and the later Safavid historian Iskandar Beg Munshi says only that Shah Ismail sent two experienced detachments to join Babur.¹⁴² However, this force was substantial enough to send Bukhara’s Uzbek defenders fleeing west into the “Turkistan” desert, and shortly afterwards those in Samarqand also abandoned that city for the safety of the desert. Babur then gratefully dismissed his Iranian allies turned back to Samarqand.¹⁴³ According to Haydar Mirza, who accompanied him on the march and was apparently with Babur when he re-entered Samarqand itself on 8 October 1511,

The inhabitants of Mawarannahr belonging to the great and the general populace, whether notables and aristocrats or townspeople and peasants, all were ecstatic at the radiant approach of the *padshah*. While the nobility hurried forth to greet [him] other people were busy with the decoration of the city.¹⁴⁴

Perhaps sophisticated Samarqand inhabitants had been offended as Babur had been by Uzbek crudity, such as the offensive behavior and second-rate poetry Shibam Khan had exhibited in Harat. Yet they were soon to be alienated even more profoundly from their Timurid liberator when they discovered Babur had agreed to patronize Shil Islam in exchange for Shah Ismail Safavi’s support. Contemporary and subsequent historical accounts agree that Babur asked for Shah Ismail’s help to retake Mawarannahr, and that after reoccupying Samarqand he had a Shil *khutbah* recited in Shah Ismail’s name.¹⁴⁵ However, it is only Haydar Mirza who provides a detailed and reflective account of these events.

In his first-hand account, although one written about three

¹⁴¹ Ibid., f. 121a.

¹⁴² Iskandar Beg Munshi, *History of Shah "Abbas the Great*, I, 64-65.

¹⁴³ TR-T, f. 121a.

¹⁴⁴ Ibid., f. 121a.

¹⁴⁵ Iskandar Beg Munshi gives brief, a matter-of-fact account of Babur’s agreement with Shah Isma’l. *History of Shah "Abbas the Great*, I, 64-65.

decades later when he ruled Kashmir, Haydar Mirza implies that the people of Samarqand knew before his cousin reached the city that Babur had outwardly compromised his Sunni faith as a condition of Shah Ismail's help. He also explicitly indicates that this was a mere expedient by saying "in time of necessity...[Babur] donned the clothes of the Qizilbash," before he entered the city.¹⁴⁶ Samarqandis knew, that is, he had accepted the Twelver Shi'i Islam of Shah Ismail and his largely Turkic followers who were known as the Qizilbash, literally "redheads," because they wore special turbans that symbolized their faith. In this instance Haydar Mirza may not have been writing in the metaphorical prose style he tried to master; on the march from Hisar Babur may actually have begun wearing the Qizilbash turban to placate his Iranian allies whose troops probably outnumbered his by ten to one.¹⁴⁷ Haydar Mirza says that the Samarqand populace nonetheless expected Babur to renounce "this schism which verged on heresy" the moment he ascended the throne and assumed he would replace his Qizilbash clothes with "the crown of Muhammad's tradition," that is he would reaffirm his Sunni Islamic faith.¹⁴⁸ However, the Samarqandis' expectations were not realized. Babur felt he could not survive without Shah Ismaffi's help and so "procrastinated and dissimulated with the Qizilbash." "For this reason," Haydar Mirza explains, "the intense longing which the people of Mawarannahr had felt for the *padshah* in his absence was shattered."¹⁴⁹

Should Haydar Mirza's account be taken at face value? In a subsequent chapter he pauses briefly to outline his own rules of evidence, saying in essence he will only briefly record hearsay for fear of inaccuracy but will describe—presumably at greater length—those events he witnessed personally.¹⁵⁰ He was an eyewitness to Babur's life from the fall of 1509 to the fall of 1512, and says that Babur kept him constantly at his side. Babur himself mentions only that his young cousin was with him for "three or four years after the Uzbeks killed his father."¹⁵¹ There is no reason to doubt some

¹⁴⁶ Ibid., f. 121a.

¹⁴⁷ Based upon Haydar Mirza's estimate that Babur had a total of around 5,000 troops in Qunduz before he marched on Hisar.

¹⁴⁸ TR-T, f. 121a.

¹⁴⁹ Ibid., f. 121b.

¹⁵⁰ Ibid., f. 124a.

¹⁵¹ BN-M, f. 11a.

of his general statements about Babur's religious affect, which he probably witnessed. However, when it comes to other matters such as troops estimates his opinion or that of any writer must always be viewed skeptically, whatever their age or experience.

It is obvious from Haydar Mirza's account of the Hisar battle that Babur could not have known precisely how many troops he technically had under his command. Babur himself admits that even when he ordered his men to count the troops who crossed the Indus in 1526 he later learned the figure of 12,000 was exaggerated—and that many of those who did cross were not troops but merchants, religious students or camp followers!¹⁵² His statement should be the basis for a general rule of evidence in evaluating troop figures in pre-modern warfare, whether in Central Asia or elsewhere. Unless Babur, Haydar Mirza or any other author says that *tovachi* adjutants, or *bakhshis*, accountants, actually counted the men in a particular army these authors⁵ estimates should be taken with a grain of salt. Larger figures should always be viewed more skeptically. In describing the retreat of his uncle, Said Khan, from Ferghanah to Kashgar in 1514, Haydar Mirza reports that SaʿTd Khan stationed *tovachis* to count his troops as they passed. Haydar Mirza, who was present, reports that the *tovachis* counted 4,700 men and then identifies the leading amirs and clans who comprised the army.¹⁵³ This kind of specific, first-hand information makes his earlier, unsubstantiated estimates of 60,000 Iranian troops seem highly unlikely if not totally absurd.

Apart from notoriously inaccurate troops estimates the question remains whether even the most intelligent and scrupulous observer who is writing thirty years after events he witnessed when he was nine or ten could have retained an accurate picture of what he saw or understood the significance of the events at the time? Lacking a

¹⁵² Describing crossing the Indus in 1526 Babur writes that “*bakhshis* and *diwans*” literally paymasters and accountants, were assigned to “record all the soldiers names.” He reports that they counted 12,000 men. He does not use the term *tovachi*. BN-M, f. 254a. Yet in describing the battle of Panipat itself in f. 264 he says that he had fewer men than previously estimated. He may mean that he had fewer fighting men, for in f. 269b Babur says that there were 12,000 men with him, but these included merchants and servants. Haydar Mirza, who was nowhere near Panipat in 1526, says that Babur won the battle with 10,000 troops. However, given Babur's comments, this figure is probably close to the actual figure of troops Babur commanded in 1526. TR-T, f. 204a.

¹⁵³ TR-T, f. 142b.

comparable contemporary source there is no way to verify Haydar Mirza's recollections; Babur's own memoirs of his early years present a similar problem, as he began active campaigning in his twelfth year. Still, boys became men quickly in the male-dominated Turco-Mongol society of Mawarannahr. An example of the precocity of young boys in early nineteenth century Afghanistan probably serves as a valid analogy for Babur and Haydar Mirza's own upbringing.

Writing of the young sons of the Durrani chief Sultan Muhammad Khan, the acute British observer Alexander Burnes argues that their maturity, which he observed in Peshawar in the winter of 1831, "Was no doubt attributable to their earlier introduction into the society of grown-up people." Burnes describes a system similar to the Timurid appanage institution, which had Babur in his twelfth year, for example, living with his *beg atekkeh* in Andijan, rather than with his father in Akhsi. Burnes says of these young Durrams:

When a boy has arrived at his twelfth year, a separate establishment is maintained here on his account; and, long before that time of life he is prohibited from frequenting his mother's apartments but on certain occasions I expressed some surprise to hear that he [the eldest son] had a house of his own. 'What?' replied the youth, 'Would you have me imbibe the disposition of a woman, when I am the son of a Dooranee?'³¹⁵⁴

Given their traumatic youthful experiences and military adventures it also seems safe to assume that both Haydar Mirza and Babur both encountered and remembered far more of politics and war than protected children from later eras. Then too as is so often the case with childhood memories, their own original recollections of events they experienced may have become indistinguishable from accounts of these same incidents they heard from adults, men such as Haydar Mirza's foster-father, Jan Beg Atekeh, who was still fighting with Haydar Mirza in Tibet in 1533.¹⁵⁵ How many times must Jan Beg and Haydar Mirza together have recounted battles

¹⁵⁴ Burnes, *Travels into Bokhara*, II, 86-87.

¹⁵⁵ TR-T, f. 178a. A recent measured, scholarly account of the problems of recollection is Daniel L. Schacter's, *The Seven Sins of Memory, How the Mind Forgets and Remembers* (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2001).

and campaigns such as the victory at Hisar and the victorious march into Samarqand.

It is often suggested that Babur's decision to profess Shi'i Islam in exchange for crucial Iranian aid was a major factor in his defeat by the Uzbeks in the spring of 1512, and perhaps this contributed to the loss. The news of Shah Isma'il's ferocious persecution and killing of Sunni Muslims as he extended his control over the Iranian plateau between 1501 and 1510 must have been generally known in Mawarannahr. More particularly, his murder of Sunni leaders in Harat who refused to accept Shi'ism in December 1510 or January 1511, had undoubtedly reached Samarqand by this time. The fact that the Iranian Shah attacked the Naqshbandi sufi order with special ferocity must have intensified their revulsion for the intolerant Shi'i monarch. Babur's known discipleship for the dominant Naqshbandi *shaykh* of the late fifteenth century, Khwajah Ahrar, a reverence widely shared by other Timurids, would have made his alliance with Shah Isma'il seem especially improbable and offensive to the many Naqshbandis in Samarqand and throughout Mawarannahr.¹⁵⁶ Given the likely revulsion of Sunni Muslims for Babur's alliance it is quite likely that Babur would have alienated notables, 'ulama and the urban Muslim population at large.

Yet apart from Haydar Mirza's general comments no extant source is known that testifies to the depth and political significance of their reaction. The only other eyewitness who was in Mawarannahr during the Timurid occupation was the Uzbek partisan, Ruzbihan Khunji. Khunji, who was in Samarqand itself when Babur arrived, speaks bitterly enough about the "heretics," and he claims that it was he who convinced Ubaydullah Khan, the Uzbek ruler of Bukhara, to undertake a campaign against Babur.¹⁵⁷ However, even if Samarqand was, like Ruzbihan Khunji himself, seething with discontent, the question remains how social unrest in the city might have contributed to Babur's defeat near Bukhara nearly two hundred miles away. No one has ever shown there was a direct connection, and when Babur returned defeated to the city in the summer it was not closed against him.

¹⁵⁶ Khwajah Ahrar's extensive *waqf* holdings in Samarqand is one measure of the Naqshbandi influence in the city. See O.D. Chekovich, *Samarkandskie Dokumenty* XV-XVI vv.

¹⁵⁷ Ruzbihan Khunji, *Suluk al-muluk*, 54-55.

Following their defeat in Hisar and later flight in the face of the estimated 60,000 Safavid-Timurid army, Uzbek leaders had retreated into the Turkistan steppe as they had done so often in the past when confronted with large, well-equipped forces. However, in the spring the hydra-headed Uzbek coalition re-formed and marched on Tashkent and Bukhara. Babur sent reinforcements to Tashkent and set out for Bukhara to confront what Haydar Mirza calls Ubaydullah Khan's *pur-rikhtih*, his "ragtag" force of approximately 3000 Uzbeks. He characterizes Babur's army as 40,000 well-equipped troops.¹⁵⁸ In this instance especially Haydar Mirza's estimate is probably very inaccurate, for he had fallen ill and remained behind in Samarqand. He does not identify any of the troops involved. Haydar Mirza's figure is questionable for another reason; it is very difficult to believe Babur could have assembled an army of this size if indeed he had dismissed his Iranian allies at Bukhara the previous autumn. Babur had brought about five thousand of his own troops with him from Hisar, and some of these he had already sent to reinforce Tashkent. Others were in Bukhara with Sherim Tagha'i. Some Mongol troops may have joined Babur in Hisar and later in Samarqand during the winter months, but probably not enough to constitute an army of even 10,000.¹⁵⁹

Yet Haydar Mirza's tone of utter bewilderment that Babur lost to Ubaydullah Khan at the battle at Kol-i malik in May/June 1512 indicates that he at least believed the armies were mismatched, information he must have heard from Babur himself, his foster-father Jan Beg Atekeh, or other eyewitnesses to the battle when they retreated back to Samarqand. His implication that Babur at least commanded superior numbers at this battle is indirectly corroborated by an account of the battle by the Safavid historian Hasan-i Rumlu, who attributes Uzbek success to the heroism of twenty men and a subsequent ruse of Ubaydullah Khan that lured Babur's forces into a trap.¹⁶⁰ Haydar Mirza, writing more than

¹⁵⁸ TR-T. f. 126.

¹⁵⁹ Azimdzhanova has an extended discussion of Babur's defeat at Bukhara, utilizing principally Ruzbihan Khunji and Hafiz Tamsh, although as has been seen the latter took his information directly from Haydar Mirza. See *Gosudarstvo Babura v Kabule i v Indii*, 94-97.

¹⁶⁰ Hasan-i Rumlu, *Ahsan al-tawdrikh*, 167-70. Yet, Khwandamir describes the Uzbek force as *bikaran* or "immense." *Habib al-siyar*, III, 525. Could he have been writing to please his new patron, Babur?

thirty years after the battle, still had only one explanation for Babur's defeat, God's arbitrary demonstration of his own omnipotence.¹⁶¹ He doesn't mention other possible factors known from Babur's memoirs, such as the unwieldy nature of Babur's military coalitions and the decade of proven Uzbek military superiority over Timurid and Chaghatay armies. In narrating his loss to ShibanT Khan at Sar-i Pul outside Samarqand in 1501, Babur himself implicitly attributed his defeat to the cohesiveness and mobility of Uzbek cavalry. Unfortunately in the absence of Babur's kind of frank, first-hand account of this particular military disaster at Koli malik in 1512, any evaluation of the battle is sheer speculation.

Returning briefly to Samarqand, Babur "was forced to abandon the throne."¹⁶² Whether religious discontent in the city influenced his decision is impossible to say, but even with strong popular support he would still have been faced with the military reality that had caused him to flee the city eleven years earlier. He was outnumbered by Uzbek forces, who had once again demonstrated their superiority in battle. Babur now turned back to Hisar with the recuperating Haydar Mirza in tow.¹⁶³ He asked again for Shah Ismail's help, and according to Haydar Mirza the Safavid Shah sent him the commander Mir Najm with an estimated 60,000 troops.¹⁶⁴ This figure is both improbably high as well as suspiciously identical to the number Haydar Mirza gives for the Babur's coalition army that marched from Hisar to attack the Uzbeks a year earlier. And Haydar Mirza himself had left Babur to join his uncle in Andijan before the new Iranian troops arrived, so he did not even see the troops much less have an opportunity to count them. Hasan-i Rumlu offers a far more reasonable estimate of 10-12,000 horsemen.¹⁶⁵

Nonetheless this combined force was at least large enough for Babur and his Iranian allies to return west again in the early winter to besiege and occupy Qarshi, the fortress near Samarqand. After taking Qarshi they killed the Uzbek commander, Ubaydullah Khan's maternal uncle, and slaughtered the inhabitants. Haydar

¹⁶¹ TR-T, f. 126.

¹⁶² Ibid., f. 126.

¹⁶³ Ibid., f. 126.

¹⁶⁴ Ibid., f. 126a.

¹⁶⁵ Hasan-i Rumlu, *Ahsan al-tawdrikh*, 170.

Mirza implies the Iranians carried out the massacre, and despite his Timurid-Chaghatay bias he may be reporting accurately, for Hasan-i Rumlu, like Khwandamir before him, describes the *qatl-i* the general killing or massacre of fifteen thousand, entirely as Mir Najm's doing.¹⁶⁶ Interestingly for a Safavid historian he even describes Mir Najm's massacre of Sayyids and their families who had taken refuge in the Friday mosque in Qarshi.¹⁶⁷ Whatever the uncertainty about Babur's role he had no reason to kill people who had earlier welcomed him and whom he still hoped to rule.

Babur and Mir Najm now marched back northwest toward Bukhara to attack the nearby fortress of Ghizhduvan, then held by Jani Beg Sultan. The Uzbeks won a decisive victory, killing Mir Najm and many if not most of his troops. Babur's own role in the battle is not known, but he now fled back to Hisar with the remainder of his forces—and presumably his family as well. Ruzbihan Kunji describes Babur's humiliating defeat with considerable relish, which he memorialized in a commemorative ghazal. In two lines that express his deeply offended Sunni sensibilities Kunji writes with visceral contempt:

آن لشکر پریشان باز از در سمرقند * سوی حصار رفتند
 پوشیده زیر چادر
 اقبال داشت بابر تا بود اهل سنت * چون یار رافضی شد
 ا جلی جز تدابیر *

From Samarqand's gate that pathetic army again * fled to Hisar,
 hidden under a chadar, Babur, fortunate to have been a Sunni *
 Now through calculation become a friend of heresy.¹⁶⁸

¹⁶⁶ Khwandamir gives exactly the same number of dead, but expresses it as "soldiers and peasants" rather than "small and great, young and old." His account is very brief, without the vivid details of Hasan-i Rumlu. *Habib al-siyar*, III, 527.

¹⁶⁷ Ibid., 171-72. According to Hasan-i Rumlu the Sayyids invoked their common 'Alid heritage in their appeals for mercy, but to no avail.

¹⁶⁸ Ruzbihan Khunji, *Suluk al-muluk*, 60. John E. Woods describes Khunji (Isfahan!) 's background, principally religious education and principles of historical writing in his revised edition of Khunji's history of the reign of Sultan Ya'qub Aq Quyunlu in Azerbaijan. See Fadlullah b. Ruzbihan Khunji Isfahan!, *Tar'ikh-i Alam-Ara-yi Amim* Persian Text edited by John E. Woods with the abridged English translation by Vladimir Minorsky, *Persia in A. D. 1478-1490*, 1-11.

Babur arrived in Hisar only to experience a new rebellion of some Mongol *amirs*, including Mir Ayub Begchik. Leaving some of his men in the citadel he then fled south across the Amu Darya to Qunduz, while the Mongols tore Hisar to pieces, plundering everything in sight. Uzbek chiefs reoccupied Hisar the next spring. Haydar Mirza later spoke with Mir Ayub Begchik who regretted his part in this rebellion and the ensuing sack of Hisar.¹⁶⁹ “I heard Mir Ayub Begchik say,” writes Haydar Mirza, “‘When I was subject to the Mongols’ power and witnessed their dealings with the people, I frequently pleaded with God quickly to call down a calamity so that the Muslims would be released.’”¹⁷⁰ Babur might have enjoyed hearing confirmed his own distaste for Mongol indiscipline and treachery, but he could not have taken any other consolation from this ignominious denouement to his Mawarannahr campaign. While he remained in northern Afghanistan for another two years, initially, says Haydar Mirza, “wandering around Qunduz,” he never again crossed the Oxus in force, leaving Samarqand and Mawarannahr to the Uzbeks and the revanchist nostalgia of his descendants in Agra and Delhi.¹⁷¹ By 1514 he returned to Kabul, and Nasir Mirza, in what was an astonishing act of fraternal loyalty for these times, relinquished the city and returned to his appanage in frigid Ghazni.

¹⁶⁹ Haydar Mirza describes this important Mongol clan. TR-T, fs. 144a-b.

¹⁷⁰ TR-T, f. 127a.

¹⁷¹ Ibid., f. 127. His great-grandson Jahangir (1605-1636) expressed just this ambition to reconquer Mawarannahr in his memoirs for 1607. “As I had made up my exalted mind to the conquest of Mawara-n-nahr (Transoxiana), which was the hereditary kingdom of my ancestors, I desired...to go myself...to undertake the conquest of my ancestral dominions.” Alexander Rogers trans. and Henry Beveridge ed., *The Tuzuk-i Jahdngin or Memoirs of Jahangir* (Delhi: Munshiram, repr. 1978), I, 89. Jahangir never began this campaign. His successor, Shah Jahan, made a more serious attempt when he dispatched his sons to Balkh between 1645 and 1648.

CHAPTER FIVE

POETRY AND AUTOBIOGRAPHY

هر وقت كه كوركا سين مينينك سوزومنى
سوزومنى اوتوب ساغينغاسين اوزومنى
*

Each time you read my words,
Reading them, think of me.

Babur in the *Rampur Diwan*,
Agra, 28 December 1528

When Babur visited his Timurid cousins in Harat in December 1506, he stayed for nearly three weeks in the former house of Mir All Shir Naval (b. 1441-d.1501), the outstanding Turki poet of the Timurid century and the writer most responsible for gaining recognition of Turki as a literary language. Surprisingly Babur says nothing in his memoirs about what his residence in NavaTs house meant to him. His silence is so surprising because he revered Nava! as a writer and after politics few things seem to have mattered to him as much as his ambition to become a recognized Turki poet. In 1500, just a year before the great man's death, Babur had sent Naval a Turki couplet written on the back of a letter, probably the act of an aspiring poet hoping to gain recognition from the man who had long been the demanding arbiter of literary reputations in Harat, the literary and artistic capital of the late-Timurid world. Babur fills his memoirs with allusions to his study and composition of poetry, and quotes many of his own verses in the text. He describes how he distributed copies of his verse to his sons and compatriots, presumably seeking literary immortality. The seriousness of his commitment can be measured by his own essay on Turki prosody, which, he implies, was far superior to NavaTs own discussion of Turki meters.

During his lifetime Babur never achieved the literary fame he sought, partly perhaps because he died in India, far from the literate, Turki-speaking populations in Harat and Samarqand. His

poems never seem to have become popular in his homeland. Nor does he claim for himself what he says of one of his young Timurid contemporaries, Baysunghur Mirza, that his poems were so popular they were known throughout Samarqand!¹ Had Babur's verse been so widely read he would not have been shy about saying so. The fact that few copies of his verse have been preserved is probably a reasonable gauge of his lack of public acclaim. Even five hundred years later when Babur's fame as a writer of "classic" Turki is second only to Nava'i's renown, most critics would find his verse quite ordinary when measured against the refined but rigid literary standards of the fifteenth and sixteenth century. Yet while his poems cannot be said to represent great Turk! verse when measured against classical Perso-Islamic norms, they comprise an outstanding autobiographical source, for many reflect his tumultuous life in immediate and discernible ways. Some verses are conventional, stylized and stereotypical, but others can be characterized as existential, where the force of his personality and the trauma of his circumstances break through the literary etiquette of the time to reveal a distinct individual.

Often this individuality is immediately obvious from the poem itself, especially in the many cases where he gives his own name as the *lakhallus*, the author's signature near the conclusion of a poem. Most pre-modern poets used pseudonyms or pen names for the *takhallus* but Babur gives his own. Babur has also provided an autobiographical context for the verse. He not only quotes and dates many of his poems he includes in the text, but occasionally explains what he was thinking when he wrote them. It is also true that in Babur's *diwans* or collections of poetry, his verses are organized chronologically rather than in alphabetical order according to types of rhyme schemes, as is the case with most classical Persian poets.² In poems written in India and collected in December 1528 his personality is dramatically and poignantly manifest even without the prose text. This is a remarkable circumstance for any premodern Muslim poet, most of whose lives are so poorly known the relationship between their life and art will always

¹ BN-M, f. 68b.

² Jan Rypka, "History of Persian Literature," Up to the beginning of the Twentieth Century," in Jan Rypka ed., *History of Iranian Literature* (Dordrecht-Holland: D. Reidel, 1968), 96 and S. Azimdzhanova, *Indiiskil Divan Babura*, 33-34.

remain tantalizingly ambiguous. Babur's verse refutes the idea that "abstract thinking and a generalized matter of vision and of expression brought about a complete severance of medieval Near Eastern poetry from life, from reality,"³ although like most truisms there are many other exceptions.⁴ His poems also offer the rare opportunity for this era, to study the literary evolution of a pre-modern Muslim poet and to feel the artistic tension between the personal and the poetical, between life and art.

The Literary Milieu

In fifteenth-century Mawarannahr Babur's interest in poetry was hardly unique. Many of his Timurid and Chaghatay predecessors and contemporaries ruling in Khurasan and Mawarannahr wrote verse.⁵ In fact he was surrounded by poets. On the basis merely of his own many character sketches of Turco-Mongol aristocrats it is obvious that poetry was the cultural skill that these men valued the most highly, and the one they found most accessible. Their regard for poetry characterized the aristocratic and literate classes throughout the Islamic world, including contemporary Ottomans, whose literary language most closely resembled Turki. What has been said of Ottomans applies with equal force to Babur's compatriots as well.

For them there was no major medium of cultural expression other than literature and by and large the art of literature to them meant the art of poetry. It is all but impossible to convey to present-day audiences in the West how wide-spread, how important, how meaningful poetry, especially lyric poetry, was to Ottoman culture.... Poets and would-be poets abounded at all levels of society. From love to the most profound search for spiritual truth or to impassioned pleas for employment or largesse, all manner of things that touched people

³ Elizbar Javelidze, "On the Typology and Method of Research into Medieval Turkish Poetry," *Journal of Turkish Studies*, 7 (1983), 268. The author uses the term "medieval" to refer to a literary *longue duree*, one that includes the period after the 15th century, during which the "canonical and conventional character" of Turkish literature took shape.

⁴ As one exception see Sunil Sharma, *Persian Poetry at the Indian Frontier, Mas'ud Sa'd Salman of Lahore* (Delhi: Permanent Black, 2000).

⁵ Annemarie Schimmel, "Babur Padishah, The Poet, with an Account of the Poetical Talent in His Family," *Islamic Culture* 34, 2 (April, 1960), 125-38.

deeply were expressed in poetry. People also played with poetry, did tricks with poetry, showed off their talents with poetry, were funny, insulting and naughty in poems.... everyone from ruler to the peasant, from religious scholar to the rake and drunkard, aspired to be a poet.⁶

Some also wrote poems for didactic purposes, because verse could convey complex information in a memorable, that is in a rhymed and cadenced way. Babur chose the poetic form for two of his long religious poems, the *Mubaiyin* and his rendition of Khwajah Ahrar's *Risala-i Validiya*. In both cases he used poetry not for literary effect, but because he thought that his ideas would be easy to recall in verse.

Babur himself, as well as many of his fellow Timurids and companions, also cultivated the other arts that were linked with verse—music, calligraphy and painting, for as has been written about Persian poetry also applies to Turki—and Ottoman Turkish. “It provides the subject matter for the calligrapher, themes to illustrate for the painter, texts to chant and rhythmic patterns for the musicians to build on.”⁷ Even if they didn't write themselves, most Turco-Mongol aristocrats patronized poets—and often musicians, calligraphers and painters—to the degree that modern scholars often characterize the century after Timur's death as the Timurid renaissance.⁸ Babur's cousin Baysunghur Mirza was a typical example of the literate and artistically accomplished Timurids of the late fifteenth-century, a calligrapher, painter and poet. As Babur admiringly describes him he was:

a just, good natured and learned prince.... He was generous in moderation. He wrote the ta'liq script very well. He was also not a bad painter and recited his [own] poetry. His pen name was 'Adill, but he did not compose enough poetry to make a *diwan*..?

⁶ Walter G. Andrews, Najaat Black and Mehmet Kalpaklı ed. and trans, *Ottoman Lyric Poetry* (Austin, Texas: University of Texas Press, 1997), 4.

⁷ Jean During, Zia Mirabdolbaghi and Dariush Savvat, *The Art of Persian Music* (Washington, D.C.: Mage, 1991), 153. See also Julie Scott Meisami, *Medieval Persian Court Poetry* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1987), 241-42 and Annemarie Schimmel, “Hafiz and His Contemporaries,” in CHI, 6, 940-41. For an introduction to classical Persian and Turk! verse, including poems rendered in song, see among other recordings Jean During ed., *Tadjikistan, Chants de bardes, Songs of the Bardes* (Geneva: Archives Internationales De Musique Populaire, 1998).

⁸ Jean-Paul Roux, *Historic Des Grands Moghols, BABUR*, Chap. 2, “La Renaissance timouride.”

⁹ BN-M, f. 68b. 'adili from the Arabic verb, 'adala, to act justly or equitably.

Baysunghur Mirza's verse "was so popular in Samarqand that there were few houses in which you would not find some of his poems!" Whether it was Persian or not Babur doesn't say.

As has been seen, Babur grew up hearing poetry recited at his father's modest court in Akhsi. However, all of the writers whose works Babur remembers hearing in those days were Persian-language poets. This reflected the continued dominance of Persian as the literary lingua franca of Mawarannahr, even in eastern Fergahanah, where the majority of the population undoubtedly spoke Turki, as Babur says they did in Andijan.¹⁰ The dominance of literary Persian in Babur's day is statistically confirmed for Khurasan at least by Nava'i in his 1491-92 survey of 336 poets who lived in the region in his youth in the mid-fifteenth century and later. Ninety percent of these men wrote in Persian, and most of those who did write in Turk!, including Nava'i himself, wrote in both languages.¹¹ Most of these writers imitated or played off on the Persian-language poets whom Babur remembers hearing in Akhsi: Firdausi, Nizami, Rumi, Sa'di, Amir Khusrau and Hafiz. Yet these writers did far more than just imitate Persian literary models. They were so conscious of their Persian literary past that "Tlmurid-Turkmen literati were the first to define what constituted 'classical'⁵ poetry, its themes and archetypes."¹² Jami, the great Persian poet of Husayn Bayqara's Harat, was himself instrumental in this process of classification and codification of Persian writers.¹³

These writers' concern for the classical tradition and their codification of these works produced a literature characterized by formalism and tightly regulated organization.¹⁴ It may have directly contributed to one of the signal characteristics of the Persian verse

¹⁰ In the year 2000 this continued to be true. While Tajiks comprise about 35% of the population of Samarqand and Persian is widely spoken there, in Andijan there are relatively few Tajiks and Persian is rarely heard and poorly understood. Nonetheless, the prestige of classical Persian-language poets—Sa'di, Amir Khusrau, Rumi, Hafiz, Jami and others remains very great. See also Evgeni! Eduardovich Bertel's, "Literatura Na Persidskom Yazike B Sredne! Azii," in *Izbrannye Trudy* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1988), 261-302.

¹¹ Evgeni! Eduardovich Bertel's, *Izbrannye Trudy, Navoi i Dzhami* ed. by E. R. Rustamov (Moskva: "Nauka," 1965), 27.

¹² Paul Losensky, *Welcoming Figham, Imitation and Poetic Individuality in the Safavid-Mughal Ghazal*, 154.

¹³ Ibid. 154, citing In'amul Haqq Kausar, *Fughani's[sic] Life and Works* (Karachi: Pakistan Historical Society, 1963), 107.

¹⁴ Losensky, *Welcoming Fighani*, 164.

produced in Mawarannahr and Khurasan during the second half of the Timurid era, its increasing obscurity, a product of the “growth of technique at the expense of contents.”¹⁵ Naval himself criticized the trend toward excessive adornment in this verse by remarking that poems contained too much “Tatar musk,” remarking “that adornment, as with musk, is good in reasonable limits. However, when all the air consists of musk then a person only suffocates....”¹⁶ Naval, though, contributed to the obscurantism he criticized by indulging his own taste for trick poems, particularly the *muamma* or enigma. The Timurid penchant for riddles, which Babur also wrote, was especially the result of his influence.¹⁷ This form was also popularized, not surprisingly given his taste for convoluted prose, by the historian Sharaf al-Dm Yazdi, the author of the *Zafar namah*, whose prose was admired and copied by Babur’s cousin Haydar Mirza.¹⁸

Turk! verse had been written well before Naval began his literary career. It was especially in the kingdom of Khwarazm, relatively isolated from the major urban centers of Persianate culture, that Turk! received its first major impetus in the fourteenth century.¹⁹ In Khwarazm also Turk! verse was legitimized by adopting Persian metrics and absorbing Persian and Arabic vocabulary. During the fifteenth century the use of Turk! as a literary language was substantially increased by Timurid patronage and the example of at least eight Timurid *mirzas* who wrote verse in their native language.²⁰ The first important Turki poet whose work has survived is known only by his *takhallus* or literary pseudonym, Sakakki, a court poet of both Khalil-Sultan, a grandson of Timur who ruled

¹⁵ Bertels, *Izbrannye Trudy, Navoi i Dzhami*, 45.

¹⁶ *Ibid.*, 36.

¹⁷ Losensky, *Welcoming Fighani*, 156.

¹⁸ Bertels, *Izbrannye Trudy, Navoi i Dzhami*, 42. See also Losensky, *Welcoming Fighanz*, 154-58.

¹⁹ The very earliest extended examples of Turk! verse are the two twelfth-century Turk! works the *Qutadgu Bilig*, written in 1069 in Kashgar, and the *Diwan lugat al-Turk* written in the 1070’s by a native of the Lake Issiq-Kol region, just north of Ferghanah. The poetics of the latter work are discussed by I. V. Stebleva, *Razvitie Tyurskikh Poeticheskikh Form v XI Beke* (Moskva: “Nauka,” 1971). Apart from these works, for an early Turk! quatrain known in India see the undated example cited by the late Ghaznavid/Ghurid-era writer Fakhr al-Dm Mubarakshah Marwar-rudT in his 1206 a. d. work completed in Lahore, *Ta’rikh-i Fakhr al-Din Mubarakshah*, 46.

²⁰ Bertels, *Izbrannye Trudy, Navoi i Dzhami*, 46.

briefly in Samarqand after Timur's death in 1404, as well as his successor in Samarqand, Ulugh Beg. A disciple of the Naqshbandi sufi order, to which so many Timurid mirzas were themselves devoted, Sakakki wrote *qasidahs* eulogizing both his Timurid patrons and Naqshbandi pirs, and lyrical *ghazals* modeled on the poems of Hafiz.²¹ In his survey of Timurid poets Nava'i remarks that while Sakakki was not alive in 1491-92, his poems were still highly valued in Samarqand, where Babur might have heard or read them in 1498, 1500 or 1511.

Nava'i also remarked in his typically condescending way that he himself thought Sakakki's poems undistinguished, although it is impossible to say whether this was primarily a literary judgement or a reflection of the intense competition for cultural predominance between Harat and Samarqand.²² Nava'i was far more generous with the Harat poet Lutfi, a contemporary of his who lived in the suburbs of the city in the second half of the fifteenth century. A poet in both Persian and Turki, Lutfi began the process that Nava'i completed. As Nava'i himself recognized, Lutfi more than anyone else before him raised Turki to a new literary status by writing beautiful poems in that language.²³ Unlike the highly placed Nava'i, a boon companion of Sultan Husayn Bayqara, Lutfi led a quiet, "saintly" life of a man imbued with sufi ideals, although he could be egotistical and aggressive in his poetry. He sometimes challenged the primacy of certain Persian poets, although not explicitly because they wrote in Persian. While famous during his life for his own Persian verse, he was also widely known for his Turki poems, and only these have survived in several manuscripts, one measure of their popularity. He wrote lyrical verse, that is *ghazals*, almost exclusively, depicting love in all of its manifestations.²⁴ His model was Hafiz, the model for nearly all Persian and Turki lyric poets of the time. Lutfi intentionally sought to reproduce in Turki Hafiz's "simplicity and naturalness."²⁵ He also excelled in composing the uniquely Turki verse form known as the *tuyuq*, a n/ JT-like poem derived from Turkic folklore. However, unlike the *rubai* the *tuyuq* could be written in different meters and, more importantly, the

²¹ Ibid., 47-48.

²² Bertels briefly describes this competition. Ibid., 49.

²³ Ibid., 58.

²⁴ Ibid., 56.

²⁵ Ibid., 53.

form was distinguished by its use of homonyms, words with identical pronunciation having different meanings. Often this effect was achieved by mixing Persian and Turk! words, as in the case of the word *bar* meaning “is” or “have” in Turk!, and “time” or “load,” among many variant meanings in Persian.

It is impossible to say how much Babur knew of the work of Lutfi or earlier Turk! poets, but such writers were part of a growing Turk! literary tradition that in his eyes as well as in the view of modern critics, found its finest practitioner in Nava!. Thus Babur, who rarely praises other poets unreservedly, writes of Mir 'All Shir Nava! that “‘Ali Shir Beg had no equal. Since poetry has been written in the Turki tongue there was no one so prolific or so good.”²⁶ He goes on to describe and critique NavaTs voluminous output and to praise his renowned artistic patronage and charitable activities. However, it was NavaTs poetry that meant the most to him, and he mentions that in December 1519 he completed copying a selection he had made of his *ghazallar and abyat* (lar) or “odes and couplets.”²⁷ Yet, while also extolling Mir 'All Shir as an extraordinary patron Babur cannot help but remark that his Persian poetry was insipid and his treatise on prosody, the *Mizdn al-Auzdn*, the “Measure of Measures,” was intellectually worthless.²⁸ Here is another case of Babur “telling the truth,” and in this case probably acting more responsibly as a literary critic than many professional literary historians of the time, who do not always offer such balanced appraisals of famous men.

Apart from his knowledge of NavaTs voluminous output, Babur may also have been encouraged to write by the example of Sultan Husayn Bayqara, NavaTs longtime companion, supporter and champion of the use of Turk! in Harat. As has been seen, Babur repeatedly measures himself against Timurids or other Muslim rulers, and more than anyone else Sultan Husayn Bayqara repre-

²⁶ BN-M, f. 170b. For a Soviet-era Uzbek appreciation of Nava! that stresses the poet's social awareness see A. Kh. KhaTmetov and Z. S. Kedrina, *Istoriya Uzbekskoi Literatury* (Tashkent: “Fan”, 1987), I. The standard, contemporary Persian-language account is by the Harat historian Khwandamir who had been patronized by the poet. See T. Gandjei ed., *The Makarim al-Akhlaq, A Treatise on 'Alishir Nava'T* by Ghiyath ad-Din b. Humam ad-Dm Muhammad “Khvandamir (Cambridge: E. J. W. Gibb Memorial, 1979).

²⁷ BN-M, f. 248b.

²⁸ BN-M, f. 171a. The term Babur uses for Mir 'All's prosody is *madkhul*.

sented his standard of a great Timurid monarch. Babur may not have begun writing poetry because of the great man's example—like most Timurids he had matured in an environment where ambitious Turco-Mongol aristocrats were expected to be able to compose verse. Nonetheless, just as he explicitly and favorably compares his military achievements to those of his relative, Babur implicitly flatters his own literary talents when he damns Husayn Bayqara with faint praise by saying "He had a poetic temperament. He compiled a *diwan*. He wrote in Turk!.. ..Some of his verses are not bad, but the Mirza's *diwan* is all in the same meter."²⁹ As one who wrote a treatise on prosody and is careful to identify the meters used by other poets he discusses, Babur is suggesting that one who wrote in only one meter cannot really be thought to be an outstanding poet.³⁰

The Poetic Art

Babur is known to have written nearly six hundred poems. Some of these are appear in his memoirs, most do not. Nearly all are in Turki, only a few are in Persian and one at least is in Urdu, the north Indian patois, mixing Hindi grammar and largely Persian vocabulary. More than four hundred of these verses are *ghazals* or lyrics and *rubaiyat*, quatrains of the type made famous by Edward Fitzgerald's rendering of 'Umar Khayyam's *Rubaiyat*?¹ The remainder are principally of three types: *qitdh* or "fragments," *tuyuq*, quatrains with homonyms and *muamma*, enigmas or puzzles and a

²⁹ BN-M, f. 164b.

³⁰ Two Turkic-speaking rulers of Iran whose poetry have been preserved are described by Vladimir Minorsky. See his articles "Jihan-Shah Qara-Qpyunlu and His Poetry," and "The Poetry of Shah Isma'Il I" in *Medieval Iran and its Neighbours*, 271-97 and 1006a-1053a. Both wrote in what Minorsky identifies as a "Southern Turkish" dialect directly associated with the so-called "Azerbaijani Turkish." Shah Isma'Il I, the founder in 1501 of the Safavid dynasty, wrote poetry that was distinctly influenced by Turk!, that is Chaghatay. See also the Turk! verse of Akbar's tutor, Bayram Khan. S. Hussamuddin Rashdi and Muhammad Sabir, *Diwan of Bayram Khan* Introduction by Mahmudul Hasan Siddiqi (Karachi: Institute of Central and West Asian Studies, 1971).

³¹ For an analysis of the development of this verse form see A. K. Kozmoyan, *Rubai v Klassicheskoi Poezii na Farsi (X-XII vv)* (Erevan, Armenia: Izdaefstvo AN ArmyanskoT SSR, 1981).

number of unfinished verses of various kinds. He also wrote one *masnavi*, a longer poem of rhyming couplets usually used for narratives or histories. Babur is one of the few poets of the Timurid era to have written almost exclusively in Turki. It seems clear that he felt most comfortable in his native tongue, perhaps because of his upbringing in remote Andijan, where Persian was less commonly spoken than in Samarqand, Bukhara and especially Harat.

Nonetheless, he apparently began his literary career by writing in Persian, as would have been very natural for a young man who had repeatedly heard Persian verse while growing up. As Naval writes in his Turki essay, *Muhdkamat al-Lughatain* (The Judgment of Two Languages) when arguing for Turki as a literary language, Persian provided the imagery and poetic vocabulary which Turki writers had just begun to develop and popularize. He could have been alluding to Babur when he says that "Ignorant and affected youths have tried to compose facile poems with Persian words."³² Even the *begs* of Sultan Husayn Bayqara, Naval laments, "have clung to Persian," because "it is most difficult to combine properly its [the Turki language's] wider range of expressions, its uniqueness of meanings and its clarity of style."³³ It was not merely that Persian offered poets a canonical system of prosody and a wealth of vocabulary, metaphors and stock images. The language retained its enormous prestige as a cultural vehicle for both pithy and profound thoughts. Thus even while Babur wrote his memoirs and most of his verse in Turki in the *Vaqaf*, he still quotes from Sa'di, Hafiz and the other classical Persian-language poets when he needs an irrefutable aphorism. He never once quotes Naval!

Babur first mentions writing poetry when he describes his infatuation for the boy Baburi in the Andijan bazar in the spring of 1500. He remarks that at this time he was composing one and two-line Persian verses and then quotes one of them.

هیچک¹¹ چون من ج J-JILc, J uJ-A jL_g lJ-txij

هیچ محبوبی جو تو بیرحم و بی پروا مباد
*

³² Nava'i, *Muhakamat al-Lughatain*, 24. See also Bertel's, *Izbrannye Trudy, Navoi i Dzhami*, 44.

³³ Nava'i, *Muhakamat al-Lughatain*, 44-5.

May no person be as ravaged, lovesick and humiliated as I.

May no beloved be as pitiless and unconcerned, as thou.³⁴

If this poem had been found in *diwan* of most poets, it would be taken as nothing more than a mediocre bit of Persian verse that repeated the stylized literary sentiment found in thousands of Persian poems, one which had no discernible—or likely—relation to the poet's life. If it was only known from such a collection it would probably also be impossible to date, as it would usually be placed in the *diwan* according to the last letter of the rhyme and then by the first letter of each poem. That is Perso-Islamic and Turki verses were normally organized according to poetic criteria rather than chronological and autobiographical ones. Yet, in Babur's case readers can identify this couplet for what it is, a juvenile production of an inexperienced poet, one who is expressing his actual feelings by using generic Persian poetic vocabulary depicting distant, unresolved infatuations.

Unresolved infatuations are the real or ostensible subject of the majority of Babur's *ghazals* and *rubaiyat*, and it is impossible to interpret his poems without understanding the literary conventions of these verse forms. The *ghazal* was the most widely practiced genre among Muslim poets who wrote in Persian, Ottoman Turkish or Turk! during Babur's lifetime. He himself wrote at least 119 *ghazals* of varying length. In Iran, the Ottoman Empire and Ma-warannahr the mastery of the *ghazal* was usually equated with the poetic art in this period. Poets, who were usually but not exclusively men, were often evaluated solely by the quality of their *ghazals*?³⁵ A poem of four to fourteen distichs or couplets, written in a variety of meters with a rhyme scheme of aa, ba, ca etc., the *ghazal* is in outward form at least, a love plaint, "addressed to the absent or indifferent beloved."³⁶ The form represented an Islamic variant of the literary phenomenon of aristocratic or courtly love. Most *ghazals* revel in the pathos of unrequited or interrupted love in a decorous, highly stylized idiom recounting: the poet's infatuation

³⁴ BN-M, f. 75b.

³⁵ Kemal Silay, *Nedim and the Poetics of the Ottoman Court* (Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1994), 52.

³⁶ Julie Scott Meisami, *Medieval Persian Court Poetry* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1987), 255. See especially her Chapter 6, "Ghazal: The Ideals of Love."

and sometimes his brief meeting with his beloved, who more often than not displays cruel indifference, his agonized separation from the object of his desire, and his inevitable, fatalistic resignation. Most writers of *ghazals*, and sometimes *rubaiyat*, also include a *takhallus*, their pen name, in the *maqtd*, the poem's final couplet.³⁷

Babur often used *rubaiyat* to express the same sentiments as the *ghazal*. A quatrain or four-line poem written in one meter with the rhyme scheme aaba, the *rubai* is regarded as a quintessentially Iranian verse form, although it may have had a Turkic-Central Asian origin, like its close cousin the *tuyuq*, the quatrain of homonyms.³⁸ Whether it originated in Central Asia—or even in China—it gained its enormous popularity in northeastern Iran by the time "Umar Khayyam was born there, in Nishapur, in the mid-eleventh century. An epigrammatic form resembling the Japanese fourteen syllable haiku poem in form if not usually in content, the *rubai* allowed writers to express a single feeling or idea in a pithy way, sometimes rendering an idea almost as a proverb. By the thirteenth century it had become one of the most popular verse forms in Iran.³⁹ Babur often wrote *rubaiyat* to express stylized love themes, but as will be seen he, like his Iranian predecessors, exploited the form to express a wide variety of personal sentiments as well.⁴⁰ He wrote slightly more than 200 *rubaiyat*, more than any other verse form, perhaps because the succinct quatrain was an ideal form for a harried Timurid who rarely enjoyed the sustained leisure to write many longer verses. Babur's grandson, Akbar, epigrammatically recognized the relatively lighter quality of the *rubai* compared to the *ghazal* when he observed: "One should write out a *rubai* of "Umar Khayyam, after reading a *ghazal* of Hafiz, otherwise the latter is like drinking wine without a relish."⁴¹

³⁷ Wheeler M. Thackston offers an excellent, concise introduction to the literary and technical characteristics of Persian verse in his book, *A Millennium of Classical Persian Poetry* (Bethesda, Md.: Iranbooks, 1994), ix-xxvi.

³⁸ Peter Avery trans and ed. and John Heath-Stubbs trans., *The Rubaiyat of Omar Khayyam* (London and N.Y.: Penguin Books, repr. 1981), 11-12. Avery himself does not suggest a connection between the *rubd'i* and the *tuyuq*.

³⁹ *Ibid.*, 11.

⁴⁰ See for example Sharma's discussion of the similar "personal" use of the *rubfi* by the Ghaznavid poet Salman, *Persian Poetry at the Indian Frontier*, 80 & n. 22.

⁴¹ AA, 111, 441. The English translation uses quatrain and ode respectively for *rubcii* and *ghazal*.

It is still debated whether or not *ghazals* and *rubaiyat* were originally addressed to men or women, a nearly unresolvable problem as Persian and Turki pronouns do not express gender. However, in Persian literature at least, “Long narrative poems... that deal with erotic subjects... tell almost exclusively heterosexual stories [while]... short and medium length poems are on the other hand often overtly, or at least implicitly, homosexual....”⁴² Babur in discussing the *ghazals* of the Harat poet with the pen-name *Ilildid*, remarks that this man had also written a offensive *masnavi* called the “Shah and the Dervish,” in which the dervish or sufi is the lover and the beloved, the king, is “like a courtesan and a whore.”⁴³ In criticizing this poem further Babur implies that Hilali broke with the tradition of earlier poets who composed *masnavi* that portrayed the lover as a man and the beloved as a woman.⁴⁴ Whether Babur means to imply that this was also true of *ghazals* is not clear, although in one of his own *ghazals* Babur compares his beloved to Layla, the beautiful maiden of Amir Khusrau or Jami’s poem, while he depicts himself as Layla’s male lover Majnun.⁴⁵ It is now generally accepted that by the fifteenth century poets addressed their poems to men as often as not. Haydar Mirza quotes several occasional *rubaiyats* and fragments his uncle, Said Khan, addressed to a young Begchik, Beg Muhammad, during his stay with Babur in Kabul, in which he used the standard romantic imagery—cyprus-like, rosy-cheeked, peri (fairy)-like.⁴⁶

Yet, it is almost certainly a mistake to assume anything from a poem about an author’s heterosexual or homoerotic orientation. In part this is because poetry that on the surface seems to be addressed to a beloved, might just be using romantic imagery to greet a friend or relative. Like other poets Babur does not usually make clear the sex of the beloved, although he himself repeatedly expresses his intense distaste for the Turco-Mongol aristocrats who he knew procured young boys for sexual pleasure. However, his contempt for that practice did not mean that he turned away from

⁴² Dick Davis, *Borrowed Ware Medieval Persian Epigrams* (Washington D.C.: Mage, 1997), 21-22, where Davis further remarks, that “Many poets seem to celebrate liaisons with both sexes with equal enthusiasm....”

⁴³ BN-M, f. 181b.

⁴⁴ Ibid., f. 181b.

⁴⁵ Stebleva, no. 31, p. 239 and Yucel, no. 34, p. 138.

⁴⁶ TR-T, fs. 111a-b.

the pleasure of male friendship, ties so fundamental in his male-dominated and highly segregated social world. He may have seen his self-described infatuation with the boy Baburi in this light, and later he does address a *ghazal* to his Timurid cousin, Ways Mirza or Mirza Khan, that seems to express similar emotions.⁴⁷ Or perhaps in the case of Baburi it was a case of life imitating art, something not unheard of among impressionable young men.

The ambiguity as to the actual or intended identity of the beloved—or even the lover—is inherent in many aristocratic literary traditions depicting courtly love, including the *ghazal*. Simply put such poetry was not usually autobiographical. What has been written about sexual references in Japanese court poetry in the Heian period probably also applies to the *ghazal*.

As courtly love became increasingly codified, it grew fixed in forms that did not always reflect current relations between the sexes. It became, in short, a fiction like our [European] courtly love.... In composing love poems for such a conventional code, men might write poems whose speakers were women, and women poems whose speakers were men.⁴⁸

The obvious difference between these two traditions is the prevalence of women authors in Heian Japan. The number of female poets who are known to have written such lyrics in Persian is quite small, although three Timurid-Mughul princesses are known to have done so.⁴⁹

Complicating this picture was the use of the *ghazal* by Iranian poets to include mystical religious and even panegyric expression. This development reached its apogee in the *ghazals* of the great fourteenth-century Iranian, Persian-language poet, Hafiz.⁵⁰ In his hands and many others the passion of lovers becomes the yearning of sufis for the mystical union with god and especially with Hafiz, love or praise in the *qasidah* tradition for the patron. Given the allegorical nature of much Persian verse and the widespread use of sufi imagery, a particular poem might seem to evoke profane love

⁴⁷ Stebleva, no. 102, p. 310 and Yucel no. 105, pp. 179-80.

⁴⁸ Robert H. Brower and Earl Miner, *Japanese Court Poetry* (Stanford: Stanford University Press, 1961), 431.

⁴⁹ Ahmad Gulchm-i Ma'am, *Karvan-i Hind* (Tehran: Intisharat-i Astan-i Quds-i Razavi, 1369/1990), 411. Dick Davis also gives an example of one, Jahan Khatun. See Davis' work, *Borrowed Ware, Medieval Persian Epigrams*, 189.

⁵⁰ Meisami, *Medieval Persian Court Poetry*, 278-98.

or elaborations of earthly delights, while the lover might actually be a sufi and the beloved, with his/her long, disheveled tresses, god. Wine consumed by this spiritual lover connoted spiritual intoxication. Utilizing these metaphors a court poet might also write a paeon to his patron, who then assumed the role of beloved, with the powers to grant or withhold favors from the author.

As authors of Persian, Ottoman and Turk! *ghazals* often employed the same imagery, whatever their own profession or religious inclination, it is usually difficult or simply impossible to distill purely personal, religious or political sentiments from the metaphors of a particular poem. Babur himself was a disciple of the Naqshbandi sufi order, but was not noticeably a pious or abstinent sufi in his everyday life. He may have intended some of the verses he wrote in India to convey feelings of sufi devotionism, especially those he wrote in 1528 and 1529 when he repeatedly fell sick and began to sense his mortality, but the spirit of most his earlier *ghazals* and *rubaiyat* also seems closer to that of the *rind*⁵¹. A poet, lover and drinker, the *rind* was one almost ritually devoted to transitory pleasures. Similar in certain compelling respects to the Heian Japanese ideals of *irogonomi* and *suki*, the *rind* was frequently depicted in verses that echoed the skeptical, resigned quality of Khayyam's famous *rubaiyat*.⁵² One such verse exploits the common use of moon as a metaphor for the beloved, and then plays off on that word twice more.

Since no one can Tomorrow guarantee.
Enjoy the moment, let your heart be free.
Ah, drink my moon, in moonlight, for the moon
Will make its rounds but won't find you and me.⁵³

This is not to suggest that Babur modeled his behavior on the *rind*, only that the *rind* is the reminiscent of Islamized but otherwise hard-drinking, socially uninhibited Chingizid and Timurid aristocrats—and often of the ruling class in Iran as well.

⁵¹ Michael C. Hillman, "Afterward," in *Hafez, Dance of Life*, ed. by M. and N. Batmangli (Washington, D.C.: Mage, 1988), 97.

⁵² Rajyashree Pandey, "Love, Poetry and Renunciation: Changing Configurations of the Ideal of Suki," *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* 3rd Ser., 5.2 July 1995), 226-27.

⁵³ Ahmad Saidi ed. and trans., *Rubaiyat of Omar Khayyam* (Berkeley: Asian Humanities Press, 1991), 66. Saidi is one of the few modern translators to maintain the *rubfi*'s rhyme scheme.

To read Babur's *ghazals* and *rubaiyat* it is important to understand that poets composed these poems after mastering the metrical and metaphorical language of their predecessors. For Babur and other writers in the Perso-Islamic cultural sphere of the eastern Islamic world, the most important literary models were, apart from Hafiz (1326-80): Nizami (1140-c.1202), Sa'di (1184-C.1292), Rumi (1207-40), the Indo-Persian poet Amir Khusrau (1253-1325) and Mir 'Alī Shir Nava'i's friend, the poet and Naqshbandi sufi, Jami (1414-92). After studying and memorizing thousands of these writers' verses poets employed stereotypical imagery to depict idealized infatuations and generic disappointments. They exhibited creativity by devising new variants on traditional models and themes. Despite the evocative beauty and resonant emotional language of many *ghazals*, their authors, especially professional court poets, did not normally write such verse to draw attention to a subjective experience fixed in an emotional moment. Instead, poets usually depicted literary emotions and situations quite unrelated to the experiential world. Perhaps it is fitting that as this verse became more formulaic and abstracted the beloved became more ambiguous and probably irrelevant, often a man and sometimes still a woman.⁵⁴ Referring to this abstracted quality of the Turkic verse derived from classical Persian models, the Georgian Turcologist Elizbar Javelidze has categorically stated that:

Near Eastern mediaeval literature gives no example of a concrete man with his individual psyche and his unique psychological level; it does not render his personal feelings, his joys and sorrows. It makes an abstraction of the individual.⁵⁵

Even if this assessment is too extreme, most modern literary scholars share Javelidze's general outlook. Many also argue that the device of the *takhallus*, the seemingly autobiographical reference in the final couplet, ought to be interpreted as a literary device rather than as a personal allusion, although there is substantial evidence of the *takhallus* being used in self-referential ways.⁵⁶

Such poems find one of their most compelling analogies in the

⁵⁴ Meisami, *Persian Court Poetry*, 245-6.

⁵⁵ Javelidze, "On the Typology and Method of Research into Medieval Turkish Poetry," 268.

⁵⁶ See Sharma's discussion of Mas'ud Sa'd Salman's use of this device. *Persian Poetry at the Indian Frontier*, 102-06.

literary precursors and characteristics of Shakespeare's sonnets—even to the homoerotic or androgynous qualities of many of his first 126 poems. The sonnets have repeatedly taxed the ingenuity of scholars, who have in turn strained the credulity of readers in searching for autobiographical clues to a poorly documented life amid the memorable language of the poems. In a similar way many students of Hafiz have exerted exceptional but largely unproductive efforts to detect personal references in his *ghazals*. A recent critic's remarks about the sonnets as sources for Shakespeare's life would be accepted by most scholars as equally applicable to the lyric poems of Hafiz or to those of most classical Persian, Ottoman and Turk! poets.

Biographical reading, as we understand it now, has so little purchase on these poems that criticism directed along such lines soon finds itself spinning off the text into vacuous literary chit-chat.⁵⁷

The analogy is neither casual nor the similarity accidental, for as the *ghazal* is commonly thought to be rooted in the *nasib*, the opening couplet of the *qasidalg* "for most renaissance writers poetry was rooted in panegyric."⁵⁸ Even more particularly the authors of Elizabethan sonnets often explicitly derived their poems from the example of Petrarch's, *Rime Sparse*. Petrarch's fourteenth-century sequence, focused on the mystical Laura, had much the same defining influence on sixteenth century English sonneteers as did Hafiz's *ghazals* on the Persian and Turkic lyric poets of the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. Just as it is more reasonable to interpret Petrarch's Laura and Shakespeare's "dark lady" as literary rather than autobiographical personalities, the same is true of the beloved in the *ghazals* of Hafiz. Many of Babur's lyric poems may also be fairly interpreted as literary exercises. Unlike Shakespeare and Hafiz, though, Babur was not a professional writer nor was his life undocumented. Not only does he discuss his own poetry and locate some verses in his prose narrative, but he always uses his own name, not a pen name, in the *takhallus*.⁵⁹

⁵⁷ John Kerrigan ed., *William Shakespeare: The Sonnets and A Lover's Complaint* (Penguin: London, 1986), 11.

⁵⁸ Ibid., 18 and Thomas P. Roche Jr., *Petrarch and the English Sonnet Sequence* (New York, N.Y.: AMS Press, 1989), chap. 1.

⁵⁹ A similar case of a man who wrote openly autobiographical verse is that of the seventeenth century Pushtun tribal leader and poet Khushal Khan Khattak.

The Literary Apprentice: The Turan Period

After describing his brief infatuation in Andijan in the spring of 1500, a period when Babur says he says he was composing short poems in Persian, he never again alludes to writing Persian verse, although he occasionally quotes Persian poems he did write. His subsequent preoccupation with Turk! reinforces the impression that Babur initially wrote in Persian because, like so many other Turks, he had heard so much Persian poetry recited he could cobble together pre-packaged images at least sufficient for generic Persian love couplets. Otherwise growing up in a largely Turki-speaking environment he may not have felt comfortable in Persian. At least that is partly suggested when he discusses writing poetry during his second occupation of Samarqand during the late autumn and spring of 1500-1501. It was then that Babur received a letter from *Nava'i* and replied to him, copying a one line, that is two-stanza Turk! verse on the back of the message.

With this allusion to his contact with the great man Babur begins what eventually amounts to an essay on poets and poetry made up of scattered but repeated references to the poetic art that interrupt his political narrative. His interest in verse is marked by the passion he brings to literary criticism and the publicity he gives to his own efforts to master poetic composition. Kings are, as Ibn Buluggm remarked, "wont" to write poetry in their "pastimes," but Babur was far more ambitious, both in his desire to master verse composition as also in his intent to advertise his literary skills. In this particular instance, after mentioning his exchange of letters with Nava!, Babur digresses at length about poets and poetry. In particular, he says that the Harat poet and musician Banna! was in Samarqand during this period, having left Harat after insulting Nava! in an exchange of witticisms.

As Babur describes the incident in Turki, before shifting to Persian to quote Nava! and Banna!, once at a chess party Nava! stretched out his leg and touched Banna!'s behind, then said jestingly [in Persian], "What a great nuisance it is. In Harat when you extend your leg you hit the ass of a poet." Banna! then replied [in Persian], "If you tuck in [your leg] you will also meet the ass

See D. N. Mackenzie ed. and trans., *Poems from the Divan of Khushal Khan Khattak* (London: George Allen and Unwin, 1965).

of a poet.” The exchange in which *kun*, “backside” or “ass” is probably meant to evoke both the animal and the word’s metaphorical meaning of a “fool,” reflected the intense competition for literary precedence in Harat that supposedly and perhaps actually led Banna’i to leave Harat for greener literary pastures in Mawarannahr.⁶⁰ Babur says Banna’i had left the city once before because of NavaTs shabby treatment of him. According to Babur, Banna’i fired off a verbal parting shot on his way out of Harat on this occasion. He had a new saddle-blanket made for his donkey and by calling it an “All Shin,” and riding out of town sitting on the blanket, thereby put NavaTs ass in its place and trumped the earlier exchange he had with him in the *majlis*.⁶¹

Banna’i then traveled to Samarqand to serve Shibam Khan, who in 1500 had just seized the city from Babur’s young cousin, Sultan ‘All Mirza. The poet thus found himself in the city when Babur took it by surprise attack a short time later. After first exiling him to nearby Shahr-i sabz, Babur allowed the Banna’i to return to Samarqand because he was an “educated” man. He remained there to seek patronage from Babur and wrote a four line poem, which Babur calls a *rubai* but one perhaps better labeled as a *du-bayti*, simply a two-line or four-stanza poem, in which the final words of all four lines rhyme. After declaring in the first two stanzas that he had neither food nor money, Banna’i asked in the final two stanzas how such an impoverished person could dedicate himself to *‘ilm u hunar*, knowledge and art. Babur then replied with a Turk! rather than a Persian *rubai* that BannaTs wish would be granted; he would receive both an *in dm* and a *vazifah*, rent-free land and a pension.

His use of Turk! here may indicate he felt more comfortable spontaneously composing verse in his native language rather than in Persian. Banna’i himself replied in Turki praising Babur as the future *shah* of land and sea, and using Babur’s rhyme while introducing a secondary rhyme as well. Perhaps Banna’i should have stuck to Persian, as Babur indicates his secondary rhyme scheme was faulty, his first criticism of a well-known poet in his memoirs. To make his point about BannaTs error Babur recalls that another

⁶⁰ Thus the common phrase “*kun-i khar*,” literally the “ass of an ass” or “*kun-khan*” “folly.”

⁶¹ BN-M, fs. 180a-b.

poet who had come from Shahr-i sabz to Samarqand at this time, criticized Banna's rhyme and composed another Turk! quatrain as an improvement.⁶² Later in the text when he surveys Harat poets, Babur damns Banna'i with faint praise, perhaps remembering all the while that the poet had returned to Harat in 1507 to be installed as the new arbiter of the city's literati by Babur's arch enemy, Shibam Khan.⁶³

In commenting on his reply to Banna'i, Babur remarks that in this *fursat*, this leisurely interval—implicitly alluding again to his cycles of fortune, *fatrat* and *fursat*—he himself wrote poems of one or two lines, two or four stanzas. Apart from the *rubai* he wrote to Banna'i, he doesn't quote any of these verses and the reply to Banna'i is also not included in Babur's *diwan*, his collection of poems. His two-line poems may possibly be represented in his collected works by one of the more than seventy-five *matla'iyyat*, that is the opening lines of unfinished verses.⁶⁴ He also mentions that up to this time he had not yet written a *ghazal*, and he did not complete one until two years later. One of the *rubai* he may have written during this interregnum is the listed first among his other quatrains. This is made likely not only by the general chronological ordering of his poems, but by the relative simplicity of this verse, which otherwise possesses in abbreviated form many of the themes or motifs of the stereotypical lyric: love, union, separation and discontent. Here is a poem which is probably autobiographical only in the sense that it represents a poet's early work.

ای کل نی اوچون قاتینکدا مین خوار اولدوم

ajda j c j-j
L <Lu

و سیویندیم اول

هجرینگ بيله عاقبت گرفتار اولدوم

*

O rose, why did I become abject in your presence?
With a hundred troubles and afflictions I became a lover.

⁶² BN-M, f. 87a.

⁶³ BN-M, f. 206a. See especially the obscene joke that Babur repeats about Banna'i after Shibam appointed him to supervise the educated men of Harat.

⁶⁴ Yucel, 288-301. Yucel gives seventy-eight of these. He also lists a number of unfinished *ghazals*.

With our union I first fell deeply in love.
Separated from you I became a captive.⁶⁵

Babur's subsequent literary education proceeded in fits and starts, or in his terms: *fatratlar* and *fursatlar*. Between the late fall of 1501 and June of 1502 he had little time for sustained writing or study of poetry as he and his few supporters were little more than refugees. During the winter of 1501-02 and the following spring they moved about the hill country east-northeast of Samarqand, while Uzbek troops rode out from Samarqand to raid towns in the region. Nonetheless, even while taking refuge in a small village to avoid Uzbek horsemen, Babur was apparently inspired by the visit of a poet from Hisar, Mulla Hajri, who came to offer his respects and presumably to seek Babur's patronage—it is tempting to think he must have been a very young or very bad poet to have sought Babur's support just then. "At that time," Babur writes, I "recited" the *matld* the opening line or two stanzas of a poem.

تکلف هر نیچه صورت [ته] بولسه اندین ارتوقسین
سینی جان دیرلار اما بی تکلف جانندین ارتوقسین
*

However artfully you are portrayed, you are yet more than this.
They call you soul, but truly you are greater than soul.⁶⁶

He subsequently used this *matld* as the opening lines for a ghazal he probably finished in Kabul, given its placement in his *diwan* as the thirty-second or thirty-fifth ghazal.⁶⁷ It has all the characteristics of a stereotypical lyric in which the poet speaks of going mad in the presence of the beloved's unrivaled beauty.

Babur may have written a few short poems during these months, but by his own account it was not until he had taken refuge in Tashkent with his *Khan dada*, his Chaghatay Mongol uncle Mahmud Khan, that he had time seriously to study the poetic art. After describing his decision to ride to Tashkent from nearby Shahrukhiah on June 16, the first thing Babur mentions about his sojourn in the city is his uncertainty about the rhyme scheme of a quatrain he had composed. "I had, writes Babur, recited [orally composed] this *rubai*. I was doubtful about the proper rhyme. At that time I

⁶⁵ Koprili, no. 1 p. 308 and Yucel, no. 133, p. 214.

⁶⁶ BN-M, f. 99a.

⁶⁷ Stebleva, 240 lists it as number 32. Yucel, 138, lists it as number 35.

had not studied the technical aspects of verse.”⁶⁸ It was at this point he asked for his uncle’s literary advice and found it wanting.⁶⁹ The poem he quotes in the text, the third Turk! *rubai* listed in most collections of his verse, has the normal rhyme scheme aaba, and some echoes of stereotypical lyrical themes and vocabulary. However, as has been mentioned in the narrative of events for this year, this poem was an unmistakable occasional poem that artistically alluded to Babur’s desperate state in 1502. The entire quatrain reads as follows.

یاد ایتماس ایمیش کیشی نی محنت ته کیشی
 IftHI jLai س ایمیش کونکلنی غربت ته کیشی
 کونکلوم بو غریبلیق ته شاد اولمادی [هیچ]
 غربت ته سیوونماس ایرمیش البته کیشی
 *

No one cares for a man in peril.
 No one gladdens the exile’s heart.
 My heart has found no joy in this exiled state.
 Certainly no one takes joy from exile.⁷⁰

The rhyme here is located in the next to the last word in the first, second and third stanzas: (*mihn*) *attah* (in peril), (*ghurb*) *attah* (in exile) and (*alb*) *attah* (certainly). The last word, *kishi* or person, is in the technical terms of Arabo-Persian prosody, the *radif*, the word following the rhyme, but not, since the same word is repeated, the rhyme itself.⁷¹ Babur himself remarks when discussing his uncertainties of the rhyme scheme of this poem that he later learned that in Turk! versification the t and d were interchangeable, as were gh, q and k. Eventually he incorporated the knowledge of such technicalities into his treatise on Turk! prosody.

If Babur didn’t explain the context in which he wrote this poem it might possibly be interpreted as a lyrical composition, but even without the context its occasional nature is suggested by the fact

⁶⁸ BN-M, fs. 99b-100a.

⁶⁹ See above chapter 2, “The Timurid Denouement.”

⁷⁰ BN-M, f. 100. Yucel, no. 135, p. 214.

⁷¹ I. V. Stebleva discusses the *radif* at length in her important study of Turk! verse, *Ritm i Smysl v klassicheskoi tyurkoyazychnoi poezii* (Moskva: “Nauka,” 1993), chapter 3. One of the most lucid introductions to the *radif*, giving both Persian and Turk! examples, is the article by W. P. Heinrichs, “Radif,” *EI2*, 8, 368-70.

that in it Babur doesn't even allude to a "beloved," the staple subject of the lyric. He does use one of the lyric's typical ideas of *ghurbat*, separation, unrequited love or exile to express his feelings. *Ghurbat* as exile is the leitmotif of Babur's life—from Ferghanah, Samarqand and finally from Kabul, for which the typical lyrical vocabulary supplied a convenient vocabulary.⁷² In this Turk! *rubai* he gives artistic vent to his political frustration in the lyrical idiom. The poem is one of earliest examples of Babur's adaptation of the lyrical genres to comment on his daily life.

While Persian literary tradition tolerated this self-expression in the quatrain, few poets took such liberties with the *ghazal* form. Yet Babur seems to have done this also with his first complete *ghazal*—and with many others later—which he completed shortly after arriving in Tashkent in mid-June, 1502. In the course of describing a classic Mongol hunt in which horsemen form an enormous circle and drive the game in from all sides, Babur writes that in the camp after the hunt he finished the first complete *ghazal* he had written. The significance of this poem is more ambiguous than Babur's earlier Turk! *rubai*, but like that quatrain it seems to be an occasional poem that in the *matla* at least reflects the emotions aroused in him by defeat, betrayal and exile that he explicitly describes in the *Vaqai*.

Babur includes only the *matla**, the opening *bayt* or couplet of this *ghazal* in the *Vaqai*, the remaining five couplets are included as part of the entire poem listed as the first *ghazal* in his collected verse.⁷³ The way Babur describes it he probably wrote these opening lines earlier and then finished the remainder of the poem in the hunting camp. The *matla** seems to echo the mournful sentiment of the "exile" *rubai* he read to Mahmud Khan.

جانیم دین اوزکا یار وفادار تاپمادیم
کونکوم دین اوزکا محرم اسرار تاپمادیم *

Except my soul no other true love did I find.
Except my heart no other intimate friend did I find. ⁷⁴

⁷² *Ghurbat* or exile was one of the principle themes of the Ghaznavid court poet Mas'ud Sa'd Salman of Lahore (d. 1121) and he was not the first to exploit this image. See Sharma, *Persian Poetry at the Indian Frontier*, especially 47-56.

⁷³ Stebleva, 209, and Yucel, no. 6, p. 121.

⁷⁴ BN-M, f. 101b. The verb here, *tapmaq*, is sometimes also translated by Naval as "to love" or "adore."

The likelihood—likelihood not certainty—that these lines allude to his seemingly hopeless political situation in the spring and early summer of 1502 is based partly on the quality of the “exile” *rubai* and partly on the deviation of these lines from the normal opening couplet of *ghazals*. In most Persian, Turki and Ottoman Turkish *ghazals* the author would begin with an evocation of the beloved. Even though this was Babur’s first complete *ghazal* in which, presumably, he would have tried to adhere to classic norms as closely as possible, he does not even allude to the snares of love until the second stanza of the second couplet.⁷⁵ Then only in the third couplet does this poem seem to blossom, like the many roses of this genre, into a full blown lyric poem.

اوزکا جان JJ افکار کورمادیم
کونگوم گیبی کونگولنی گرفتار تابمادیم
*

Except my soul I did not see another soul as melancholy.
I did not find a captive heart similar to mine.

اوسروک کوزیکا تا که کونکول بولدی مبتلا
هرک «_» <JJ_g ._i <S_> a d تابمادیم
*

Since the heart has been afflicted by his/her intoxicating eyes,
Never again did I recover sanity after such madness.

The remaining couplets adhere to the classic *ghazal* format and Babur concludes with an altogether stereotypical reference to his resigned suffering in the first stanza of the *maqtaʿ* or concluding couplet.

بابر اوزونکنی اورکاتاکور یار سیز...
*

Babur, teach thyself to be loveless...⁷⁶

⁷⁵ This discussion is based upon the acute analysis of Stebleva, *Semantika Gazelei Babura*, 163-68,

⁷⁶ Ibid., 209.

Like many other verses this poem has two evident meanings for Babur's life. On the one hand it demonstrates his continuing early effort to learn and practice the poetic art. On the other hand it seems to be an early example of the complexities of Babur's compositions, a case where he fits a couplet composed as an occasional verse reflecting his personal situation to stereotypical lines of a classic *ghazal*.

Kabul Lyrics

After describing the completion of his first Turki *ghazal* at the hunting camp, Babur doesn't mention writing poetry again until he narrates the years of his life from 1504-1525, when he lived in or operated out of Kabul. The next poem he mentions writing he dates to 1505, but its placement in his *diwan* as the fifteenth *ghazal* indicates that between 1502 and 1505 he wrote at least a dozen of these lyrical poems. Since these verses cannot be dated it is impossible to connect them with specific events, although in some cases it is tempting to try to do so. The opening phrase of his second *ghazal*, for example, reads "I have been exiled and separated from friends."⁷⁷ As in the first *ghazal* these lines are atypical for the genre and may refer to his situation between 1502 and the time he arrived in Kabul in 1504. The possibility exists that the opening lines of both the first and second *ghazal* reflect his inexperience with the genre. Yet not only had he heard hundreds of such poems, but the other *ghazals* Babur evidently wrote in this three-year period do follow the usual lyrical pattern of invoking the beloved in the opening couplet.

The fourth *ghazal* opens with the couplet:

ساچی نینگ سودا سی توشتی باشیمی باش دین ینه
تیره بولدی روزکاریم اول قرا قاش دین ینه
*

Once and again her tresses fell upon my head.
And again my life was darkened by this black eyebrow.⁷⁸

⁷⁷ Stebleva, 210 and Yucel, no. 7, 121-22.

⁷⁸ Ibid., 212 and Yucel, no. 9, 122-23.

Babur dates the first of these *ghazals* to 21 March 1505, the spring solstice and *nauruz*, the new year of the Iranian solar calendar. He remarks that in 1505 this date coincided with 'Id al-Fitr, the date on the Islamic lunar calendar when Muslims celebrate the end of the Ramadan fast. Babur, though, may have slightly mistaken these dates as the festivals coincided more nearly in 1504—or perhaps he was just taking poetic license.⁸⁰ The conjunction of calendars and festivals apparently prompted him to write the poem, or at least to compose the *matld* and *maqtaʿ* the opening and closing couplets, for he begins and ends the *ghazal* with allusions to this coincidence and a literary play on the metaphorical significance of the moon as the face of the beloved. Babur only quotes these opening and closing couplets in his memoirs, perhaps because his witty imagery is confined to those lines.

یانکی آی یار یوزی بیرله کوروب ایل شاد بیرم لار

انکا یوز J < J¹ کدین آیرو بیرم آیددا غم لار

----- bayts 2-6

یو 53) نوروزی وصلی عیدنی L»J غنیمت ojS

که موندین یخشی بولاس بولسه یوز نوروز [و] بیرم لار

On seeing the new moon with the beloved's face,

People are joyous at the festivals.

As for me separated from thy face and brows,

the festivals are sad.

----- couplets 2-6

Babur seize the moment of this festive conjunction,

the face of the new year.

Festivals could not be better than this,

Even with a hundred new years.⁸¹

The five middle couplets of this poem contain stereotypical lyrical imagery that has none of the inventiveness of these first and last couplets. They describe, first, how the lyrical hero's infatuation

⁸⁰ Stebleva, 174-75 adroitly makes this observation in her analysis of this poem.

⁸¹ Ibid., 223 and Yucel, no. 20, p. 129.

causes his body to twist, similar to the hyacinth-like curls on the face of the beloved. Then blown aside by the lover's breath the beloved's tresses reveal the perspiration on her/his face resembling evening dew on a rose. Finally, lamenting in typical fashion with "sighs and groans," which Babur contrasts with quiet convivial drinking parties with companions, he says that advice is useless for him because love has destroyed his heart.

A second poem now found only in the *diwan* and not in the *Vaqai* can also be dated to late 1506 or early 1507, both on the basis of its number, forty-four, and an explicit reference to Kabul. The placement of the poem and the meaning of the penultimate couplet strongly suggest it was written in December 1506 when Babur was visiting Harat. In that couplet Babur writes, using the commonly invoked metaphor of *shah* for the beloved:

كابل ساری کر دہ لکھنؤ ۵۰۰-۵۰۱

ساز قیلائی اوزنی ۵۱ KL-U شاه

If you travel on the road to Kabul,
Let me offer myself to you, o Shah.⁸²

In this verse Babur was probably alluding to his second engagement, to his paternal cousin, Ma'sumah Sultan Begim, which was arranged when he visited Harat in December 1506.⁸³ The girl was to be sent on to Kabul later after Babur returned there, and she arrived in the city and was married to Babur in the late summer, 1507. The first six couplets of the *ghazal* are impeccably generic and of no special interest, but in the sixth Babur writes, using the commonly invoked metaphor *shah* for the beloved. The erotic focus of this poem also offers another cautionary note about basing facile and monolithic generalizations about authors' sexual orientations on a few widely scattered poems. Indeed, these two examples suggest that in most cases when such judgments are made about the poorly documented lives of pre-modern Muslim writers they are in fact mere "vacuous literary chitchat."

The third of these three *ghazals*, and the second dated one, is another poem with an atypical *matla'* that reflects one of Babur's

⁸² Stebleva, 252.

⁸³ BN-M, fs., 191a-192b.

worst instances of physical suffering. Just after his engagement Babur left Harat to return to Kabul. Riding out of the city on December 23rd he and his men became lost in a mountain snowstorm in late January or early February 1507. This was the time he remembered as one in which “great alarm and hardships were suffered, more than at any period of life.” “This *matld* ” he writes, “was done on that occasion.”⁸⁴

چرخ نینک مین ISLojzS J جور و جفاسی قالدی مو؟

خسته کونکوم چیکماکان درد و بلاسی قالدی مو؟



Does there remain for me unseen any cruelty or oppression of fate?
Shall my wounded heart yet know unknown pain or suffering?⁸⁵

Nowhere in his memoir does Babur again allude to this couplet, but in his *diwan* it represents the opening lines of his forty-fifth *ghazal*, only one of two in which he uses the interrogative refrain. Babur’s explanation and the verse itself unmistakably marks the *matld* as an occasional poem. The couplet is an artistic rendering of his prose narrative. It is a literary abstraction, a poetic universalization of his near-fatal ride which Babur expresses in the typical language of the *ghazal*, the idiom of cruelty, oppression and the wounded heart. Like his first Turki *ghazal* this poem also has a semantic shift in the third couplet where Babur complains that the sun, his metaphorical beloved, has slain him. In this poem, though, he employs even less of the stock imagery—no evocation of the beloved’s eyes or eye brows, his/her hyacinth-like hair, the entrancing slim figure so like the archer’s bow—not to mention the erotic fuzz on the cheek or the pearl-like teeth. Here Babur is not speaking from within the allegorical Iranian garden with its roses and nightingales.⁸⁶ Read in isolation the final line of the *maqtd* might be understood as the typical resigned complaint of the melancholy lover, but read against the *matld* and Babur’s prose narrative it seems to reflect a particular emotional moment.

⁸⁴ BN-M, f. 193b.

⁸⁵ Ibid., f. 193b.

⁸⁶ Julie Scott Meisami, “Allegorical Gardens in the Persian Poetic Tradition: Nezami, Rumi and Hafez,” *International Journal of Middle East Studies* 17 (1985), 229-60.

تینکری اوچون دی ج. ج. ج. dip صفاسی قالدی مو؟

Remains there any of the world's pleasures?
Speak for God's sake!⁸⁷

Babur may have finished this entire poem sometime during the winter or spring of 1507, even though he was quite busy when he first returned to Kabul suppressing an abortive coup in the city. The likelihood that this date is correct is suggested by its placement in his *diwan* as the forty-fifth *ghazal*, for according to the *Vaqai* he was moved to write the *ghazal* listed as number forty-six in April or May 1507 after he visited the flower-strewn meadows of Gulbahar, the "Rose" or "Flower of Spring" slope north of Kabul. Viewing this *daman* or mountain skirt where "many different tulips bloom," the alpine pasture where, he remarks in this passage, he once had the tulip varieties counted, Babur quotes another unnamed poet's Turk! couplet praising Kabul and Gulbahar in springtime. He says he then completed "this" *ghazal*, whose *matla* he quotes, and which Annette Beveridge, echoing Robert Burns's line, "My love is like a red, red rose," artfully renders as follows.

ج.ج.ج. Sll <G d-U سی غنجه d i11 4 کونکولوم (l!l*!ft1n
ج.ج.ج. SKd <u_djl اگیلماغی نی dliA >l
*

My heart, like the bud of a red, red rose,
Lies fold within fold aflame;
Would the breath of even a myriad Springs,
Blow my heart's bud to a rose.⁸⁸

The text of the entire *ghazal* with a more prosaic translation is as follows:

منینک کونکولوم که کل نینک غنجه سی دیکته ته بهتہ قان دور
اگر یوز مینک بهار اولسه آگیلماغی نی امکان دور
اگر اول قاشی یاسیز باغ کشتین آرزو قیلسام
کوزومکا اوق دورور سرو و کونکولکا غنجیه بیکان دور
J ل\$J باغ سیرینی نی قیلای کیم داستانیم dppi

⁸⁷ Stebleva, 253.

⁸⁸ BN-B, p. 321.

یوزی کول زلفی ج-خا-و قامتی ج-و ج JJ JAJA JJ
 وصالی لذتی 5-u J2LmL J دشوار
 فراقی شد یندا یوقسا جان بیرماکلیک آسان دور
 باشیدین ایورولور ارمانی بیرلا اولدوم *5 ج-?k
 کوییدین ایلان ' J3 ج-?k ISjk CF JJ'***»⁶

Petal upon petal, my heart is like the rosebud.
 If there would be even 100,000 springs it would not open.
 If I wished to pass through the garden without the one whose
 brow is a bow,
 The flowering cypress would be like an arrow for the eye
 and a fire for the heart.
 Why should I stroll in the garden in spring,
 since in my poem
 The beloved's face is a flower, his/her hair-a hyacinth
 and body-a cypress.
 Finding ease in the pleasure of union is difficult.
 While relinquishing life due to the pain of separation is easy.
 Turning round her head, I have died grief-stricken, O Babur,
 Let my bier encircle that fairy-world.⁸⁹

This poem illustrates the interpenetration of art and life—or of poetry and this particular life. Sa'di and Hafiz set so many of their *ghaza*s in gardens that Babur or anyone with poetic ambitions and remotely familiar with the oft-sung verses of these poets would probably have memorized hundreds of paradisiacal literary settings.⁹⁰ Nothing would have been more natural, or more culturally suggested, than for an aspiring lyric poet to respond to visions of wildflowers in spring meadows with a *ghazal*. Given the name of this mountain slope, Gulbahar, the temptation must have been irresistible. Babur responded to this scene as most other classically-trained writers probably would have done. He ignored the natural beauty before him and, reaching into the stereotypical lyrical vocabulary, produced a poem echoing his momentary delight but conforming

⁸⁹ Stebleva, 254 and 176.

⁹⁰ See especially Julie Scott Meisami, "The Body as Garden: Nature and Sexuality in Persian Poetry," *Eddebiyat* NS 6, 2 (1995), 245-74.

to the dictates of the *ghazal* genre. Here was the interiorized, self-referential poetic *gulistan* or rose garden made famous by Sa'di's poem of the same name. It was the self-contained literary garden of many writers, including later Indo-Muslim Persian and Urdu poets who often found the scent of imagined roses so intoxicating some even closed their windows to the actual beauties of nature, perhaps understandable in the Indian climate where roses usually wilted and nightingales rarely sang.⁹¹ Normally it would be "extremely strained and very doubtful" to find an experiential reference for such a poem.⁹² It would, that is, be analogous to the "vacuous literary chitchat" of scholars who strain to link Shakespeare's sonnets to the Elizabethan poet's life. In this instance, however, the connection is unmistakable, illustrating the subtle ways in which a poet's works may be connected to his everyday life.

A fourth *ghazal*, probably written sometime before the period of these dated poems, seems one of the most existential of all Babur's lyrics, in fact an intense *cri de coeur*. His failure to date it means that his original reason for writing the poem will probably never be known. The placement of this particular *ghazal* as number 21 in his *diwan*, suggests it was probably written in 1505 or early 1506, months before he traveled to Harat, and it may refer to any number of events during this period, such as his feeling that his brothers Jahangir and Nasir Mirza had been disloyal to him. However, the verse is particularly intriguing, because he quotes the *matla* in his narrative of events for the summer of 1500. Babur quotes the couplet to punctuate a complaint he had about Khusrau Shah when he passed through his territories on his way to stage his surprise attack on the Uzbeks in Samarqand in the summer of 1500. Having remarked of the despised Khusrau Shah that he treated Babur worse than one of his own servants, Babur quotes the following couplet, but does not say when he wrote the lines, which he normally does if a verse or an entire poem dates from the exact time covered in the narrative.

کیم کوروبدور ای کونکول اهل جهان دین یخشیلین
کیم که اندین یخشی یوق کوز توتمه اندین یخشیلین

⁹¹ Frances W. Pritchett, *Nets of Awareness Urdu Poetry and Its Critics* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1994), 104.

⁹² Stebleva, 178.

This is not the first time in his narrative Babur lifts material from a poem written during the Kabul period to illustrate a memory from the Turan years. One of the lines he quotes to describe his infatuation in 1500 for the boy Babun is a Turk! couplet which represents the fourth couplet of *ghazal* ninety-five.⁹⁵

The poems Babur dates by references in the *Vaqai* reveal a subtle but discernible relationship between his life and art during the late Turan and Kabul periods of his life. Unfortunately it is impossible to make the same connections for most of the verses he wrote between 1507 and 1526. Not only is the text missing for the years 1508-1519 and 1520-1526, but he rarely discusses the craft of poetry in the remaining extant pages that cover about a month in May 1508, the year 1519, another month from December 1519 to January 1520 and the period from November 1525 until September 1529. Yet, Babur probably wrote most of his verses during the Kabul and Indian years of his life. It is quite likely that the majority of his *ghazals* and *rubaiydt* date to the decade before he left Kabul in November 1525 to invade India, a time following his final expulsion from Mawarannahr, when he ruled from Kabul in relative security and thus had the leisure to write. He himself mentions that in July 1519 he sent a copy of one of his *diwans* to Samarqand, perhaps to his half-sister, Mihrban(u) Khanim, who was then living in the Uzbek-controlled city.⁹⁶ This is the first of two collections he acknowledges completing. The other, known as the Indian or Rampur *diwan*, contains a small collection of poems, largely *rubaiyat*, Babur wrote in India, the completion of which he dates to December 1528.⁹⁷

Beyond observing that the majority of the *ghazals* and *rubaiyat* that Babur wrote between 1507 and 1526 appear to be variants on the lyrical theme, it is not possible in most cases even to hazard a guess as to how these poems may immediately reflect his life. Merely knowing how subtle those connections are in the dated poems of the late Ferghanah and early Kabul period would make unsubstantiated speculation about the origin of these verses even

⁹⁵ BN-M, f. 76a and Stebleva, 303.

⁹⁶ BN-M, f. 237b. Annette Beveridge makes the identification. BN-B, p. 402.

⁹⁷ See especially BN-B, Appendix Q, "Concerning the Rampur Diwan," and Azimdzhanova, *Indiiskii Diwan Babura* (Tashkent: "Fan," 1966), 39.

more irresponsible than Babur was himself when he claimed to have seized one hundred thousand sheep from Afghan tribesmen. However, Babur wrote several *rubaiyat* in 1519 that can be dated either from his references in the memoirs or the combined evidence of the subject and placement in his collected poems. Only in a few cases can the poems be approximately dated and assumed to refer to what is known of Babur's life from his memoirs.

The first poem that Babur quotes in the *Vaqai* after the narrative resumes in 1519 is yet another illustration of how a poem was prompted by specific events, even if outwardly it appears to be merely a stock lyrical verse unconnected with anything beyond his literary ambition. Alluding to his recent capture of the fortress of Bajaur, Babur says he sent his old companion, Khwajah Kalan, back to govern the fortress on the 19th of January 1519. Writing for unexplained reasons in Persian, Babur describes the separation from his close friend in the typical lyrical idiom of the distraught lover, and includes a pun on the word Bajaur in the fourth line of a *du-bayti*, or two-couplet verse in which "forcefully" or *bajaur* alludes to Khwajah Kalan's appointment to the fortress-town Bajaur.

قرار و عهد بیار اینچنین نبود مرا
 کزید هجر و مرا کرد بیقرار آخر
 بعشوه ای زمانه چه چاره سازد کس
 کرد جدا AS-1H J bb? J L آخر

*

Such was not my pact and covenant with the beloved/friend.

Finally, he chose parting and inconstancy to me,

What could someone do against the caprice of fortune,

Finally it forcefully separated lover/comrade from beloved/
 companion?⁹⁸

A second poem, a *rubai*, reflects the more flexible use of these quatrain trains, because it "celebrates" or at least "commemorates" intoxication, but not of the lover for the beloved. This Turk! poem was

⁹⁸ BN-M, f. 219a.

almost certainly written after Babur began drinking, that is some time after taking Samarqand for the third and last time and prior to swearing off alcohol before facing the Rajputs in India in 1527.

کیلدی رمضان و مین تقی باده پرست
 عید اولدی و ذکر می قیلورمین پیوست
 نی روزه و نی نماز ییل لار آیلا
 تون کون می و معجون بیله دیوانه و مست
 *

Ramadan came and I a pious wine-sot.
 Id arrived and with it the remembrance of wine.
 Neither fasting nor prayer [but] years, months,
 Nights and days with wine and *majun*, crazy and drunk."

It is quite likely that this poem was written in the spring of 1519. Not only was that a time in which Babur was drinking almost continuously, but it is listed in his collected verse just three quat rains before another *rubai* which he mentions composing in June 1519.

Babur wrote this third *rubai* at a party where he uncharacteristically declined to drink, apparently because he was just then recovering from a fever he had contracted more than two weeks earlier. Just after celebrating the wedding of two children of his long-time compatriots, the son of Qasim Beg and the daughter Nizam al-Dm 'Ali Barias Khalifah, he mentions that he hosted a gathering, *Chandr Baghning Eshiki-da*, at the Gate of the Plane-Tree Garden. He and his friends gathered in a small white arbor or kiosk, where Babur says he sometimes sat, where they were joined by "Ghiyas the buffoon." Babur, after recalling how he jokingly told his friends that as he was not drinking that day he would soberly observe the relations between the sober and the drunk, said that the following impromptu *rubai* "was then composed" and sent to a the grandson of Zun-nun Arghun, who was also hosting a gathering at his nearby house.

⁹⁹ Kopriirii, no. 160, p. 324 and Yiicel, no. 297, p. 255.

احباب که بزمیدا کلستان خس تور
 یوق یوق I cLd 1°3~? Ij j p i i j
 Jj I Jj ا کر حضور [j] U cM «G 2
 یوز شکر بو جمع بیحضور ایرماس تور*

Friends who are at the banquet, are a beautiful garden.
 Although they gave us no leave to attend.
 If there is ease in that gathering,
 A hundred thanks the gathering is not troubled.¹⁰⁰

This is an unambiguously occasional *rubai*.

The next poem he quotes is equally occasional, written in fact on the outside of the *diwan* he sent to Samarqand to Pulad Sultan, the son of the Uzbek leader, in July 1519. However, it is difficult to understand why Babur would send poetry to an Uzbek noble; it may have been intended for Pulad Sultan's mother, who may have been Babur's half-sister, Mihrban(u).¹⁰¹ Not only does Babur invoke the *harim*, the "sanctuary" or women's quarters of the first line, but he follows that by stressing the "wound of separation," an unlikely sentiment to address to an Uzbek, but a natural expression towards a relative not seen since youth. Nonetheless, in the fourth line Babur has also constructed a play on Pulad Sultan's name, as *pulad* means steel, so the poem might have been intended for both mother and son in subtly different ways.¹⁰²

اول سرو نینک حریمیغه کر یتسناک ای صبا
 بیر کیل بو هجر خسته سی دین یاد کونکلیکا

¹⁰⁰ BN-M, f. 237a. Babur does not explicitly say he wrote this poem. However, both Koprulii and Yucel include it among his quatrains. Koprulii, no. 162, p. 324 and Yucel, no. 300, p. 256.

¹⁰¹ Annette Beveridge suggests the possibility that Mihrban(u) was the intended recipient. BN-B, p. 402.

¹⁰² Babur mentions Pulad Sultan as one of the Uzbeks who, along with Pulad Sultan's mother Mihrban(u) Khanim, sent ambassadors to Babur's celebratory court gathering on December 19, 1528, a gathering that recognized his consolidation of power following his defeat of the Rajputs the year before. The fact that he mentions Mihrban(u) Khanim twice, the only woman whose name he mentions while describing this gathering, increases the likelihood that she was a person of consequence to him.

رحم ایلابان n\lcLm زاز ز امید
 رحم نی پولاد کونکلی کا c biJL
 *

O breeze if thou enter the sanctuary of that cypress,
 Remind her/his heart of the wound of separation.
 May God have mercy, she/he does not recall Babur.
 God grant mercy to her heart of steel.¹⁰³

Apart from its interest as another of Babur's poems that read in isolation from its immediate context seems like merely another stereotypical lyric, this verse is an important example of a class of poems known literally as "fragments" that Babur and other writers frequently used expressly for occasional verse. In referring to the poem Babur describes it as a *qifah*, a "fragment," "piece" or "morsel," even though it observes the rhyme scheme of the *rubai*, the first, second and fourth lines ending in aleph. However, it diverges from the usual rhythm of a *rubai*. The *qifah* represented a kind of free-verse form which "from the point of view of rhythm, rhyme, number of verses, language and subject, offered the poet the greatest freedom to express himself."¹⁰⁴ The *qifah*, that is, did not have a traditional subject and vocabulary that confined poets to a relatively narrow range of expression and ideas that especially restricted the *ghazal*. It allowed for and even encouraged individual expression unmediated by formal requirements of prosody. Naval himself stressed the importance this genre had for him, remarking in the initial couplet of a *qifah*. "Such fragments that I have assembled, each one is a garden for resting the mind."¹⁰⁵ Like other poets Naval used the fragment to express personal opinions, such as his well-known disdain for valuing literature according to the social standing of its author. "Do not enquire who spoke," Naval urges, "but observe what he said."¹⁰⁶

Babur may not have read this particular verse of NavaTs, although on 15 December of that year he completed the task of arranging by meter a selection of NavaTs four *diwans*.¹⁰⁷ Whether

¹⁰³ BN-M, f. 238a and Yucel, no. 407, p. 283.

¹⁰⁴ Ziya Mauhad, "Qifah dar Sh'ir-i Farsi, Sa'di, Sha'ir-i Qif ahsira," *Nashr Danish* 14:4 (1373/1994), 16.

¹⁰⁵ Quoted by E. E. Bertel's, *Izbrannye Trudy, Navoi i Dzhami*, 95.

¹⁰⁶ *Ibid.*, 95-96.

¹⁰⁷ BN-M, f. 248b.

or not Naval influenced his thinking, Babur does include a large number of poetic “fragments” in the last or Indian section of the *Vaqai*. It is also true that many of the *rubai* he wrote during the last five years of his life are transparently autobiographical. However, one of the problems in discussing the poetry of this period is that it can’t be measured against the immediately preceding years. Not only does the text break off for nearly five years of “events” between January 1520 and November 1525, but there appears to be a gap of about the same period of time in Babur’s extant poetry as well. This hypothesis is based upon the relatively few number of *rubai* listed in his collected verse for the period after he sent his first *diwan* to Samarqand in 1519 and the date he completed his second collection of Indian poems in 1528. The last dated quatrain in the Kabul section of the *Vaqai* is the verse Babur composed at the party in June 1519. Yet in the collected verse only fourteen other *rubai* are listed after this and before the first one known to be part of Babur’s second extant or *Rampur Diwan*, dated 28 December 1528, and named after the north Indian city where the dated manuscript was discovered.¹⁰⁸

Not only does it seem unlikely, not to say almost unbelievable, that he wrote so few of these poems during a five-year period when his security and power were growing, but India is not mentioned in any of these fourteen verses, but Kabul is, and Babur does mention “Hind” in the first Turki *rubai* of the *Rampur* collection. A similar argument may be made about Babur’s *ghazals*. Relatively few of those now extant are likely to have been written after 1520, for the 102nd *ghazal* is addressed to Babur’s cousin Ways Mirza or Mirza Khan, who died in 1520-21.¹⁰⁹ This poem could have been written considerably earlier, probably at almost any time between 1514, when Babur returned to Kabul, and 1520. The final or 119th *ghazal* Babur wrote when he was in India and it mentions India; it is

¹⁰⁸ See *Rampur Diwan*, 1-43. and S. Azimdzhanova, *Indiiskii Diwan Babura*. The *Rampur diwan* includes several of Babur’s Persian poems. See for example fs. 14a-b.

¹⁰⁹ Stebleva, 102 and Yucel, no. 105. The poem itself is tantalizingly interesting, as Babur proclaims his great affection for his cousin. This may reflect time they spent together between 1512 and 1514 when Babur wandered about Badakhshan, where Ways Mirza was trying to carve out his own Timurid state. Babur received an envoy and presents from Ways Mirza in July 1519, which may have been the last time he heard from his cousin before his death. BN-M, f. 237b.

included in the *Rampur Diwan*. None of the *ghazals* numbered 103-118 contain geographic references of any kind. It is likely, therefore, that Babur compiled another *diwan* that held *ghazals*, *rubaiyat* and other poems written between 1520 to 1526 or 1527, a *diwan* that is now lost along with the text of this five-year period.

In fact Babur does mention one poem he wrote just as he was leaving Afghanistan, a two-line Persian verse that he composed in December 1525 during the march from Kabul to attack Ibrahim Lodi in Agra. After riding from Kabul to Adinapur, where he and a small number of his companions camped in the *Bagh-i Vafa* while waiting for his son Humayun to arrive with troops from Badakhshan, Babur and a few others got on a raft to float down the Kabul river towards the Khybar, while the main army marched overland. Drinking and taking *majun* by day while camping at night, they recited and spontaneously composed verse. At one point someone quoted a Persian verse of the Uzbek historian, Muhammad Salih, whose first line reads: "What can a person do with the beauty of each coquettish glance?" As a literary rejoinder Babur then composed a ribald two-line Persian response that was simultaneously a satire of Salih's verse and a playful mockery of Mulla All Khan, one of the men on the raft, who, Babur suggests, had already been the butt of jokes:

What can a person do with a senseless [intoxicated] person like
you?

What can a person do with every asshole she-donkey?¹¹⁰

Babur uses this incident to repent his habit of composing joking or obscene poems, probably a major part of most "entertainments" that had become a constant feature of his life in Kabul. His repentance undoubtedly came several years later as he was writing his memoirs and after he had repeatedly fallen sick in India. In the memoirs he uses this party publicly to announce his regret that he had ever composed trivial, joking or obscene verse. He does so by alluding to a vow he had already made about such poetry just after he had completed writing his versified treatise on Islamic law, the *Mubaiyin* four years earlier in Kabul. Writing in an atypically pompous style, Babur remarks:

Before this whatever came into the mind, good or bad, joking or serious, was sometimes facetiously strung into verse. However shame-

¹¹⁰ BN-M, f. 252b.

ful and filthy the verse would be, it was inscribed. At the time I versified the *Mubaiyina* thought had penetrated dull wit and doleful heart that it will be a pity that if from a tongue which expresses such utterances shall again translate its thoughts into shameful words. And it will be a pity that if from a heart that may express such elevated thoughts filthy ideas will reoccur. Since that time I repented and abstained from stringing satirical and jesting lines into verse. [How ever] while making this couplet [these ideas] did not occur [to me]. This virtue did not possess the heart.¹¹¹

Babur says he believed that his relapse into impious verse caused an illness that afflicted him a day or two later as he continued his march toward India. While encamped at Bigram just east of the Khybar pass he began coughing up blood, and commenting on this, he says he realized he was being punished for breaking his 1521 oath. After quoting the Quran to demonstrate the connection, he inserts one of his own Turk! poems to express pious regret for past literary immorality. However, as Babur pointedly does not say he wrote the poem in 1525 he probably composed and inserted it when he was writing in the late 1520's and suffering badly from repeated illnesses. Indeed, the poem and the cloying religious rhetoric that follows are so atypical that both the poetry and prose are likely to represent the regrets of debilitated old age.

نی قیلايين سينيك بيله ای تیل جھتینکدین مینیک ایچیم فاندور
نیچه یخشی دیسانک بو هزل ایله شعر بیرسی فحش و بیر یالغان دور
کر دیسانک کویمایین بو جرم بيله جیلاونکنی بو عرصه دین یاندور

*

What shall I do with you o tongue,
Due to you my insides are bloody.
Even if you speak such joking verse well,
It is at once shameful and false.
If you speak and will not be tainted by this sin,
Turn your reins from this field.¹¹²

He follows the poem with more expressions of regret and thankfulness for God's counsel.

¹¹¹ Ibid., fs. 252a-b. The translation of the last sentence of this passage is critical because the *Mubaiyin* is dated to 1521. Babur must mean to say, therefore, that he had forgotten his earlier resolve, not that he had never had such ideas before.

¹¹² Ibid., f. 253a.

This ribald jest—followed by ex-post facto pious regret—also marks an end to Babur's poetic development. Following his invasion of India he seems to have abandoned ambitious poetic composition. At least he is known to have written but one *ghazal* during the next five years. As *ghazals* were the principal measure of a poet's stature the lack of these poems in either the *Vaqai* or the *Rampur Diwan* indicates that he turned his literary attentions elsewhere. In fact, based partly on the testimony of his daughter, Gulbadan Begim, he seems to have spent much of his leisure time between April 1526 and his death in December 1530 composing the *Vaqai*, his great prose work that is justifiably the basis of his literary and political reputation. Apart from the *ghazal* and one *masnavi*, Babur's poetic output in these years seems to have consisted entirely of occasional poems, fragments and quatrains. He explicitly intended these verses to be autobiographical, for in the postscript to the *Diwan* he urges his readers to understand him through these verses: "Each time you read these words, reading them think of me." The Indian poems form the emotional counterpoint to Babur's prose narrative of his Indian years. Through them he conveys with touching emotion the stark existential crises of loneliness, sickness and old age, a kind of psychological exile made all the more poignant by his separation from friends and homeland. Seen simply as verse the Indian poems constitute one of the most telling refutations of the oft-expressed conviction that pre-modern Islamic or Persianate verse has no distinguishable relationship to a poet's life.

Babur's own conception of the relationship between his life and his verse may be partly discerned in the ways he thought about prose and poetry. Prose, on the evidence of his own writing and criticism of his son Humayun, was meant to be specific, describing a particular reality; it was not intended, as he sarcastically observes to Humayun, to be written like the poetic enigmas so beloved of Timurid-era writers. Poetry, on the other hand offered, literally, a more harmonious version of that reality in the way that the Russian poet Alexander Blok conceived of the poet's task "...to free sounds from their natural anarchic element; to bring these sounds into harmony and give them form; to introduce this harmony into the outside world."¹¹³ Often in the case of Babur's more explicitly

¹¹³ Roberta Reeder, *Anna Akhmatova* (New York, N.Y.: St. Martin's Press, 1994), 139.

occasional verses, such as those describing the effects of wine and *majun*, or his reaction to a specific event, the poems represented little more than this kind of artful vocal harmonizing. In other instances, though, Babur's poems represented something far more ambitious, an abstraction of reality or, as has been said about Heian Japanese court poetry:

The true significance of any literary work resides of course in the way it imposes order on our experience. By providing us with an illusion of our world and by giving this imaginative world an order that true experience lacks, poetry helps our lives take on an order, a beauty, and a significance they did not have.¹¹⁴

The relationship between poetry and Babur's life, or poetry and his prose description of his life, seems to have been analogous to the relationship between his prose descriptions of natural beauty and his construction of formal, Persian-style gardens in Afghanistan and India. He accurately and vividly describes countryside of Kabul and the mountain slopes of Gulbahar and Istalif as they actually appeared—and appear today—as an idiosyncratic, unregulated natural landscape where wild tulips, rather than cultivated roses grew. Whereas the *Bagh-i Vafā* the “Garden of Fidelity” he ordered built in 1508-09 east of Kabul, represented a generalized or abstracted version of nature, in fact a metaphor of eternity, a model of paradise, itself the Persian word for Iranian formal gardens.¹¹⁵ While in the *Vaqai* he describes the natural, unregulated beauty of Gulbahar or the particulars of the autumn foliage, in the Gulbahar *ghazal* he narrates an abstract tale of the generic lyrical hero and his beloved in the metaphorical, eternal poetic garden.

Babur created the *Bagh-i vafa* out of nature's anarchy and the harmonious literary garden with its roses, cypress trees and archetypal beloveds, from the ungovernable particularities of an accurately rendered prose description of the Gulbahar *daman*. The garden and his *ghazals* and *rubais* were art, the *Vaqai* was not. Nearly dying in a snowstorm represented anarchic, chaotic life. Rendering that experience as part of a *ghazal* transmuted a particularized experience and prose description into a universalized form, the poetic art.

¹¹⁴ Brower and Miner, *Japanese Court Poetry*, 461.

¹¹⁵ See among many possible sources Mehdi Khansari, M. Reza Moghtader and Minouch Yavari, *The Persian Garden, Echoes of Paradise* (Washington D.C.: Mage, 1998).

CHAPTER SIX

THE CONQUEST OF HINDUSTAN

I'll make the kings of India ere I die
Offer their mines to sue for peace to me
And dig for treasure to appease my wrath.
Marlowe, *Tamburlaine the Great*, III, HE

After retreating from northern Afghanistan back to Kabul some time in 1514, almost nothing is known of Babur's life until five years later when his narrative resumes in January 1519 as he and his men begin an attack on the fortress of Bajaur, over a hundred miles east-north-east of Kabul. By his own evidence Babur started 1519 still trying to pacify his petty Afghan kingdom, a "state" whose territories were then primarily concentrated along the section of the road that ran from northeast from Ghazni through Kabul and then east to the Khybar pass, extending perhaps to the banks of the Indus. His direct control of this modest region may have extended in 1519 fifty to sixty miles north of Kabul to the Hindu Kush passes, while he exercised a loose suzerainty over the Qunduz region in northeastern Afghanistan in the person of his cousin, Ways Mirza Miranshahi. The richer plains of Balkh along the Amu Darya immediately west of Qunduz were in 1519 probably divided between the Uzbeks, the Safavids and to some degree Babur himself.¹ East of Kabul his authority was restricted in some areas to no more than a few miles to the north and south of the road.

Yet, little more than a month after subduing Bajaur, Babur crossed the Indus on a raid that led to the first, albeit temporary capture of Bherah, situated on the bank of the Jhelum river in the northwestern Panjab. The occupation of Bherah, an outlying dis-

¹ BN-M, f. 242a. The situation in Balkh province in 1519 is not very clear, perhaps because Babur does not distinguish between the province and the city. Babur alludes to the Uzbek threat to his supporter, Quch Beg, who governed the mountainous areas of Bamian and Ghur, west and northwest of Kabul. Yet the Safavids were also known to exert some control over Balkh from Harat.

trict of the wealthy Lahore province, apparently led Babur to think seriously for the first time of taking Delhi, for according to his own testimony, after taking the town he sent a message to the newly enthroned ruler of Delhi, Sultan Ibrahim Ludi, claiming the territories Timur had conquered in 1398. By 1523 Babur established his authority in Lahore, the capital of the Panjab, little more than a hundred miles southeast of Bherah, and in November 1525 he led an army out of Kabul that in April 1526 defeated Ibrahim and founded Timurid rule in northern India. His conquest was an act of military imperialism legitimized by Timur's brief invasion. It represented a dynastic conquest in the mold of the Ottomans and Uzbeks. Unlike the Safavid founder, Shah Ismafil, Babur was not an ideologue and did not enter India on a religious crusade. Having failed to restore his own rule and Timurid fortunes in Samarqand, he invaded India for simple *mulkgirliq* reasons, to ensure the power and prosperity of his paternal and maternal relations, the Miran-shahi Timurids and the Chaghatay Ghingizids. Those practical political and material goals remained typical of the dynasty throughout most of its history, whatever the legitimizing affectations of later monarchs.²

The Occupation of the Panjab

From Babur's description it is apparent that the attack on Bajaur in January 1519 was no simple *chapqun* or raid, although it may have been partly that, but a pacification campaign by which he directly extended his power in the region. This can be inferred from his remark that after the successful assault and massacre of more than three thousand Dilahzak Afghan inhabitants of the fort, he sent heads of some of the captured and executed defenders as proof of his victory not only to Kabul but also north to Badakhshan, Qunduz and Balkh, perhaps to Ways Mirza in Badakhshan and Muhammad Zaman Mirza in Balkh.³ His purpose in capturing the

² Babur's attitude was typified by later Timurid-Mughul policy in Bengal, which focused on revenue extraction and abstained from potentially explosive interference in local religious practice. See Richard M. Eaton, *The Rise of Islam and the Bengal Frontier 1240-1760* (California: University of California Press, 1993), 177-83.

³ BN-M, f. 218b.

fort and slaughtering so many Bajauris also seems to have been designed as a pointed lesson to other Afghans, for one of Babur's new-found allies, the Yusufzai Afghan chief Shah Mansur who was present during these events, was sent back east to his Yusufzai kin with "chastising orders." The Bajaur massacre seems to have had an immediate effect, for one of the competing rulers of Swat, Sultan 'Ala' al-Dm, offered his homage to Babur a short time later, evidently hoping to exploit the new regional power to counter a rival Afghan chief.⁴ Then following a typical post-battle interval of drinking, hunting and eating the local narcotic sweet *karnalfi* Babur continued his campaign by marching due east into the Yusufzai homeland in Swat to attack tribesmen who had not yet submitted to him. While in the vicinity he consolidated his territorial gains by marrying Shah Mansur Yusufzai's daughter. Babur's alliance may have been strengthened with another Yusufzai marriage to one of his men, for he mentions that shortly after his marriage Shah Mansur's younger brother "brought his niece to this *yurt*" this "campsite."⁵

Babur justified what he terms the "general killing" or massacre of the Dilahzak Afghans of Bajaur by claiming that they were not only "rebels" but had adopted "the customs of unbelievers."⁶ By this he does not seem to mean that they imitated their Kafir neighbors, who never had been and as late as 1890 still were not Muslims.⁷ Rather he reports that some thirty or forty years earlier some of the Dilahzak Afghans and the Yusufzais had become heretics by joining a *darvish* or wandering ascetic or sufi by the name of Shahbaz Qalandar. Having said this without elaborating on the nature of this man's "heresy," he reports that after the brief siege of Bajaur, while visiting a nearby hill for the view of the countryside, he happened on the tomb of the *qalandar* and had it destroyed, since the tomb of a heretic sufi was not a fitting monument for such a lovely spot, where he then sat and enjoyed some *majun*.

Heresy offended his aesthetic as well as his religious sensibilities,

⁴ BN-M, f. 219a.

⁵ Ibid., f. 220b.

⁶ BN-M, f. 218a.

⁷ For the Kafirs see George Scott Robertson, *Kafirs of the Hindu Kush* (London: Lawrence and Bullen, 1896), and Rudyard Kipling's fictional rendition in his short story *The Man Who Would be King*.

and like many religious men Babur was more offended by heretics than by unbelievers. Yet he seems to have been more than just a little bit hypocritical when he invoked religion to justify the slaughter of so many Bajauri men—their captive women and children were soon released with the surviving male prisoners. From the time he arrived in Kabul Babur treated Afghans far more ruthlessly than he did his Turkic and Mongol enemies in Ferghanah. He regularly slaughtered Afghans who either attacked or resisted him, memorializing his hostility with the minarets of skulls that dotted the countryside. When he describes the Bajauris as “ignorant, wretched people,” for refusing his first demand to surrender their fort, he expresses himself with the same visceral contempt used to characterize other Afghans, some of whom he later ridicules for their lack of knowledge of etiquette, as “rustic and stupid.”⁸

The Dilahzak Afghans of Bajaur are also implicitly ridiculed when Babur describes their contemptuous reaction to the firearms he and his men brought to this siege. This is the first time in his narrative Babur mentions using guns. These *tufang* were evidently matchlocks whose use had spread rapidly east from the Ottoman-Iranian borderlands. Venetians sent firearms to northwestern Iran to the Turkic Aq Quyunlu enemies of the Ottomans in the late fifteenth century. They may have spread further east then—and perhaps with even greater speed following the Ottoman use of firearms when they shattered the Safavid army at the battle of Chaldiran in 1514.⁹ Firearms had already been used in India in the Deccan and Gujarat, but Babur’s firearms advisor was Ustad ‘Ali Quli, who by evidence of the subsequent narrative was seen as the expert in *Rumi* or Ottoman weapons and tactics, later in India advising on battle formations and building Babur a powerful mortar.¹⁰

At Bajaur Ustad ‘Ali Quli killed five men with his matchlocks and also twice used another weapon known simply as a *lAirangi*,

⁸ BN-M, 262b.

⁹ John E. Woods mentions the Venetian dispatch of firearms to the Aq Quyunlu in his revised and expanded edition of Vladimir Minorsky’s translation of the late fifteenth century chronicle of the Aq Quyunlu by Fazlullah b. Ruzbihan Khunji (Isfahan!), *Tdnkh-i ‘Alam-Ard-yi Amini* John E. Woods ed. with the abridged English translation by Vladimir Minorsky, *Persia in A.D. 1478-1490*, Annex II “The Aq Quyunlu and Firearms,” and Postscriptum, 99-100.

¹⁰ See Yar Muhammad Khan in “Barud,” EI2, 1, 1068.

from “French” a word signifying in the Islamic world simply “European,” but in this case very likely indicating a cannon of some kind. This may have been the same type of weapon Shah Tahmasp, the Safavid Shah of Iran, used in a 1528-29 battle that Persian sources identify as a *tup-i Farangi* or “European cannon.” The weapon Babur used fired *Farangi lash’p* “Farangi stones,” and Ustad ‘Ali used it in Babur’s campaigns in India, including the eastern Indian campaign in late spring 1529, when it sank some small boats.¹¹ In 1519 however, and even during the remainder of his life such weapons were still a novelty, as can be seen from Babur’s interest in commenting specially on their use. There is no evidence to show that either matchlocks or artillery were a crucial factor in any of his battles. At this stage in their development guns were probably more reliable for stationary targets—men on ramparts as at Bajaur or prisoners such as those he ordered Ustad ‘Ali Quli and his matchlockmen to kill in March 1526 on the way to confront Ibrahim Lodi.¹² In 1519 Babur and his men still hunted with bows and arrows,¹³ just as archers and cavalymen still decided the fate of empires in Central Asia and northern India in the early sixteenth century.

After his Yusufzai marriage, Babur recalls that he and some of his men began thinking of crossing the Indus and riding further east to Bherah, located on the Jhelum river in the northwestern Panjab. His account of the decision to do so is presented in an elliptical way, mixing passive and active tenses that may reflect the confusion of motives at the time and his later impulse to present this as a coherent plan to invade India. Three factors that influenced Babur’s decision are obvious from his narrative and none of them involved systematic conquest at this time. These were first, that after Bajaur he badly needed supplies. Second, he had intended to raid across the Indus as early as 1505, and now had both motive and opportunity. Then, finally, the member of a ruling lineage near Bherah named Langar Khan provided the immediate catalyst by persuading Babur to march. Nothing in the narrative indicates that

¹¹ BN-M, f. 371b. G. N. Pant in *Mughal Weapons in the Babur-nama* (Delhi: Agam Kala Prakashan, 1989) suggests that the *Farangi* was some kind of swivel-gun. See Chapter 6, 149-81 for his discussion of firearms.

¹² BN-M, f. 263a.

¹³ BN-M, f. 222b.

he initially crossed the Indus in 1519 as part of a definite plan to defeat the then Afghan rulers of Delhi and Agra.

Thus while Babur begins discussing the Bherah expedition by writing “since coming to Kabul we had thought of a *yurush*, an Indian campaign..,”¹⁴ in saying this he is probably alluding only to his plan in January 1505 to raid across the Indus, which he also describes as *ayurush*. It is obvious from his comments that the 1519 expedition to Bherah was initially like the one planned in 1505, no more than another raid for supplies. Babur says precisely this in his narrative, remarking that after four months in and around Bajaur they had gotten virtually nothing, and he hoped to recoup the situation with a quick strike across the Indus. Later in the narrative he also indicates that the idea for the expedition to Bherah had not even been his, but that Langar Khan, whose maternal uncles ruled the hill country some fifteen miles north of Bherah, had been “the instigator and cause of these expeditions.”¹⁵ After taking Bherah, Babur rewarded Langar Khan, or Langar Khan Niazaï with a Turco-Mongol yak tail standard, one more sign of the lingering influence of Mongol military traditions, even poorly understood ones, in late-Timurid armies. Babur also granted Langar Khan the nearby district of Khushab, which was quite likely this Afghan’s goal in suggesting the expedition in the first place. He does not say when Langar Khan had joined him or suggested this expedition, but he may have come to Babur when he heard about his conquest of Bajaur. If any further proof were needed about the ad hoc quality of the Bherah campaign, Babur himself supplies it when he reports that when the idea of crossing the Indus was first raised, some of his men objected, saying they were unprepared. They reminded him that part of their forces remained in Kabul while other men garrisoned Bajaur, and still others had already left to ride back west to Lamghanat because they had no fodder for their horses. Yet his force still set off in mid-February, even though many of its horses were too emaciated to go further.¹⁶

However, just after recounting the reasons for this trans-Indus expedition Babur unexpectedly remarks that he and his men now decided to assert sovereignty over Bherah and three other nearby

¹⁴ BN-M, f. 222a.

¹⁵ BN-M, f. 229b.

¹⁶ BN-M, fs. 222a-b.

districts “long held by the Turks,” in fact, continuously ruled since Timur’s invasion of 1398 by descendants of Timur’s appointed local rulers.¹⁷ Perhaps Babur did begin to entertain *mulkgirliq* or imperialist ambitions as he rode down into the Panjab. At this point in his narrative he suddenly changes the terminology he uses to characterize this campaign. He ceases to refer to it as an Indian *chapqun* or *yurush*, a raid or expedition, and talks instead about the conquest of India. “Since there had always been an idea of *almaq*—taking (seizing)” India—Babur writes again in passive tense before shifting to first person plural—“we thought of the territories of Bherah, Khushab and Chenab which had been possessions of the Turk, like our own territory.”¹⁸ Perhaps Babur had thought of “taking” or “conquering” India years earlier, prompted by his seizure of Kabul and knowledge of Timur’s Indian campaign. It is an idea that would probably have occurred to any Timurid confined to a petty, impoverished, unpacified territory in eastern Afghanistan. Seizing Bherah itself may well have occurred to Babur as early as 1504, because one of the descendants of the Timurid governors of the district visited Babur in Kabul in late 1504 to “enter his service.”¹⁹ Given the many relatives who had a claim to rule Bherah in the early sixteenth century, it is possible that this man, Yar-Husayn, had invited Babur to take the district on his behalf, just as Langar Khan may have done in 1519.²⁰

Whatever the tricks of his memory, Babur reports that he now began acting like a presumptive sovereign, and the first phase of the foundation of the Timurid-Mughul empire of Delhi and Agra may be dated to the moment in 1519 when he decided to tax rather than pillage Bherah. As he and his men approached the town he sent messengers ahead, ordering that no *talon u taray* no sacking or plundering, should occur. His restraint was then made easier by the fact that the *arbablar*, the dignitaries of the town came out to offer a present and their respects. After the massacre at Bajaur and his earlier history of slaughtering Afghans, the peaceful occupation of Bherah was a startling change. It probably reflects not only his

¹⁷ BN-M, fs. 223b & 224b.

¹⁸ BN-M, f. 223b. The other two towns were located forty to fifty miles to the southwest and south of Bherah.

¹⁹ BN-M, f. 145a.

²⁰ See fs. 224b-25a where Babur discusses the Timurid governors of Bherah.

newly articulated ambition but also the relative ease of subjugating the peasantry and merchants on the flat, alluvial Panjab plain, a geography and population that more nearly resembled Ferghanah than the mountainous terrain and fractious inhabitants of the Kabul region. Thus instead of plundering the inhabitants, on February 22, 1519 Babur spoke with the dignitaries and *chaudhuns* or accountants of the district, and demanded that the people of Bherah should pay 400,000 *shahrukhis* as *mdl-i aman*, essentially an indemnity or kind of protection money. Timur himself used this term during his campaigns when promising to spare cities from being sacked.²¹ ShibanT Khan had levied the same charge on Harat, or at least on some wealthy Harat citizens. Perhaps even the people of Bherah appreciated the distinction between having their town torn to pieces and this extortionate revenue demand made in late winter, months before the spring harvest. Not surprisingly, given the season, Babur found it difficult to realize this sum, and had to assign four of his senior commanders to go about the districts collecting the money.

Bherah was a frontier district of the Afghan Ludi state of Agra and Delhi, which Babur now formally claimed; in 1504 Sikandar Ludi's name had been read in the *khutbah* the Friday prayer, in the town. While camping in the hills near Bherah to avoid the spring floods then just beginning to inundate the Panjab plains, Babur sent a goshawk and message to the recently enthroned Sultan Ibrahim via his governor of Lahore, Daulat Khan. In it and presumably also in the accompanying oral instructions he mentions, Babur demanded the provinces that had formerly "been dependent on the Turk."²² By keeping his emissary at Lahore and sending him back after a few days without a reply, the Ludis inspired more of Babur's oft-expressed contempt for Afghans. Recalling these events and writing with the hindsight of his later victory over Ibrahim Ludi, Babur remarks that "the people and especially the Afghans have astonishingly poor judgement; they are a people devoid of prudence and wisdom."²³ The Ludis, Babur explains, neither mobilized to oppose him nor attempted to establish friendly relations, a

²¹ See H. R. Roemer, "Timur in Iran," CHI 6, p. 54.

²² BN-M, f. 226b.

²³ BN-M, f. 226b.

comment that seems likely to have been part of Babur's overall ex post facto justification for his later invasion and defeat of Ibrahim Ludi at Panipat in April 1526.

The Ludi state, the Sultanate of Delhi and Agra that Babur now began claiming as a "Turk," that is as a Timurid, was the north Indian kingdom founded in 1451 by Bahlul Ludi (r. 1451-89), a member of the lineage of the Afghan Khilji confederation. Afghans had been migrating to northwestern and northern India for at least four or five centuries before Babur's arrival on the scene. Given the relative poverty of their homelands, they were naturally attracted by the agricultural and commercial wealth of the subcontinent and the possibility for employment in the armies of Indo-Muslim states.²⁴ Military employment gave them access to power and position, which allowed the LudTs and their allies to exploit the fragmented politics of northern and central India that were partly and most immediately the legacy of Timur's destructive invasion and sack of Delhi in 1398. The Ludis first emerged as heirs of the shattered Sultanate of Delhi.

Bahlul LudT's early campaigns were directed at establishing his authority within a hundred miles of his capital, but by the 1480's he had established a kind of suzerainty over a territory extending from the Panjab to Jaunpur in the central Gangetic valley. Ruling as a *primus inter pares* among his Afghan kin, Bahlul Ludi was evidently as popular as he was successful. Nonetheless, the state he founded was essentially a decentralized patchwork of family land grants or appanages, reminiscent of late Timurid Mawarannahr. Still his third son Sikandar (r. 1489-1517) was able to emerge from the internecine struggles that followed his father's death and, after defeating his elder brother, the governor of Jaunpur, establish

²⁴ Apart from Babur's eyewitness account, the next most valuable sources of information for Afghans are the late sixteenth century texts, the *Akbar namah* and *AFi-i Akbari*. Otherwise evidence for Afghan migrations and history from the tenth to the sixteenth century is based almost entirely upon either oral traditions/linguistic evidence and Persian-language histories written in the seventeenth century or later. For two accessible modern accounts that utilize these materials see Rita Joshi, *The Afghan Nobility and the Mughals 1526-1707* (Delhi: Vikas Publishing House, 1985), and Awadh Bihari Pandey, *The First Afghan Empire in India (1451-1526)* (Calcutta: Bookland Ltd., c. 1956). For a discussion of Afghan involvement in Indian commercial, military and political affairs at a later period see Jos J. L. Gommans, *The Rise of the Indo-Afghan Empire c. 1710-1780* (Leiden: Brill, 1995).

himself as Sultan of Delhi. He was successful in expanding the LudT kingdom as far as Bengal and, using Agra as a base, sought to extend his control to Gwalior and Malwa in north-central India. His son, Ibrahim (r.1517-26), seems to have consciously sought to transform the LudT kingdom from an Afghan oligarchy to a centralized despotism, as was signaled by his treatment of his Afghan *amirs* more as subjects than compatriots, declaring, it is said, that a “ruler ought to have no kin.”²⁵ The resentment of his increasingly draconian rule led many Afghans to rebel against his rule. It was one such prominent figure, Daulat Khan Yusuf Khayl Ludi, who was governor of Lahore when Babur captured Bherah in 1519, who five years later in 1524 was to turn to Babur for an alliance against Ibrahim in Delhi.

In March 1519, however, Babur does not seem to have made any plans for another Indian campaign, much less a frontal attack on the LudT state. After appointing one of his Ferghanah officers, Hindu Beg Qauchin, to govern Bherah, Babur and his men indulged in a typical post-combat series of wine and *majun* parties. These began on Saturday March 5th, a day after he received news of the birth of his third son Hind-al (the “taking of Hind”), named to commemorate the seizure of Bherah, using the same verb *almaq* he employed to characterize the Bherah campaign. If nothing else this naming foreshadowed the larger ambitions he had formulated by this time. Partying continued with brief interruptions for appointments to govern Bherah and Ghenab.²⁶

On Saturday morning he and his men set out for an “amusement” or “excursion.” Taking a small boat they began drinking *araq*, some type of distilled liquor, although by late afternoon Babur and his companions at one end of the boat had switched to *majun*. Drinking continued late into the evening when they finally returned to camp, two riders joking in a way that only seems really funny when intoxicated, “On a dark night we took turns carrying the jug.”²⁷ The drinking continued into the early morning, marred by disputes between *araq* drinkers and those who preferred *majun*, the memory of which prompts Babur to utter another truism, perhaps more *nasihat* or sage advice for his sons. By 1519 his two eldest sons,

²⁵ Azimdzhanova, *Gosudarstvo Babura v Kabule i v Indii*, 104.

²⁶ Hind-al: al- from the verb *almaq*, to take, seize or conquer.

²⁷ BN-M, f. 227b.

Humayun and Kamran, sometimes attended these gatherings.²⁸ Babur writes: “A *majun subatf* (a *majun* gathering) never goes well with an *araq* and *chair subati* (an *araq* or wine gathering).”²⁹ Eventually the party became “disgusting” and dissolved into an undisciplined uproar.

A similar “gathering” took place the following Thursday, March 10th, after which Babur says that he rode back into camp so drunk that he remembered nothing except that he vomited at his tent. His men told him, reports Babur, that he galloped into the camp carrying a torch. This incident is faithfully reproduced in a miniature painting done for the Persian translation of the *Vaqai* in the atelier that Babur’s grandson, Akbar, established.³⁰ The painter’s choice of this scene, one of a fairly limited number chosen from the myriad of possibilities in the text, raises a number of probably unanswerable questions about late sixteenth century Timurid court culture and the relationship of art to a text that was revered by Babur’s descendants. If it is true, as is commonly believed about the Timurid-Mughul court, that “The emperor’s tastes and wishes determined all artistic production and the monarch-patron imposed his views and favorite subjects on artists...,” then it has to be assumed that Babur’s grandson, Akbar, personally approved the inclusion of this scene.³¹ Still, it is impossible to say whether its inclusion reflects Akbar’s sense of humor or stems from more complex and subtle motives.

Miniature painters commonly depict drunken revelers—as when the Harat artist Bihzad painted scenes of dissolute indulgence in Husayn Bayqara’s court—and on occasion rulers were even known publicly to exhibit a sense of humor—as the Safavid Shah Tahmasp does in his own painting of members of his household staff.³² Still, it is rare, not to say unheard of, for descendants of rulers to indulge

²⁸ BN-M, f. 247a.

²⁹ Ibid., f. 227b.

³⁰ British Library, Oriental Ms. 3714 [c. 1590] f. 314r.

³¹ Amina Okada, *Indian Mughal Miniatures of the Mughal Court* Deke Dusinberre trans. (New York, N.Y.: Henry Abrams, 1992), 15.

³² For alcohol and drinking see Bihzad’s paintings in Bahari’s work, *Bihzad*, “A Celebration at the Court of Sultan Husayn Mirza,” 102-03. Stuart Cary Welch discusses Shah Tahmasp’s artistic sense of humor in *A King’s Book of Kings, The Shah Nameh of Shah Tahmasp* (London: Thames and Hudson, 1972), p. 61, figure 14.

in humor at the expense of their revered ancestors. At least the portrayal of Babur's drunken return to camp suggests that Akbar at least appreciated the humanity of his grandfather, during the period in which Akbar's court chronicler, Abu'l Fazl, had already begun the process of transforming the human Babur of the *Vaqai* into the proto-Alexander of his hagiographic history the *Akbar namah*.

After describing two more days of drinking Babur remarks that the hot season was about to begin, a comment evidently meant to explain why he and his men left Bherah on March 13th to return to Kabul. As he and his men marched toward the Indus they defeated one group of Afghans whose leader had become, according to their enemies, an "evil man" and a highway robber.³³ Babur's description makes this attack sound like the kind of pacification in which local lineages used him to settle historic enmities, a recurring feature of outside interference in Afghan politics. As he approached and crossed the Indus he left behind him a narrow swath of territory ruled by his appointees or newly subdued local lineages who represented resurgent Timurid power in the Panjab. Yet, the fragility of his power was quickly demonstrated, for as soon as Babur left the area the Afghans and other landholders in and around Bherah threw off their enforced allegiance and expelled Babur's governor of Bherah, Hindu Beg.³⁴ This news reached him about three weeks after he arrived in Kabul at the end of March, where he was greeted by his sons Humayun and Kamran, and immediately began another drinking party that lasted until April 6th, when his longtime Andijan warrior companion Dust Beg, died of a fever.

Between Empires: Intoxication and Pacification

After interrupting his narrative with an account of Dust Beg's heroic deeds—in battles with Sultan Ahmad Tambal, the Uzbeks before Tashkent, Mongol "rebels" in Kabul and most recently the victory at Bajaur—Babur's history of the next six months is largely

³³ BN-M, f. 229b.

³⁴ BN-M, f. 235b.

given over to descriptions of drinking parties and punitive raids against nearby Afghan lineages. He does not even allude to the Ludis during his account of the remainder of events of 1519, so it seems unlikely he was preoccupied with plans for the conquest of India during this time. In any event, with the Afghan resurgence at Bherah he had lost his principal base in the Panjab, as well as a valuable source of revenue, although he seems to have retained control over a trans-Indus district known as Qarluq.³⁵ Still he is likely to have come away from the Bherah expedition not only with a now fully conscious ambition to establish Timurid rule in the Panjab but also with a realistic sense of the weakness of Ludi authority in the western Panjab and an appreciation for the agricultural wealth of the Panjab plains, where he had probably raised more revenue in a few weeks than he could extort from Afghans in several years or more. As he indicates in subsequent comments, this was wealth worth fighting for.

These 1519 pages have the quality of a diary, in which the entries list dates and briefly summarize events in quick succession, often with little comment or explanation. Thus after describing Dust Beg's heroics he mentions that on 13 May 1519 Sultanim Begim, Husayn Mirza Bayqara's eldest daughter, arrived to take up residence in Kabul—one of many signs that Babur's state, however modest, had become a haven for Timurid refugees. The next entry is 18 April when Babur says he pardoned one Baba Shaykh, one of those who rebelled against him in Ghazni in 1516.³⁶ Two days later Babur mentions that he and companions rode out of Kabul for the spring of Khwajah Sih-Yaran near Istalif, north of Kabul, but stopped first at a *qaz* s house in Bihzad, a cleric who objected to their plans for a drinking party in his home. On the 21st of April they reached the spring, where Babur had constructed a garden when he first arrived in Kabul. Three days later, after planting saplings around the spring they held a drinking party. According to his entry for the next day, April 25th, they rode back to Kabul quite drunk. On April 26th, he notes, Hindu Beg, his recently

³⁵ Babur mentions receiving submission of the chieftains of Qarluq on his return to Kabul from Bhera. Qarluq was a district between the Indus and Bherah given to Humayun but governed by Muhammad 'Ali Jang Jang. BN-M, f. 231a-b & 238a.

³⁶ TR-T, fs. 203b-204a.

appointed governor of Bherah, arrived to announce that the inhabitants had rebelled and forced him to abandon the town as soon as Babur had left. Then on April 30th, Babur reports, he came down with a severe fever, which may explain why he records no more events until May 15th

Babur's abbreviated entries convey something of the rhythm of his life at this period, and his descriptions of punitive and raiding expeditions sent out against different Afghan tribes or clans also serve as reminders of the difficulties of pacifying Afghanistan and using it as an economic and political base. In contrast to Bherah, where peasants were undoubtedly used to paying tribute or taxes to the paramount power in the Panjab, many and perhaps most Afghans never willingly conceded Babur's authority, or that of his descendants. When looking back at this period from the perspective of his Indian conquest, Babur discusses his problems with the perennially troublesome Bangash Afghans in the Kabul gazetteer. His account reminds readers of his earlier dismissal of Andijan's importance when the prize of Samarqand seemed within reach. Babur says of this mountainous region due south of the Jalalabad-Khybar road.

Bangash is another *tuman* [of Kabul]. The area round about is full of Afghan highway robbers such as the Khugiam, KhirilchT, Turl and Landar. Since it is isolated they do not pay the desired revenue. As greater tasks such as the conquest of Qandahar, Balkh, Badakhshan and Hindustan occupied me, there has been no opportunity to subjugate Bangash.³⁷

In fact, neither Babur's Timurid-Mughul descendants nor any later South Asian, Afghan or European power managed to subdue Bangash either.

Babur's perennial problems with Afghans may have been one of the reasons why he forcibly resettled pastoral nomads from northern Afghanistan in the Kabul region, that is to provide a supply of mounts and food for his men. Some of these *Turk ve Aymaq*, Turkic and Mongol tribes, had been brought to Kabul fifteen years earlier, and sometime before 1519 more 4)²²W^S had been forced or persuaded to settle there. The lack of pasturage, however, made them restless and they were finally given permission to return north of

³⁷ BN-M, f. 139b. See also f. 132a, where Babur mentions the Khirilchi robbers—and distinguishes them from Afghans.

the mountains to Qunduz and neighboring regions.³⁸ Having allowed them to return in July, Babur resumed his pacification campaigns with an attack on the ‘Abd al-Rahman Afghans of Gardez, about sixty miles due south of Kabul and forty-five miles east of Ghazni, in fact almost due west of Bangash. His account exemplifies the effort, expense and long-term consequences of such punitive raids and explains why in most instances an ambitious Timurid simply couldn’t be bothered to pacify these regions. Using *chapquncito* to describe his “raiders” and both *chapqun* and *yurush* to characterize this expedition, Babur writes that these Afghans were

“poorly behaved and remiss in their tribute. Passing caravans were injured by them. On Wednesday the 29th of Rajab [28 July 1519] a raid against the Afghans was begun. Dismounting at the Waghchan defile, we ate and mounted shortly after mid-day prayer. At night we lost the road and became very disoriented in the hill country south east of Panjab-i Shahnah. After a time we came on to the road [and] crossing the Ghasm-i turah pass in the direction of Gardez [and] an attack was launched from the summit to the plain at the [time of] morning prayer. One group raided toward Karmash mountain, which is southwest of Gardez. Leading the right wing Khusrau Mirza Quli and Sayyid ‘Ali were sent in behind those raiders. Most of the army raided straight up the valley to the east of Gardez with the rear led by Sayyid Qasim, Lord of the Gate, Mir Shah Qauchin, Hindu Beg, Qutluq-Qadam and Husayn. As most of the army was raiding up the valley I rode after them.

There were men far up in the valley. The horses of the contingent that went up the valley pulled up so these men gained nothing. Having seen forty or fifty Afghans on foot the army’s rear guard set off in their direction [and] sent a messenger to me. I too rode quickly. As I came up Husayn Hasan impetuously and foolishly charged off alone. Getting amidst the Afghans he used the sword. Then they shot his horse. As he stood up they shot at his legs [and] attacked with knives from all sides, and cut him to pieces. The warriors stood by and failed to help.

Hearing this news the leading *chki begs*, Gada’i Tagha’i, Payindah Muhammad Quplan, Abu’l Hasan Qurchi and Mu’min Atekeh and the *yigitler* were sent galloping forward. I myself hurriedly followed. Before anyone else Mu’min Atekeh struck an Afghan with his sword, beheading him. Abu’l Hasan Qurchi also went bravely forward with out armor, dividing the Afghans, pushing his horse ahead, struck an Afghan and beheaded him. He himself received three wounds. His

³⁸ BN-M, f. 237b.

horse received a wound. Payindah Muhammad Quplan also rode bravely forward, struck an Afghan and took his head. Although the bravery of Abu'l Hasan Muhammad and Payindah Muhammad Quplan had been evident earlier, it was even more apparent in the work of this *yurush*. By arrow or sword about forty or fifty Afghans were cut to pieces. After killing these Afghans we dismounted in a meadow where the heads of these Afghans were piled into a minaret

Those *begs* who had ridden with Husayn arrived. Enraged and contemptuous I said: 'How could so many men look on while a few Afghans on foot on an absolutely level plain seize such a warrior (*yigit*). You should be cashiered, driven from [your] *parganahs* and districts, your beards cut, paraded in towns like criminals. Anyone who stands quietly by not lifting a hand while such a warrior is assaulted on level ground will suffer retribution.'³⁹

Babur remembered that after reproaching his men—whom he did cashier after he returned to Kabul on July 31st—some others returned from successfully stealing some sheep and other plunder from nearby villages. Starting back for Kabul the next day he ordered a few of his men to get, evidently to *buy* pheasants from people along the way while he and others went sight-seeing to the Rustam plain where he saw the *pushkdl*, the monsoon clouds piled up on the eastern-southeastern side of the mountains.⁴⁰ His allusion to the monsoons is an evocative reference to the transition he was now making in 1519 from a Central Asian to a South Asian ruler. He may have thought to mention seeing the dramatic monsoon clouds in 1519 because when he was writing this passage in 1527 or 1528 as a ruler in Agra, he would have well understood the significance of the monsoon—for climate, campaigns and perhaps most of all because of his own sharply deteriorating health.

The course of this sloppy but bloody little raid offers another reminder of the realities of “pacification” and state building in Afghanistan, lessons that Babur’s descendants, not to speak

³⁹ BN-M, fs. 238a-239a.

⁴⁰ BN-M, f. 239b. *Pushkal* is a Hindi word for the rainy season, whose approach is normally manifested in June or July by the massive build up of rain-laden cumulus clouds sweeping off the Arabian Sea. The clouds arrive in the northeastern Afghan region in June or July from the east after striking the Himalayas. The early British envoy to Kabul, Mounstuart Elphinstone, describes the extent to which the monsoons affected the eastern Afghan region in his report, *An Account of the Kingdom of Caubul and Its Dependencies in Persia, Tartary and India*, 130-31. A scientific report on the Afghan monsoons is available in Lennart Edelberg and Schuyler Jones, *Nuristan* (Graz, Austria: Akademische Druck- u. Verlagsanstalt, 1979), 25-28.

of British and Soviet armies in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, learned to their cost. By slaughtering Afghans in Gardez and stealing their sheep and goods Babur may have briefly cowed but also certainly enraged Afghan clans in the area. Raids on caravans may have stopped for a time, but Babur doesn't claim he achieved this goal, and since he left no detachments behind to enforce his will in this area so close to Kabul, the long-term effect of this raid was probably negligible. Trying to subdue eastern Afghanistan with the few thousand men under his command was a Sisyphean task, with almost yearly raids necessary to enforce his will in the absence of more troops who could garrison the innumerable narrow valleys on either side of the Kabul-Ghazni road. The British found it no easier four and a half centuries later with more troops and resources at their command. If Babur had developed a systematic plan for periodic punitive raids, he neither mentions it nor gives implicit evidence of such a coherent but probably impossibly demanding and expensive scheme. Most raids seem to have been ad hoc decisions, sometimes to repress Afghan attacks, sometimes to steal food, often a combination of both motives. As Babur suggests from his early comments about the Kabul region, he knew that this area could not be a viable basis for an empire. That had to be resuscitated in the plains and cities of Mawarannahr or in the extraordinarily wealthy South Asian fertile crescent that stretched in an arc from the lower Indus northeast to the Panjab and then southeast down the Ganges valley.

Babur's narrative of events from 31st of July until the 24th of January 1520, when his text once again breaks off, this time for five years until January 1525, represents an autobiographical continuation of the earlier part of the year. It is a diary-like narrative of pleasure outings interrupted or combined with punitive raids and/or foraging expeditions against various Afghan tribes. Babur had failed to intimidate most Afghans, apart from the Dilahzaks, some of whom Babur had terrorized into cooperation following his earlier attack and massacre at Bajaur. So after a series of wine and *majun* parties in August, Babur set off eastwards at the urging of his new Dilahzak allies on September 8th to attack the Yusufzais at the confluence of the Swat and Kabul rivers just east of the Khybar pass. As was true of so many of these punitive and plundering raids this one ended inconclusively. In fact it even began badly, when Babur dislocated his thumb as he angrily struck his groom for the

careless way in which he brought Babur's horse.⁴¹ He evidently reports this incident because, as he writes later, it left him unable to write for a month, not because he was embarrassed for losing his temper.⁴² Then as his small force approached the Khybar the Yusufzais, warned of his approach, fled, leaving behind less than one-quarter of the grain his Dilahzak allies had said he would find there.⁴³

By now it was early October and having failed to gain much from the Yusufzais, Babur consulted with his *begs*. They decided to raid the nearby Afridi Afghans and to provision Peshawar just east of the Khybar with the animals and grain they seized, perhaps thinking of using Peshawar fort as a staging base for future raids into India. However, before he and his men could act on this plan a messenger arrived with news from Badakhshan that the province had been invaded by the Chaghatay Mongol ruler of Mughulistan and the Alt! Shahr country, Haydar Mirza's uncle, Sultan Sa'id Khan.⁴⁴ This was the Mongol kinsman whose service Haydar Mirza had joined after leaving Babur in Hisar in 1512. After another conference Babur and his men decided to abandon the idea of provisioning Peshawar, return to Kabul and march north to Badakhshan. They evidently made the decision with the idea of reinforcing his cousin, Ways Mirza, who was then fighting to hold his territory between the Uzbeks to the west and north and the Mongols in Kashgar and the Alt! Shahr to the east.⁴⁵

After marching back though the Khybar, though, Babur decided that while waiting for more news from Badakhshan he would raid the Khizr-Khel Afghans, who had been harassing his troops and stealing their horses. Moving into the nearby hills he and his men captured mainly animals and small children, but enough evidently to prompt the nearby Waziri Afghans, who, Babur remarks, had

⁴¹ BN-M, f. 242a.

⁴² BN-M, f. 245a.

⁴³ BN-M, f. 243a.

⁴⁴ BN-M, f. 244a. On the basis of Babur's report the invasion must have occurred nearly a year earlier. By the time Babur received the news the Khan was evidently back in Kashgar. Ibid., 246a. It was as an agent of the Sa'id Khan that Haydar Mirza later invaded Kashmir in 1531, a territory he reoccupied permanently in 1540 following Humayun's defeat.

⁴⁵ Haydar Mirza, who was in Central Asia at this time provides details of the events surrounding Sultan Sa'id Khan's invasion, and indicates it was not so much a full scale invasion as a boundary dispute. TR-T, fs. 202a-203a.

never before given satisfactory *pishkish* or tribute, to now offer 300 sheep. This raid also persuaded some chieftains of the Khilji and Samu Khel tribes to submit to Babur, who by now, October 9, 1519, was once again able to write. "We pardoned their offenses," Babur reports, [and] "a levy of four thousand sheep was fixed, the "great men" were robed, collectors were appointed [and] sent out."⁴⁶ Despite the typically ad hoc quality of this expedition Babur had succeeded in marginally extending his authority, although from both the WazirT and the Khilji he was still collecting *mal*, property or in this case flocks, as *pishkish* or tribute rather than *kharaj*, a term he consistently uses elsewhere to indicate land revenue or other regular taxes. It is extremely rare for him to mention that he demanded or collected actual coin from Afghans. An exception occurred in late December 1519 when he reports collecting sixty *alfins* or gold coins from a *Tajik* village in Nijrao district, northeast of Kabul just below Kafiristan.⁴⁷ However, these villagers must have been merchants to have possessed such wealth in hard currency.

Concern for Badakhshan now disappears from the narrative, probably because Babur had learned that Sultan Said Khan had withdrawn after asserting Mongol border claims on the Badakhshan frontiers with Kashgar. Instead, Babur devotes the remainder of his account of the year 1519 to recollections of what he remembered most fondly about Kabul, "gatherings" in the gardens and mountain valleys with his companions. Thus immediately after settling with the Khilji, he and his men rode to the garden he had constructed in 1508-09 at Adinapur, about seventy miles due east of Kabul.⁴⁸ Babur's engaging description of their sojourn of three or four days in the *Bagh-i Vafa* garden is one of innumerable testimonials to his appreciation of the beauty of nature, here of

⁴⁶ BN-M, f. 245a. Babur does not use the term "*khilat*" here, although he evidently is describing the common practice of ceremonial robing.

⁴⁷ BN-M, fs. 248b-249a.

⁴⁸ Babur says Adinapur was located some 13 *yigach* east of Kabul. The *yigach* is an imprecise measurement equal to somewhere between four to eight miles. The road from Kabul twists and turns on its way east so the actual distance may be closer to somewhere between eighty to ninety miles. Babur says that the road was so bad it was impossible to cover the distance in a day, whereas one could leave Kabul in the morning and arrive in Ghazni in the afternoon, although it was 14j_{pzg6zr/z} distant. BN-M, f. 137b. For a careful discussion of various measures see BN-A, 667-68.

course nature carefully contrived. His account also documents the practical use of these gardens as sources of food and beyond that as experimental agricultural stations, a tradition of scientific garden cultivation in the Perso-Islamic world that was already well-established before Babur's time in a number of sources, such as treatise of the polymath minister of the Ilkhanid Mongols of Iran, Rashid al-Dm.⁴⁹

"It was one of the *Bagh-i Vafa's* beautiful seasons," Babur writes:

The lawns were covered in clover. The sear leaves of pomegranate trees were intensely yellow. The pomegranates on the trees were bright red. The orange trees were green and fresh with innumerable oranges on the trees, but the oranges were less ripe than was desired. These pomegranates were good, but not as good as those of our homelands [*vildyatlar*]. On this occasion we were well-contented with the Bagh-i Vafab

On Monday [October 17th] we left the garden. I remained there until first watch [9 a.m.] [and] distributed some oranges. The oranges of two trees were presented to Shah Hasan. Some *begs* received the oranges of one tree; some others [divided] the oranges of one tree [between them]. As there was a thought of visiting Lamghan in the winter I ordered about twenty orange trees around the pool to be held in reserve.⁵⁰

In the spring of 1524 Babur brought bananas and sugar cane from India to be planted in the *Bdgh-i Vafa* and later sent some of the sugar cane on to Badakhshan, probably to Humayun who was then governing the province.⁵¹

Several drinking parties were held during the next two days as Babur and his men made their way back to Kabul. One of his men, Dust Muhammad Baqir, became so drunk on the evening of the 19th that he couldn't mount his horse, even after water was thrown in his face. Just at that time Afghan raiders appeared, and another of Babur's men jokingly suggested that rather than leaving Dust Muhammad there, they should cut off his head and carry that back

⁴⁹ See A. K. S. Lambton, "The Athar wa ahya of Rashid al-Dm Fadi Allah Hamdan! and His Contribution as an Agronomist, Aboriculturalist and Horticulturalist," in Reuven Amitai-Preiss and David O. Morgan ed., *The Mongol Empire and Its Legacy* (Leiden: Brill, 1999), 126-54.

⁵⁰ BN-M, fs. 245a-b. By early January the oranges in the Bagh-i Vafa? in Adinapur's subcontinental climate were ripe. BN-M., f. 249b.

⁵¹ BN-M, fs. 132a-b.

with them!⁵² Finally the entire drunken contingent mounted and arrived safely back in Kabul where in the following days a certain amount of state business was conducted—the reception of envoys and ceremonial robing and honorable dismissal of Nuham or Luharm Afghan merchants—before spending much of the next month drinking.

Reading about these “gatherings⁵ or “entertainments” not only humanizes Babur and his men, but also acts as a reminder that they represented a kind of social ideal for Babur after he arrived in India. The prominence he gives to them in his narrative for 1519 and early 1520 probably reflects in part at least the powerful nostalgia he felt for his social life in Kabul as he struggled in the enervating Indian climate to subdue the panoply of Muslim and Hindu rulers he encountered in northern India. His desire to be buried in Kabul reflects his memory of this period equally as well as his narrative and poetry. These sessions also convey the sense of the later Kabul years as a pre-imperial interregnum in which comradeship was still largely the norm in his relatively unstructured social milieu that stands in stark, and quite delightful contrast to the highly structured court environment of his great-great-grandson Shah Jahan, the builder of the Taj Mahal.

The sense of this period as a kind of Prince Hal-Falstaff phase of Babur’s life is conveyed most completely in one of the longest single passages in which he describes one of these “entertainments.” It began on November 14, 1519.

On Saturday the eighteenth of the month I saddled [and rode out] from the Chahar Bagh at midnight. I sent the royal guard and the groom back. Crossing Mulla Baba’s bridge I went out by the Diurin narrows [and] going along the kariz [irrigation channel] of Qushnadur and the bazars, behind the bear-house, I arrived at Tardi Beg Khaksar’s house before morning. Learning [of my arrival] Tardi Beg nervously came running out. His petty stinginess was notorious. I had taken 100 *shdhrukhis* with me. I gave[them] to Tardi Beg. I said that he should assemble wine and utensils [as] I fancied having a private and dissolute gathering. Tardi Beg went off toward Bihzad for wine. I gave my horse to one of Tardi Beg’s slaves [and] sat myself down on the embankment alongside the kariz. It was the first watch when Tardi Beg brought a jug of wine. We both set about drinking. Muhammad Qasim Barias and Shahzadah, learning that Tardi Beg

⁵² BN-M, f. 246a.

brought wine, followed Tardi Beg on foot, quite unaware of me. We invited [them] to the gathering. Tardi Beg said that 'Hulhul Anigah wishes to drink wine with you/ I said, 'As for me I have never seen a woman drink; please invite her to the gathering!'⁵³ We also invited a *qalandar* called Shahi and one of the *kanz* men who played the rubab [rebeck]. Sitting on a hill behind the kariz there was drinking until the [time of] the evening prayer. Then after going to Tardi Beg's house, I drank by candlelight until about the [time of] the bed time prayer. It was a friendly sort of gathering.⁵³ I lay down. The others went off to another house till about the time of the *naqdrah*. Hulhul Anigah came [and] made offensive requests. By feigning drunkenness I finally escaped [her].⁵⁴

If Babur really had never seen a woman drink wine before it is a measure of how Timurid society had evolved to become more sedentarized and Islamized than that of Timur himself. When the ambassador from Castile, Clavijo, visited Timur in Samarqand in 1405 he was frequently called to drink and sometimes to drink with Timur's wives. As Clavijo describes one occasion on October 9th, 1405:

Khazadeh, the wife of Miran Shah, Timur's eldest [surviving] son, made a great feast and we were both invited thereto. As we approached her pavilion we noticed that here and there on the ground were set many jars of wine, and of this we all partook later abundantly.... we noticed that Khazadah herself was a princess now some forty years of age: she was of fair complexion and fat. At the feast on the ground before her were set many of those jars of wine already mentioned.... Present sitting near the Princess were many relatives of her highness, and some lords were in attendance, also there were standing in the tent ballad singers who played to their singing an accompaniment on musical instruments. As we came up and were presented the Princess and the company were already drinking wine....⁵⁵

Babur's outing, now without Hui Hui Anigah, who disappears from the narrative as suddenly as she appears, evolved into a moveable feast. First, Babur, Tardi Beg and Shahzadah rode further north to Istalif and Istarghij, two villages about six miles apart in the Kuhl-i Daman valley, about thirty-three miles north-northwest of Ka-

⁵³ The phrase here is: طوربغیل لفیش صحبتی •

⁵⁴ BN-M, fs. 247a-b.

⁵⁵ Clavijo, *Embassy to Tamerlane 1403-1406*, 244-5.

bul.⁵⁶ The climate of this alpine region was so pleasant and the villages themselves were so beautifully situated and endowed with orchards and vineyards that Babur's Timurid uncle, Ulugh Beg Kabuli, referred to them as his "Khurasan and Samarqand,"⁵⁷ a kind of Timurid kingdom in miniature. Babur had evidently visited these two villages soon after he arrived in Kabul, as his detailed description of the gardens he modified or built is included in the Kabul gazetteer section of the text. Babur's lovingly detailed picture of Istalif represents the kind of natural landscape against which he measured Indian topography later in the text. Still, it was nature that needed to be formalized or regulated for maximum aesthetic pleasure, a scene recorded in one of the miniatures that illustrate Akbar's Persian translation of the *Vaqai*. After describing the grapes and fruits that grew all along the *daman* the "piedmont" or slopes of the Pamghan range, he writes:

Few places are known to have a village like Istalif. There are orchards on both sides of the great river flowing through the village [and] small, verdant pleasure gardens. The water is cold; ice is not needed. It is generally pure. In this village is the garden known as *Bdgh-i Kaldn* (the Great Garden) that Ulugh Beg Mirza took by force. Having given its value to its owners I took it. Outside the garden are plane trees. The area beneath the trees is green, shady and pleasant. Flowing constantly in the midst of the garden is a one-mill stream. Along the edge of this *ariq* there are plane trees and other varieties of trees. Previously this stream ran in a *bisiydaq*, (an "irregular" or "disorderly") fashion. I ordered the *ariq* to be made straight and regular. It has become a very fine place.⁵⁸

Within this discussion of the aesthetics of landscape architecture Babur has left another autobiographical signpost for his readers when he mentions that whereas his uncle, Ulugh Beg Kabuli, had seized this land he, Babur, compensated the owners. Contemporaries would have immediately understood the significance of this remark, that Babur was showing himself to be a Muslim ruler who

⁵⁶ This area is described with photographs by Albert Szabo and Thomas J. Barfield, *Afghanistan, an Atlas of Indigenous Domestic Architecture* (Austin, Texas: University of Texas Press, 1991), 197-215.

⁵⁷ BN-M, f. 136b.

⁵⁸ BN-M, f. 136b. Along with *siyaq*, the other word Babur uses for "straight," *rajah*, is found in the common Persian sentence: *yek-rajah dirakht nishandan*, "to plant trees in a straight line."

recognized the sanctity of private property. His offhand, unexplained comment is another indication of the degree to which Timurid society had evolved. In taking this land Ulugh Beg had acted very much like Timur himself when once he drove a new street through a residential district of Samarqand. Certain sayyids, his chess-playing companions perhaps, complained to Timur on behalf of the property owners, and "It is reported that on hearing this Timur waxed wrathful declaring that all the land of the city of Samarqand was his private property, for he had bought the same with his own money, further that he had the title deeds in his possession.... He spoke this with such command of his rights that those sayyids were completely abashed. They were now but too thankful the order had not been given for them all to lose their heads."⁵⁹ Publicly at least, Babur would never have exhibited such behavior.

Having further legitimized his status in Kabul by demonstrating his own *'adalat* or just behavior to the residents of Istalif, Babur also mentions his preference for having nature ordered into geometrical patterns at a spring below Istalif and Istarghij, where he had the spring enclosed in a *siydqtiq ve guiydbiq*, a "regular symmetrical" stone pool overlooking a grove of *arghwan* or Judas trees. In this case too the garden was evidently designed before 1519, as it follows Babur's description of the *Bagh-i Kalan* in the Kabul gazetteer. He recalls his aesthetic delight in geometrically ordered nature once again when describing trees in the *Padshah-i Bagh* the royal or imperial garden near Istarghij in 1519. There he saw an apple tree whose branches all had five or six equally spaced leaves, whose regularity rivaled the painter's art.⁶⁰ Here was nature apparently imitating art, the art of Persian miniature painting with its symmetrically ordered space and unnaturally regular trees.⁶¹ Yet this artistic preference for a mathematically arranged nature itself reflected the precisely ordered Persian-style gardens Babur knew from his youth in Ferghanah, although no landscape gardeners

⁵⁹ Clavijo, *Embassy to Tamerlane 1403-1406*, 279-80.

⁶⁰ BN-M, f. 248a.

⁶¹ See Eleanor Sims discussion of the geometry of Timurid painting in her article, "Painting in Timurid Iran," *Asian Art* 2, 2 (Spring 1989), 62-79. See also below, Chapter 7 and Epilogue, for a discussion of the significance of geometry in Babur's life.

there are known to have bred geometrically symmetrical plants.

Before Babur's text breaks off once again on January 24, 1520 for nearly six years, the remainder of his narrative for December, 1519 and January 1520 is largely given over to a day by day summary of pleasure outings in Kabul and then, in early January 1520, in the warm regions around Adinahpur, where Babur and his companions once more stayed in the *Bagh-i Vafdl* this time for nearly a week. By then the oranges were ripe and the garden lush with greenery, probably owing to the monsoon rains whose clouds he had seen in July. Just after mentioning this visit Babur reports with typical disarming candor that because he had "formed the intention" of *taib* or "returning to God," that is renouncing drink, in his fortieth year, he was now drinking even more as there was only a year left!⁶²

As if to make his point he notes in his next entry, for Sunday, January 7, 1520, that "He took a *sabuhif* or 'dawn-draught,' employing the same phrase he repeatedly uses for what seems to have been a frequent morning drinking ritual."⁶³ Afterwards he "sobered up" and then "chose" *majun*. On Wednesday, still in the *Bagh-i Vafa* Babur writes that "Having taken the dawn-draught it was jokingly said if any one recites like a Sart [an Iranian or Persian speaker] he must drink a cup. As a result many people drank.... [Then] it was said if any person recites like a Turk he must drink an *aydgh*. This time also many people drank a cup."⁶⁴ As the sun rose everyone retreated to the edge of the pool and drank in the shade of the orange trees. The charming idiocy of this scene has a timeless ring of truth in its depiction of silly male drinking bouts, especially those seen in military cultures the world over.

During the next ten days Babur and his men enjoyed more

⁶² BN-M, f. 249b.

⁶³ For *sabuhi* see Dihkhuda, 32, 136-37. The *sabuhi*, or morning drink of wine was known in pre-Islamic times among both Arabs and Iranians. For the Arab tradition see Abdulla el-Tayib, "Pre-Islamic Poetry," in A. F. L. Beeston et al ed., *Arabic Literature to the end of the Umayyad Period* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1983), 44, 81-83 and in the Iranian case Ahmad Saidi ed. and trans., *Ru-ba'iyat of Omar Khayyam*, 57 & 237. The "morning draught" is frequently mentioned in Persian poetry, as in some *ghazals* of Hafiz.

⁶⁴ BN-M, f. 249b. Babur is apparently referring to reciting or chanting poetry. The *aydgh* or cup is likely to have been the shallow porcelain drinking cup still commonly used in Uzbekistan, Turkmenistan etc. which is seen in the miniature paintings from this period.

drinking sessions at homes, gardens or on rafts in the countryside near Adinapur as they moved from Kunar northeast of the town to 'Alishang in the mountains to the northwest. Near Kunar about thirty miles to the northeast they were forced inside by the rain, but, Babur reports without additional comment: "I knew a talisman and taught it to Mulla 'Ali Khan. He wrote it on four pieces of paper and hung it on four sides. That very moment the rain stopped."⁶⁵ His credulity here is striking, considering how often he expresses skepticism about miraculous stories elsewhere in the text. In any case his powerful talisman allowed him and his men to embark on a raft for their "dawn-draught." Afterwards they tried some beer from nearby Bajaur, but it tasted so bad they had *majun* instead.

"Entertainment" followed entertainment in the next few days after which Babur and his men went hunting in the Alishang mountains northwest of Adinapur, where many animals were killed in a typical hunting circle formed by local residents. On their return during yet another "entertainment" in a local *mdlik* or headman's garden, Babur broke off the remaining half of a tooth that had been partly broken earlier. By the time he arrived in India he would have been marked by this gap and the scars of many battle wounds. Then on January 24th, after reciting a *ward*, a section of the Quran read for private worship, Babur and his men started back for Kabul.

Literary Interregnum II

Just as Babur begins describing his march back to Kabul his memoir abruptly breaks off, resuming only on November 17, 1525 as he is leading his army out of the city for the invasion of India that culminated with his victory at Panipat, north of Delhi, on April 20, 1526. No firsthand account exists of Babur's affairs for the intervening period. Haydar Mirza was still serving with his uncle in Kashgar and Babur's daughter, Gulbadan Begim, the author of the *Humdyun namah*, was only born in 1523. Neither writer includes significant information about this period, a contrast to their record

⁶⁵ BN-M, f. 250a.

of earlier and later years when they supplement Babur's text. As is true for earlier gaps in the *Vaqai* Khwandamir is also largely unhelpful, and while Hasan-i Rumlu provides some fragmentary information about Babur's attempt to reoccupy Qandahar, it scarcely compensates for the loss of Babur's detailed narrative.

Thus, even more than the years between 1508-1519 no biographical account is possible for this later gap in his memoirs. Other than imagining how Babur may have matured as an individual, commander and ruler, the gap can only be filled with a brief political narrative and an hypothesis as to how these events are related to his earlier and later life. The connections to the both his political past and his future are obvious enough, partly because Babur had little room for maneuver in the north and west, but increasing opportunities in northwestern India. Uzbek power blocked him from crossing the Amu Darya for another attempt on Samarkand or Ferghanah, and in the west the Safavids, while not viscerally hostile to Timurids as were the Uzbek khans, controlled the Iranian plateau from Tabriz to Khurasan and in 1520 were suzerains of Qandahar, where the Arghuns had precariously reestablished themselves after Babur's 1507 victory by offering fealty to Shibam Khan.⁶⁶ The Ludi Afghans still held northwestern India, but the exceptional brutality of the new Sultan Ibrahim had acted as a catalyst to intensify the factional hostilities of this state composed of semi-autonomous Afghan lineages. Never a very cohesive political structure at any time in its brief history, by 1520 the Ludi state was coming to pieces.

Given Uzbek and Safavid strength, Ludi weakness, the proximity of Kabul to the Panjab and the memory of how easy it had been to extract funds from Bherah in 1519, the geographic logic of Babur's *mulkgirlig* ambitions in 1520 must have been unmistakable. The little that is recorded of his actions between January 1520 and November 1525 suggests that he had consciously developed a defensive strategy in the north and west: protecting his northern boundaries against further Uzbek attacks and guarding his western marchlands and commercial interests by reestablishing control over strategic and wealthy Qandahar, while expanding across the Indus into the wealthy Panjab plains. His presumptuous demand on

⁶⁶ BN-M, fs. 212b-213a.

March 3rd, 1519, just after occupying Bherah, that Ibrahim Ludi recognize Timurid sovereignty over northwestern India, followed the next day by naming his recently born third son Hind-al, the “taking of Hind,” are persuasive signs that by that year he had already decided to try to conquer north India.⁶⁷ However, even if Babur had conceived a kind of strategic plan he had neither the security nor the power to enable him to realize his intent in a series of carefully planned stages, so he continued to try to stabilize his frontier in the north and west while apparently looking for openings in the Panjab.

Between 1519-20 and 1524 Babur strengthened his position in both the north and west. In the north he gained more effective direct control over Badakhshan by appointing his first son Humayun to rule the area after the death sometime in 1520-21 of Ways Mirza or Mirza Khan. Ways Mirza had gone to this area of northeastern Afghanistan with Babur’s blessing in 1507 and fought with him during the subsequent campaigns in Mawarannahr. With the Uzbeks along the Amu Darya, Badakhshan had to be quickly secured and Babur appointed Humayun, then aged thirteen, to govern the province. Babur and his wife, Humayun’s mother, Mahim Begim, accompanied him there—an engaging human touch provided in this instance well after the fact by Babur’s daughter Gulbadan Begim, who might have learned of the trip from Mahim or Humayun himself.⁶⁸

In Badakhshan Humayun undoubtedly governed through his *beg atekkeh*, as Babur had done in Ferghanah twenty-six years earlier. He remained there until Babur called him to join the Indian campaign in the fall of 1525. What isn’t clear from the fragmentary evidence for this period is the nature of Humayun’s relations with another Timurid, Muhammad Zaman Mirza, the grandson and last direct male descendant of Sultan Husayn Bayqara. Muhammad Zaman Mirza was then in Balkh, the adjoining and much wealthier province in northwestern Afghanistan. In 1517 or 1518 Babur had married the then twenty-one year old Muhammad Zaman Mirza to his eleven year old daughter, Masumah Begim, and apparently visited the city of Balkh, the capital of the province just before or

⁶⁷ BN-M, fs. 226b-227a.

⁶⁸ HN, fs. 8a-b and n. pp. 256-58 for information on Humayun’s mother.

after this marriage.⁶⁹ Babur may have arranged the marriage to extend his influence into Balkh, where Muhammad Zaman Mirza originally may have acted as a Safavid feudatory, perhaps after the Safavids sent troops to support Babur in 1511. Whatever his earlier relations with the Safavids he occupied Balkh in 1515 and joined Babur outside Qandahar two years later.⁷⁰ After this Muhammad Zaman Mirza evidently acknowledged Babur's suzerainty. He remained in Balkh during Babur's early Indian battles but by September 1528 was campaigning with him in India.⁷¹ After Babur's death, however, all the sources agree that he fought for himself rather than for Humayun.

Sometime in the same year when Babur assigned Humayun to Badakhshan he began to besiege Qandahar, while disingenuously discussing the fate of the city with Safavid officials in Harat. It was then controlled by Shah Beg, otherwise known as Shuja' Beg Arghun, the brother of Muqim Arghun, whom Babur had forced to relinquish Kabul in 1504. Shah Beg evidently held the city for the Safavids in Harat, whose captive he had recently been, but his family's ties to the city may have given him a substantial degree of independence there. Babur had apparently set out to recapture Qandahar in 1517, but may have been bought off before reaching it. Another siege followed in 1519 or 1520. According to the Safavid historian Hasan-i Rumlu, Babur spent three years in and around Qandahar, and he agrees with Khwandamir, from whom he probably took his account, that Babur succeeded in reoccupying the city only when the governor of the city simply handed it over to him, late in 1522.⁷² Babur then assigned it to his son, Kamran,

⁶⁹ Some of these events are related by Khwandamir, *Habib al-siyar*, III, 400-403.

⁷⁰ "Khvandmr," Ghiyath al-Din b. Humam ^cal-Dm Muhammad, *The Makarim al-Akhlaq* T. Gandjei ed., viii.

⁷¹ BN-M, fs. 237a, 238a, for references to the tribute and explicit indications of fealty he sent to Babur in 1519.

⁷² Hasan-i Rumlu, *Ahsan al-tawdrikh*, 220-21. In this instance Khwandamir, who was then in Harat and, presumably, relatively well-informed about events in Qandahar, provides a much fuller account of Babur's efforts to retake the city. *Habib al-siyar*, III, 587-89. For a discussion of dates during this poorly documented period see BN-B, pp. 435-37. Haydar Mirza writes that Babur besieged Qandahar for five years, but doesn't give dates. However, if he dates Babur's attempts from 1517 he would be approximately accurate. TR-T, f. 204a. None theless, Babur's cousin was nowhere near Qandahar during the early 1520's.

who was still posted there in 1525.⁷³ Shah Beg had by that time extended his power into Sind, where his descendants were to encounter the Timurids again, then ruling as emperors from Agra.

This confrontation over Qandahar was partly the completion of Babur's unfinished business, but in retrospect it also represented the first of many conflicts between the Safavids and Timurid-Mughuls over the wealthy and strategically located city. By 1523 or 1524, though, his western boundaries were secured, all the more so as the relentless dynamism and religious zealotry of Shah Ismail Safavi's early years had evaporated after he was overwhelmingly defeated by Ottoman forces at the battle of Chaldiran in 1514. From then until his death in May 1524 Ismail virtually retired from active military command and the direct control of state affairs.

Now more secure in Kabul than he had ever been Babur was able to exploit the alliance offered him by Daulat Khan Yusuf Khayl, the Ludi governor of the Panjab, sometime in 1523. Described by Babur in his section on Bherah as the son of Tatar Khan, one of the six or seven *sardars* who, "sallying forth, took possession of Hindustan, making Bahlul [Ludi] *padshah* Daulat Khan by this time had become frightened and alienated by Ibrahim LudT's drive to transform the Ludi state from an Afghan tribal oligarchy into a centralized military despotism, and he opened talks with Babur by sending his son to Kabul.⁷⁴ The son, Dilawar Khan, would have been able to make the case for Daulat Khan by describing the grisly exhibit of tortured and executed Afghan leaders he had earlier witnessed when he had gone to Agra as his father's representative.⁷⁵ Now Daulat Khan joined in an uneasy alliance with Ibrahim's aging uncle, Alam Khan, and sought Babur's help to challenge and presumably overthrow the reigning Ludi ruler.

⁷³ BN-B, Appendix J, xxxv.

⁷⁴ See BN-M, f. 225b for Babur's precis of Ludi rule in the Panjab. His use of the Arabo-Persian term *sardar* rather than the Turki *beg*, reflects usage Babur acquired in India, where the term was commonly used. In the Indian section of his text he uses terminology associated with the region that he is careful never to employ earlier. Using the Persian chronicles, Awadh Bihari Pandey narrates the history of Ludi rule and analyzes the character and policies of its three principal rulers in his work, *The First Afghan Empire in India* (1451-1526 A. D.).

⁷⁵ This at least is the scene described by Pandey, *The First Afghan Empire in India* (1451-1526), 195-96.

Responding to this opportunity Babur marched from Kabul in the fall of 1523 and defeated a Ludi army sent from Delhi. In January 1524 he occupied Lahore, appointing his own men to administer the city and nearby fortresses. As he began moving further southeast towards Delhi conflicts arose with Daulat Khan, perhaps because he realized that Babur intended to rule the Panjab in his own name. Babur now withdrew back to Lahore and shortly afterwards returned to Kabul, probably to deal with an Uzbek siege of Balkh.⁷⁶ Sometime after his return to Kabul Babur's erstwhile Afghan allies Daulat Khan and 'Alam Khan, the latter still openly allied with Babur, fell out among themselves as they struggled for control of the Panjab near Lahore. Defeated in this struggle 'Alam Khan fled to Kabul, where Babur gave him troops to return to the Panjab before he himself set out in the fall 1524 or the winter of 1524-25 to raise the Uzbek siege of Balkh. In his absence 'Alam Khan and Daulat Khan united once again, and agreed that once Ibrahim was deposed 'Alam Khan would become Sultan and Daulat Khan would once again rule the Panjab. As Babur's narrative resumes he describes the disorganized, unsuccessful attack that 'Alam Khan, allied with a son of Daulat Khan, made on Ibrahim Ludi in the fall of 1525, just after he himself had marched out from Kabul and crossed the Indus on his way to confront the Ludi ruler.

The Battle of Panipat

Babur's narrative resumes on November 17, 1525 as he rides from Kabul for the last time, never to return to the city except after his death, when at his request his body was sent back to be buried just outside the city he so particularly loved. Choosing his words with obvious care he does not describe this march as a *chapqun* or even a *yurush* but says it was a *safar*, a journey or expedition "with the determination for Hindustan."⁷⁷ Thus after more than twenty years in Kabul Babur was now unmistakably bent on conquest. Just a few days after leaving the city a messenger arrived with twenty thousand *shahruh* worth of gold *ashrafis* and silver *tangahs* from the

⁷⁶ This much is known from an allusion in Babur's memoirs. BN-M, f. 256a.

⁷⁷ BN-M, f. 251b.

revenues of Lahore, which Babur forwarded on to Balkh, presumably to ensure the loyalty of Muhammad Zaman Mirza's garrison there. Earlier Humayun and his men had been summoned from Badakhshan, and Babur waited impatiently for them in the *Bagh-i Vafa* writing "stern letters to Humayun, speaking to him severely because of his late arrival at the rendezvous."⁷⁸ Apart from the likelihood that his son's progress was probably limited by the presence of Badakhshan! foot soldiers, Humayun by then was probably pausing in Kabul to visit his mother and other relations. While Babur and part of the army waited for more than a week for his son in "the "delightful and pleasant" garden which "has been repeatedly described in this history," most drank on "drinking days:" Saturday, Sunday, Tuesday and Wednesday, and took "dawn draughts."⁷⁹ Otherwise they ate *majun*. After Humayun finally turned up with Badakhshan! forces just as Babur's long-time companion Khwajah Kalan arrived from Ghazni, usefully bringing several camel loads of Ghazni wine, they marched out along the Kabul river toward the Khybar.⁸⁰

Before crossing the Indus Babur and his immediate retinue continued to conduct the invasion of India as a moveable feast. Shortly after leaving the *Bagh-i Vafa* he and a few others got on a raft and drank during the day while floating down the river. By the time they camped they had lost track of the army, which they located a day or two later. Then returning to horse they stopped at Ali Masjid just west of the Khybar Pass. Babur himself dismounted on a knoll overlooking a small valley where the army was camped. Marveling at the beauty of the sight, he writes that "At night there was an entrancing glow from the troops' campfires," leading him further to recall that "For this reason each time that I dismounted at this spot I naturally drank. This time also in the same way I drank."⁸¹ The next morning he took *majun* and fasted. Having then passed through the Khybar he and his men hunted and killed three rhinoceroses in the Bigram region on the eastern side of the pass. After describing this hunt Babur's tone begins to change as he turns to discuss his army and then begins the narration of the march

⁷⁸ BN-M, f. 252a.

⁷⁹ BN-M, f. 252a.

⁸⁰ BN-M, f. 260a for a reference to the Ghazni wine.

⁸¹ BN-M, f. 253b.

across the hostile or at least politically unpredictable region of the Panjab, then dissolving into internecine warfare of Afghan chiefs.⁸²

While camped at Bigram he had assigned some *begs* and *ickhis* with accountants and clerks in six or seven units to count the troops “name by name” as they crossed the Indus. By then it was raining; it was the period of the northeastern monsoons. When they finally crossed on a bridge of boats on Saturday December 16th the “*begs*, accountants and clerks” stationed on the bridge counted 12,000 men—“great and small, good and bad, *naukars* and *non-naukars*” as Babur describes them. It is impossible to say how many of these men were actually troops; subsequent evidence suggests that they represented as few as half of this total. Later he remarks that many of this number were merchants and servants. Some were Badakhshams, some Hazarahs, some were Afghans, some Mongols, some Turks. Contingents of Ludi Afghans also joined him as his force approached Delhi, but their loyalty was suspect and their numbers are unknown. Still, this was the largest army Babur ever commanded and the one with which he “conquered” Hindustan.

Between mid-December, 1525 and 20 April 1526 Babur conducted two campaigns in India. First, he regained control of Lahore and its surrounding territory; afterwards he attacked Ibrahim Ludi at the Panipat battlefield north of Delhi. When Babur crossed the Indus in mid-December Lahore was once again at least nominally under the control of the aged Daulat Khan, the disaffected Ludi governor who had invited Babur into India the previous year. In Babur’s absence he had expelled Babur’s officers from the city and some nearby forts, understandably offended by an alliance that Babur self-servingly interpreted as a declaration of fealty to the legitimate Timurid ruler. However, Daulat Khan’s hope of holding the region for himself had evaporated when Ibrahim defeated the army that one of his sons and ‘Alam Khan had led against Delhi just before Babur arrived in the Panjab. If ‘Alam Khan had been victorious at Delhi and then recognized as the new Ludi sultan, he might have turned his army back to the Panjab to unite with Daulat’s Khan’s forces and oppose Babur’s claims. As it was, after

⁸² For a summary of what is known of the bewilderingly complex relations of various Afghan lineages see Rita Joshi, *The Afghan Nobility and the Mughals* (1526-1707), Chapters 1-3.

fleeing Delhi almost as a refugee, ‘Alam Khan tried to join one of Daulat Khan’s sons, but after being rebuffed, unwillingly went to Babur.

By now it was late December and Babur was camped at Sialkot along the foothills in the northern Panjab, a route of march dictated by the availability of grain in the monsoon-watered foot hills.⁸³ Babur sent troops out to capture Daulat Khan and his son Ghazi Khan, and on January 3rd or 4th about sixty or seventy miles southeast of Sialkot, he surrounded them in Ghazi Khan’s small fortress of Milwat. A grandson of Daulat Khan’s emerged to discuss terms with Babur, who sent him back, as he candidly says, with “a morsel of a promise and threats and encouragement and menace.”⁸⁴ The message was effective; Daulat Khan surrendered. His life was spared, but he had to endure humiliation as well as Babur’s lecture on his “misconduct.” The scene Babur describes reprises the drama of Khusrau Shah’s degradation on the banks of the Andarab in 1504. An old man, Daulat Khan too is made to seem doddering and almost senile, ridiculed as “a rustic and stupid *mardak*” in his case for daring to try to approach Babur with his two swords still at his waist. Ordered to hang them from his neck instead he is brought before Babur, who then through an interpreter told him:

I called you father. I respected and honored you in such a way that was better than you could have desired. I saved you and your sons from the beggarly life of a Baluchi. I freed your family and *haram* from Ibrahim’s prison. I gave you three crore’s of Tatar Khan’s lands. Have I so injured your rights that in your difficulties you should dispatch an army, descend on our provinces, causing such evil and strife?⁸⁵

This *qafi mabhut mardak*, this “old stupefied little man,” Babur contemptuously continues, was able to say only “one or two words” in reply to Babur’s Timurid claim to “our provinces” that he had first made to Ibrahim in 1519. In fear of his life Daulat Khan could hardly remind Babur that as governor of the Panjab, he had invited

⁸³ BN-M, fs. 254a-b.

⁸⁴ BN-M, f. 258a.

⁸⁵ BN-M, f. 258b. Baluch were and are the most impoverished nomadic and semi-nomadic peoples living in the desiccated regions of present day southeastern Iran and southwestern Pakistan. See among other sources Philip Carl Salzman, *Black Tents of Baluchistan* (Washington D. C.: Smithsonian, 2000).

Babur into India, and hardly expected to lose Lahore for which he was to be compensated with some land that amounted to little more than a shabby pension. By recording his humiliation of Daulat Khan Babur once again exhibits the casual arrogance derived from his Timurid-Chingizid descent, an inherited sense of superiority that apparently did not distinguish between “little men” with no lineage, whether the brutal Qipchaq Turk, Khusrau Shah, or the merely aged and incompetent Afghan, Daulat Khan.

As Babur’s men began taking control of the fort disturbances broke out and Babur “shot a few arrows,” accidentally killing his son Humayun’s *qissah-khani* his story-teller, or as Babur elliptically puts it, linguistically at least avoiding responsibility by lapsing into metaphor, the story-teller “submitted to the arrow of his destiny.”⁸⁶ Perhaps Humayun was mollified when his father gave him some of the valuable books that were found in the library within the fort. Babur sent others off to Kamran in Qandahar. Daulat Khan himself was sent off in chains to Bherah with several other leading members of his *khctylkhdmh*, his extended family or clan, but the poor man died en route. Less important Afghans were given to Babur’s men to ransom as a source of income. Then after a party with the wines that Khwajah Kalan had brought from Ghazni, a typical denouement of successful actions, Babur set out in earnest to confront Ibrahim Ludi at Delhi.

As Babur moved southeast across the Panjab in late January and February he ordered a garden built along the upper reaches of the Ghaggar river in a valley that apparently reminded him of the clear, rushing mountain streams of Kabul. At least he describes the scene in the same terms he used for the garden sites he admired near Kabul—as pleasant and agreeable with good air—suggesting in fact that other than India’s major rivers it was the only such place in India.⁸⁷ This is the first of many passages in which he implicitly alludes to his desire to see India made over in Kabul’s image, as difficult a task as the later English attempt to create English gardens throughout the subcontinent. However, at this spot about 180-90 miles north-north east of Delhi the nostalgic interlude was broken by the news that one of Ibrahim’s commanders was advancing against them. Around February 25th as they left Amba-

⁸⁶ BN-M, f. 259b.

⁸⁷ BN-M, fs. 261b-262a.

lah, Humayun was given command of the experienced *begs* who led the entire right wing of the army, and sent out against him, capturing 100-200 troops and seven or eight elephants as the rest of the Afghan troops fled the field. 100 were decapitated and 100 more sent back to Babur's camp where they were executed, "as punishment" by Babur's matchlockmen. Babur expresses his pleasure with Humayun who was then just eighteen, and in Humayun's copy of the Persian translation of the *Vaqai* Humayun wrote in the margin that just after the battle he shaved for the first time—noting this, he implies, was an act of filial piety because, he writes, Babur had recorded his first shave in his memoirs.⁸⁸

By now it was early March, the height of campaigning season in north India when the days are nearly always sunny with temperatures usually in the mid-eighties. As Babur moved now almost due south toward Delhi he sent messengers back to Kabul with victory letters and news gatherers towards Delhi to report on Ibrahim's movements. Ibrahim was reported to be moving a few miles at a march, interrupted by two or three days in camp. Advancing from Shahabad on or just after March 13th, Babur's army reached the Jumna river where he and his confidants consumed *mdjun* and took boat trips on the river while waiting for further news of Ibrahim's force. On April 1st Babur sent the left wing of the army out against Ibrahim's advanced force of an estimated 5-6,000 men, and successfully savaged it while capturing several *LudT*'s and sixty to seventy prisoners, most of whom were immediately executed, once again "as punishment."⁸⁹ About this time the army was counted again and was found to have been over estimated, although Babur does not report what he believes the true number of his troops to have been. Ibrahim's force was estimated at 100,000 men and 1000 elephants, the heavy but cumbersome and skittish heavy armor of Indian armies.⁹⁰ It is likely that Babur's estimates of Ibrahim's

⁸⁸ BN-B, pp. 466-7, n. 1.

⁸⁹ BN-M, f. 264a. Here as in the immediately previous passage Babur uses the term *sidsat*, punishment," as his reason for executing prisoners.

⁹⁰ Simon Digby discusses horses and elephants in 1471r *Horse and Elephant in the Delhi Sultanate, A Study of Military Supplies* (Oxford: Orient Monographs, 1971). He mentions that when moving at top speed elephants could advance at fifteen miles an hour. 53. Digby does not discuss the Panipat battle. The thirteenth-century Indo-Persian poet, Amir Khusrau, offers brilliantly dramatic portraits of Indian war elephants, emphasizing not speed but their massive, intimidating bodies that caused the earth to shake. See Wahid Mirza trans., *Khazain-ul-Futuh* (Lahore:

forces is self-serving and grossly inaccurate. By April 12th Babur's own force of perhaps eight or ten thousand fighting men reached Panipat on the west side of the Jumna, slightly more than fifty miles from Delhi. By then daily temperatures must have reached the low to middle nineties.

Babur's account of the Battle of Panipat is one of the most detailed first-person accounts of a decisive battle in the early modern history of the Islamic world or Asia.⁹¹ It is only equaled, and in fact surpassed, by Haydar Mirza's first-hand description of Humayun's defeat by Afghan forces in 1540 at the Battle of the Ganges.⁹² Even saying that he omits many crucial details and never explicitly explains his triumph. In terms of general factors that might have influenced the conflict Babur writes most caustically of Ibrahim's leadership. He expresses his contempt for the Ludi Sultan's planning and lack of aggressiveness, and reports he told one of his *begs* that as a commander Ibrahim lacked the generalship of the Uzbek Khans, although by saying so he reminds his readers that he himself suffered badly by that comparison. Babur also suggests that Ibrahim was too much of a miser to spend his lavish resources to hire additional troops, although it is difficult to imagine that thousands of undisciplined mercenaries would have significantly influenced the battle, other than to slow the movement of the Afghan army, whose maximum pace was probably already limited to the speed of its elephants. Interestingly, he does not say that any Ludi commanders defected before or during the battle, despite the unrest that had supposedly resulted from Ibrahim's oppressive rule. Finally in terms of these unquantifiable but possibly significant factors of morale, Babur mentions that "some" of his own men were "very apprehensive and doubtful" before the battle. However, writes Babur:

Anxiety and fear were baseless. As God has predestined eternity nothing else was possible. Yet it was also impossible to fault them, for they were right. They had come a journey of two to three months

National Book Foundation, 1975), 59, 77-78 and 89-90. A few decades after Amir Khusrau wrote the Arab traveler, Ibn Battuta, described elephants in Delhi that carried small catapults. *The Travels of Ibn Battuta 1325-1354* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press for the Hakluyt Society, 1971), III, 744.

⁹¹ No actual battles are described in Nicola Di Cosmo ed., *Warfare in Inner Asia*. 500-1800 (Leiden: Brill, 2002).

⁹² TR-T, fs. 183a-184b.

from their homeland (*watari*) and had to deal with strange people. We neither knew these people's languages, nor did they know ours.⁹³

Yet, their very foreignness may have given Babur's army a cohesiveness it might have lacked in Mawarannahr, where commanders could retreat back to their estates or transfer their allegiance to another Timurid *mzrzd* or Chingizid *khan*. Deep into this strange country there was safety in numbers and security only in victory.

Babur reports that he stationed his army with the town of Panipat guarding his right flank while the left flank was protected by a system of ditches. Across the center of the battlefield he had some seven hundred carts tied together in the "Anatolian manner." Babur had undoubtedly learned this tactic from his Ottoman firearms expert. It comprised a system of carts every twenty or twenty-five feet tied together and shields held in between, perhaps by footsoldiers. The latter may have been Badakhshams and Afghans, as they commonly fought on foot in their native terrain. The vulnerable matchlock men stood behind with other foot soldiers. At intervals of an arrow shot, perhaps 100-150 yards, there were spaces that would allow 150 horsemen of the reserves to ride through to join the battle. As had been true at Qandahar in 1507 Timurids and Chingizids commanded most of the major sections of the army: Humayun on the right wing, Muhammad Sultan Mirza Bayqara, Sultan Husayn Bayqara's grandnephew, on the left wing, Chin Timur Sultan, the Chaghatay Mongol and son of Kichik Khan on the right flank of the center along with the young boy Sulayman Mirza, the son of Babur's cousin, Ways Mirza of Badakhshan, his longtime Ferghanah companion, Nizam al-Din 'Ali Khalifah, on the left flank of the center. Another Ferghanah companion, Khusrau Kiikultash commanded the center with the less well-known Muhammad 'Ali Jang-jang. On the extreme edge of the right and left wings were flanking detachments charged with *tulghamah* or enveloping the enemy from the sides and rear. Mongols constituted at least one and probably both of these units.

Babur's troops raided the Ludi army during the seven or eight days the armies faced each other, but, Babur writes, during this time Ibrahim did nothing. Finally, as Babur and Babur alone describes the scene, on April 20th Ibrahim led his forces out of

⁹³ BN-M, f. 264b.

their lines at dawn, but as they approached Babur's ranks they hesitated, and then moved more slowly forward. Just then Babur sent his flanking units to the right and left sides of Ibrahim's rear, and after both the left and right wings engaged so did forces in the center. The matchlockmen do not seem to have played a significant role in the battle, but as the forces engaged some cannon were fired — both *Farangz* and *zarb-zanan* are mentioned. The *zcirb-zandn*, otherwise known as *zarb-zandn Rumi*, were some kind of cannon used by both Ottoman and Safavid armies in the sixteenth century.⁹⁴ Yet neither weapon could have been fired frequently enough to affect the outcome of the battle.⁹⁵ Babur explicitly says the *Farangilar* were fired "a few times," and that the *zarb-zanan* got off "good shots." Even when Ustad "All Quit fired his newly cast *qazan* or mortar in March 1528 against the Chandiri fortress and just afterwards against recalcitrant Afghans, sixteen seems to have been the maximum number of shots he could get off in one day.⁹⁶ At Panipat he did not have a mortar, one that Babur describes him casting only in October 1526.⁹⁷

⁹⁴ *EI2*, 1, 1063 & 1066. See especially the discussion of "zarbzen" by Gabon Agoston, "Ottoman Artillery and European Military Technology in the Fifteenth and Seventeenth Centuries," *Acta Orientalia Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae* 57, Fasc. 1-2 (1994), 40.

⁹⁵ Note that when Humayun lost the Battle of the Ganges to Afghans in 1540 he was well supplied with cannon and mortars, but these did little to help an otherwise badly led and disastrously organized army. Considerable uncertainty exists as to the nature of firearms in use by Timurid armies at this time or earlier. Babur says that Sultan Husayn Bayqara was using a mortar-like weapon known as the *qazan* against Hisar in 1495. BN-M, f. 34a. Haydar Mirza, mentions that Humayun's army used the *zarb-zan Rumi*, literally the Anatolian canon, at the disastrous Battle of the Ganges when he was defeated by resurgent Afghan forces. He said it fired a ball of 500 *misqal* or 2500 grams or about 5.5 pounds weight. He also mentions another canon or mortar called a *dig*, perhaps the Persian translation of a *qazan*, as the term also means pot or mortar, that fired a brass ball weighing ten times as much a distance of a *farsakh* or *parasang*, that is approximately 3 miles. TR-T, f. 184a. These mortars were incredibly cumbersome weapons and the brass balls were extremely expensive; it took three or four elephants to haul one mortar cart. BN-M, f. 275a. G. N. Pant offers many useful illustrations of Mughal weapons, but does not resolve the issue of what guns Babur had at Panipat. *Mughal Weapons in the Babur Nama* [sic]. He suggests that Babur may have had only two heavy guns with him, p. 151, although Babur's use of the plural, *Farangilar*, indicates that he had more, that is when the *zarb-zanan* are also taken into account.

⁹⁶ BN-M, f. 337. According to Babur he ordered mortars to be made specifically for attacking fortresses. See f. 302a.

⁹⁷ BN-M, fs. 302a-b. Regarding the use of firearms in India before Panipat see

However, the battle was not decided by these novel weapons but in close combat by archery and with swords. As he describes the battle the right and left wings, the center and the “flanking units” swarmed around Ibrahim’s troops, showering them with arrows. He says that even though the Ludis made small charges both to the left and right their forces became so pressed in on themselves that they could neither advance nor retreat. By noon the battle was won, Ibrahim was dead and the field was littered with an estimated 15-16,000 corpses. Babur says nothing about his own casualties and on this occasion modestly attributes the victory to “God’s grace and favor,” not, as in 1507 at Qandahar, to his own battle plan. It can be inferred from his description, though, that in tactical terms the swift encircling maneuver of his flanking contingents of mounted archers and swordsmen carried the day. In his plan of battle he mentions that these contingents known as *tulghamah* were to remain in ambush and then as the enemy approached, circle around from both the right and the left to the enemy’s rear.⁹⁸ This was the same kind of enveloping or flanking movement for which he admired the Uzbeks, who had used it successfully when defeating him outside Samarqand in 1501.⁹⁹

Immediately following his account of the battle Babur describes sending Humayun, Khwajah Kalan and others to seize the treasury in Agra and his brother-in-law Mahdi Khwajah with the young Muhammad Sultan Mirza and others to guard the treasury at

Iqtidar Alam Khan “Early Use of Cannon and Musket in India, AD 1442-1526,” in *Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient*, 24, 2 (1981), 146-64. Jos J. L. Gommans and Dirk H. A. Kolff ably survey the entire range of Indian military technology, tactics and organization in the Indo-Muslim era in their “Introduction to the edited volume *Warfare and Weaponry in South Asia: 1000-1800 AD* (New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 2001), 1-42.

⁹⁸ BN-M, f. 266a. Babur uses this word as a noun and a participle, i.e. as the detachments themselves or as their “flanking” action. It is evidently derived from a middle Turkic verbal root meaning to circle, encircle, go round etc., and was used in Chaghatay and Uighur. Rasanen, *Versuch Eines Etymologischen Wörterbuchs De Turksprachen*, I, 486. See also Borobkov, *Badai al-Lugat*, 160, where both this and a variant spelling are given i.e. *tulqamaq* - to encircle or surround.

⁹⁹ BN-M, f. 90a. A diagram of what purports to be the battle formation of Mongols who invaded India in the thirteenth century is given by Jagdish Narayan Sarkar in his essay, “Military Morality in Medieval India Laws of War and Peace,” in Zoe Ansari ed., *Life, Times and Works of Amir Khusrau Dehlavi* (Delhi: National Amir Khusrau Society, n.d.), Plate B. It shows a half-moon-shaped battle formation in front.

Delhi, where he also appointed a *shiqdar* or governor and a *diwan* or head of the treasury. Then the first Friday after the battle the poet and *filim* Shaykh Zayn and others entered Delhi and had the *khutbah*) the prayer read in Babur's name, thus officially proclaiming his sovereignty as an Muslim ruler in India. He himself remained in camp. In the midst of recounting the flurry of these activities after Panipat he describes an interesting interlude, a kind of ritual in which Babur publicly linked himself to Delhi's spiritual and political past. He thus circumambulated the tombs of two sufi's, the popular, influential Chishti saint Nizam al-Dm Awliya and the lesser known Khwajah Qutb al-Dm, an earlier Chishti but also a native of Ush in Babur's homeland in eastern Ferghanah.¹⁰⁰ He also visited the tombs of the Sultanate rulers Ghiyas al-Din Balaban (d.1286) and Ala al-Din Khilji (d.1316), as well as the tombs and gardens of Ibrahim's two Ludi predecessors, Sultans Bahlul and Sikandar Ludi.¹⁰¹ After the latter tour they boarded a boat in the Jumna and drank araq.

Shortly afterwards on April 28th they rode in eight days to the Ludi capital at Agra, where they first stayed at houses in the suburbs. There Babur pensioned off Ibrahim Ludi's mother with a modest land grant south of the city, while refusing Humayun's offer of an enormous diamond, possibly the *kuh-i nur*, said by appraisers, Babur reports, to have been worth two and a half days of food for the entire world.¹⁰² Finally, on May 10th Babur entered the Agra fort and took up residence in Ibrahim Ludi's house. At this appropriately climactic point in his narrative of conquest Babur

¹⁰⁰ For Nizam al-Dm Awliya's tomb as well as the annual *'urs* festival celebrated there see Regula Burkhardt Qureshi, *Sufi Music of India and Pakistan, Sound, Context and Meaning in Qawwali* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1986). Thierry Zarcone discusses Qutb al-Dm Bakhtiyar Kaki UshT (d. 1235), a disciple of the founder of the Indian Chishti order, in his article, "Central Asian Influence on the Early Development of the Chishtiyya Sufi Order in India," in Muzaffar Alam and Françoise 'Nalini' Delvoye ed., *The Making of Indo-Persian Culture* (Delhi: Manohar for Centre De Sciences Humaines, 2000), 100-102. As the author points out Ush, near Andijan, was a sufi center already in the 10th century a. d. Circumambulation was a ritual practiced by Buddhists as well as Muslims. Ibn Battuta describes Qutb al-Dm's tomb in the course of narrating his visit to Delhi, where he arrived in 1334. *The Travels of Ibn Battuta 1325-1354*, III, 625.

¹⁰¹ Ebba Koch has commented on the significance of these royal tours, "Shah Jahan's Visit in Delhi Prior to 1648: New Evidence of Ritual Movement in Urban Mughal India," *Environmental Design* 9, 11 (1984), 18-29.

¹⁰² BN-M, f. 268b.

once again pauses, as he does following his account of the capture of Samarqand in 1500, to offer an autobiographical signpost by putting his victory into favorable historical perspective. He follows that with a gazetteer-like description of India, similar to his earlier accounts of Samarqand, following the first capture of the city in 1497, and Kabul province, after occupying Kabul city in 1504.

Babur begins the section with one of his most self-serving and misleading statements to be found in his autobiography. Writing here, though entirely in the passive, Babur says:

From the time that Kabul was taken in 910[1504] until this year there was always a desire for Hindustan. [However] a campaign was not feasible and the conquest of kingdoms not possible, sometimes owing to the *begs*"timidity, sometimes owing to the relatives' non cooperation. Finally such obstacles no longer existed. None of these less than noble *begs* could speak out against this goal.¹⁰³

Any of Babur's men who read this passage must have found it hard to accept. Between 1504 and 1514 Babur conducted himself still as a Central Asian Timurid, not a potential conqueror of Hindustan. However much Timur's 1398 raid may have stimulated him to think of conquering India, no evidence exists to show that he had resolved to do so before 1519, the year he took Bherah and named his third son Hind-al.

Having offered this interpretation of his Kabul years that is contradicted by his own narrative, Babur then compares his conquest of India to that of former Muslim conquerors, a literary parallel to his earlier passage showing that his seizure of Samarqand in 1500 was a far superior achievement to Husayn Bayqara's occupation of Harat. Here his comparison, if exaggerated, is ultimately believable, at least based upon his own source. He writes that there were two earlier Muslim conquerors of India: Mahmud of Ghazna (d. 1030) was the first; Shihab al-Dm (Muhammad) Ghuri (d. 1206) the second and "I, am the third."

However, those *padshahs*"feats do not resemble mine, because when Sultan Mahmud seized the throne Khurasan was under [his] control and Khwarazm and the *sultans* of the border regions were obedient and submissive and the *padshah* of Samarqand was his vassal. The army was not two hundred thousand, [but who will say] it was not

¹⁰³ BN-M, fs. 269a-b.

100,000. Further the opponents were rajahs; there was not one *padshah* for all. Every rajah ruled independently in each region. Then there was Sultan Shihab al-Din Ghun. Although the Khurasan government was not his, it was his elder brother's, Sultan Ghiyas al-Din Ghun. In the *Tabaqat-i ndsin* it is recorded that once he once led an army of 120,000 armored horses into Hindustan. These opponents also were rajahs; there was not one *padshah* for all of Hindustan.¹⁰⁴

He continues with the comparison by first pointing out that he had only 1500 to 2000 men when he took Bherah in 1519 and but 12,000 men when he entered India the final time in 1525-26—some of whom were servants and merchants. Later in the narrative he also includes *talibarp* religious students, in this total. He reminds his readers that when he took India he held only the provinces of Badakhshan, Qunduz, Kabul and Qandahar, and emphasizes that not only did these provinces provide no help, but that as some of them were so close to the enemy, that is the Uzbeks, they needed assistance—documented in his earlier reference to the dispatch of revenue from Lahore to Balkh. Babur writes that their *khans* and *sultans* controlled Mawarannahr and commanded 100,000 troops. Then there was Sultan Ibrahim himself, who controlled India from Bherah to Bihar, territories that could have supported 500,000 troops. Even with *amirs* in rebellion, he himself and his *amirs* “were said to have an army estimated at 100,000 and as many as 1000 elephants.” Even so, concludes Babur, “we turned our backs on 100,000 Uzbeks and faced such a one as Sultan Ibrahim with a vast kingdom and such an army. And we were victorious owing to “Tengri’s blessing and assistance.”¹⁰⁵

None of Babur’s troop estimates for his predecessors and Ibrahim should be taken at face value, or taken at all except with lavish doses of salt and equal measures of skepticism if not utter disbelief. The fact that he himself did not know exactly how many men he commanded to overawe Bherah is an instructive example. He estimates between 1500 and 2000. Nor does he really seem to know exactly how many fighting men he had at Panipat. He mentions that the 12,000 who crossed the Indus included merchants and servants, a commissariat in reality if not necessarily in formal

¹⁰⁴ BN-M, f. 269b.

¹⁰⁵ BN-M, f. 270a.

structure. His daughter, Gulbadan Begim, who had access to her father's memoirs and thus knew his total figures, says that of his 12,000 men only 6-7000 were *kar-amadom*, or "serviceable troops."¹⁰⁶ Perhaps this represents Gulbadan Begim's own attempt to glorify her father's feats, but it is also quite possible she was told this by someone with knowledge of the battle. It represents another caution against inflated troop estimates, either those given by Babur himself or later historians. As for Ibrahim's army of 100,000 men and 1000 elephants, nothing can be proven and everything should be suspected. It would be surprising if he had even half that number at Panipat, and more than likely he commanded a much smaller army. In 1540 Humayun had no more than an estimated 40,000 men at the disastrous Battle of the Ganges when he lost to a resurgent Afghan army of an approximately 15,000 men.¹⁰⁷ These figures too are highly suspect. However, apart from these questionable troop estimates Babur at least seems to offer a fairly realistic assessment of his own situation in 1526, and he doesn't even mention the Safavids to his west. Given all that had passed since he inherited his father's small state in 1494 his victory in 1526 was as stunning as was Humayun's defeat thirteen years later.

Babur himself must first have realized the magnitude of that victory when on May 12th he began distributing the Ludi treasury. Without unfortunately specifying the coinage but apparently referring to Ludi silver *tangahs*, he describes in a short passage how he granted, now using Indian terminology, seventy lacs from the *khizanah* or treasury to Humayun.¹⁰⁸ A lac equals 100,000, so if, as

¹⁰⁶ HN, f. 9b p. 12. This is an unusual observation for Gulbadan, who doesn't usually discuss military affairs in such detail in the historical summary section of her own memoir.

¹⁰⁷ These estimates are given by Haydar Mirza, who was present at the 1540 battle. TR-T, fs. 183-85. Quite apart from questionable troop estimates, Humayun probably had considerably more men than actual troops, as was true of Babur at Panipat.

¹⁰⁸ Edward Thomas, *The Chronicles of the Pathan Kings of Dehli* (Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal, 1967), 369 for a brief discussion of Babur's gift to Humayun. The silver *tangah* was the standard Timurid coin, in fact the only Timurid silver coin. Later it was known as the *Shah Rukhi*, the term Babur uses when enumerating the revenues of Kabul or the tribute extracted from Bherah in 1519. For a brief account of Timurid coinage see R. E. Darley-Doran, "Timurids," 4. "Numismatics," E12, 10, 525-27. The fundamental problem in evaluating the weight and value of these coins is that the *tangah* had been used in India since the fourteenth century and under the Sultanate ruler, Muhammad Tughluq, debased. William

seems the case, he refers to coins, this figure equals a staggering seven million silver coins. At least coins could be weighed to estimate their number, unlike 100,000 sheep or sixty thousand troops, so this figure may be approximately correct. Other *begs* were given from ten to six lacs and various elements of the army were rewarded "cash grants from the treasury each according to their rank."¹⁰⁹ Merchants, religious students and in fact everyone accompanying the army received a gift. He sent lavish presents to his sons and daughters in Afghanistan and valuable gifts to relations in Samarqand, Khurasan, Kashgar and Iraq (western Iran). *Nuzur* or religious offerings were sent to "shaykhs" [sufis] in Samarqand and Khurasan. Finally, Babur gave "a *shahrukhi* gift for every soul in Kabul province and the Wersek environs: every man and woman, freeman and slave, adult and child, old and young."¹¹⁰

The Conquest of Exiles

Yet for all the distance Babur had traveled, for all he had endured and for all he had accomplished by May 1526, his new Indian state did not much resemble the spectacular Timurid renaissance it became under his great-great-grandson, Shah Jahan, who built the Taj Mahal and called himself the second Timur. By his own account Babur entertained few illusions of grandeur after Panipat. Indeed, the scene he sketches of his conquests powerfully conveys a sense of a beleaguered Timurid garrison state whose troops occupied Delhi and Agra but otherwise were surrounded by hostile Afghan chiefs, feared by people in the countryside and, like these

Erskine, a translator of the Mughul-era Persian translation of the *Vaqai* includes a lucid discussion of the type and value of the coinage in an appendix to the first volume of his work, *A History of India Under the First Two Sovereigns of the House of Taimur, Baber and Humayun* (London: Longman, Brown, Green and Longmans, 1854," Appendix E "Baber's Money of Account," 543-46. See also Shahpur Shah Hormasji Hodivala, *Historical Studies in Mughal Numismatics* (Bombay: Numismatic Society of India, 1976), I "Shahrukhis" especially p. 10 where he mentions that these coins were also known by the names *Baburi*, *Misqali*, *Tanga-i misqali*.

¹⁰⁹ BN-M, f. 293b.

¹¹⁰ BN-M, fs. 293b-294a. Wersek, as Annette Beveridge points out, is located in Badakhshan. See BN-B, p. 523 n.l. Babur's daughter, Gulbadan Begim, discusses these presents at length, giving more details, especially about the jewels and dancing girls given to each Timurid *begim*. HN, fs. 9b-11a.

people, were suffering and dying from the scorching pre-monsoon winds that blow sand off the Rajasthan desert.

“When we came to this Agra,” he writes, “there was an exceptional hostility between our people and the people roundabout. Its soldiers and peasants ran from our people. Apart from Delhi and Agra all the places that had fortresses strengthened the fortresses and refused to submit.”¹¹¹ Afghans held fortresses in Sambal, Bayanah, Gwaliar, Dulpur, Rapri, Kalpi, and Etawah. Other Afghans beyond the Ganges who had rebelled against Ibrahim Ludi several years earlier, proclaimed a new Afghan king at a meeting near Kannauj, about one hundred and twenty five miles due east of Agra.¹¹² Referring apparently only to the local situation in Agra’s immediate vicinity, Babur attributed what he called this *sharr u shurr*, this “wickedness and depravity” entirely to the *malhad mardak*, the “heretical little man,” Hasan Khan of nearby Miwat.

Hasan Khan and his forefathers had been ruling the hilly Miwat region, just east of the Delhi-Agra road, independently of the Sultans of Delhi for one or two centuries. Perhaps, writes Babur, trying to understand why such a strategic region had never been permanently occupied, the Delhi Sultans had left Miwat “incompletely subjugated”—*nimkareh eteati*—and had not established “direct control of the province”—*vilayatning zabtining paighy* because they had such vast territories or because they never had the opportunity or because the region was mountainous.¹¹³ In fact, various Delhi Sultans had been trying to pacify this region, named for its inhabitants the Meds, since the mid-thirteenth century.¹¹⁴ When he blamed Hasan Khan for his hostile reception in the Agra region Babur seems to have been searching for a scapegoat. What ever his own self-image, the common people had no reason to welcome a new marauding conqueror whose Timurid identity either was unknown or if known, may have called up memories of Timur’s devastating invasion in 1398. Most of the fort holders were Afghans who were still loyal to the Ludis or, at very least, to themselves. Events were to show that none of them were allied with Hasan Khan, except for temporary tactical considerations. When

¹¹¹ BN-M, f. 294a.

¹¹² BN-M, f. 294a.

¹¹³ BN-M, f. 326a.

¹¹⁴ Peter Jackson, *The Delhi Sultanate, A Political and Military History*, 128-29.

in the fall Hasan Khan joined with his true ally, Rajah Rana Sanga of Chitor and Ranthambor, most Afghans submitted to Babur.

Rather than explaining conditions in Agra in the summer of 1526, Babur's scathing denunciation of Hasan Khan better illustrates how the victors write history. By the later testimony of Bayram Khan, the Aq Quyunlu Turk who later saved the Timurid-Mughul state for Humayun and became tutor to Akbar, Hasan Khan was a kingly-looking man with a large following, a poet whose poems were widely known in the late sixteenth century.¹¹⁵ That is unlike Khusrau Shah, the scourge of the Timurids who seems to have really deserved to have been called a *mardak*, Hasan Khan was anything but a "little man" in either appearance or accomplishment. Ruling territory so close to the Delhi-Agra road he and his ancestors may have found themselves so uneasily near the Islamic frontier in north India that they formally converted to Islam as a means of compromising with the formidable Muslim regimes in Delhi and Agra. Whether or not this was the actual reason for their conversion, Hasan Khan was exactly the kind of man whom Akbar and subsequent Timurid-Mughul rulers eagerly incorporated into their regime. Who is to say that he was a less admirable man—or inferior poet—than Babur himself? Hasan Khan's real offense was to defend the territory his forefathers had governed and to join with Rana Sanga, evidently his nominal suzerain, in the coming campaign against the Timurids.

Apart from the local suspicion and/or hostility Babur experienced after Panipat, he and his men were also suffering the well known horrors of an Indian summer. "When we came to Agra," Babur writes, "it was the hot season.... that year it was also very hot. Many people began dying then as if from the effects of the pestilential wind."¹¹⁶ The daytime temperature in the Delhi-Agra region might have been as high as 110 degrees in May before the monsoons arrived. In addition to the stifling heat, the villages had been plundered, and the local people turned to highway robbery to feed themselves. The heat, devastation, depopulation and growing anarchy left Babur's men unable to obtain grain for themselves or straw for their horses. These conditions, when combined with the

¹¹⁵ BN-B, 523 n. 3 quoting Badauni, I, 447. Badauni, however, says he had a repulsive appearance.

¹¹⁶ BN-M, f. 294b

political hostility of the Afghans and Hasan Khan, precipitated a crises in Babur's army.

Like Alexander the Great's men more than eighteen hundred years earlier, "Most of the *begs* and valiant *yigitler* lost heart." They now wanted to go home, or at least back to Kabul or Badakhshan. By this time many had acquired property in the Kabul region. Babur's largess had probably provided them with the plunder they had sought in India, enough to live a comfortable life amidst more familiar surroundings in a temperate climate. It was first an impulse, then a profound desire that Babur himself felt with increasing intensity in the years to come. However, at this moment it threatened to ruin all he had achieved. Reflecting on his men's discontent in a passage he wrote just two or three years later, Babur recalls that he "requested a consultation with all the *begs*." He addressed them in a speech that is reminiscent of Alexander's reported attempt to persuade his men to march further into India.¹¹⁷ His version of the address also has the literary and formal quality of Shakespeare's rendition of Henry V's St. Crispin's Day oration, and seems more likely to be intended as another political lesson for Humayun than a strictly accurate report of the language he used. Nonetheless, in it Babur emotively and persuasively conveys the scope of his accomplishment.

Sultanat ve jahangirliq, government and conquest, are not realized with out implements and weapons. *Padshahbiq ve amirliq*, kingship and nobility, are impossible without *naukar ve vildyat*, retainers and provinces. We have struggled for several years, seen difficulties, traversed immense territory, exposed ourselves and the army to the perils of war and slaughter. *Tengri'inayati bile*, 'with God's favor' we have overpowered so many such enemies, seized such vast countries.¹¹⁸

By speaking these "reasonable and justifiable words," writes Babur, "we dissuaded the vacillating men from leaving."¹¹⁹ Well, not quite

¹¹⁷ Babur doesn't mention Alexander in this context but he could have learned about Alexander's Indian invasion from Firdausi's, *Shah namah*. Abu'l Fazl 'Allami, the author of the late sixteenth century work the *A'in-i Akbari*, mentions Alexander's tactics against the Indian monarch 'Torus.' III, 365-73 & 440. However, Firdausi's stories of Alexander do not include the scene of his commanders refusing to march further into India.

¹¹⁸ BN-M, fs. 295a-b.

¹¹⁹ BN-M, f. 295b.

everyone. Khwajah Kalan, his longtime companion and formerly retainer of his father, 'Umar Shaykh, could not stand to remain in India. Khwajah Kalan was only the most senior and long-serving of Babur's men who were appalled by the north Indian weather in April and May, 1526, so Babur assigned him and his many liegemen to administer Ghazni and the nearby Sultan Mas'udi Hazarachs. Taking his many retainers and gifts he finally received Babur's permission to depart from Agra on August 28th. Just before he left, Khwajah Kalan scribbled a verse on the wall of a room of his house.

اگر بخیر و سلامت کذر [ن] سند کنم
سیاه روی شوم کر هوای هند کنم



If I should safely cross the Sind
My face be blackened if I long for Hind.¹²⁰

Khwajah Kalan's poem sparked a tart reply from Babur, which is the first poem he acknowledges writing in India—and the first Turki *rubai* listed in the *Rampur Diwan*. Babur's essentially good-natured pique at what he describes as the "mocking" verse of his friend, may have been heightened by the cleverness of the parting shot in which blackened not only means disgraced or humiliated but is also probably meant to allude to the associations that Iranian and Central Asian poets made between dark, black or night and Indians or India itself.¹²¹ His reply to his old companion is the first of what might be termed his Indian exile verses, one of a series of poems signaling his realization that while winning India he had irretrievably lost his former pleasant life in Kabul. Exile verse represented a genre among Persian-language poets, although Babur does not seem to allude to any authors whom he might have read and who composed such poems, such as the eleventh century Ghaznavid writer Mas'ud Sa'd Salman of Lahore.¹²² On this

¹²⁰ BN-M, f. 296a.

¹²¹ Annemarie Schimmel discusses this imagery in her article, "Turk and Hindu: A Poetical Image and its Application to Historical Fact," in Spero Vryonis ed., *Islam and Cultural Change in the Middle Ages* (Wiesbaden: Harassowitz, 1975), 107-26.

¹²² For a discussion of exile poetry generally and that of Salman in particular

occasion Babur wrote what he describes as his “offhand” or “im promptu” verse, which was thus a self-declared occasional poem, and sent it after Khwajah Kalan.

یوز شکر دی بابر که کریم غفار
بیردی سنکا سند و هند و ملک بسیار
ایسبیک لیغی غه کر سنکا یوقتور طاقت
ساووق یوزینی کورای دیسانک غزنی بار

*

Voice a hundred thanks Babur that the merciful Pardonor,
Gave thee Sind, Hind and many kingdoms.
If you cannot tolerate the heat,
Say, let me see the frigid face, go to is Ghazni.¹²³

Babur is probably reminding Khwajah Kalan that he had been assigned to one of the coldest, windswept parts of Afghanistan. However, this does not seem to have bothered his old friend who replied with a Turk! quatrain, observing, after complementing Babur's wit, that India was a place where things were “upside down.”¹²⁴

Topsy-turvey indeed. Having won the greatest battle of his career Babur now lost one of his closest friends, a man he never saw again. It was Khwajah Kalan to whom Babur wrote in February 1529, “With whom do you hold gatherings? With whom do you drink wine?”¹²⁵ Sometime later Babur wrote in the opening line of another *rubai*, “Few of the circle of friends remain to me.”¹²⁶ Khwajah Kalan's abandonment began a process of disenchantment that seemed to intensify with each new victory, with each new hot season, with each new monsoon. Later as governor of Kabul Khwajah Kalan corresponded with Babur, who poignantly mourned the loss of his old friend's companionship as he began to experience the isolation of sickness and old age.

see Sharma, *Persian Poetry at the Indian Frontier*. Chapter 2: “Poets in Exile from Privileged Spaces.”

¹²³ BN-M, f. 296. Yucel no. 315, p. 259, Koprulii, no. 177, p. 325 and *Rampur Diwan*, f. 14b.

¹²⁴ BN-B, f. 296b n. 2 in which Beveridge quotes Pavet de Courteille, *Dictionnaire Turk-Oriental* (Paris: l'Imprimerie Imperiale, 1870), 214.

¹²⁵ BN-M, f. 361.

¹²⁶ Yucel no. 331, p. 263 and Koprulii, no. 193.

Lacking the freedom to retire to Kabul, Babur was preoccupied first, with extending his authority to the towns and fortresses near Agra and then gaining control over India's geographic heartland: the Panjab, the Ganges-Jumna Duab and the Gangetic valley. His narrative of the last four years of his life represents another of the remarkable insights into the politics of the period, in this case a uniquely detailed and frank account of the complex process by which he tried to establish his sovereignty in the old Ludi kingdom. As was the case with all his campaigns Babur's gradual extension of his territorial dominance in India was achieved by a mixture of conquest and compromise dictated by the reality of a small army composed of semi-independent commanders. His Indian campaigns bore no resemblance to the devastating, ruthless assaults of his ancestors, Timur and Chingiz Khan. He occupied and staffed with his own men the major cities of Lahore, Delhi and Agra, but in many other cases Afghan and Hindu lineages were reappointed to their old commands if they submitted to Babur quickly enough. Even when they hesitated or actively resisted Babur did not usually execute them and slaughter their followers, but usually assigned them to another command or living. Thus, at the level of the *parganah*, the Indian term, as Babur observed, for *tuman* or district, Hindustan remained a largely Afghan territory,

As a way of tying submissive Afghans more closely to him Babur literally gave some of them the royal treatment. In November, for example, he invited the newly cowed Fath Khan Shirwam to a *majlis* to share wine, and "ennobled him with the regard and favor" of Babur's own clothes and turban before allowing him to return to his old estates.¹²⁷ Yet, however dramatically appealing rituals of shared drink and Timurid clothes may seem—the mystique of military feudalism—they did not by themselves have a magical effect. Three years later Babur was campaigning against Fath Khan Sherwam and other Afghans who had rejoined the Ludis, even despite the fact that Babur had kept Fath Khan's son with himself as a hostage! When Babur died in 1530 he had imposed little more than a fragile Timurid military suzerainty in India. The superficiality of his control and the lack of Timurid legitimacy was made starkly manifest nine years later when Humayun was

¹²⁷ BN-M, f. 303a.

defeated by resurgent Afghan forces, and then after the battle of the Ganges in 1540, expelled from India. Unlike the population of Samarqand, none of the people of India then had a history of or nostalgia for Timurid rule.

In June, July and August Babur was preoccupied with the continuing Afghan threat in the east and the increasingly ominous maneuvers of the formidable Rajput, Rana Sanga, to the south west. Some Afghans such as Daulat Khan's son, Dilawar Khan, had already joined Babur, and several other important Ludi *amirs* also pragmatically pledged their loyalty after Panipat. The latter included three *amirs* who had been campaigning against other anti-Ludi Afghans in the Ganges valley. Babur gave these men large cash awards and assigned them—Firuz Khan, Shaykh Bayizid and Mahmud Khan Nuham [Luharm]—to seize the wealthy and strategic but as yet unconquered districts of Jaunpur, Oudh and Ghazipur. Parts of these regions were still controlled by leaders of the large, hostile Afghan force with its presumptive new sultan, that Babur estimates at 30-40,000 men. These Afghans had remained camped near Kannauj. Many other hostile Afghan *amirs* also still controlled the fortresses in the immediate vicinity of Agra. In July, though, the deluge of monsoon rains limited his action; he reports that it rained thirteen times during an awards ceremony he held around July 10th, drenching everyone who was not undercover.¹²⁸ Perhaps the rains had slackened off by mid-August when Babur began pacifying the Delhi-Agra region by sending one hundred and fifty men to subdue the fortresses of Sambal, about eighty miles due east of Delhi, and demanded the surrender of Bayanah, a vital fortress just fifty miles west-southwest of Agra.

By then Babur became increasingly concerned with the Rajput Rana Sanga. In his survey of the rulers of India he lists Rana Sanga as the second most powerful "infidel" in India. He says that only the Rajah of Vijayanagar far to the south commanded more men and territory.¹²⁹ Originally the ruler of the formidable Ghor fortress deep in the Rajasthan desert, in the early sixteenth century Rana Sanga had aggressively expanded southeast to occupy Ranthambor and Chandiri in Malwa, formerly the territories of the

¹²⁸ BN-M, f. 297a.

¹²⁹ The kingdom is described by Burton Stein, *Vijayanagara* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1989).

Muslim Sultans of Malwa or Mandu. According to Babur, Rana Sanga had corresponded with him in Kabul, promising to move on Agra when Babur attacked the Ludis at Delhi, but, says Babur, he had done nothing. Now the Rajah had begun campaigning against the Afghan-held fortress of Kandar near Ranthambor, whose governor immediately sought Babur's aid. Rana Sanga's attack on Kandar seems to have crystallized Babur's realization that the Rajah represented a looming threat on his southwestern flank. He must have understood then if not before that the Rajah saw Babur's destruction of the Ludi state as an opportunity to expand rather than to cooperate with him.

In any event Babur himself now realized that as the monsoon further subsided in mid to late August he and his men had to decide between attacking the Afghan army in Kannauj, only two or three days march to the east, or turning to the southwest against Rana Sanga, whose immediate intentions were still not entirely clear. Meanwhile his troops had successfully begun reducing the fortresses of Etawah, Dulpur and Bayanah, immediately to the southeast, south and southwest of Agra, an "easy" task as he describes it, easy probably, in retrospective comparison with the coming epic clash with Rana Sanga. As he outlines his strategy, Babur says he believed that if he defeated his more formidable enemies first, then commanders of nearby fortresses would have no alternative but to submit. This is compelling military and political logic, and it explains the basic pattern of his Indian campaigns. However, his subsequent admission that Rana Sanga was "not imagined to be much [of a threat]," shows that initially he badly misjudged the relative dangers of Afghans and Rajputs.¹³⁰ Here again Babur is remarkably open about military affairs, a further possible indication that he saw his memoirs at least partly as a text for Humayun and his descendants.

Humayun as it happened now volunteered to attack the Afghan forces. He left Agra on August 21st. Babur's original estimate of Afghan numbers at 20-30,000 must have been wildly exaggerated—as he never alludes to it again and what Afghans there were never gave battle but steadily retreated before Humayun's force, which could not have numbered more than a few thousand men.

¹³⁰ BN-M, f. 299a.

As late summer gave way to autumn Humayun marched with relatively little opposition down the Ganges to Jaunpur and Ghazipur, while Babur remained in Agra. On October 31st Babur urgently sent a messenger to Humayun that Rana Sanga was near and that he, Humayun, should appoint a commander at Jaunpur and taking the army, should himself come quickly.¹³¹ Nonetheless, Humayun seems to have continued his campaign further down the Ganges, and did not return to Agra until early January, “paying his respects” to his father on January 6, 1527.

In the meantime the Rajah’s approach had unnerved Nizam Khan, the Afghan commandant of the Bayanah fortress southwest of Agra, who relinquished the fort to Babur in early November. Babur appointed his brother-in-law, Mahdi Khwajah, to this vital post that stood between Rana Sanga and Agra. The Afghan commander of Gwalior similarly felt threatened and Babur sent men who were able to occupy that vital fortress to his south later in the same month. Dulpur then surrendered as well. Just at that moment Babur had to send a detachment of his men north to Hisar Firuzah, an area northwest of Delhi he had earlier awarded to Humayun, where they quickly defeated a large group of local Afghans who had “rebelled.” With that he apparently turned his entire attention, as he brings his narrative, to Rana Sanga now approaching Bayanah and Agra from the southwest.

In late January or early February Babur ordered Muhammad Sultan Mirza and other Turco-Mongol officers to reinforce Bayanah, as he received multiple reports that Rana Sanga was indeed on the march. As the identify of these men suggests, Babur relied almost entirely on his original *begs* in this campaign. He remarks later in the narrative that he didn’t trust the “Hindustani *amirs*” by which he meant the Afghans, and therefore he sent them to garrison recently captured forts.¹³² However, not all of them were dismissed, and in fact one of the sons of Bahlul Ludi, the founder of the Ludi dynasty, as well as Dilawar Khan, Daulat Khan’s son, and several sons of other important Ludi loyalists fought with Babur in the climactic battle with Rana Sanga.¹³³ Babur himself remained in Agra until February 11th, perhaps

¹³¹ BN-M, f. 303a.

¹³² BN-M, f. 308b.

¹³³ BN-M, fs. 319b-321a.

because it began raining heavily again, presumably the effect of the northeast monsoon. At this time in late January or early February Babur apparently had little idea of the ferocity of the battle to come, for he remarks that during these rains there was a continuous round of *suhbatlar*, of entertainments or parties, some of which Humayun attended, even though his father says that his son disliked them.¹³⁴

Only after he began assembling his army on the plain outside Agra did Babur begin to receive the first unsettling reports that men from Bayanah, who had sent raiding parties outside the fortress against Rana Sanga, had been defeated and scattered. Some of the men he had earlier ordered to reinforce Bayanah began returning to Agra with reports of the "fierce and warlike army of the *kafir* or infidel, Rana Sanga," the first hint of the new crises in morale that began sweeping his men, unnerved by the defeats of their skirmishers and Rana Sanga's reputation. Intending to camp at the reservoir or tank near Sikri, later the site of his grandson, Akbar's great sandstone palace, Babur took the army forward with smaller detachments patrolling in front. One of these, a unit of between 1000 and 1500 men, was savaged by a large force of Rajputs, and when Babur sent reinforcements forward they too were defeated. Babur now ordered his entire army forward but Rana Sanga's men withdrew and for the next three weeks his men prepared the battlefield beside a large lake. As this work was going forward about five hundred reinforcements arrived from Kabul in the second or third week of February. They included a grandson of Sultan Husayn Bayqara, and an astrologer. Among this group was one Baba Dust Suchi, literally the water carrier, who had gone to Kabul for wine and returned with three camel loads of "reasonable Ghazni wines."¹³⁵

If Babur had been writing a more artful history rather than a chronicle of events he might have used the arrival of the Ghazni wine as a literary prologue and psychological catalyst for the dramatic decision he made a few days later to renounce wine. It is reasonable to believe that he had experienced occasional spasms of guilt since he had vowed and failed to stop drinking when he

¹³⁴ BN-M, f. 308a.

¹³⁵ BN-M, f. 311a.

turned forty. After all his early religious training had kept him from drinking throughout most of his youth. Based upon the implicit evidence of his narrative it does not seem likely, though, that these moral twinges had brought on overwhelming remorse after he turned forty. When he did finally renounce alcohol in late February 1527 he did not decide to abstain from drink primarily because he felt intense moral disgust for his dissolute behavior. Instead, he did so as a dramatic ritual act to demonstrate his resolve in the face of the sense of uncertainty and dread that seemed to be paralyzing his troops' resolve in the face of an impending battle with Rana Sanga, a far more formidable foe than the Afghan Ibrahim LudT. He recalls that as he rode out from his Sikri camp on February 25th to tour the battlefield "It occurred to me that the wish for repentance had been constantly on my mind [and] that the commission of these illegal acts had continually afflicted my heart. I said O soul:

How long will thou savor sin? Repentance is not tasteless, savor it!
 Why are you defiled by sin? Why do you mortify your contentment?
 Why are you passions' slave? Why do you render your life pointless?
 You are marching, intent on war. You are facing your own death.

He who prepares himself for death, In this situation, you know what to do?

★

He distances himself from all forbidden things.
 He separates himself from all sin.
 He saves himself from transgression.

I repented from wine-drinking,
 *

The gold and silver flasks and cups, All drinking vessels were broken up.
 I brought and smashed them all. Renouncing wine, I quieted my
 heart.¹³⁶

Babur did evidently renounce wine this day, and he may have recalled the first two lines of these verses when he was riding out, because they are in Persian. The remaining Turk! verses, the last

¹³⁶ Ibid., f. 312a.

four of which constitute the only verse narrative in the text, must have been written later, probably when Babur composed the entire section. The very public and political nature of this event is made clear in the proclamation dated the following day and composed in a style that might be called high-church Persian by Shaykh Zayn, one of the poets accompanying Babur on the December wine party, a participant in the forthcoming battle and the later author of the *Fath-namah* or Letter of Victory. Prefaced by and sprinkled with Quranic quotations, this *farman* or royal decree describes the renunciation of wine as the greatest of renunciations but also pointedly mentions "It is hoped" his renunciation would be rewarded with an increase in victories.¹³⁷ The fear of failure that probably prompted Babur to dream of Khwajah Ahrar before Samarqand in 1500 now led him to manifest Islamic piety before the battle with the infidel Rana Sanga. The danger must have seemed equally great.

First, the morale of the army was near collapse. Referring to the recent defeats and the ominous reports of Rana Sanga's army Babur recalls, "At such a time, when because of past events and stupid talk—as has been mentioned—the troops were frightened." Matters were made even worse by the astrologer, Muhammad Sharif, who had arrived with the others from Kabul, and had been going about the camp prophesying defeat if the army attacked from the west where Mars was in the ascendant.¹³⁸ He adds that, no one in the army countered such talk. "Brave talk and manly words were not heard from anyone."¹³⁹ Few may have felt like offering heroic words since "Exactly at this time..." Babur's recent hard won gains largely evaporated when "Most of the Hindustanis and Afghans repudiated their recently declared loyalty and reoccupied their districts and provinces."¹⁴⁰ Koil, Sambal and Kannauj all fell or were abandoned by their Timurid commanders, Gwalior was besieged and Hasan Khan openly joined Rana Sanga. After Kabul, this was Babur's second experience of the pitfalls of empire building beyond the familiar and relatively friendly Turco-Mongol territories in Mawarannahr. It presaged the difficult years to follow and offers the first insight into the nature of early "imperial"

¹³⁷ Ibid., f. 313b.

¹³⁸ Ibid., f. 311b.

¹³⁹ BN-M, f. 314b.

¹⁴⁰ BN-M, fs. 315a & 328b.

Timurid-Mughul control over the socially diverse Indian countryside.

In a second of his inspirational speeches, Babur then “summoned *begs* and warriors,” and reminded them that life is transient and that a brave death is better than a cowardly life. Facing a Hindu ruler he could appeal to more than the self-interest and shared sacrifice that he invoked earlier to quiet his men’s discontent. Babur now used Islam not only to legitimize the battle but sanctify death. He inspired his men, he says, by quoting two separate Persian verses and a Turki *rubai* followed by the invocation of Islamic ideology that promised recognition as a *ghazi* or heroic warrior for those who would fight and survive and designation of a *shahid* for others killed in battle. “I said,” Babur writes, first in Persian:

آنکه پاینده و باقیس خدا خواهد بود (J) J-Jb 1 J-d Jb

آنکه پاینده و باقیس خدا خواهد بود

*

Everyone who enters man’s world will perish.
He who is eternal and perpetual is God.

Then in a Turki *rubai* whose lines repeat the sentiment of the first Persian hemistich and read like literal translations of Persian verse:

هر کیم که حیات مجلسی غه کیریب تور
عاقب اجل پیمانه سیدین ایچکو سیدین
و هر کیشی کیم تیریکیلیت منزلیغه کیلیب تور
آخر دنیا غمخانه سیدین کیچکو سیدور

*

Who so ever joins life’s congress,
Will finally drink death’s cup,
And each who enters life’s mansion,
Will at last emerge from the house of sorrow.

Finally, Babur quoted another Persian verse from Firdausi’s *Shah namah*, echoing his earlier criticism of his cousin for refusing to fight the Uzbeks.

cm< i l j d l j — a كنه تن لـ L l j . a * Q t n l j j 1 m j ١ لـ سـ جـ

It is better if I should die with a good name.

I must have a name, as death owns the body.

Then, recalls Babur, “*begs and naukars*, great and small, joyfully took the Quran into their hands and with just this spirit swore an oath. This was wise [on my part]. Seeing and hearing this was good for friend and foe from far and near.”¹⁴¹

In his earlier description of the battle of Panipat Babur does not even invoke Timurid legitimacy as a justification for his attack on Ibrahim Ludi. These claims were transparently weak as Timur had never ruled India, and he mentions them only once after the Bherah campaign, when he sent a hawk and a demand for recognition from Ibrahim Ludi who, from an objective point of view, treated them with the dismissive contempt they deserved. The implicit message of Babur’s narrative before Panipat is that he was primarily motivated by his *mulkgzrliq* or imperial ambitions. These were fueled by his Timurid identity but that meant virtually nothing in India, and it would have done little to fire the resolve of his multi-ethnic army. Nor does Babur offer a religious justification for his attack, although in a ritualistic fashion later in the Indian section of the text he does remark that God and not himself “had defeated that powerful enemy” Ibrahim Ludi.¹⁴²

The battle of Kanwah with Rana Sanga is, however, depicted as an episode in the epic struggle between Muslims and infidels, Islam and heresy, good and evil, light and darkness, in which Babur’s tactics are explicitly identified with the Ottoman *ghazis* or heroic warriors of Anatolia. And it is Shaykh Zayn writing in Persian who describes the battle in a theological idiom and metaphorical style unseen in the rest of the *Vaqai*. Babur says he uses Shaykh Zayn’s elaborate *Fath-namah* or letter of victory written on March 29th, or twelve days after Kanwah, because, he implies, it accurately describes the armies and the fighting. In fact, amidst Quranic quotations, elaborate religious rhetoric and the vocabulary of the Iranian epic, Shaykh Zayn gives a far more elaborate account of Kanwah than Babur’s does for Panipat. Despite the sometimes impenetrable

¹⁴¹ BN-M, fs. 314b-315a.

¹⁴² BN-M, f. 270a.

thicket of his prose, he also manages to convey a sense of the ferocity of this clash between the Turco-Mongol and Rajput warrior classes.

On Babur's side the army seems to have been positioned very much as it had been at Panipat, with the principal cavalry forces arrayed in front of carts tied together, behind which stood Ustad "All Quit, the Ottoman artillery advisor, with his single mortar, the *zarb-zan* guns and matchlockmen. The Mongol flanking horsemen were again stationed on the edges of both the right and left wings, the *baranghar* and *javanghar*, but it is not possible to tell from Shaykh Zayn's elaborate description of the battle that they turned the tide as Babur implies they did at Panipat. Still Babur's later award of a fifteen-lac stipend and command of the Alwar fortress to the Mongol Tardikah for his "good work" on the right flanking force suggests that this *tulghamahor* enveloping maneuver was also effective at Kanwah.¹⁴³ Shaykh Zayn describes repeated cavalry charges on either side, struggles so intense that eventually Babur ordered the matchlockmen out from behind the carts into the midst of battle. Quoting from the *Shah namah*, a source of martial images for many Persian and Indo-Persian writers, Shaykh Zayn describes a battlefield turned from day to night by the dust churned up by the clashing armies.¹⁴⁴ Sometime into the battle, he says that Babur's men forced the Rajput wings onto the center as had been done at Panipat, and this, Shaykh Zayn indicates, triggered a final desperate and nearly successful Rajput charge that penetrated deep into the left wing of the Timurid forces.

Brilliantly blending closely observed details with the imagery and language of an epic, Shaykh Zayn concludes his artful account by saying that just at this moment "the breezes of victory and prosperity blew over the meadow of our auspicious *nawab* and brought the joyful [Quranic] tidings, 'Yea, we have granted you a clear victory.'¹⁴⁵ Without further explanation he writes that the Rajput forces retreated, leaving behind many slain rajahs and senior commanders and masses of dead, immediately transformed into minarets of skulls. Just below his seal on this *Fath-ndmah* Babur now

¹⁴³ His command is mentioned in BN-M, f. 321a and his reward in f. 326b.

¹⁴⁴ BN-M, f. 323a.

¹⁴⁵ BN-M, fs. 323b-324a.

added the *rubai* that begins: “I became a desert wanderer for Islam:”

اسلام اوچون آواره یازی بولدوم
کفار و هندو حربسازی بولدوم
جزم ایلاب ایدیم اوزنی شهید اولققه
Lc.4 <JI<L111
زی بولدوم



I am become a desert wanderer for Islam.
Having joined battle with infidels and Hindus.
I readied myself to become a martyr,
God be thanked I am become a ghazi.¹⁴⁶

Babur was undoubtedly genuinely relieved he had survived the battle of Kanwah to be recognized as a *ghazi* rather than killed to be revered as a *shahid* or martyr. Yet this poem otherwise seems more like a ritualistic observance or an ex post facto religious legitimation than an cry of exhilarated triumph, as indeed is implied by the opening line, “I am become a desert wanderer for Islam,” for we know that Islam played no role at all in his Indian exile, although he may possibly be referring here only to the Rajasthan desert.¹⁴⁷ It was only after he fought Rana Sanga that he put g/zANon his titles and currency. In 933 a.h. (1526/27) he added the title *ghazi* to his seal and on coins, some of which read, as does a coin minted in Lahore in 936 a.h. (1529-30) “Zahir al-Dm Muhammad Babur Padshah Ghazi.”¹⁴⁸ However, this should not suggest some profound rearrangement of Indian alliances into Muslim and Hindu camps either then or later in Timurid-Mughul history; many Afghan Muslims continued to ally themselves with the “infidel” Rajputs after that battle, as Babur himself began to do not long afterwards.

Heat and the lack of water convinced Babur not to pursue Rana Sanga to Chitor, his formidable fortress in the Rajasthan desert,

¹⁴⁶ BN-M, fs. 3245-325.

¹⁴⁷ A fine point perhaps but Babur normally uses the term *ghurbat* when describing his “exile” in India—from Kabul and Ferghanah.

¹⁴⁸ BN-M, f. 324b for Babur’s statement to this effect and Charles J. Rodgers, *Catalogue of the Coins of the Moghul Emperors of India*, Pt. I, 1-4.

nearly two hundred and fifty miles to the southwest. Instead he sent men to reestablish Timurid control over fortresses and towns he had taken earlier and then lost, as he now puts it, “during the Sanga rebellion.” These were Chandawar and Rapri, just east and southeast of Agra, Kannauj, nearly one hundred and twenty-five miles east on the Ganges, Koil (Aligarh), about fifty miles north of Agra, “Lauknaur,” nearly another one hundred miles northeast of Koil and thirty miles east of Sambal.

In other ways Babur now began stabilizing his new regime. After he had lavishly distributed the Agra treasury in May, 1526 he was, he explicitly says, too distracted by Rana Sanga’s approach to begin establishing his own administration. On April 25, 1527 he returned to Agra and made appointments to the towns and fortresses his men had reoccupied. In early May, just about a year after he had first entered Agra, he allowed his men to retire to their districts during the monsoons and present themselves afterwards. By this time Humayun had already left for Kabul along with his Badakhshan! troops, who had reached the limit of their endurance and patience. He was only one of several men to leave, and Babur gives another insight into the negotiated nature of his campaigns when he remarks:

“Well before the *kafir ghazdt* {the infidel war}..At was mentioned that after the victory [their] duty was over and that if anyone wished to go permission will be given. Humayun’s *naukars* were mainly Badakhsham’s and people of that area never had endured a one or two-month campaign. They were restless before the combat. Since both a promise had been made and Kabul was open, for these reasons the opinions were that Humayun should be given leave for Kabul.¹⁴⁹

Leaving with an unspecified number of troops in mid-April—and looting several rooms of the Delhi treasury on his way—Humayun was joined in Kabul by Babur’s brother-in-law Mahdi Khwajah, who had fought in the left wing both at Panipat and Kanwah, but was “uncomfortable” in India. A third man, Tardi Beg Khaksar, was given leave to go to Babur’s son Kamran in Qandahar, where Tardi Beg planned to abandon soldiering for the life of a *darvish* or itinerant mendicant/ contemplative mystic.¹⁵⁰

¹⁴⁹ BN-M, fs. 326b-327a.

¹⁵⁰ BN-M, f. 329b. “Darvish” the polar opposite in the Islamic world order from the *shah* or *sultan*, the latter a person consumed with worldly affairs, the

Enough men left for Afghanistan in May or June, 1527 that Babur quotes a poem, a *qit'ah* he had written the previous year, addressed generically to all those who had abandoned him, but perhaps probably first written at the time of Khwajah Kalan's departure in 1526.

O those who left the country of India,
Talking about its misery and distress,
Remembering Kabul and its lovely climate
You ardently left India, that furnace.
Have you looked for and found there,
Pleasure and delight, elegance and grace.
As for us we are still alive, thank God
Although there has been great pain and endless distress,
Sensual pleasure and bodily toil,
You have survived these as also have we.¹⁵¹

Even though this poem had likely been written a year earlier, Babur may have chosen to insert it here because when he was writing this section just a short time later he knew that the battle of Kanwah was the climax of his Indian conquest. In May 1527, while he and his men directly controlled only a small area, they were not immediately threatened by either Rajput or Afghan forces, and from May until December the Timurids did not undertake any major campaigns. They spent the fast of Ramadan in June in the *Hasht Bihisht* or "Eight-Paradises" garden that he had begun building in Agra a few days after arriving there the previous year—after bitterly observing the lack of flowing water and geometrically planned gardens in India. Just before the Id festival celebrating the end of the fast, they moved on to the Sikri battlefield where a *Bagh-i Fath* or "Victory Garden" was being built. Babur notes that since his eleventh year, that is just before his father's death, he had never spent the Id festival in the same place, and to maintain the custom is why he left Agra to celebrate in Sikri. His remark is a useful reminder of the tumultuous life he had led since 'Umar Shaykh's untimely death in Akhsi in 1494. In many ways Babur was no less active after Kanwah than before.

former a person with none. The *darvish* was often a sufi, but if so usually a solitary, wandering one. Hamid Algar "Darvis," in *Elr*, 7, 74-76.

¹⁵¹ BN-M, fs. 329b-330a. Yucel, no. 283, no. 409.

Babur fought many other major battles in India, including a successful assault on the formidable Rajput fortress of Chandiri in January 1528 and subsequent campaigns to the east in Bihar and Bengal. Yet he never again faced enemies as formidable as Ibrahim Ludi and Rana Sanga. In 1528 and 1529 Babur himself must have felt that the years after Kanwah represented his life's denouement. Both his prose text as well as his poetry show that he was increasingly faced with his own mortality as he repeatedly fell ill. In fact, he mentions being sick for an extended period in August 1527, when he took more than two weeks to recover. His narrative and poetry of those years are among the most emotional and affecting of his life, a dramatic counterpoint to the Ferghanah years, that is to the seemingly inexhaustible resilience and emotional perplexity of his youth.

CHAPTER SEVEN

STRANGERS IN A STRANGE LAND

تصور می کند J-A Xi-Ji <U (jlj-jl j l <E j_A

ت 6 A⁴ ihI * A * A (١٤١٧<4 ج کوکب 2x5 * 1 * I

Whoever comes from Iran to India imagines,
That in India gold is scattered like stars in the evening sky.
17th century Safavid poet Ashraf Mazandaram ¹

More than a year after Humayun left India for “Kabul and its lovely climate” in April 1527, Babur sat down in Agra to write his Indian gazetteer.² In it he tells readers of the *Vaqaf* that weather was but one aspect of India’s environment and culture that distinguished it from both Mawarannahr and Kabul. As was true of most other travelers and emigres who came to India from the north and west, spanning the centuries from Greek and Roman to British times, Babur found the country stunningly different from the lands and societies he knew in nearly every respect—in his case from both his Ferghanah homeland and also from his adopted Afghan home. Some of these differences he valued for practical reasons, some he thought aesthetically pleasing and exotically interesting, but in most instances he found India and its society to be fundamentally distasteful. Babur was not the first Central Asian Muslim who recorded his conflicted feelings about India. The scientist Abu Rayhan al-Birum did so at considerably greater length five hundred years earlier, and his extensive treatise helps to put Babur’s much briefer survey in perspective. Yet, while al-Birum’s abilities, education and interests differed significantly from Babur’s, his response to India was remarkably similar. In particular both men agreed that while they admired some things about India, they found the

¹ Gulchm-i Ma’am, *Karvan-i Hind* I, 71.

² At least Babur mentions writing parts of the botanical section after “three years in Hindustan,” which probably means that he wrote it during the 1529 monsoon season, sometime after returning from his Gangetic campaign in late June. BN-M, f. 287a.

cultural boundaries separating themselves from Hindu society to be virtually impassable. However, the views of Babur and al-Birum should also be measured against those of the patrilineal Turk but Indian-born Muslim, Amir Khusrau, the thirteenth and early fourteenth century Indo-Persian poet whose work Babur knew well. Amir Khusrau's view of India seems fundamentally at odds with their reactions, although his ecstatic praise of his homeland was not an unsolicited testimonial but was part of the larger body of panegyric poetry he produced for his patrons, the Turkic sultans of Delhi.

The Boundaries of Hindustan

In his Indian gazetteer and in other comments scattered throughout the *Vaqai* Babur describes the stunning transition anyone experienced who traveled from Kabul to India. Writing with his usual care, he reports that after leaving Kabul one first passed through a transition zone and then entered India proper after crossing the Indus River. He himself first crossed the boundary between the Afghan and Indian worlds in January 1505 when he and his men decided to raid the borderlands east of Kabul. In recounting the march of six stages from Kabul through the Jagdalik pass to the Ningnahr region, Babur describes his impression of the transitional zone near Adinapur, an account that will resonate with anyone who has made the journey.

Warm countries (*mldyatlar*) and the Hindustan borderland (*navahilar*) had never [before] been seen. Arriving in Ni[n]gnahar another world appeared—the grasses, trees, animals, birds, people's habits and customs [were] new. There was astonishment [and] really astonishment was justified.³

Later in the gazetteer Babur makes it clear that the Ningnahr country was only a transition zone, sharing some characteristics of Kabul and some of India. There he emphasizes that however great the contrast between Kabul and this *garmsir* or warm region east of Kabul, it paled in comparison with the difference between Mawarannahr, Kabul and the territory east of the Indus. The trans-Indus

³ BN-M, fs. 145a-b.

region is, he writes, “a strange kingdom (*gharib mamlekat*).” “Compared to [our] countries (*vildyatlar*)” he continues, “it is a different world.”⁴ Then to emphasize the point he not only cites the distinct plants, animals and people of the trans-Indus region, but says that Hindustan’s mountains, rivers, jungles, deserts, villages and districts, rains and winds are also entirely different than anything his Turki-speaking readers had ever seen or experienced. Everything, Babur concludes, even the rocks, are fashioned “in the Hindustan manner.”⁵

Babur’s survey of Hindustan is neither as complete nor as systematic as his gazetteer of Kabul and its surrounding districts, in comparison a relatively small territory he had known for a far longer period of time. His systemizing intelligence is better displayed in the Kabul section. Perhaps he simply had not been in the country long enough to acquire an encyclopedic knowledge of this kingdom. In fact he explicitly notes that this is a preliminary account, when at the end of this section he remarks that he described as much as he knew of the peoples and places of Hindustan, and says he would include additional material as he learned more.⁶ His fatal illness in 1530 made this impossible, and that may also be the reason why in certain parts of the gazetteer the organization is chaotic. He probably never had time to revise this section. In any event, he does not separately describe the Panjab, the Delhi-Agra *Duab* or the Gangetic valley. Nor does he go on to elaborate on all of the categories he mentions. Readers are left wondering, for example, about the unique characteristics of India’s rocks, although he may have had something in mind as simple as the prevalence of red sandstone used in buildings in and around Agra. However, he still manages to discuss an extensive range of topics, and when

⁴ BN-M, f. 272a. Normally when Babur refers to different regions he uses the term *vilayat*. His use of *mamlakat* here is unusual and its significance unclear, although he may be using it in a political rather than a geographical sense. Vladimir Minorsky notes that in eighteenth century Iran the plural form or *mamalik* sometimes meant “realm” with the term *vilayat* used to designate the realm’s provinces. Minorsky further notes, however, that *mamalik* more often designated the state provinces as distinguished from demesne lands, and that in this usage *mamlakat* referred to one of these provinces. See Minorsky’s edited translation of the Safavid administrative treatise the *Tadhkirat al-Muluk*, 24.

⁵ BN-M, fs. 272a-b.

⁶ *Ibid.*, f. 293b.

these are considered together with other comments scattered through the *Vaqaz* it is possible to acquire a fairly comprehensive understanding of his response to India. With this in mind Babur's discussion of India's climate, geography, flora and fauna, computation system and revenue can be divided for convenience into three categories: the valuable, the interesting and exotic and finally, the inexplicable and offensive.

Babur repeatedly lets his readers know that he was a reluctant conqueror and unwilling exile who would have preferred to have been ruling a Central Asian state from Samarqand or at the very least an Indo-Afghan state from Kabul. Like most other Central Asian conquerors Babur was in India for the money or, more generally, for the staggeringly large human and material resources that the country offered. Put simply, the one thing he unreservedly admired about India was its wealth. At the beginning of the Indian gazetteer he prefaces his account of north Indian geography by remarking: "The Hindustan *mamdlik*, [kingdoms or dominions] constitute a vast, populous and productive *vildyat*, [country or province]." ⁷ The implicit contrast with Ferghanah or even with all of Mawarannahr must have been obvious to his audience, even if they had not already realized it from his earlier comments. Attentive readers would have recalled, for example, that while in Babur's estimate Ferghanah generated enough income for 3-4,000 troops, he thought Ibrahim Ludi's territories could support 500,000! ⁸ In the gazetteer Babur also explicitly points out that while Timur had brought 200 stonemasons from Iran, India and elsewhere to construct his stone mosque in Samarqand, he himself had 680 stone masons working on a single, unidentified Agra building every day. Meanwhile another 1491 masons were constructing other buildings and gardens in Agra, Bayanah, Dulpur and Gwalior. ⁹

Just a page earlier Babur expressed himself on this subject more baldly, saying, "That which is appealing about Hindustan is that it is a large *vildyat* with a huge [amount] of gold and silver." ¹⁰ Then to prove the point he lists the provinces under his direct or indirect control and estimates that the revenues of these conquered territo-

⁷ BN-M, fs. 270a-b.

⁸ BN-M, fs. 5b & 270a.

⁹ BN-M, f. 291b.

¹⁰ BN-M, f. 291a.

ries were 520 million silver *tangahs* yearly.¹¹ Babur also believed that these kinds of revenue figures explained why India's numbering system included words for huge amounts, although al-Birum offers more complex religious reasons for the Hindu numbering system.¹² So after discussing the country's way of keeping time and its system of weights Babur gives examples, telling his readers that 100,000 equaled in Indian terms, one *lac*, while 100 lacs equaled one *crore*. Then rather than confining his enumeration to these terms he also supplies the Indian words for still larger numbers. 100 *crores*, he reports, equaled one *arb*. 100 *arbs* equaled one *karb*. 100 *karbs* equaled one *nil* and so forth. Using these terms Babur's estimated revenue could be stated simply as fifty-two crores. Such figures were unimaginable in Ferghanah or Kabul.

Apart from wealth, Babur expresses the most enthusiasm and interest for India's fauna and flora, which he describes both with great appreciation and exquisitely rendered detail. This is also the section of his memoirs that attracted the attention of his grandson, Akbar, or the painters he employed in his atelier, for natural history is the subject of the largest number of miniatures that illustrate the text of the *Vaqai*. Babur really has written a detailed zoological and botanical treatise that forms the largest section of the gazetteer and rivals the accounts of most early European naturalists. In this section too he exhibits the critical intelligence, scientific eye for the particular and refined aesthetic sense he reveals elsewhere in the *Vaqai*.

In describing India's animals and plants he chooses only those not known in *vilayatlar*, by which he seems to mean in this instance as earlier, Mawarannahr, as some of them were found in the *garmsir* borderlands of Kabul. Babur's account of these animals and plants reflect both his practical interests and aesthetic sense and some times apparently just a fascination with the exotic. It is tempting to think he took some of his elaborate descriptions from other sources, for he uses Arabic or Turki-Arabic terminology for categories he describes except that of flowers, which are categorized simply by

¹¹ BN-M, f. 292a. In this section he also gives the estimated revenue for the conquered territories. He gives the figures in Persian rather than Turk! suggesting, as Beveridge also notes, that they had been supplied to him by a Persian-speaking Indian official. See also BN-B, p. 520, n. 2.

¹² Edward C. Sachau ed. and trans., *Alberuni's India* (Delhi: Low Price Publications, repr. 1996), 174-79.

the Persian *gul*. Al-Birum, for example, describes some of north India's plants and animals, but he does so in a distinctly different style than Babur, who gives no indication of being aware of his scientific predecessor. On the other hand, Babur does quote the name for the mango used by Amir Khusrau, who describes it in one poem, the *Qiran al-sddayn* "The Conjunction of Jupiter and Venus," and gives his own list of animals in his elaborate verse composition, *Jvuhsipihrd*. Still Amir Khusrau's brief descriptions do not correspond with Babur's elaborate accounts, which are meant to inform his audience rather than, as in the poet's case, serve as examples of India's superiority to other lands.

Babur had ample opportunity to study Indian plants and animals during his repeated forays into India since 1505 and after Panipat, and his anecdotal descriptions show he was writing from personal experience. This is made even clearer by his occasional use of Turk! grammatical devices to indicate that either he was repeating stories told by others or that he seriously doubted what he had heard. "It is said," he writes skeptically in the reported past tense about the lime, "that it is an antidote for poison."¹⁴ Or sometimes he explicitly expresses his doubt about reports of animal behavior, as when repeating a story about a so-called "jungle parrot," who supposedly could think as well as speak. "We believed," Babur writes, "such a thing to be impossible." In discussing this report Babur apparently alludes to the moment he was writing this particular section, for he says it was told to him *bu fursatah*, "at this time," by a Mongol member of his immediate retinue in Agra, Abu'l Qasim Jalayir. After hearing the story in which a parrot is quoted as saying spontaneously in Persian, *mara wd kun, damgir shudam*, "Uncover me, I am suffocating," Babur quotes a stock Arabic phrase, "Let the truth rest with the teller." He then concludes in Turk!: "Not hearing with one's own ears, one cannot believe it."¹⁵

Babur divides his account of India's flora and fauna into the categories: *wuhush*, "wild beasts," *tuyur* birds, *su heivdnafi*, "water animals," *nabatat* "plants," and then *gul* "flowers." In the case of most animals and plants he comments on their practical uses as well as describing them in detail for his Turco-Mongol audience.

¹³ BN-M, f. 282b. See below, pp. 394-99, for a discussion of this poem.

¹⁴ BN-M, f. 286b.

¹⁵ BN-M, f. 278a.

Not surprisingly he begins his account of India's animals with the elephant, "this huge-bodied, quick-witted beast" that was a royal status symbol and heavy if cumbersome armored force of most Indian armies. He doesn't have to resort to the equivocation of reported speech in this case, as he had already begun using elephants in his own campaigns, and in the case of the elephant Babur is primarily concerned with its practical use, rather than anatomical peculiarities. He does, though, briefly describe its trunk and tusks. After saying appreciatively "whatever is said, it understands; whatever is commanded, it does," he indicates that villagers who captured elephants had to offer them for sale to the state. He discusses their size and price, which varied directly with size, and their ability to work with their tusks. Finally, after observing how useful elephants were to the Indian people he summarizes their importance in campaigns, but ignores their combat role and describes them only as beasts of burden.

In the [Indian] armies there are inevitably several elephants in every detachment. The elephant's good qualities are: it can easily pick up and carry large loads across broad and swift-running rivers, [and] three or four elephants can easily pull a mortar cart pulled by four to five hundred men. Yet, it has a huge appetite, equal to one [or two] strings of camels.¹⁶

At least there was no question of domesticating the rhinoceros, the nilgai and several varieties of deer that were common targets of the hunt, the perennial preoccupation of the Turco-Mongol military class. Babur's description of these mammals as well as monkeys and rodents, is highlighted by his portrait of the rhinoceros, probably his finest zoological sketch, although he is nearly as evocative when discussing peacocks, parrots and dolphins in the Ganges. He tries to render the rhinoceros meaningful to his Central Asian audience through a combination of characteristically memorable detail and a comparison of its features to the horse. Alluding to his portrait of the elephant Babur writes, "The rhinoceros is also a large animal, its bulk is perhaps that of three water buffaloes." Then citing "a well-known tale in the countries" of his readers that the rhinoceros could lift an elephant on its horn, Babur says it is "probably false." Having dispensed with this story, he offers his own account of this

¹⁶ BN-M, f. 275a.

animal, now long-extinct in western India but surviving in small numbers in the Brahmaputra valley.¹⁷

It has one horn on the upper part of the snout, more than one *qarish* [hand's width]. A [horn] of more than two *qarish* is never seen. From one large horn there was [made] a drinking vessel, a dice-box [and] with perhaps even three to four fingers [of horn] left. Its hide is very thick. With a fully drawn, strong bow, if a good hit and good penetration [an arrow] will enter [only] four fingers [deep beneath the skin]. [However] they say that an arrow will easily pierce its hide in some places. The skin hangs loosely around both its fore and hind legs. From a distance it seems to be wrapped up in a blanket. It resembles the horse more than any other animal. Just] as a horse does not have a large belly, its belly is also not large. Just] as there would be a bone in the horse's ankle, so does this [animal also have such a bone. Just] as the horse has a tibia bone, so this [animal] also has this tibia bone.

[The rhinoceros] is much fiercer than the elephant, and it is not at all either obedient or submissive. There are many [of them] in the Parashawur and Hashnaghar jungles [and] there are many also in the jungles between the Indus river and Bherah district. In Hindustan there are also many along the banks of the Saru [Gogra] river. They were frequently killed during the Hindustan campaigns in the Parashawur and Hashnaghar jungles. Wielding [their] great horns they powerfully gored both men and horses during hunts. At one hunt [a rhino] with its horn threw the horse of a lad named Maqsud a spear length. For this reason he was nicknamed Rhinoceros Maqsud.¹⁸

Just as Babur begins his account of mammals with the most interesting animal, the elephant, so he chooses the exotic peacock to introduce his account of local birds. That is his taste for symmetrical organization typified by the gazetteers is also found within this section. His portrait, unmatched in pre-colonial sources, is an exquisite description of color and physical traits of this bird, which as Babur also notes, is even less capable of flight than the pheasant. The only thing he fails to mention is the peacock's grating call. He reasons speculatively that its inability to fly more than short distances explains why it is found primarily in the mountains and jungles. Yet this leads him to reflect that he cannot

¹⁷ Valmik Thapar, *Land of the Tiger* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1997), 76, 95 & 101.

¹⁸ BN-M, fs. 275b-276a.

imagine how peacocks could thrive in such habitats frequented by jackals. He concludes by commenting on the taste of peacock meat, a theme of his other descriptions of more obvious Indian game birds, which do not include the starling and the parrot, whether rational or not. With one of his typically insightful comments Babur says that while peacock meat is not unsavory, people still only eat it reluctantly, as is also true of the camel. He then notes for his Sunni Muslim readers that according to Hanafi law, peacock was a legitimate food for believers.

Babur also begins the later sections with the biggest or best of each species or category he is discussing. He introduces his extensive section on birds that live near the water with a description of the huge bird he knew as the *ding*, later called in British India, the “adjutant.” He mentions seeing an adjutant and some of these other birds in Kabul or eastern Afghanistan, another reminder that he is writing here primarily for a Central Asian audience. Otherwise he identifies a number of cranes and storks, ducks that are good to eat, and smaller birds like the crow, magpie, swift and the “nightingale of Hindustan” known as the *hull*. In each case he describes their size, physical peculiarities and coloring. Apart from the edible ducks few of these birds had any practical use. Most of this section is simply an ornithologists’ delight. It also serves as another example of Babur’s intellectual curiosity and encyclopedic interests.

In the remaining sections of his zoological and botanical treatise Babur discusses aquatic animals, beginning with the alligator, crocodile and dolphin, and plants. He prefers the mango to any other Indian fruit and flowers, and among flowers, the hibiscus is given pride of place. He mentions the two standard ways of eating the mango taught to children and newcomers to India, mash it up and suck the juice through a hole or peel it like a peach.¹⁹ Most of the section on plants is devoted to fruits, in which he describes their taste as carefully and if possible, as comparatively as he paints a verbal picture of the plumages of birds. Based on Babur’s preoccupation with gardens and his use of the garden he built near Adinapur as an early agricultural experiment station for South Asian crops, it is impossible to ignore the likelihood that he was

¹⁹ BN-M, f. 282b.

thinking of cultivating many of these fruits himself. Readers are reminded of this possibility also because in the *Vaqai'* narrative for the period of June and July 1529, about the time Babur probably wrote this section, he mentions harvesting melons and grapes from his Hasht Bihisht or "Eight Paradise" garden in Agra.²⁰

Indicative both of Babur's intellectual taste for categorization and practical interest in edible fruits is his elaborate discussion of the "orange and orange-like fruits." In it he describes seven fruits that seem to belong to this species, although among them he lists two types of limes. Interestingly the Hindustan *naranjes* he describes are all found in three *garmsir* districts, Lamghanat, Bajaur and Swat [Sawat], the transitional region between Kabul and the Indus. He says that:

'Lamghanat oranges are smaller, navel oranges, very fine, delicate and juicy, not at all like Khurasan oranges. It is due to their delicacy that when bringing [them] from Lamghanat to Kabul, a distance of thirteen or fourteen yighach, some oranges go bad. [Whereas] they send Astarabad oranges with less damage to Samarqand, which is 270 to 280 yighach, because of the thickness of their skin and the small amount of their juice. The Bajaur orange is larger than a quince, very juicy and its juice is more bitter than other oranges.²¹

Babur then repeats a story of his old companion, Khwajah Kalan, by then in Kabul, who "said we counted the oranges taken from one tree of this species in Bajaur, and it amounted to 7,000." Perhaps his friend referred to the entire season's crop—even so. Leaving this dubious story without comment Babur concludes with a linguistic aside, the equivalent of one of his many learned footnotes, in the first person, "It had always seemed to me that the pronunciation of word *naranj* was an Arabic usage. It seems this is so for the Bajaur and Swat people all call the *naranj*, *narang* [the Indian and Persian pronunciation]."²²

Finally, Babur describes four Indian flowers not known to his Central Asian audience: the hibiscus, oleander, screw-pine and special variety of jasmine, *yasman*, which is "larger and more strongly scented than the jasmines in our place."²³ As in the case

²⁰ BN-M, f. 380b.

²¹ BN-M, fs. 286a-b. Astarabad is an Iranian city at the southeastern tip of the Caspian Sea. Soucek, *An Historical Geography of Iran*, 239-42.

²² BN-M, f. 286b. The letter "g" is not found in Arabic.

²³ Here rather than simply using *vilayat* or *vilayatlar*, Babur's common term for his homeland, he writes: *bizing yer*, literally "our place."

of fruits he probably was thinking of ways these plants could be grown in his gardens. Here, though, Babur offers a strictly aesthetic appreciation, but one rendered with his usual care. He notes that the oleander, for example, is both red and white and then compares it to the peach, a fruit his Central Asian audience knew well.

“Like the peach it has five petals. The red oleander resembles the peach flower, but the oleander has fourteen or fifteen flowers blooming in one place [which] from a distance have the appearance of one large flower....[Like the hibiscus] it both blooms frequently and profusely during the monsoons and is found most of the year.”²⁴

Weather, Landscape and Customs

The weather immediately following India’s monsoon rains is one of the few other aspects of Indian life for which Babur expresses appreciation. He loathed nearly everything else about its climate and virtually every other aspect of its environment and society. His implicit standard was the climate of Kabul or Samarqand, made more understandable, perhaps, by the remarks of the English geologist, W. Rickmer Rickmers, who wrote of Samarqand in 1913, “I certainly prefer the climate of Samarqand to that of any place I know in Europe,” and then elaborates:

The sun cuts silhouettes into the land and fetches a wealth of colour out of it; the faintest tint is distinct from its nearest gradation, everything which can shine, glimmers and glitters. Coupled with this sharp light is the penetrating dryness which desiccates the body and stimulates the brain....The day of the steppe knows not that state of weariness and lassitude, that sultry oppression apt to undermine the energy of the strongest character, that tropical moisture ready to destroy the sensations of pleasure and hope.²⁵

Remarking that “the monsoon airs are very good,” and “wonderfully fine” when the rain ceases, Babur writes that at this time “the weather’s healthfulness and pleasantness cannot be equaled.”²⁶ However, he also offers his readers the critical information that their bows could not be used in the monsoons, because the air is *pur*

²⁴ BN-M, fs. 287b-288a.

²⁵ Rickmers, *The Duab of Turkistan*, 138-39.

²⁶ BN-M, f. 291a.

naan, “very damp.” The bows could not even be drawn in that weather without breaking. This was one of several reasons why campaigns were usually suspended during the rainy season. He also tells them that everything suffers during the rains, although he does not include in this his own health. “Armor, book, household goods and cloth are also affected. [Even] a building,” he writes “does not last long,” implicitly contrasting the short life of mud-brick structures in India with those of Mawarannahr, where the rainfall is very scant.²⁷ However, apart from the monsoons Babur, like virtually every emigre and member of the indigenous population suffered in the north Indian climate. Alluding apparently to his earlier complaint about the oppressive weather in Agra in the months immediately after Panipat, he writes, “We were oppressed by three things in Hindustan: first by its heat, then by its strong wind and also by its dust.”²⁸

In fact, as he makes clear in other comments scattered throughout the Indian gazetteer, he was oppressed by more than three things in the Indian physical and social environment. Oppressed is too strong a word for some of his reactions, as he shows by his description of Indian topography and the agricultural environment. His reaction to the landscape seems a mixture of simple homesickness and affronted aesthetic sensibilities. Implicitly contrasting the north Indian plain with his homeland, Babur expresses an exile’s disappointment with the unrelenting flatness of the terrain and the lack of the *ariqs* or irrigation channels he was used to seeing in Mawarannahr. “India’s cities and provinces,” he writes, “are very unpleasant (*asru bisafa*).”²⁹

Most of Hindustan’s provinces are located in flat areas. In so many cities and so many provinces there is no flowing water. Only rivers have flowing waters. In some places there is still water. [Even] in some cities where *ariqs* could be dug to bring water, it is not brought.³⁰

Never mind that the alluvial Ferghanah valley is nearly as flat; at least it is ringed with mountains.

In implying that he missed seeing the irrigation channels common both to Mawarannahr and Kabul, Babur still explains why he

²⁷ BN-M, fs. 291a-b.

²⁸ BN-M, f. 300a.

²⁹ BN-M, f. 274a.

³⁰ BN-M, f. 273b.

thought Indians never dug them, even when they easily could. The explanation, he suggests, is that fall crops were watered by the monsoon rains. The monsoons also explained, he thought, why Indian villagers could abandon one site and quickly reestablish another settlement elsewhere. They had no need to dig irrigation channels or build dams, and for their own water could dig wells. They also had ready supplies of grass and wood to build houses. Still Babur indicates that some Indian crops were in fact irrigated, and contrasts the Persian wheel used for this purpose in the Panjab with what he contemptuously describes as a clumsy and filthy method used around Agra and Bayanah. In the latter area, Babur reports, a bullock drew water from wells using a rope that dragged through the animal's dung and urine as it descended back into the well. In this area, he remarks in implied astonishment, men and women sometimes carried water to crops in jugs. He must have found this custom needlessly cumbersome, considering that the water could have been raised by Persian wheels and carried to the fields in *ariqs* that he has just mentioned.

Babur's negative reaction to India's tedious landscape and backward and unsanitary irrigation techniques is, however, far overshadowed by his dismissive, utterly contemptuous response to Indian culture and society. His account of Indian, that is Hindu social life and cultural attributes is, first of all, surprisingly brief and brutally dismissive. The essence of his critique is contained in two short passages. First he gives a surprisingly perfunctory account of Hindu society, surprising given the care he has just lavished on India's flora and fauna. Its brevity recalls the account that the fourteenth century North African traveler, Ibn Battuta, accords the majority of India's inhabitants as he traveled to and from Delhi.³¹ Yet, whereas Ibn Battuta scarcely acknowledges the existence of non-Muslims, Babur at least describes a few pertinent aspects of Hindu society before ridiculing and dismissing it. It might be possible to attribute the intensity of his reaction to his unfamiliarity with a people among whom he had spent so little time, but he had probably encountered Hindu merchants even while in Ferghanah and certainly met many Hindus and other non-Muslim Indians in Afghanistan and the Panjab after 1504. His feelings cannot be

³¹ Gibb ed. and trans., *The Travels of Ibn Battuta A. D. 1325-1354* III, see especially Chapter X.

dismissed, therefore, as a simple function of ignorance. His response reflects deeply held values that reveal the profound cultural divide between his world and India.

After noting that the majority of India's people are Hindus, who believe in reincarnation, Babur's subsequent description of Hindu society is remarkable for its brevity and selectivity. He ignores the existence of religious and aristocratic castes, brahmans and rajahs. The latter omission is especially curious given his personal familiarity with the Rajput lineages who controlled the great arc of territory to his west and innumerable Rajput-dominated villages within his own territories. Instead Babur mentions by profession only three groups of Hindus: "artisans, workers and officials," perhaps because he had dealt most often with individuals from these groups in his settlement and beautification projects. In fact, other than noting that Hindus exclusively performed these occupations Babur says nothing more about any other Hindus, except to note two interesting social characteristics about those who were sedentary. They all had *qabilah* lineage or "tribal" names, he reports, whereas in the *vildyatlar*, only steppe dwellers had such names, and Hindus passed down their customs from father to father. The latter custom cannot have seemed very unusual to his readers, despite the social mobility within Turco-Mongol armies. However, in saying that village and town dwellers were identified by lineage rather than simply as someone's father or son, wife or daughter, Babur was evidently referring to caste identities.

Unlike many foreign observers he does not explicitly discuss the pollution restrictions that distinguished and separated Hindu society from his own. In the one paragraph, though, he indirectly denounces what he considers to be the most pernicious effects of those restrictions in his comprehensive litany of complaints. In this famous, oft-quoted but habitually unexplained passage he defines the social and cultural boundaries that separated his world from Hindu India, although given his publicized contempt for Afghans the target of his critique may not always be absolutely clear. Some of his criticisms deal with fundamental values that made the boundaries between the two societies seem an unbridgeable chasm rather than a tricky but ultimately fordable stream. Others are relatively superficial, reflecting an intense homesickness. Introducing his passage by reminding his readers that "Hindustan is a place of little elegance," *kam lata/at*, Babur continues:

The people of Hindustan have no beauty; they have no convivial society, no social intercourse, no character or genius, no urbanity, no nobility or chivalry. In the skilled arts and crafts there is no regularity, proportionality, straightness or rectangularity. There are no good horses, there are no good dogs, no grapes, muskmelons or first-rate fruits, no ice or cold water, no good bread or cooked food in the bazars, no hammams, no madrasahs, no candles, no torches, or candlesticks.³²

Apart from the opening remark, which apparently reflects simple racial prejudice, Babur begins his litany of complaints with one of the things he found most offensive about Indian society, saying Indians did not enjoy "convivial society and social intercourse," *ikhtildt u amizesh, ve amad u raft*. Few things could have bothered him more than a society based on values fundamentally antagonistic to those exemplified in the Tunurid symposium, the *suhbat ve suhbata-tydalyiq*. The phrase *ikhtildt u amzzesh* connotes conversation, social intercourse and friendship, while *amad u raft*, literally "coming and going," refers to the exchange of visits between social equals. In castigating Indian society for lacking these traits, Babur was presumably referring to the impossibility of social gatherings in a society divided into castes, where the exclusivity of temple worship was paralleled by the severely restricted nature of social intercourse. In making this complaint Babur was not alone. He both echoed and prefaced the reaction of earlier and later visitors and emigres to India who found the social isolation there simultaneously puzzling and offensive. Babur may mention the lack of *hammams* and *madrasahs* for the same reason and in doing so he must be referring to non-Muslim Indian society. They were communal institutions that symbolized the fundamental differences between Muslim and Hindu communities,

One of the oldest recorded examples of an outsider's stunned reaction to brahmanical society is that of Megasthenes, the Seleucid-Greek ambassador to the Mauryan court at Patna in the central Gaugetic valley in the third century B.C. He is said to have remarked about Indian social isolation: "...other things they do which one cannot approve: for instance, that they eat always alone, and that they have no fixed hours when meals are to be taken by all in common, but each one eats when he feels inclined. The

³² BN-M, f. 290b.

contrary custom would be better for ends of social and civil life.”³³ Pollution restrictions did not, of course, allow the kind of civic life this Greek visitor had in mind. Megasthenes only noted what modern Indian anthropologists have commented on at greater length, noting that “Eating alone, as the normative Hindu system makes clear, is a morally meaningful activity. It is a dialogue of responsibility towards one’s own self.”³⁴ In Mediterranean, Central Asian, Greek, Roman, Jewish, Christian and Islamic cultures sharing meals was and is a fundamental social ritual, which often defined the boundaries of the religious, ethnic or social community. Not sharing meals astonished nearly all new arrivals to India, from ancient to modern times. Dictated by the religious tenets of orthodox brahmanism, it is a good example of the distinct value system that made the boundaries between Hindu and Muslim society seem to Babur and others virtually impassable.

The remainder of Babur’s complaints in this passage show he found little else to admire in Indians, even had they shared meals with each other or with him and his companions. Coming from a man so perceptive in other ways his verbal drumbeat of criticisms seems surprising, especially in view of his limited exposure to non-Muslim society. In so far as one can tell from his memoirs Babur had little contact with Hindus, apart from issuing orders to stone masons and revenue collectors. He never mentions any social contact with Rajput princes, not to speak of brahman scholars. All the gatherings he describes in the Indian section of the *Vaqaf* are social replicas of earlier Turco-Mongol encounters, except for their increasing ceremonial or imperial character.

Just the severely limited nature of his non-Muslim contacts may have encouraged him to report to his readers with such assurance and sense of cultural superiority that Indians had no *tab'u idrak*, no “character or genius,” no *adab* no urbanity, and no *karam u maruwat*, no “nobility or chivalry.” His invocation of *adab*, the well-bred, belletristic politesse, is the most obvious reference to the sophisticated Iranized court culture acquired by men such as his maternal grandfather, Yunas Khan, during the long years of his Iranian exile from the Mongol ulus. As recounted by Haydar Mirza, Yunas

³³J. W. McCrindle, *Ancient India as Described by Megasthenes and Arrian* (Calcutta: Chatterjee, Chatterjee & Co. 1926), 69.

³⁴R. S. Khare, *The Hindu Hearth and Home* (Delhi: Vikas, 1976), 263 n. 1.

Khan was an “accomplished and outstanding khan of the Chaghatay race:

Possessed of splendid qualities, he was arrayed with virtues such as [being] a fluent reader of the Quran, [having] a temperate nature, [and being] a good conversationalist. He was skilled in enigmas, calligraphy and painting and other things consistent with a sound nature. He was well-trained in instrumental music and singing....³⁵

Yunas Khan was also, Haydar Mirza concludes, a talented conqueror and ruler, a valorous hero and exceptional archer. Perhaps when all these qualities were combined together in one individual he would have been in Babur’s mind the “perfect man” of the Turco-Mongol, Perso-Islamic aristocratic class. And when he lamented the lack of such men in north India, Babur may have had in mind Afghans as much as Hindus.

If in his opening verbal assault on Indian society Babur meant to inform his readers that India utterly lacked the symposium culture and civilized individuals he valued so highly, his next sentence is part of a broader litany of complaints that in India it was also impossible to find the proper symposium environment. When he says that there is no “regularity, proportionality, straightness or rectangularity,” *siyaq ve andam ve rajah ve gunya yoq*, Babur is not referring solely or even principally to small crafts offered for sale in the bazars. As his earlier and later critical asides about India make clear, he has in mind the lack of geometrically planned gardens and water palaces of the type he ordered constructed in Agra and Dulpur.³⁶ Part of this is connected to his complaint there was no running water in India apart from the rivers. When saying this he wasn’t thinking just of the agricultural system and its lack of canals, but probably more of clear, running water bisecting geometrically planned gardens. Babur mentions that just a few days after arriving in Agra in 1526 and having found India “unpleasant and disorderly,” he started searching for a suitable garden site. He tells his readers that “Wherever human habitation is possible, water should be made to flow with wheels and planned and regular spaces should

³⁵ TR-T, fs. 61b-62.

³⁶ Babur is presumably referring to Hindu landscapes, since the Sultans of Delhi had constructed formal Islamic gardens. See Anthony Welch, “Gardens that Babur Did Not Like: Landscape, Water, and Architecture for the Sultans of Delhi,” in *Mughal Gardens* James L. Westcoat Jr. and Joachim Wolschke-Bulmahn ed. (Washington D.C.: Dumbarton Oaks, 1996), 59-93.

be built.”³⁷ Despite what he says about the ugliness and unsuitability of the countryside around Agra, he built a *hammary* pool and garden, thus “introducing regular, [well] designed gardens in unpleasant, irregular India.”³⁸

Babur’s mention of *gunya*, or rectangularity, as one of the qualities he found wanting in India, is a reminder of the degree to which he had absorbed Greco-Persian norms of symmetry and proportion. *Gunyd* is a Greek term that he may have learned from the Harat landscape architect, Mirak-i Sayyid Ghiyas, who like so many other Timurid refugees, fled to India. He arrived in the country a year before Babur’s death.³⁹ Greek geometrical vocabulary had been absorbed into Islamic culture during the ‘Abbasid caliphate, either indirectly from Sasanid sources or directly from Greek translations. In the ninth century, for example, Ibn Qutayba (d. 889) wrote an instructional text for government officials in which he gave pride of place to geometry:

In addition to my works [which provide linguistic, literary and linguistic training], it is indispensable...to study geometrical figures for the measurement of land in order that he can recognize a right, acute, and an obtuse triangle and the heights of triangles, the different types of quadrangles, arcs and other circular figures, and perpendicular lines, in order that he can test his knowledge in practice on the land.⁴⁰

By the tenth century the *muhanctiyan* Iranian term for a geometer/engineer, was known as the professional who plotted courses or irrigation channels, and presumably also the well-ordered streams that flowed through gardens.⁴¹ One such man may be depicted in one of the miniature paintings done to accompany the late fifteenth century translation of the *Vaqaz*. It shows a man holding a grid plan while he directs construction on Babur’s garden at Adinahpur.⁴²

³⁷ BN-M, f. 299b.

³⁸ BN-M, f. 300a.

³⁹ Maria Subtelny, “Agriculture and the Timurid *Chaharbagh*’ the Evidence from a Medieval Persian Agricultural Manual,” in Attilio Petruccioli ed., *Gardens in the Time of the Great Muslim Empires*, 112-13.

⁴⁰ Dimitri Gutas, *Greek Thought, Arabic Culture* (London: Routledge, 1998), 111.

⁴¹ Gutas, *Greek Thought, Arabic Culture* 112-13. In contrast to the immediately practical uses of geometry ‘Umar Khayyam developed a field known as “Algebraic Geometry.” See R. Rashed and B. Vahabzadeh ed., *Omar Khayyam the Mathematician* (N.Y., N.Y.: Biblioteca Persica, 2000), 7 passim.

⁴² Pictured in Subtelny, “Agriculture and the Timurid *Chaharbagh*: the Evi-

However, Babur's absorption of geometrical norms extended far beyond the garden or the house—and home designs in India he also found sorely inchoate. His appreciation of a natural prospect, his Timurid gaze, was intensified when he saw nature seemingly conforming to the geometrical norms of landscape architecture. These norms were replicated, of course, in miniature painting representations of garden scenes.

When writing, for example, of a mtzjz/TZ-induced high he experienced at one of his "entertainments" in March 1519, Babur appreciatively recalls how spring flowers on a hillside were apparently arranged geometrically. "Sitting near the camp on a small rise, we enjoyed the flowers. As if designed, there were below on the sides of the hill now yellow, now red flowers blossoming in rows in a hexagonal shape."⁴³ It was later that year, in November 1519, while touring the autumn harvest, that Babur and his men noticed "an apple sapling whose sear, yellow leaves on each branch were regularly arranged in fives or sixes just in such a way that if painters had made every effort to copy it they would not have been able to do so."⁴⁴ In describing this latter scene he seems to exemplify the psychology of art, in which a painter teaches viewers to appreciate the beauty of a scene then conditions their future response to nature, the original source of the artist's inspiration. Babur himself may have learned to assume that painters tried to reproduce proportional, geometrically balanced scenes from examples of Timurid miniature painting, an art many believe "to have been created on the same underlying canon of proportional harmonies as was Timurid architecture."⁴⁵ He knew the work of the Harat school of miniature painters especially well, and critiques two artists, including Bihzad, the outstanding artist of the late Timurid period.⁴⁶

Babur applies the same aesthetic standards he uses to evaluate

dence from a Medieval Persian Agricultural Manual," 125. Also cited prominently in Welch, "Gardens that Babur Did Not Like: Landscape, Water, and Architecture for the Sultans of Delhi," 59. The painting is discussed at length by J. L. Westcoat, Jr., "Picturing an Early Mughal Garden," *Asian Art* 2 (1989), 59-79.

⁴³ BN-M, fs. 232a-b.

⁴⁴ BN-M, f. 248a.

⁴⁵ Eleanor Sims, "Painting in Timurid Iran," 67.

⁴⁶ BN-M, fs. 181b-182a.

India's landscape to critique its buildings. In general, as he says in the gazetteer, he thought they lacked "charm, airiness, proportionality and regularity."⁴⁷ Only on one occasion does he actually criticize specific buildings, in a passage from a later section of the *Vaqai* in which he describes his tour of the important Hindu kingdom of Gwalior in the fall of 1528. Vikramaditya, the last independent rajah of the Tomar dynasty had died at Panipat fighting with Ibrahim, who had conquered Gwalior in 1523, forcing the Rajah into vassalage. Babur thought that the buildings of Vikramaditya and his predecessor Man Singh (r.1486-1516) he saw within Gwalior fort were *ghanlp* "peculiar" or "strange" and *lokpalo ve bzsiydg*, "ponderous and irregular."⁴⁸ A life lived outside or in airy arched Timurid pavilions would not have prepared him to value the heavier, lower and darker stone structures of Hindu India. Nonetheless, despite beginning his description with a negative aesthetic response, in the remainder of his Gwalior survey Babur is neither contemptuous nor dismissive, but curious.

He implicitly praises Man Singh's palace and describes without comment the imposing eighth century Tell ka Mandir temple,⁴⁹ which he mentions, could be seen from Dulpur. Babur sometimes remarks, fairly, on the "airless" "dark" interiors of certain palace rooms, and in the garden of a temple complex he observed what he describes as a "very squat, unsymmetrical" wooden pavilion with "tasteless porticos in the Hindustani mode" at the garden doors.⁵⁰ Surprisingly, though, he seemed to appreciate some Gwalior temples, but only when they resembled buildings from his own society, thus comparing their porches, tall domes and interior rooms to *madrasahs*. Babur did not, however, appreciate the nearby Jain statues, whose naked exposure of genitalia he ordered to be destroyed and which, perhaps for prurient interests, are represented

⁴⁷ BN-M, f. 291a.

⁴⁸ BN-M, f. 340b. The history and monuments of Gwalior fort and nearby region are discussed by Kalyan Kumar Chakravarty, *Gwalior Fort* (Delhi: Arnold-Heinemann, 1984) and B. D. Misra, *Forts and Fortresses of Gwalior and Its Hinterland* (Delhi: Manohar, 1993).

⁴⁹ An informative study of Gwalior temple architecture is Michael D. Willis, *Temples of Gopaksetra* (London: British Museum, 1997). See especially plates 84-88 for photographs of the Tell ka Mandir temple.

⁵⁰ Ibid., fs. 341a-b.

⁵¹ Ibid., f. 343a.

in the miniature of Gwalior included in Akbar's illustrated text of the *Vaqat*.⁵²

If India's social and aesthetic values were fundamentally opposed to his own, Babur also showed in his indictment of India what might be described as his more petty human side. When he complained about the lack of commodities that any Central Asian Muslim would assume to be readily available to him, Babur seems to be giving vent to the common frustration that travelers over the centuries have felt when visiting new lands. It is one thing to appreciate exoticism, but what about the comforts and familiar institutions of home? Turco-Mongol aristocrats, after all, required good horses and dogs for warfare and hunting. They expected to find the fruits they knew, a longing that became inculcated in later members of the dynasty who had been born in India, but taught to find the country wanting in this and other ways. In Babur's mind at least the mango did not compensate for the delicious fruits of Kabul and Samarqand. Then finally Babur mentions that along with hammams and madrasahs India also lacked candles, torches and candlesticks.

This last complaint seems inexplicable if he had not earlier described what he felt to be the repulsive way in which "great men" in India would illumine their night gatherings, using "dirty" servants called *diwatis* or *deotis*, who carried a crude type of oil lamp, rather than torches or candles. Babur's seemingly visceral distaste for this custom was equaled by one final aspect of Indian society that he like later Europeans found offensive, the fact that "common people" of India walked around nearly naked. Expressing his shock at the ways Indians dressed, which for some Central Asian or Iranian Muslims was a prurient delight, Babur describes the common male dhoti and the simple female sari, both uncut pieces of cloth.⁵³ What he calls in Persian terms the *lungi*, hung, he says, just below the naval and then was passed between the legs and tied behind. He uses the same term for what became when worn by women, the sari, part of which was tied around the waist, while the second half was thrown over the head. It is perhaps fortunate that someone with his sensibilities did not conquer Kerala, in the extreme south-

⁵² BN-M, fs. 342a-b.

⁵³ See for example Mahmud ibn Amir Wall Balkhi, *The Bahr al-Asrdr Riazul Islam* ed. (Karachi: University of Karachi, Institute of Central and West Asian Studies, 1980).

west, where none of the population in the region's tropical climate went clothed above the waist before the colonial period.

Civilized Standards: the vilayatlar

When Babur was writing his Indian critique he had Samarqand, Harat and to a lesser extent Kabul in mind as standards for measuring the quality of civilized life. He had already completed his sections on those cities and their environs when he came to the Indian gazetteer. While he does not allude to the Timurid cities in the gazetteer, no reader of the *Vaqai* could fail to notice that they provided the physical environment and congenial *adabz* society he prized. Careful readers might even remember that in his effusive description of Samarqand he praises the bakeries and cooked food found in the city's superb bazars and the wonderful fruit grown in its suburbs and surrounding districts. The way Babur describes Samarqand and Harat, each great Timurid city provides the implicit comparison for one of the two most fundamental elements of his Indian critique. His account of Samarqand focuses on the physical environment of the city, its buildings, gardens, suburbs and surrounding districts, although he does briefly mention that the Samarqand region was the home to many of the Muslim world's great scholars, most notably Muhammad ibn Isma'il al-Bukhari, the fifteenth century author of the *Sahih Bukhari*. Surprisingly when he comes to describe Harat he merely lists the many buildings, tombs, gates and bridges he visited—many more than were found in Samarqand—and concentrates instead on the cataloguing the city's aristocracy and learned men and recalling the elegant gatherings he attended there. It is only a matter of guesswork why Babur chose to write so selectively about these cities, although his different approach may reflect the age and conditions when he visited them and perhaps also the kind of sources he had access to for each one. His interesting decision not to describe Harat's grand buildings may reflect his lack of intimate knowledge of the city or

⁵⁴ BN-M, f. 45a. The great collection of *hadith*, widely regarded as the most authentic collection of reports of the actions and sayings of the Prophet Muhammad and therefore one of the most important source books of Islamic law. In the late 1990's an elaborate shrine was built to commemorate Bukhari just outside of Samarqand.

his awareness that the historian Isfizan had already done so, although that does not explain why he still chose to list many of the city's famous poets and theologians, information that was also available in Isfizari's work and elsewhere.

There is in any case no doubt about Babur's opinion of Samarqand, whose longitude and latitude he even supplies, based upon the astronomical tables compiled under Ulugh Beg Mirza in the first half of the fifteenth century. "*Rutf-i maskun-da*" (In the inhabited quarter (of the world)), "Babur writes, "There are few such fine cities."⁵⁵ Based then on the discussion that follows, the criteria for a fine city were in his mind principally three: splendid buildings, beautiful gardens, and excellent bazars. In addition he admired two other things about Samarqand's hinterland, its lush meadows and productive outlying districts. If for the fourteenth century Indo Persian poet Amir Khusrau, India was paradise on earth, for Babur it must have been Samarqand, a city that he writes of with affecting warmth and unrestrained delight. If after absorbing Babur's litany of complaints about Hindustan a reader would reread the brief Samarqand gazetteer, he would discover a nostalgic memory of a place for which no amount of Indian coin seemed adequate compensation.

The buildings and gardens Babur admired were those constructed by Timur himself, his grandson, Ulugh Beg Mirza and some of their *amirs* within the city walls and beyond in the adjoining *mahallat* or neighborhoods. He does not often say that they had *andam ve siyaq*, "proportionality and regularity," that is implied by his critique of Indian buildings—and by his unstinting praise for those in Samarqand. Nonetheless, Babur characterizes virtually every one of Timur and Ulugh Beg's structures as *besydr^cali imdrat*, "very sublime buildings." In Timur's case this included the Kok Saray, the large four story *kushk* or kiosk built in the *ark* or citadel; never mind its ominous reputation as the place where people were taken for execution. Buildings such as these undoubtedly had the *hawa* or airiness that Babur found so wanting in Gwalior. Otherwise Babur admired Timur's stone mosque, built with captive Indian stonemasons following Timur's 1398 campaign, an unusual building in that most royal and religious structures in Mawarannahr were built with baked brick and faced with tile. This was the second

⁵⁵ BN-M, f. 44b.

of Timur's "very sublime buildings," featuring a Quranic calligraphic inscription that could be read from a *kuruh*, a distance of about two miles, typical of Timur's taste for architectural excess. The mosque was one of two architectural reminders of Timur's Indian raid that Babur would have known from his three brief occupations of Samarqand.

As for Ulugh Beg's buildings, Babur mentions a *madrasah* and *khanagah* or sufi hospice, with a large dome, so large that its equal could hardly be found elsewhere in the world. Adjoining these building was a *hammam*, thus completing an architectural ensemble of communal buildings such as Babur missed seeing in India. And just as the *khanagah* had its towering dome, the bath was distinguished by a floor made from all types of stone, so that no bath like it, he argues, was known in Khurasan or Samarqand [province]. Near the *madrasah* Ulugh Beg had evidently built a mosque, decorated with pieces of wood arranged in a curved rhythmic pattern, what Babur characterizes as *khatai naqshlar* or Chinese designs. He reports that the *qiblah* or niche indicating the direction of Mecca in this building was different from that of the *madrasah*, probably, he thought, because this *qiblah* was determined by *munajjim tariqi* or "astronomical methods."⁵⁶ These were calculated in the next "sublime building" Babur mentions, Ulugh Beg's three story observatory located on nearby Kuhak hill. At this observatory Ulugh Beg's scientists had calculated the *al-Gurkham*, literally the "Timurid tables," that by Babur's time had superseded the calculations done at the Mongol observatory at Maraghah by Nasir al-Dm Tusi, the thirteenth century scholar and scientist.⁵⁷ If Babur's emphasis on the unique characteristics of other Timurid buildings in Samarqand sometimes seems the product of excessive nostalgia, it is impossible to fault his understanding of the significance of this observatory. Babur's citation of coordinates from Ulugh Beg's tables to locate Samarqand and reference to their use in locating the *qiblah*, suggest that his own taste for geometric symmetry and

⁵⁶ BN-M, f. 46b.

⁵⁷ In fact along with his fellow Iranian and Central Asian scholars Ibn Sma, al-Birum and 'Umar Khayyam, one of the outstanding scientists of the "medieval" Islamic world. Muhammed ⁶A1TAmir Moezzi, H. Daiber and F. J. Ragep, "al-TusT," Muhammad B. al-Hasan b. ⁶A1TAbu Dja'far (1201-74), EI2, Fasc. 175-6, 745-52. Tusi, a student or disciple of Ibn Sma, studied in 'Umar Khayyam's native city of Nishapur between 1213 and 1221.

quantification was merely one indicator of a scientifically-inclined intellect that is also manifested in his categorization of plants and animals and skepticism about articulate monkeys and other local miracles.

Apart from such buildings, Babur waxes lyrical about Samarqand's gardens, some of which, in his opinion, contained their own "sublime buildings." Timur he reports, built two of these east of the city, one near the observatory, another near the *ark*, and two "below" the city. The one Babur remembered either well or fondly enough to describe in detail was the *Bagh-i Dilkusha* or "Sweetheart-Garden." He appreciated the avenue lined with flanking rows of poplar trees that joined the garden to Samarqand's Turquoise Gate, and recalled that Timur's Indian campaign was commemorated with paintings in the large kiosk built within the garden. Of Ulugh Beg's two gardens Babur was especially taken with the *Bagh-i Maidan*, the Garden of the Field or Square on the slope of Kuhak hill, within which was built a "sublime building" known as the *chihil sutun*, or "forty-columns."⁵⁸ The two-story building was flanked by four towers, "like minarets," through which one climbed to the second floor, where there were four open galleries, the kind of symmetrical but open-air setting that so appealed to Babur and other Timurids. Nearby was another smaller garden with two buildings, one of them a four-door structure known as the *Chirri-khanah*, or "porcelain-house" because it was full of porcelain "a person" had brought from China.⁵⁹ Presumably the porcelain had been brought by one or more of several Chinese missions to the Timurids, the first of which arrived in Samarqand in 1395. Others reached Harat in 1409, 1412 and 1417. A mission from Harat to Beijing arrived in the Chinese capital in 1421.⁶⁰ Porcelain was only

⁵⁸ In Safavid Isfahan a similarly named building has twenty actual columns that are visually doubled in a reflecting pool. Babur mentions no such pool here nor the number of actual columns in the building.

⁵⁹ BN-M, fs. 47a-b.

⁶⁰ For these missions and the routes to and from Harat and China see A. B. Buriev, "Svedeniya Hafiz-i Abru O vzaimootnosheniyakh SredneT Azii S Kitaem v XV v" B. A. Litvinskii ed., *Iz Istorii Srednei Azii i Vostochnogo Turkistana XV-XIX vv.* (Tashkent: "Fan," 1937), 24-37. Yolande Crowe, "Some Timurid Designs and Their Far Eastern Connections," in Lisa Golombek and Maria Subtelny ed., *Timurid Art and Culture* (Leiden: Brill, 1992), 169-70. There was also a *Chini-khanah* in Mir 'AlTShir Nava'T's Gazur Gah garden at Harat, the burial site of the poet Ansari. Bernard O'Kane, *Timurid Architecture in Khurasan* (Costa Mesa, Ca.:

the most tactile evidence of pervasive Chinese influence on Timurid painting and decorative arts—as exemplified by the designs on Ulugh Beg’s mosque.⁶¹ In a long-term historical perspective such contacts were not surprising. Han Chinese missions had reached Balkh in northern Afghanistan in the second century B.C., and during the late Sasanid and early Islamic period a constant flow of merchants and goods linked Iran and Central Asia with T’ang dynasty China.⁶²

Even considering all these wonderful kiosks and gardens of Timur and Ulugh Beg, the garden Babur praises most highly was one of the many built by Timurid *amirs*, just as Babur’s *begs* were to replicate his along the river near Agra. He singles out a *charbagh* built by Darvish Muhammad Tarkhan in Sultan Ahmad Mirza’s time on the slope below the *Bagh-i Maidan*. Based upon the vocabulary of his description this garden, more than any other in the city or its neighborhoods, represented the ideal landscape architecture he found so wanting in India. “Out of all the large and small gardens of the greater and lesser *begs*’.

There were few equal to the *charbagh* of Muhammad Tarkhan in *safdlīq*, *havdlīq* and *maddnazarl’iq*, (charm, airiness and perspective.) The *charbagh* is placed lower than the *Bdgh-i Maidan* on a height overhanging the Qulbah meadow. The entire meadow lies at its feet. In the *charbagh* lovely *narwdn*, cypresses and poplars have been planted *bileh siydq*, “with regularity” in rows. This is a perfect “mansion.” Its defect is that there is no large stream.⁶³

If all these sentences, excepting the last, were turned into negatives you would have Babur’s critique of north India’s physical environment and its architecture: flat terrain, which thus lacked the perspective of height, airless, irregular buildings and lack of gardens

Mazda, 1987), 12. Cited by G. A. Bailey, “The Dynamics of Chinoiserie in Timurid and Early Safavid Ceramics,” in Golombek and Subtelny ed., *Timurid Art and Architecture*, 189. In the seventeenth century the Qutb Shahi rulers of the Deccan sultanate of Golconda constructed a garden with a “ChmT Khanah,” the ruins of which still stand. See the photographs in Ali Akbar Husain’s, *Scent in the Islamic Garden* (Karachi: Oxford University Press, 2000), figures 18 and 19 and pp. 19-23.

⁶¹ Lentz and Lowrey, *Timur and the Princely Vision*, see especially 187, 192-95 and 231-32.

⁶² The latter contacts and goods exchanged are described by Edward H. Schaefter, *The Golden Peaches of Samarkand* (Berkeley: University of California Press, repr. 1985).

⁶³ BN-M, f. 47b.

with geometrically planned spaces, much less graceful kiosks. What this garden and all of Hindustan also needed were streams, not so much natural waterways as channels directed from existing rivers, the *ariqs* of a well-irrigated landscape.

It wasn't just that Samarqand had such gardens, as well as beautiful religious and communal structures, an admirable bazar, good cooked food and delicious fruit. Around the city were excellent meadows, where armies could camp and find fodder for their horses; one meadow east-northeast of the city called Kan-i Gul was a royal hunting preserve. Babur's later description of Kabul's meadows in his gazetteer of that city reflects this same interest in the ability of the city to support large numbers of grazing horses. Beyond the immediate limits of Samarqand Babur described its outlying *vilayats* and *tumans*. Among these he included the city of Bukhara, a "fine city" itself with many fruits, excellent melons and the strongest wines in Mawarannahr. "At the time of wine-drinking in Samarqand," Babur writes of his third and last occupation of the city, "I drank wines."⁶⁴ Another *vilayat* just south of Samarqand was Timur's birthplace of Kish or Shahr-i sabz, the "Green city," so named because of the region's lush springtime growth.

As Timur had once thought to make Kish his capital he had also erected "fine buildings" there, including the kind of tall, arched structures that Babur seemed to so admire and find wanting in Gwalior and elsewhere in India. Babur particularly mentions a financial and military administrative building with a large *pzstaqor* archway for Timur's own court, with two smaller arched structures to the left and right for financial and military officials. "Few such high arches," Babur writes, "can be identified in the world. They say" he cautiously continues, "it is higher than the Kish arch," referring to the immense Sasanid arched structure at Ctesiphon in Iraq.⁶⁵ Finally, Babur singles out the Shavdar *tuman*, between Samarqand and Kish, and bounded by the Kuhak river on one side: "an excellent *tuman* with good weather, abundant pure water and inexpensive produce." Again extolling Samarqand's unique virtues Babur says of Shavdar, "Travelers to Egypt and Syria cannot point to such a place as this."⁶⁶

⁶⁴ BN-M, f. 49a.

⁶⁵ BN-M, f. 49a.

⁶⁶ BN-M, f. 50a.

If Samarqand and its surroundings represented Babur's standards of an urban environment set amidst natural beauty in a highly cultivated hinterland, his relatives in Harat had achieved the social equivalent of those standards in their refined gatherings. While Babur remembered many *suhbat* in gardens in and around Kabul, it seems that he had never experienced such *adabi* or refined entertainments as he knew from his three-week sojourn in Harat in December 1506. Even then he had arrived in the city too late to experience the great literary *majlises* of Husayn Bayqara, Jami and Mir "All Shir Naval.⁶⁷ Babur rates the city slightly higher than Samarqand, which had "few equals," by saying that in the "inhabited quarter of the world" there was "no such city as Harat."⁶⁸ Yet while Babur went sight-seeing every day he was there he does not describe any of the buildings or gardens he visited; instead almost the entire text of his visit is taken up with a description of two parties he attended with his Harat cousins, Muzaffar and Badf al-Zaman Mirza.⁶⁹ However, in the course of recounting the first and most elaborate of these gatherings at Muzaffar Mirza's, Babur spends the most space describing his indecision as to whether this was the proper time to begin drinking wine.

A few days after arriving in Harat Babur and his brother Jahangir Mirza were invited by Muzaffar Mirza to his quarters in the *Bdgh-i Sefid*, the "White Garden." The evening began with a dinner, at which KhadTjah Begim, one of his paternal aunts, was also present. Following dinner the men moved off to a building reminiscent of some he remembered from Samarqand. Known as the *Tarabkhanah* or "pleasure-house," it had been built by Babur's Timurid namesake, Abul Qasim Babur, who had ruled Harat from 1449-57. Located in the middle of a small garden, it was "a very pleasant, two-story building," and it had an "elaborately constructed second story."

⁶⁷ See for an example, Maria E. Subtelny, "Scenes from the Literary Life of Timurid Herat," *Logos Islamikos* (Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies, 1984), 137-55, where she quotes the writer VasifT, who described a literary gathering in Harat in 1500/01, just before the death of Mir 'A1TShir Nava'T.

⁶⁸ BN-M, f 188a.

⁶⁹ For a list of these buildings, gardens, bridges, bazars and other structures see Terry Allen, *A Catalogue of Toponyms and Monuments of Timurid Herat* (Cambridge, Ma: Aga Khan Program for Islamic Architecture, Harvard and MIT, 1981). See also the author's study of the environment and history of Harat, which includes an annotated bibliography, *Timurid Herat* (Wiesbaden: Ludwig Reichert, 1983).

In the four corners there are four alcoves. Otherwise in the midst of and between these four alcoves it was [like] the interior space of a single house. It was a single house in which the space between the alcoves was like four *shahnishins*. All parts of this house are painted. Although Babur Mirza built this house, Abu Sa'id Mirza commissioned these paintings to depict his battles and combats.

To the north side of the *shahnishins* they placed two mattresses [*tushak*] opposite each other, sides facing to the north. Muzaffar Mirza and I sat on one *tushak*. Sultan Mas'ud Mirza and Jahangir Mirza sat on another *tushak*. As we were guests in Muzaffar Mirza's house, Muzaffar Mirza placed me above himself. The *sdqilar* (cupbearers) began moving about filling the pleasure cups of the *majlis* participants. They began drinking the clear wines as if they were the "water of life." The *majlis* grew heated....

The musicians at the *majlis* were Hafiz Hajji, Jalal al-Din Na'i [the flautist], Ghulam ShadT's younger brother, Shadi Bacheh, the harpist, Hafiz Hajji sang well.⁷⁰ The Harat people sing low, elegantly and melodiously. One of Jahangir Mirza's singers was there. Named Mir Jan, he was a Samarqandl. He sang shrilly, coarsely and out of tune. Jahangir Mirza, in his intoxicated state, ordered that he sing. He sang outlandishly shrilly, coarsely and tastelessly. Would not one block his ears and another make a face at such singing? [However] because of Jahangir Mirza no one forbade him [to sing].⁷¹

After the evening prayer the *majlis* participants then went off to Muzaffar Mirza's winter quarters, a house where there was dancing, recitation in Turk!, obscene, drunken tricks by two of Muzaffar Mirza's slaves, named Great Moon and Little Moon. Finally the *majlis*, which Babur now refers to as a *suhbat*, broke up and he stayed the night at Muzaffar Mirza's house.

As Babur observes, Harat in Sultan Husayn's time was wonderful, a city "full of learned and matchless people" all of whom who were busy with work, "sought to complete that work with perfection."⁷² Babur describes the poets and scholars of the city, most of whom like Jami, he only knew by reputation and through their work. He also gives the impression that Harat's cultured society included a broad spectrum of the population. This seems exemplified by the sophistication exhibited by a person of no particular importance whom Babur apparently met at one of the entertain-

⁷⁰ Babur critiques Ghulam Shadi's talents earlier in the *Vaqa'if*, where he is said to have been the composer of lovely songs and fine tunes (*naqsty*. BN-M, f. 182b.

⁷¹ BN-M, fs. 188b-190a.

⁷² BN-M, f. 177b.

ments he attended, “Another incomparable inhabitant” of the city was Pahlavan Muhammad Bu-Sayyid, whose title, “Pahlavan” given before the name, evokes his identity as an athlete or champion, in this case a wrestler, but one with sophisticated cultural tastes as well.⁷³

In wrestling he was outstanding. He also sang poetry. He also composed songs and compositions. He has a lovely composition in the *chargah* mode.⁷⁴ He was a delightful conversational companion. It is amazing to have such accomplishments combined with wrestling.⁷⁵

Wrestling, a common and popular Turco-Mongol diversion combined here with the polite accomplishments of a Persian courtier. Wrestling also, of course, was associated with some sufi orders, as it continues to be in modern Iran and elsewhere.

al-Bzrum and the Geometric Intellect

Babur’s critique of India is, therefore, one measured by the sophisticated urban and communal life of Perso-Islamic cities and the geography and topography of Kabul and Mawarannahr. His critique is in many ways simply an emigre’s lament, a reflection of intense homesickness that would probably have moderated with time. Babur, of course had already begun to try to replicate his Central Asian, Afghan environment with gardens and to fill those with Timurid artists, literati and religious scholars who had begun emigrating to the subcontinent. Still that would not have lessened some of the profound cultural differences that separated him and his recreated Perso-Islamic society from Hindus who comprised the overwhelming majority of the South Asian population. These differences, symbolized by the Timurid symposium, were never really bridged until Anglicized or westernized bureaucrats and intellectuals from both communities began socializing with each other on at least a limited basis in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries.

Babur wasn’t the only Muslim to react to India in this way. Five hundred years earlier another Central Asian Muslim, the scientist

⁷³ Elsewhere Babur himself assigns this title, which he also lists before men’s names. See for example Pahlavan Haji Muhammad and Pahlavan Bahlul, who were both given daggers as rewards for military feats. BN-M, f. 352b.

⁷⁴ *Chargah* or *chahdrgah* is explained by Jean During, Zia Mirabdolbaghi and Dariush Savvat in *The Art of Persian Music*, 42 passim.

⁷⁵ BN-M, f. 182b.

al-Birum, expressed remarkably similar criticisms of Indian, or at least the brahmanical society he knew far better and more intimately than Babur. His response was strikingly similar considering his sophisticated intellect. Al-Birum's reaction to India and critique of its society offers one way to measure the validity of Babur's critique, or at least to provide additional insight into presuppositions and cultural biases that determined the response of well-educated Central Asian Muslims to the Indian subcontinent.

The first Muslim known to have written a systematic study of India and its brahmanical religion, science and philosophy, Abu Rayhan Muhammad ibn Ahmad al-Birum (973-c.1050), was a native of Khwarazm near the Aral Sea. He was one of many captive intellectuals whom Mahmud of Ghazna forced to reside at his frigid Afghan capital in the early eleventh century. Al-Birum was a Greco-Muslim intellectual and, along with his contemporary and correspondent Ibn Sina, one of the medieval Islamic world's outstanding scientists. A student of both *'ulum al-arabiya* Islamic knowledge, and *'ulum al-ajamiya*, the Greek sciences, he was the author of treatises on astronomy and astrology, history, geography, mathematics, mineralogy and religion, to name most of the principal categories of the 155 works that he mainly wrote in Arabic, the scientific language of the Islamic world.⁷⁶ Between 1017 and 1030 he lived in Ghazni, where significant numbers of Indians also resided, and apparently also in the Panjab within the territories conquered by Mahmud. Al-Birum learned Sanskrit well enough to undertake his monumental study of brahmanical thought and society and Indian geography, *Tahqiq ma lil-Hind men maqula fii al-aw mardula*, "A Verification of What is Said on India, Whether Rational or Ridiculous." This work is usually rendered simply but misleadingly as *Kitab al-Hind* or "The Book of India," but that title obscures his intellectual intent, which was to use what he calls the geometric method, the method of moving deductively from axiom to theorem, to scrutinize brahmanical Hinduism, as well as utilizing empirical observations inductively to analyze the Indian landscape.⁷⁷ His dedication to the "Greek sciences" was as important to

⁷⁶ A fine introduction to al-Birum's scholarship is contained in the series of contributions by C. Edmund Bosworth, David Pingree, Francois de Blois, George Saliba, Georges G. Anawati and Bruce Lawrence to the *Encyclopaedia Iranica* under the heading, "BirunT, Abu Rayhan," 4, 274-87.

⁷⁷ F.E. Peters explores the Hellenic/Alexandrian intellectual influences that

his critique of Indian thought as was geometrical proportion to Babur's acerbic evaluation of the north Indian landscape. While his concern was with logical methodology rather than hexagonally or octagonally shaped garden pools, it shows that both men participated in the Greco-Islamic cultural/scientific world, a civilization apart from what they both discovered in India.

Al-Birum's work represents a brilliant intellectual accomplishment by any standard. No comparable single work has ever been produced on India by one scholar, and significant advances on his appreciation of brahmanical thought, society and culture and even Indian geography were not accomplished until the cumulative European research of the colonial era. This does not mean that al-Birum, for all his encyclopedic interests presented an exhaustive survey of Indian thought or that he was always correct in what he said about those texts or fields he did discuss. His knowledge was limited by his residence in northwestern India, a region, which as he noted, had been abandoned by many Indian scholars who fled Mahmud of Ghazna's plundering expeditions. Nor for all his remarkable efforts did he have a comprehensive knowledge of Sanskrit literature.

Al-Birum came to the study of India with a cultivated Central Asian Muslim's cultural prejudices and two explicit convictions: the truth of Islam and the validity of Greco-Muslim philosophical and scientific methodology. His cultural prejudices were not solely a product of his Islamic faith. Many were not. Yet, whether shaped by Central Asian, Iranian or Islamic influences, his own cultural personality caused him to be offended by much of what he experienced in India. His religious and philosophical convictions led him to reject the validity of beliefs that conflicted with fundamental tenets of his faith, and to criticize the quality of brahmanical

shaped both al-Birum and Ibn Sma's thought in his article, "Science, History and Religion: Some Reflections on the *India* of Abu'l Rayhan al-Birum," in Peter J. Chelkowski ed., *The Scholar and the Saint, Studies in Commemoration of Abu'l Rayhan al-Biruni and Jalal al-Din al-Rumi* (New York, N.Y.: New York University Press, 1975), 17-27. Al-Birum's terminology is one of many indications of his Greek or Hellenic intellectual heritage, as when he discusses the class of Hindu artisans and husbandmen and remarks: "And within these classes there were subdivisions, distinct from each other, like the species within the genus." Edward G. Sachau, *Alberuni's India*, I, 100. He also uses the term *maqulah*, the term coined by Aris totle's Arab translators for the Aristotelian term, *categoria*. Ibid., "Annotations," 249.

thought and occasionally to misinterpret brahmans' scientific ideas.⁷⁸ Still, al-Birum wrote primarily to understand and explain rather than to criticize, judge and condemn, and he did not allow his emotional revulsion at Hindu customs or his faith and intellectual presuppositions to interfere substantially with a largely dispassionate explanation of Indian religion, science and society. His enlightened Muslim scientist's approach to all religions can be seen in his rejection of unfair criticisms of Nestorian Christians about whom he writes "For although their doctrines are bad, their way of life is the highest pinnacle of chastity and integrity and kindness."⁷⁹ Al-Birum's treatise on India is the most thorough and balanced analysis of brahmanical theology, science and society ever written by a Muslim. He wrote that his principal goal was to tell the truth, which like justice, al-Birum said, had its own "intrinsic beauty."⁸⁰ He intended to determine the truth about India by a "strictly scientific method" of analysis.⁸¹ He was not writing a polemical book, he repeatedly emphasizes, but was offering "a simple historic record of facts."⁸² Al-Birum accurately insisted that "In most parts of my work I simply relate without criticizing, unless there be a specific reason for doing so."⁸³

Still, for all his intellectual self-awareness al-Birum could not overcome his emotional reaction to Hindu culture, much of which he found to be simultaneously exotic and repugnant. As befits a scholar with far more leisure time than Babur ever enjoyed, he also writes at considerably greater length. Anticipating Babur's later astonished and largely negative reaction to India—and Khwajah Kalan's feeling that everything in India was "upside down"—al-Birum reports of Indians that:

First, they differ from us in everything which other nations have in common... "Many Hindu customs differ from those of our country and of our time to such a degree as to appear to us simply monstrous. One might almost think they had intentionally changed them into the opposite, for our customs do not resemble theirs, but are the very reverse."⁸⁴

⁷⁸ David Pingree, "Birum, Abu Rayhan," "History and Chronology," *Elr*, 282-83. Pingree does not, it must be emphasized, discuss al-Birum's cultural prejudices.

⁷⁹ Francois de Blois, "History of Religions," in "Birum, *Elr* 4, 283.

⁸⁰ Sachau, *Alberuni's India* I, 5.

⁸¹ *Ibid.*, 6.

⁸² *Ibid.*, 7.

⁸³ *Ibid.*, 25.

⁸⁴ *Ibid.*, 16 and 179.

He discusses personal hygiene, Hindus' eating habits, their clothing, family relations, social habits and other topics, many of which reflect his special knowledge of brahmanical and upper-caste Indian society.

The list of customs al-Birum found either curious or offensive ranged from the way they played chess—four persons at a time—to their inexplicable tastes: “They like,” al-Birum writes with obvious revulsion, “the juice which flows over the cheeks of the rutting elephant, which in reality has the most horrid smell.”⁸⁵ Not only do Hindus not cut body hair—to prevent sunstroke—al-Birum says, but, he observes, when obviously speaking of upper castes, “They let the nails grow long, glorying in their idleness....”⁸⁶ When they eat, al-Birum reports of the custom so many foreigners found inexplicable and socially isolating, Hindus sit “singly, one by one, on a tablecloth of dung.”⁸⁷ Then too, “They drink wine before having eaten anything....[and] they sip the stall of cows, but they do not eat their meat.”⁸⁸ He continues, apparently alluding to the dhoti commonly worn in north India that Babur disliked, saying not only do they “wear turbans for trousers,” but “Men wear articles of female dress; they use cosmetics, wear earrings, arm rings, golden seal rings on the ring-finger as well as on the toes of the feet.”⁸⁹ Al-Birum also found it curious that Hindus always consult women in emergencies and prefer the younger child to the elder, at least in the eastern part of the country.⁹⁰ Then too, not only were some Hindu sexual practices strange and repulsive but they also regarded the linga as sacred, as it symbolized Mahadeva/Shiva.⁹¹ Beyond all these curiosities al-Birum obviously felt that Hindus lacked common social graces, or the manners he and Babur respected, for he reports “They spit out and blow their noses without any respect for the elder ones present,” and “If one of them hands over a thing to another, he expects that it should be thrown to him as we throw a thing to the dogs.”⁹²

⁸⁵ Ibid., 182-83.

⁸⁶ Ibid., 180.

⁸⁷ Ibid., 180.

⁸⁸ Ibid., 180.

⁸⁹ Ibid., 180 & 81.

⁹⁰ Ibid., 181.

⁹¹ Ibid., 181.

⁹² Ibid., 182.

In trying to explain these and other examples of “the innate perversity of Hindu nature” al-Birum compassionately observes that “heathen Arabs too committed crimes and obscenities,” but pointed out that among the Arabs Islam had eradicated many of the things for which he criticizes the Hindus, “as it also has abolished them in those parts of India the people of which have become Muslims.”⁹³ Of course while some of these customs, such as eating alone and throwing things at people’s feet, may be attributed specifically to brahmanical pollution restrictions and therefore something that might change with Islam, the habit of wearing dhotis is more a reflection of India’s climate. Al-Birum’s comment about dress was probably a reflection of his Central Asian and Afghan background, where the temperate climate dictated more elaborate, or in moral terms, more modest clothing.

If Muslims could suppress their culture shock they still found it difficult to study with brahmans, and as a scientist al-Birum was especially appalled by brahman secretiveness and ethnocentrism, for they did not wish to share sacred knowledge with foreigners any more than with their own lower castes, both of whom they regarded as polluting. Al-Birum noted “They call them *mleccha* i.e. impure, and forbid having any connection with them, be it by intermarriage or any other kind of relationship, or by sitting, eating and drinking with them, because thereby, they think, they would be polluted.”⁹⁴ Here was an early manifestation of what Babur evidently meant when he criticized Indians for their lack of “convivial society and social intercourse.” Nor did brahmans in al-Birum’s time have the slightest interest in suspending pollution restrictions for foreign scientists, although they must have done so to some degree for him, because of what al-Birum characterized as their appallingly blind ethnocentrism.

In the past, he noted, at least one Hindu scholar argued that “even though the Greeks were impure, they must be honored, since they were trained in the sciences,” but by the eleventh century they had totally lost interest in the outside world. “Folly is an illness for which there is no medicine.”⁹⁵ According to their belief,” al-Birum wrote, “there is no country but theirs, no nation like theirs, no kings

⁹³ Ibid., 185-86.

⁹⁴ Ibid., 19-20.

⁹⁵ Ibid., 22.

like theirs, no religion like theirs, no science like theirs.... Their haughtiness is such that, if you tell them of any science or scholar in Khurasan or Persis, they will think you to be both an ignoramus and a liar.”⁹⁶ He conceded, though, that Mahmud of Ghazna’s eleventh century pillaging raids on northwestern India had exacerbated these problems, as these attacks caused Hindus both to hate Muslims and flee from them to Kashmir and Banaras, which in his day had become centers for brahmanical scholarship.⁹⁷

As a scientist al-Birum was even more troubled by what he saw as the appalling state of brahmanical scientific and religious texts which, he implies, reflected an even more serious problem: the chaotic quality of brahmanical thought. Al-Birum evidently thought brahmans were custodians of what was, in Greco-Islamic terms, a pre-scientific civilization. One aspect of Indian scholarship that caught his notice and convinced him of this was the Hindu belief that the oral tradition was the canonical one and therefore brahmans produced texts in various metrics to facilitate their memorization. The resulting Sanskrit poetical texts were, he thought, exceptionally confusing; metrics, he noted, dictated sound rather than clarity and sometimes required meaningless phraseology to complete a particular verse. Al-Birum pointedly observed that brahmans could have explained their ideas more clearly in prose, reflecting his lack of knowledge of many Sanskrit prose works. Indian scribes, he also reported, were careless and failed to produce accurate copies even of these manuscripts, so that the second copy of a particular work scarcely resembled the original.⁹⁸ Al-Birum wrote as a Greco-Islamic scientist confronting a tradition of sacred literature whose authors had a strong *literary* sense of textual symmetry based upon Sanskrit metrics but what he thought to be a poorly developed scientific tradition.⁹⁹ In al-Birum’s eyes, indeed, these texts were symptomatic of the most intellectually debilitating defect of Indian thought, the chaotic nature of brahman abstract reasoning.

“Even the so-called scientific theorems of the Hindus,” al-Birum remarks “are in a state of utter confusion, devoid of any logical order.”¹⁰⁰ Logic is the key word in this sentence; it refers to Greek

⁹⁶ Ibid., 22-23.

⁹⁷ Ibid., 22.

⁹⁸ Ibid., 17-19.

⁹⁹ Ibid., 137.

¹⁰⁰ Ibid., 25.

philosophical/mathematical thought. Al-Birum attributed this logical failure to the lack of philosophers in India, where no one of the quality of such thinkers as Socrates had ever lived who could separate “pearl shells and sour dates,” or “pearls and dung,” or “costly crystals and common pebbles” in their mathematical and astronomical literature. He caustically observes of brahman thinkers, “Both kinds of things are equal in their eyes, since they cannot raise themselves to the methods of a strictly scientific deduction.”¹⁰¹ And while he cites Socrates, al-Birum undoubtedly had in mind Aristotelian scientific reasoning. It was particularly Aristotle’s “geometrical method” he followed in his own arguments, that is a systematic series of deductions from axiomatic first principles.¹⁰² The importance that Greco-Muslim thinkers attached to the geometric method of analysis later led Ibn Khaldun to remark, “Our teachers used to say that one’s application to geometry does to the mind what soap does to a garment. It washes off the stains and cleanses it of grease and dirt.”¹⁰³ ‘Umar Khayyam made a similar point more than three centuries earlier when he remarked in his “Commentary on the Difficulties of Certain Postulates of Euclid’s Work,” that geometry “has the advantage of exerting and sharpening the mind, and of accustoming the soul to being repelled by what cannot be demonstrated.”¹⁰⁴

Al-Birum has been justly praised for his balanced, scientific study of north Indian brahmanical culture, but he also demonstrates the existence of the clearly demarcated cultural boundary between Iranian and Central Asian Muslims and South Asian Hindus—in his repugnance for Indian habits and strong critique of brahmanical scholarship. In his era the fundamental differences between Islamic and South Asian cartography metaphorically mapped out the existence of this distinct cultural boundary, in which social habits represented transient or superficial signs of fundamental value differences.¹⁰⁵ Al-Birum’s own contributions to “the mathematical

¹⁰¹ Ibid., 25.

¹⁰² Ibid., 26, and Robin Smith, “Logic,” in Jonathan Barnes, *The Cambridge Companion to Aristotle* (Cambridge: University Press, 1995), 25-6 & 47.

¹⁰³ Ibn Khaldun, *The Muqaddimah*, III, 131.

¹⁰⁴ Abu al-Fath ‘Umar ibn Ibrahim al-Khayyarm, “Commentary on the Difficulties of Certain Postulates of Euclid’s Work,” in R. Rashed and B. Vahabzadeh ed. *Umar Khayyam the Mathematician*, 218. Both scholars were disciples of Ibn Sina.

¹⁰⁵ See Frederik Barth ed., *Ethnic Groups and Boundaries* (Oslo: Universitets

and astronomical basis of celestial and geographical cartography” in the Islamic world highlights some of the profound intellectual differences between the Islamic and Indic regions.¹⁰⁶ These cartographic sciences simply did not exist in pre-Islamic India. Despite fundamental Indic contributions to mathematics, no Indian celestial or geographical maps are known to have existed prior to the introduction of Ptolemaic theory in the tenth century, by al-Birum among others. Traditional Indic cartography was cosmology. Merchants connected these worlds across the Indus, but the cultural and intellectual divide was, al-Birum felt, nearly impassable.

“If there is Paradise on Earth...”

Al-Birum’s critique did not, however, represent the opinion of all Muslims, in particular the fourteenth century Indo-Muslim poet, Amir Khusrau, whose work was known throughout the Persian speaking world. More specifically it was well known to Babur’s father, Babur himself and most of all to Babur’s cousin, the erudite Baysunghur Mirza, who collected and identified more than one hundred and twenty thousand of his verses.¹⁰⁷ Roughly two hundred years after Mahmud of Ghazna brought al-Birum from Khwarazm to Ghazni, and some two hundred years before the battle of Panipat, Amir Khusrau (1253-1325) wrote a verse commentary on India that differed in most ways from al-Birum’s work and also from Babur’s. Unlike al-Birum who came to India “as a foreigner and ...left it as a foreigner,” or Babur, who came to India and died there a foreigner, Amir Khusrau was a native.¹⁰⁸ Born in India of a Turkic father and an Indian Muslim mother, Amir Khusrau wrote as an Indian Muslim, born and bred in the subcontinent.¹⁰⁹

Forlaget, 1969), and John Hutchinson and Anthony D. Smith ed., *Ethnicity* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1996).

¹⁰⁶ Ahmet Karamustafa, “Introduction to Islamic Maps,” in J. B. Harley and David Woodward ed. *Cartography in the Traditional Islamic and South Asian Societies*, 2, 1 of *The History of Cartography* (Chicago and London: U. of Chicago Press, 1992), 7.

¹⁰⁷ Muhammad Wahid Mirza, *The Life and Times of Amir Khusrau* (Delhi: Idarah-i Adabiyat-i Delli, repr. 1974), 142 & n. 2.

¹⁰⁸ Aga Mehdi Husain gives the moving tribute of an Indian Muslim to Amir Khusrau’s Indianess in his essay, “India’s Al-Biruni.” in Ansari ed., *Life, Times and Works of Amir Khusrau Dehlavi*, 281-87.

¹⁰⁹ Muhammad Wahid Mirza discusses Amir Khusrau’s father’s family with

He knew Afghanistan, Mawarannahr, Iran and other regions of the Islamic world only through literature or report. As a native he offers a completely different view of India and its society, a view that can be used to understand the attitudes and evaluate the comments of the visiting Central Asian Muslim scientist, al-Birum and the emigre Central Asian Muslim ruler, Babur. To Amir Khusrau, India had a perfect climate, it was home to the world's foremost scholars and scientists, the brahmans, and was inhabited by animals that were, quite literally, marvelous. Delhi, then the capital, was one of the Islamic world's most beautiful cities. The country was, in fact, "a paradise on earth," a phrase quoted and a conviction literally echoed, ironically, by Babur's great-great-grandson, the second Timur and builder of the Taj Mahal, Shah Jahan.

Abu'l Hasan Yamm al-Dm Khusrau was a court poet for several princes and sultans of Delhi, including his principal patron, 'Ala' al-Dm Khilji (1296-1315). These rulers were representatives of the largely Turkic warrior class personified by Amir Khusrau's own father, men who expanded the Ghaznavid conquest of the Panjab into the north Indian heartland, Bengal and central India between the twelfth and the fourteenth century.¹¹⁰ He also was a *murid* or disciple of the single most influential Indo-Muslim Chishtī *shaykh*, Nizam al-Dm Awliya', whose tomb Babur circumambulated when he first entered Delhi. An immensely prolific and talented writer in Persian, Turkish, and Hindui, most of his literary work consisted of *qasidahs* in praise of the Delhi sultans, but he also wrote *rubaiyat* and numerous *ghazals*, some at least used for *samā* or musical devotions with Nizam al-Dm Awliya. He was also a musician.¹¹¹ In addition Amir Khusrau wrote narrative historical verse in the *masnawi* form about his patrons. His most original *masnawi* may be

great care, concluding they were originally Turks known as the Lachin Hazarachs, perhaps from Shahr-i sabz, Timur's birthplace, who later migrated to the Balkh region and came to India during the campaigns of Chingiz Khan in the early thirteenth century. *The Life and Times of Amir Khusrau* (Delhi: Idarah-i Adabiyat-i Delli, repr. 1974), 6-16. The definitive political and military history of the Sultanate is by Peter Jackson, *The Delhi Sultanate*.

¹¹⁰ A detailed chronology of his life, official appointments and a list of his verse and prose works is given in Government of India, Publications Division, *Amir Khusrau Memorial Volume* (Delhi: Government of India, 1975), 203-8.

¹¹¹ See the articles by Shahab Sarmadee, "About Music and Amir Khusrau's own writings on music," and Abdul Halim Jaferkhan, "Amir Khusrau and Hindustani Music and Jaideva Singh Thakur, "Notes on Amir Khusrau's Musical Compositions," in Ansari ed., *Life, Times and Works of Amir Khusrau Dehlavi*, 241-81.

the long poem titled the *Jvuhsipihr* or “Nine Spheres,” that is the nine celestial spheres, written in 1318 and devoted to describing events in the reign of his then patron Qutb al-Dm Mubarak Shah. The third section of this work was devoted to the lavish praise of an India hardly recognizable from Babur’s and al-Birum’s critiques, suggesting that many of the seemingly impassable cultural boundaries they demarcated were less formidable than they appeared from these men’s works.

Amir Khusrau praises his Indian homeland in many of his five *diwans* and historical *masnavis*.¹¹² Most of this praise is contained within and is inextricably linked to his fulsome not to say hyperbolic panegyrics dedicated to various patrons. That is, his appreciation of the country is in one respect merely another way to praise its rulers. One of many such examples is his enthusiastic description of the royal capital, Delhi, written in 1288, and included within the *masnavi*, *Qiran al-sa’dayn* the “Conjunction of Jupiter and Venus,” an astrological moment ironically more often associated with Timur, who in 1398 sacked Delhi and destroyed the Delhi Sultanate.¹¹³ In another instance his praise of India, or at least its north Indian Muslim lingua franca Persian, was a means of praising himself. His belief in the superiority of Indo-Persian is associated with his oft-proclaimed but quite legitimate appreciation of his own literary talents. He argued that it was only in Mawarannahr and India that true or “original” Persian, *Farsi-yi darf* survived, and that this explained the greatness of Indian poetry. In his own estimate he was, of course, the greatest representative of this original tradition. In part this was also an effort to counter the well-known condescension of Iranian writers, who were rarely shy about expressing their contempt for *sabk-i Hindis* the Indo-Persian literary idiom.¹¹⁴ Still, there can be little doubt about his genuine love for his Indian homeland, which in the *Nuh sipihr*, or “Nine Spheres,” is

¹¹² Muhammad Wahid Mirza devotes a valuable chapter to a detailed discussion of Amir Khusrau’s enormous corpus in his biography of the poet, *The Life and Times of Amir Khusrau*, chapter IV, 140-232. A useful supplement to Muhammad Wahid Mirza’s descriptions of Amir Khusrau’s works is provided by Syed Sabahuddin Abdur Rehman in his essay “Appreciative Study of Variagatedness of Ameer Khusrau’s Poetry,” in Ansari ed., *Life, Times and Works of Amir Khusrau Dehlavi*, 83-102.

¹¹³ Syed Sabahuddin Abdur Rehman summarizes the Delhi section of this work. “Appreciative Study of Variagatedness of Amir Khusrau’s Poetry,” 88-89.

¹¹⁴ Wahid Mirza, *The Life and Times of Amir Khusrau*, 160-61.

given a remarkable range of expression.¹¹⁵

Amir Khusrau's poetic appreciation of India in this work is stylistically distinct from Babur's and al-Birum's prose accounts. He is striving for literary effect, not scientific or pragmatic precision. Like many of Amir Khusrau's poems that include praise of things Indian, it is also a panegyric, dedicated to Mubarak Shah Khilji (r.1316-1320). In consequence Amir Khusrau's account of India has to be considered in the spirit in which it was written. The panegyric tone also pervades the third section of the poem, the third sphere, dedicated to Saturn, which like the rest of the text is written in rhymed couplets. It is given over to fulsome praise of India, an integral part of which are periodic interjections of praise for Mubarak Shah. Amir Khusrau justifies the tone by saying Mubarak Shah is the country's ruler while he himself is a native.¹¹⁶ If the British Indian empire had survived as one Indo-Muslim state in 1947 rather than being partitioned, this section of poem might well have become part of a Hindu-Muslim patriotic canon. Given the panegyric character of the entire poem, it is not surprising that the third section contains not even a trace of the emotional revulsion that both Babur and al-Birum express for certain Indian customs or Babur's distaste for the Indian climate or landscape. To have criticized India would have been to denigrate his patron and reject his own heritage. Indeed, following the introduction to the third section that is partly given over to praising his own literary skills, Amir Khusrau begins with an "intellectual proof" that *kishvar-i Hind ast bihishtz bizamm*, "the country of India is a paradise on earth."¹¹⁷

The first two of seven proofs Amir Khusrau's cites as evidence that India was a paradise are the most engaging, if not intellectually convincing. The first is based upon its climate, one of the features that sent Khwajah Kalan and many of Babur's men fleeing back to Kabul. Using a kind of circular logic, he argues that when Adam was banished from paradise in heaven he was sent to a region with

¹¹⁵ The Persian text is available in a scholarly edition by Muhammad Wahid Mirza, ed., *The Nuh Sipih of Amir Khusrau* (Calcutta: Oxford University Press, 1949). An English translation of the third sphere has been published by R. Nath and Faiyaz 'Gwaliari' as *India as Seen by Amir Khusrau* (in 1318 A.D) (Jaipur, India: Historical Research Documentation Programme, 1981).

¹¹⁶ NS, III, 150.

¹¹⁷ NS, III, 151.

similar climate where he could easily survive, and that was India. Logically then, as India has a climate where Adam was able to survive it resembles the heavenly paradise. It is, therefore, “a paradise *on earth*.” For if Adam had been sent to Khurasan, Ray (northern Iran), Arabia or China he would not have long survived, because the cold and warm seasons in those places are so severe.¹¹⁸ Part of the argument by climate is that it allows flowers to bloom year around, giving the country the sweet scent of paradise. If this wasn’t proof enough there is the evidence of the peacock. The second, or *hujjat-i digai* “another proof” is that India is the home of the peacock, the Bird of Paradise, a fowl that Babur has described in a clinical but altogether unemotive manner. The bird of paradise, Amir Khusrau argues, can only live in paradise, so if India was not paradise, why was India made the home of the peacock? If paradise was elsewhere, the peacock would have gone there?

What al-Birum would have thought of such *hujaj*, such “arguments” or “proofs” is impossible to say but not difficult to imagine. Logic, indeed, is tossed out the window when at the conclusion of the section Amir Khusrau attributes India’s unique atmosphere to the grace of the “Axis of the World,” that is Qutb al-Dm (Pillar of Religion) Mubarak Shah, his patron. However, having shown India is a paradise by these proofs the poet plunges artistically forward, first elaborating on his early argument about India’s climate. Responding to people of Khurasan, that is Iranians, or perhaps Turco-Mongols from Harat, who complain about India’s hot climate, Amir Khusrau says that these people are so distracted by the cold they cannot even listen to the argument that India is a paradise. He points out that the cold in Khurasan kills people, while the hot weather in India is only a minor irritant. This leads him into an extended argument about the special flowers and fruits that grow in India’s climate. Given that it is spring the year round there is an abundance of flowers which have fragrance, unlike those of Khurasan. Then there is the fact that many fruits, such as mangoes, bananas and sugarcane are found only in India, while only guavas and grapes are found in Khurasan.

Babur, of course, agreed with the facts of this argument, but not the conclusions, at least as far as Kabul was concerned, which for some Indians was included within the huge, vaguely defined region,

¹¹⁸ NS, III, 151-52.

Khurasan.¹¹⁹ While describing the pleasant period of the Indian climate after the monsoon, he praised Kabul's climate for allowing one to sleep under blankets year around, and while appreciating and even praising Indian fruits, preferred the melons and grapes he knew from Mawarannahr and Kabul.¹²⁰ The difference between the two presentations is partly due to Babur's audience, his preference for his native continental climate, and to his purpose in writing a gazetteer. Amir Khusrau was writing a panegyric and trying his best to please his patron with beautifully rendered if tortuous arguments. However, he admits to his bias in favor of his country as he moves on to his second argument, the superiority of Indian, that is Hindu learning.

Here in what is the most remarkable and unexpected section for a professional Muslim eulogist, Amir Khusrau implicitly engages al-Birum's commentary, although he gives no evidence of being aware of the scientist's great Indian treatise. On one fundamental religious point Amir Khusrau agrees with al-Birum. They both interpret brahmanical Hinduism as a form of pantheistic monotheism that more closely resembles Islam than either Christianity or Zoroastrianism. And while al-Birum attributed the common worship of idols to popular practice not followed by brahmans, Amir Khusrau attributed the worship of cows, the sun and plants to the idea that all these things were God's creation and shared a part of his divinity. He says, quite simply, that Hindus are among those people who believe in God, the creator and sustainer of the universe, an omniscient God who is pure truth. Some people may shun brahmanical teachings they do not understand. Amir Khusrau, however, not only recognizes the integrity of their fundamental religious concepts, but admires brahmans as the creators of the world's superior scientific tradition.

In some respects he and al-Birum would undoubtedly agree about India's scientific tradition. At least al-Birum would have to concede Amir Khusrau's point that *Hindsa* or mathematics originated in the country where the zero was invented, and that the figures of one and zero are the basis for mathematical calculation—

¹¹⁹ Babur remarks that Indians call everything outside of Hindustan, "Khurasan." BN-M, f. 129a.

¹²⁰ BN-M, f. 129b.

and now of course, the basis for computers. As an astrologer al-Birum was also aware that India made significant contributions to that field. However, he would have parted ways with the poet when Amir Khusrau asserted that in *‘ilm u khirad*, “knowledge and wisdom,” brahmans surpassed Aristotle or that the rational sciences, natural and mathematical, had originated in India. Then implicitly revealing his lack of knowledge of al-Birum’s works, Amir Khusrau writes that since no one has tried to learn from brahmans their knowledge has remained hidden.¹²¹ Later he implicitly modifies these hyperbolic statements and says that three *hunar* or arts originated in India, mathematics, the *Dimnah-kalilah* or *Panchatantra* animal tales, and finally chess, a game whose limits people have tried to fathom but have failed. While he does not say that brahmans invented chess he does finally assert that they are also masters of magic and the occult, enabling them as jogis or spiritual ascetics, to raise the dead, control minds, fly or disappear—among other miraculous powers.¹²²

As a musician and linguist Amir Khusrau argues also for the superiority of Indian music and the beauty of Indian languages, and even the superiority of Sanskrit to Persian. He concedes that foreigners introduced new elements into Indian music, but added nothing basic to its fundamentals, which even hypnotizes wild deer.¹²³ As for Indian languages, while mentioning regional languages found in every part of the country, Khusrau describes Sanskrit as the best language of all. It is a pearl among pearls, inferior perhaps to Arabic, but not to Persian, Amir Khusrau’s own literary language, whose sweetness it equals. Only brahmans, he observes, know this language, in which are written their four religious books, the *Vedas*, the source of all [Hindu] learning.

In addition to all these unique characteristics India is home to animals and birds so intelligent, as he writes in his introductory couplet, that they seem to resemble rational human beings. This section parallels his earlier tribute to brahmans, that is India’s animals are as superior as its human beings. Here there are some commonalities with Babur’s bestiary, but with little of his precise physical description, practical information and skeptical tone. In-

¹²¹ NS, III, 162-63.

¹²² NS, III, 193-94.

¹²³ NS, III, 171-72.

stead, Amir Khusrau concentrates on two groups of animals, those who speak or act and think like humans. He begins with the parrot and the maynah. The Indian tuti or parrot who speaks like humans has the ability to recite verses of the Quran and offer prayers, while the maynah speaks even more clearly. Almost as wonderful are the two Indian mammals that can be trained, the monkey and the elephant. Both have some human qualities. The monkey acts like men and the elephant has a highly developed moral sense. The elephant, of course, adorns the court of kings, such as Amir Khusrau's patron, Mubarak Shah, a man so exalted that only these majestic animals could stand before his gate. Included within this section is a description of the peacock, in which Amir Khusrau surprisingly makes no reference to his earlier proof that the bird's presence shows India to be an earthly paradise. Instead he devotes himself to poetic descriptions of the peacock's unusual beauty, and then concludes by telling a story about its unique reproductive techniques, passing semen through its eyes, which, after falling to the ground, is then swallowed by the female. Not surprisingly given his medium and panegyric purpose, Amir Khusrau does not express skepticism about this story, but merely challenges readers to come to India to verify it for themselves.

Cultural Boundaries

Amir Khusrau's challenge to his Persian-speaking audience to verify his story about the peacock's unheard of mating habits is a final bit of literary bravado that falls into the same category as his tale of yogis' miraculous powers. While not openly expressing skepticism as Babur so carefully does, Amir Khusrau also does not really try to convince his readers he believes such stories. They are part of his panegyric story telling. The differences in the picture of India as rendered by a court poet from those of a sophisticated Muslim scientist and an intellectually acute and practical ruler is highlighted by the fact that Amir Khusrau finds no fault with his homeland. Babur and al-Birum for all their culture shock still found some things to admire and even like about India. Babur, for all of his own almost undiluted praise for Samarqand and Harat, even finds fault with some aspects of the climate of Mawarannahr. Amir Khusrau is writing for such an entirely different purpose and

audience that he could not express skepticism or dilute his praise.

Still, Amir Khusrau's praise for all things Indian is so encyclopedic and sometimes so evidently emotional, he convinces his readers he loved what he knew, and he knew only north India, not the grapes and wildflowers of Istalif or the great cities of Khurasan and Mawarannahr. His account highlights the degree to which Babur's and al-Birum's reactions to India were simply and unambiguously the result of culture shock: their boredom with the flat landscape, shock at seeing a half-naked population, surprise at the curious way of playing chess or outright revulsion with many personal habits. Most of the things that repelled these two Central Asian Muslims were only superficial markers on the boundaries between their own and Indian society. They were not issues for Babur's descendants who, like Amir Khusrau, grew up in India. Neither Babur's grandson Akbar, nor Akbar's amanuensis Abu'l Fazl, were repulsed by their environment. Both might also have applauded Amir Khusrau's poem *ʿAsKlqa*, based on the true story of the love between a Muslim prince and a Rajput princess, given Akbar's Rajput marriages. Indeed, this poem, which is not a panegyric composition, although it was suggested by the prince himself, Khidr Khan, is probably the most emotionally and artistically persuasive testimonial to his love for India. It is far more convincing in this respect than the logically strained *JVuh sipihrS*. Both al-Birum and Babur might also have sympathized with his religious perplexity, probably the product of his Chishtī sufi spiritualism, which leads him to call poetically to a generic brahman to allow him, whom Islam had rejected, to enter the temple with its idol.¹²⁵ However, when it comes to fundamental values that represent the most formidable barriers to the blending of ethnic groups or the absorption of one by another, the evidence of Amir Khusrau's divergence from Babur and al-Birum is more ambiguous.

That ambiguity is partly a factor of Amir Khusrau's role as a panegyric poet whose art forbade negative criticism and favored the artfully rendered image over prosaic precision. The ambiguity is also highlighted by his willingness to write panegyric poems celebrating the Muslim victories of his patrons over Hindu king-

¹²⁴ It is eloquently described by Muhammad Wahid Mirza, *The Life and Works of Amir Khusrau*, 177-81.

¹²⁵ Cited by Aga Mehdi Husain, "India's Al-Beruni," in Ansari ed., *Life and Times of Amir Khusrau Dehlavi*, 286.

doms. In the *Khazain al-futuh*, the "Treasures of Victories," written in 1311 A. D., he celebrates Ala' al-Din Khilji's military victories in northern and central India.¹²⁶ In these verses the poet describes how the Muslim armies destroyed the Somnath temple and that Gujarat, once the Mecca of the infidels became the Medina of Islam, and he applauds that fact that in Hindustan generally the holy warriors had made Islam triumphant.¹²⁷ Poems such as this make readers wonder if India would have been a paradise on earth for him if ruled by Hindus. Or would it have mattered to a professional poet as long as he was employed to write verse? While he exalts the *ghazl* ideal repeatedly and far more effusively than Babur, his seeming attachment to a militant Islam may be read just as skeptically as his logical somersaults designed to prove that India was a paradise. Both were part of his panegyric art.

However, apart from his professional limitations there is also the fact that like al-Birum, Amir Khusrau valued brahmanical Hinduism to the degree it resembled the fundamental monotheistic principles of Islam and also rated brahmanical intellects against the achievements of Aristotle. Nor is it really possible to say that he felt any differently about the socially isolating effects of Hindu pollution concepts than did Babur or al-Birum or any earlier or later visitors to India from the west. As Greek and Latin writers made clear, in social terms commensal relations are one of the most important defining customs of any ethnic group and Amir Khusrau says nothing about social interaction with Hindus, although his interest in Indian music suggests that he at least had sustained artistic contact with non-Muslim musicians. His poetic idiom, though, including verses intended to be sung at Chishti *sama* performances, was entirely Perso-Islamic.

It is finally important to recall that Babur was familiar with Amir Khusrau's poetry, both from hearing it recited at his father's court and reading the poems himself. He quotes, after all, from the *Qiran al-sa'dayn*, although only on mangoes. It would be ironic indeed if he was alluding to Amir Khusrau's poem the *Hasht Bihisht* or "Eight Paradises" when he named one of his gardens in Agra the "Eight-Paradise Garden," but it is far more likely he was thinking of one

¹²⁶ Wahid Mirza trans., *Khazain-al-Futuh*.

¹²⁷ Cited by Jagdish Narayan Sarkar, "Military Morality in Medieval India: Laws of War and Peace," in *Life Times and works of Amir Khusrau Dehlavi*, 57-8.

of the pavilions by that name in Harat, Tabriz or another Islamic city.¹²⁸ In the late seventeenth century another *Hasht Bihisht* garden and pavilion were constructed in Safavid Isfahan.¹²⁹ However, if Babur did read the *JVuh sipihr*, *‘Ashiq* or any other of Amir Khusrau’s poems it had no discernible influence on his Indian gazetteer. In that essay he made it clear that the only paradise he could imagine while he lived in India was a *suhbat ve suhbatdrdraliq* gathering held within the geometrically precise boundaries of a Timurid garden in Kabul, Harat or Samarqand.

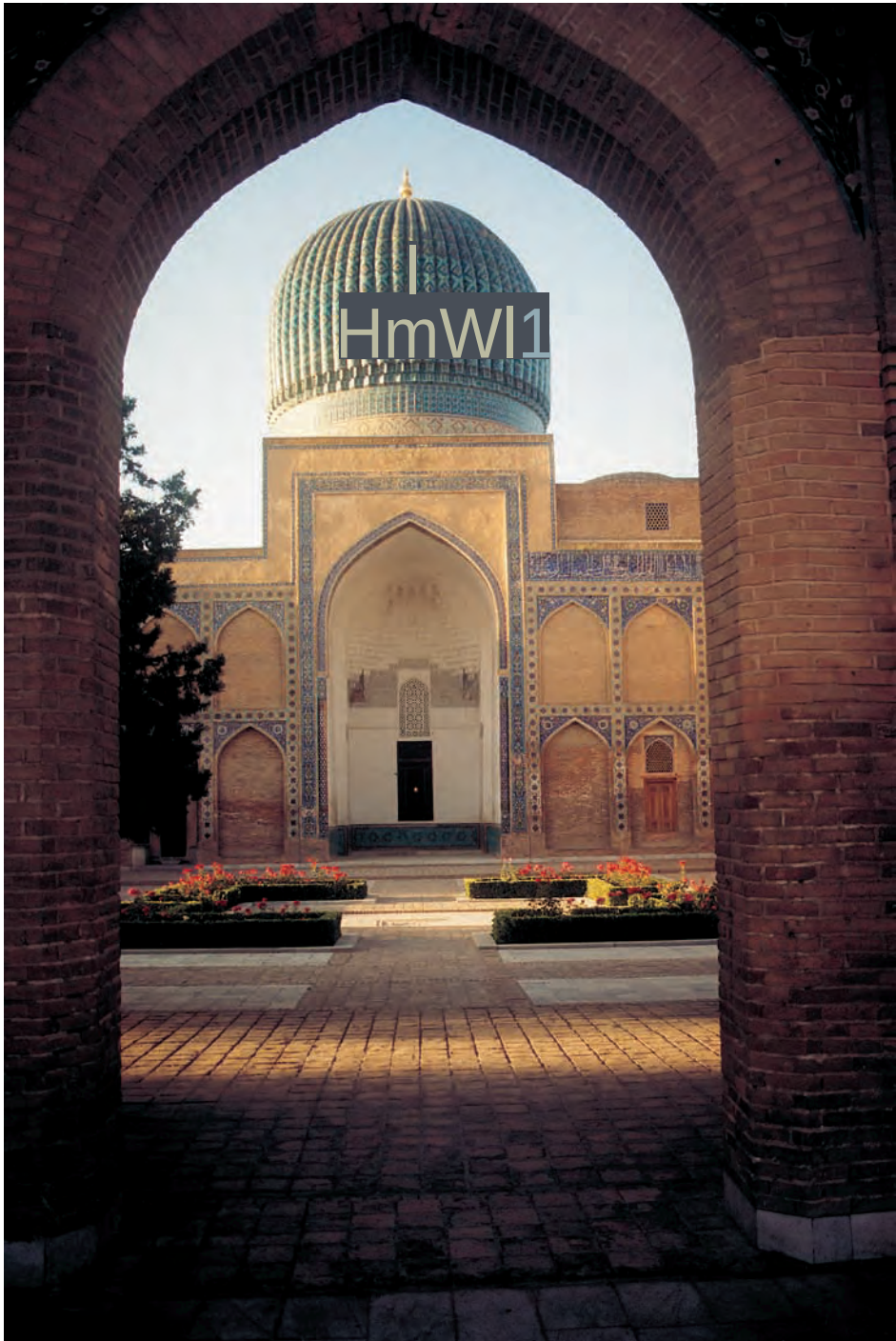
¹²⁸ Lisa Golombek, “From Tamerlane to the Taj Mahal,” in Monica Juneja ed., *Architecture in Medieval India* (Delhi: Permanent Black, 2001), 321-22.

¹²⁹ Stephen P. Blake, *Half the World The Social Architecture of Safavid Isfahan, 1590-1722* (Costa Mesa, Ca.: Mazda, 1999), 71-2.

ILLUSTRATIONS



1. View from Ancient Akhsi southeast toward Andijan.



2. Gur-i Amir: Timur's tomb in Samarkand.



3. Madrasah of Ulugh Beg in Samarkand.



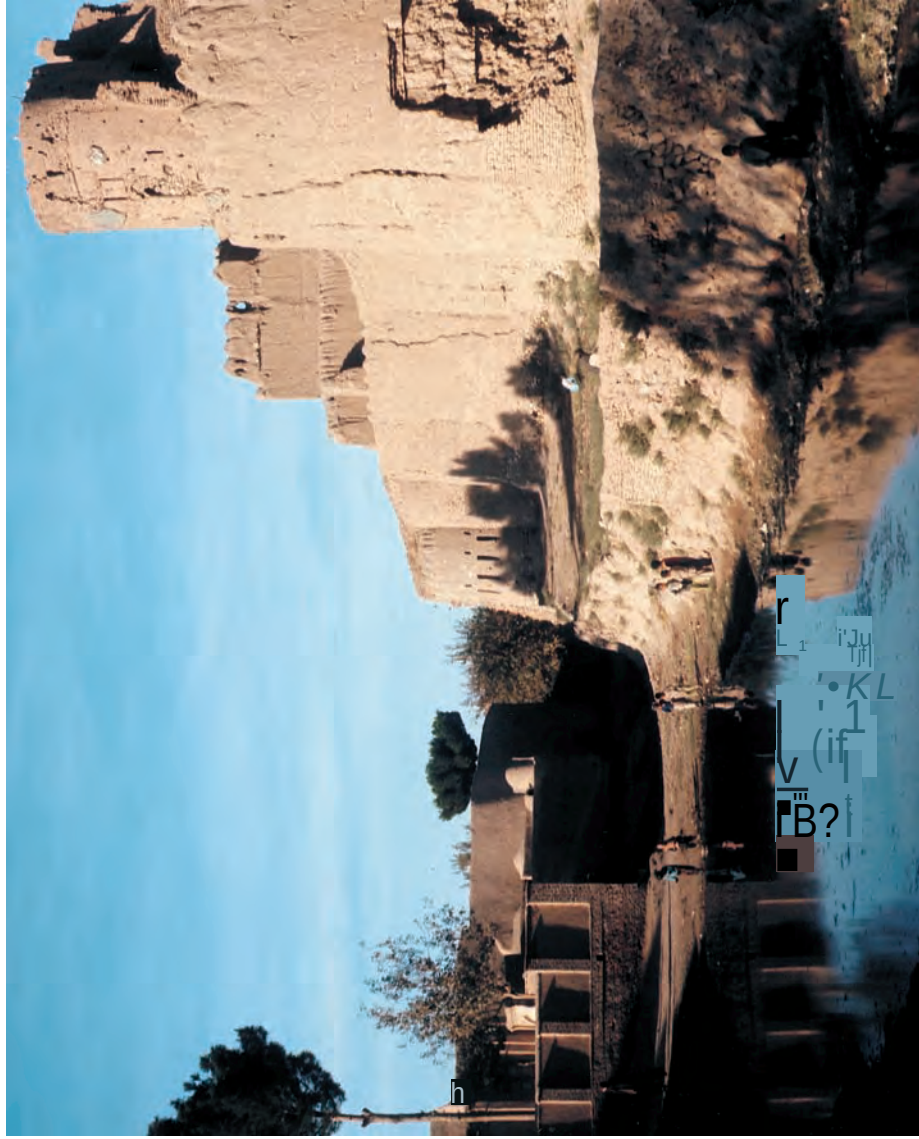
4. Yunas Khan's tomb in Tashkent.



5. Mahmud Khan reviews the Yak-trail Standards in Ferganah, June 1502. [Slide No. 97602]. Or. 3714. By permission of the British Library.



6. Babur orders a garden stream staightened at Istalif, sometime after September 1504. Illustrating: the Kabul Gazetteer. [Slide No. 14755]. Or. 3714. By permission of the British Library.



7. Harat fortress.



8. Masjid-i-Jamf : Friday mosque of Harat.



9. Babur visits female relatives at Husayn Bayqara's *madrasah* in Harat, December 1506. [Slide No. 97614]. Or. 3714. By permission of the British Library.



10. Babur returns to camp drunk on horseback, March 1519. [Slide No. 97626]. Or. 3714. By permission of the British Library.



11. Indian elephants. Illustrating: the Indian Gazetteer. [Slide No. 97632]. Or. 3714. By permission of the British Library.



12. Assault on Rajput fortress of Chandiri, January 1528. [Slide No. 97682]. Or. 3714. By permission of the British Library.



13. Babur tours Gwalior, September 1528. [Slide No. 97683]. Or. 3714.
By permission of the British Library.



14. Statue of Babur and shrine in Andij; an.



15. Babur's symbolic tomb in Andijan.

CHAPTER EIGHT

THE REWARDS OF EMPIRE, THE LONELINESS OF EXILE

بو هند ییری حاصلی دین کوب کونکل آلدیم
نی سود که بو ییر مینی دلکیر قیلیب تور

I deeply desired the riches of this Indian land,
What is the profit since this land oppresses me?

Babur in the *Rampur Diwan*
Agra. 28 December 1528

On November 27, 1528 Babur sent letters to his sons, Humayun and Kamran, and to his old friend Khwajah Kalan, all of whom were in Afghanistan, Humayun apparently in Badakhshan, Kamran in Qandahar and Khwajah Kalan in Kabul. In his long letter to Humayun, Babur urges his oldest son to take action against his old foes, the Uzbeks. Prodding him with a mixture of warm words and probably irritating fatherly criticism, Babur urges Humayun to act aggressively. “An idle life in retirement,” he pointedly observes, “is incompatible with kingship.” Then characteristically Babur legitimizes this hoary observation with a Persian quatrain, in this instance possibly quoting Nizami’s *Khusrau and Shirin* and more particularly Shirin’s address to Khusrau explaining why their marriage had to be postponed for politics.

جهانگیری توقف بر نیابد جهان آنرا بود کوبه شتابد
همه چیزی ز روی کدخدای سکون می یابد الا بادشاهی

Conquest does not spring from hesitation,
He who hastens gains the world.
Concerning marriage, everything is suspended
But kingship.¹

¹ BN-M, f. 348b. BN-B, 625 n. 7. Annette Beveridge—or more accurately, her husband, Henry Beveridge—identified this verse.

The letter was another contribution to Babur's multifaceted "mirror for princes." Yet, rarely did a father speak from more immediate experience than Babur, who despite his victories at Panipat and Kanwah, found himself enmeshed in a seemingly endless series of campaigns to pacify northern India. While his army typically rested during the monsoons Babur otherwise was constantly in motion, leading or directing his men in all directions from Agra while seeing to each detail of his expanding empire. Only sickness inhibited his activity, and increasingly frequent and severe illnesses afflicted him from the late spring of 1527. In fact, in the remaining text, which finally breaks off for good in September 1529, more than a year before his death, Babur increasingly conveys a sense of his own mortality, even as he continues his detailed military narrative. Not only does he describe his illnesses, depression and nostalgia for the golden days of Kabul, but the material he chose to include in the text implicitly reveals his consciousness that his career was ending, letters such as the one to Humayun and another he sent to Khwajah Kalan. His verse makes his condition and mood even more clear, expressing emotions that are often only hinted at in the *Vaqai*. Yet, even in the midst of these increasingly dour reflections he continued to try to replicate the gardens of Ferghanah, Samargand, Harat and Kabul on the barren plains of Hindustan.

The Timurid-Mughul Empire in 1527

Following the Battle of Kanwah the Mughul empire consisted of those areas Babur himself identified after describing his achievement at Panipat, and the newly conquered areas of Hindustan. These were in his words the *vilayats* or provinces of Badakhshan, Qunduz, Kabul, Qandahar, and then his newly acquired Indian territories. These comprised Lahore and part of the Panjab, including strategic southern city of Multan, Delhi, Agra and Gwalior in the heartland of Hindustan, Bayanah along with a small fringe of territory in eastern Rajasthan, some fortresses such as Koil within the region between the Jumna and Ganges rivers known as the Duab and the important trans-Ganges cities of Kannauj and Sambal. In reality his control was often limited to a small swath of territory connecting the principal fortresses or cities of these provinces and regions, and this was true of Afghanistan as well as

Hindustan. Indeed Babur exercised only nominal control north of the Hindu Kush, where Uzbeks posed a constant threat. In 1527 Kabul was still his most secure base, and there for the moment most of his female relatives safely remained until he sent for his *kuch ve uruq*, his “family and household,” in early 1529.²

Between 1527 and September 1529 Babur governed this far-flung territory as two distinct regions: the “Afghan” territories of Badakhshan, Qunduz, Qandahar and Kabul, and Hindustan.³ He and his two eldest sons ruled the Afghan *vilayats*, which he may have come to see by now as his “historic” territories. He designated Kabul as *khalisah* or crown land, because as he told Humayun in his November 1528 letter, “there had been such conquests and victories” when he was in the city.⁴ Sometime in 1527 or 1528 Babur appointed his long-time companion, Khwajah Kalan to govern Kabul, although he doesn’t seem to have made his old friend’s authority absolutely clear until February 1529. The reason for the confusion seems to have been due to the fact that Babur’s two eldest sons, Humayun and Kamran had been spending considerable time in the city with their many Timurid relatives. In fact, Babur ordered his female relations and their retinues to leave Kabul for India sometime in 1528, and then again more forcefully in 1529, in order to eliminate political intrigues and clarify Khwajah Kalan’s authority. *Kabulning namarbutluq*, “the chaos in Kabul” has been discussed, writes Babur in a February 10th letter to his old friend. At the same time he repeats what he had said to Humayun in his letter of the previous November, that he had made the city *khalisah* and says that he has written again to both Humayun and Kamran to tell them this. Henceforth, he writes, Khwajah Kalan alone would be responsible for Kabul.

Apart from the presence of their relatives, Humayun and Kamran spent so much time in Kabul because Babur had appointed them to govern the remaining Afghan territories. After the Indian campaign Humayun had returned to Afghanistan, where he

² BN-M, 359a.

³ This is a convenient modern usage to designate these territories. Babur himself doesn’t identify an Afghan *vildyat*, but identifies only those areas of Pushtu speakers as Afghanistan. He identifies the entire trans-Indus area as Hindustan.

⁴ BN-M, f. 350a. He repeated his claim to Kabul in another letter to Humayun dated about February 9, 1529.

governed Badakhshan and Qunduz, while Kamran, who would have been sixteen or seventeen years old in 1525, had remained in Afghanistan in charge of both Qandahar and Kabul from late 1525 to 1527. In 1527 he governed Qandahar, and while in 1528 Babur ordered him to Multan, it isn't clear that he went. By these appointments and in his letters it seems that with his two oldest sons at least, Babur had begun to create a typical Timurid appanage system, such as he had known in Ferghanah.

Babur alludes to this appanage-like territorial division in his letter to Humayun, writing that he had always given six parts to him and five parts to Kamran. He thus showed the same precedence to his eldest son that Babur had claimed for himself with his brothers Jahangir and Nasir Mirza.⁵ Humayun and Kamran were, like Babur and his siblings, half-brothers, and within a year of Babur's death Kamran began acting like his Timurid ancestors, carving out his own autonomous appanage in Afghanistan and the Panjab. Babur's two youngest sons seem to have been too young to have enjoyed any independent power in these years. His next youngest son, Askari, born in 1517, was technically in charge of Multan sometime before September 1528, when he was called to Agra and then sent on campaign to the east.⁶ Babur's youngest son, Hind-al, born in 1519, was apparently kept in Kabul until 1529, when he was briefly sent north to replace Humayun and represent the Timurids in Badakhshan. Shortly afterwards Babur apparently ordered him to India but he arrived in Agra only after his father's death in December 1530.

Except for Babur's large-scale division of his conquests into appanages for his sons, little is known about the actual operation of his administrative and revenue systems. No extant sources are known that document any aspect of Babur's government, much less demonstrate how his rule and that of his son, Humayun, may have differed from that of his Afghan Ludi predecessors—or the Afghan Sun successors who expelled Humayun and ruled north India between 1540 and 1555. Nonetheless, certain things may be inferred about the culture or orientation of the early Timurid-Mughul state from Babur's narrative and other writings.

At the level of military and political control Babur ruled Hin-

⁵ BN-M, f. 349a.

⁶ BN-M, f. 339a.

dustan in these years through a typical post-conquest military feudalism, although some cities or forts, districts and provinces were declared crown lands, with *diwans* or financial officers appointed to oversee them. These latter included Kabul, certainly Delhi and Agra, although these cities are not explicitly identified, and lesser towns such as Bahlulpur on the Chenab river, almost due north of Lahore, Dulpur, nearly due south of Agra, and later in 1529, territory in Bihar worth 22,500,000 *tangahs*.⁷ Most conquered territories were granted as military fiefs to Babur's *begs* or lesser officers to support themselves and their own men, and in this early transition period they were frequently moved from one fort to another as needed. In the *Vaqaf* he doesn't use technical terms for these Indian *amirs* other than the generic Indo-Muslim term *wajhdar*, the "holder" *ddr* of a *wajh* or territorial assignment. This typifies his habit of using local terminology rather than applying technical terms common to other regions; his earlier categorization of *orchin*, *tuman* and *parganah* is an example of his care in this matter. When he refers to *wajh* Babur probably meant grants similar to *tiyul*. When, for example, he allotted lands in Kabul, Babur reports that they were given *tiyul-dik*, "as *tiyul*"⁸ However, he never explains the exact rights and responsibilities of *tiyul* or *wajhdar* grants,⁹ probably assuming they were well known to his readers. Yet his actions demonstrate that he regarded the *wajhdar* grants as temporary or conditional territorial assignments given for the dual purposes of territorial consolidation and military stipends. These assignments were evidently distinct from the *soyurghal* grants that Babur made to members of the 'ulamd in India, although in this case too it is difficult to make any firm conclusions as only a few of these documents have survived.¹⁰

⁷ BN-M, fs. 255a for Bahlulpur, 305a for Dulpur and 367b and 375b for Bihar. He doesn't specify Delhi and Agra, but those cities would immediately have been declared *khalisah*. Otherwise this is almost certainly not an exhaustive list, but merely those places Babur mentions. Babur doesn't mention the currency, but he is presumably referring to silver *tangahs*.

⁸ BN-M, f. 144a. In the text he uses *tiyul* for the last time when alluding to the holdings of one of his *begs* in Laghman. See BN-M, f. 241b.

⁹ The term *wajhdar* was still being used in the early years of the reign of Babur's grandson Akbar. For an example see Saiyid Zaheer Husain Jafri, "A Farman of Akbar (1558) from the Period of the Regency," in Irfan Habib ed., *Akbar and His India* (Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1997), 266-7.

¹⁰ Iqbal Husain, "Akbar's Farmans — A Study in Diplomatic," Habib ed., *Akbar and His India*, 66.

Usually Babur appointed Timurids, Ghingizids, in-laws and long-time companions to govern the most important forts and provinces. These companions were often intermarried with one another's families. Thus, the ruling inner circle continued to be composed of a relatively small social web of Turco-Mongol aristocrats, and while this did not, as has been seen, guarantee their loyalty, it offered the most reliable governing body under early sixteenth century circumstances. After Panipat, for example, Babur immediately ordered five trusted men to seize the treasury in Delhi. These included his brother-in-law, Mahdi Khwajah, Babur's son-in-law, the Timurid Muhammad Zaman Mirza and one of Sultan Husayn Bayqara's former amirs and another of Babur's brothers-in-law, Sultan Junayd Barias. Later in the fall of 1526 Mahdi Khwajah was later made *shiqdar* of Bayanah with a revenue of seven million; after Kanwah he became fed up with India and returned to Kabul.¹¹ However, his son, JaTar Khwajah was given Etawah and his nephew Rahimdad, was assigned the strategic Gwalior fortress. Muhammad Zaman Mirza served with Babur continuously and in May 1529 after the eastern campaign "was given" Jaunpur, a strategic and historically important city north of Banaras. Sultan Junayd Barias, who had previously been assigned to Dulpur in August 1526, and then Jaunpur in January 1527, was moved from Jaunpur to Chunar just upriver from Banaras in May 1529. After Kanwah the critically important town of Kannauj was given to Muhammad Sultan Mirza. Koil or Aligarh was given to Kichik 'Ali, a former retainer of Sultan Muhammad Ways. He was also a man who had fought with Babur in Ferghanah.¹²

While almost nothing is recorded of the actual operation of the financial and legal institutions of the Timurid-Mughul government in the first three years of its existence from 1527 to 1530, Babur's ideas about or inclinations toward taxation and legal/religious institutions are well-known. In his *Mubaiyin* text he essentially reiterated Hanafi Sunni taxation and financial policies, such as those described in the *Hidayat*. The fact that this latter text was

¹¹ *Shiqdar* was an important local administrative and revenue official in the early Timurid-Mughul period. It was later replaced by the term *karon*. See Irfan Habib's discussion of the term in his article "Three Early Farmans of Akbar, in Favour of Ramdas, the Master Dyer," in Irfan Habib ed., *Akbar and His India*, 275-76.

¹² For Kichik 'Ali see BN-M, f. 113b.

already known in Indian Muslim scholarly/religious circles meant that Babur's ideas were part of a common cultural heritage of Central Asian and South Asian Sunni Muslims. It is important to note that when in the *Mubaiyin* Babur discusses agricultural taxation, he explains *both* taxation in kind and taxation in cash based upon land measurement, the *jarib*. In particular, his explanation of these two types of agricultural taxes suggests that the common interpretation of financial/ administrative history of north India in the sixteenth century may not be accurate to the extent that it suggests that the Afghan Shir Shah began taxation in cash based on land surveys or that Akbar's later policies were especially new—at least in principle. As S. A. Azimdzhanova has argued, "It may be suggested that the system of taxation, outlined by Babur in the *Mubaiyin* formed the basis of the tax policies of his successors in India. The measures of land taxation were identical to these, which were written about in Babur's time."¹³ Either Babur or Humayun may have actually initiated these measures. A similar point might be made about the oft-made assertion that it was Shir Shah who began laying out the great north Indian roads known in the seventeenth century, as it is obvious from Babur's memoirs for 1528 that before his death he began the process of at least measuring the road between Agra and Kabul. And despite the dearth of autobiographical or documentary sources for Humayun's rule between 1530 and 1540, it cannot be assumed that he did not continue and/or institute his father's policies. That is, at the level of policy at least, it is more reasonable to assume a continuity between the period of Babur and Humayun, and those of Shir Shah and Akbar, rather than to imagine, as is commonly done, a complete lack of connection between Babur's embryonic empire and his Afghan and Timurid-Mughul successors.¹⁴

In suggesting the type or nature of state that Babur envisioned and at least tentatively began constructing during his brief tenure

¹³ Azimdzhanova, *Gosudarstvo Babura v Kabule i Indii*, 144. See especially Chapter XII, "The Taxation Policy of Babur," where she adds: "From the *Mubaiin* it is evident that the method of levying taxes based upon the measurement of land was well-known in the time of Babur." Ibid., 144.

¹⁴ As one of many examples of the historiography that ignores Babur entirely see M. Athar Ali, "Towards an Interpretation of the Mughal Empire," in Herman Kulke ed., *The State In India* (Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1995), 263-77.

in Agra, it is impossible to underestimate his known commitment to a Turco-Mongol court patronizing Perso-Islamic literary and artistic culture and a Hanafi Sunni Muslim administration based on the Samarqand and Harat models. What he praises in Samarqand and Harat he sought to replicate in Agra. His preferences are unmistakable in his enthusiastic welcome of Timurids and Ghingizids to India and praise for the religious scholars, literary intellectuals and artists of the two great Timurid cities. The arrival in late 1528 of new Turco-Mongol refugees and such individuals as Khwandamir and other scholars and artists from Harat indicates that Babur and his successors were supplied with the sophisticated human infrastructure for the creation a worthy successor state to that of Husayn Bayqara. His careful enumeration of visitors and gifts at a celebration in Agra in December 1528 offers some of the most tangible evidence of the kind of people he thought worth mentioning to his audience. These included, of course, Ahran Naqshbandis, the type of restrained, establishment sufis that most of his descendants also preferred. Babur, thus, was not a radical figure in the context of either Timurid or north Indian Muslim culture and politics, but a lineal descendant of Ulugh Beg and Husayn Bayqara.

Rajputs and Afghans

When Babur resumed his pacification campaign in the late fall of 1527 he had secured a fragile toehold of sovereignty administered by members of his inner circle and sometimes assisted by Afghans such as Dilawar Khan, the son of Daulat Khan, and Nizam Khan, formerly of Bayanah. The fundamental problem involved in the integrally related tasks of subduing the country and taxing it was the inadequate number of reliable troops at Babur's disposal, which in 1527 must still have been pitifully few. This was probably true even if Afghans are included, most of whom Babur did not and reasonably could not trust. As he knew from many costly experiences he could scarcely even rely on his own immediate retinue for any length of time. Then there was the problem of the foreignness of the army. Apart from their numbers most Timurids and Mongols did not know Indian languages, although they could presumably speak Persian with many Afghans, although not, surprisingly with Daulat Khan, the former ruler of Lahore.

In 1527, therefore, and throughout the remainder of his life, Babur's conquests represented an insecure Timurid-Mughul garrison state that relied almost entirely on long-time family loyalists for its tenuous power. Some Afghans and Rajputs may have been cowed, but they had no reason to be loyal. Unlike Ferghanah where Babur and his men had long-standing ties and cultural identity with the predominantly Turkic population, in India they were and would long remain foreign conquerors without even the significant settlement base that their Afghan rivals enjoyed. Constructing a Timurid state in densely populated Hindustan required unrelenting military effort, as well as attention to affairs in Kabul, Qandahar and Badakhshan. In fact, the history of the years after Kanwah demonstrate how extraordinarily difficult it was to move from victorious battle to stable, widely accepted, that is legitimate rule. During the next two years Babur persisted in his efforts to expand his fragile Indo-Afghan state with campaigns against the Rajputs in Chandiri and the Afghans in the Gaugetic valley, all the while wishing he were back in Kabul at gatherings with Khwajah Kalan and other boon companions.

After spending Ramadan in Agra and Id in Sikri, where he fell ill for seventeen days, Babur resumed activity in late August, 1527 as he toured Dulpur, where he characteristically began tidying up the disappointingly flat and geometrically chaotic landscape by ordering a stonemason to carve out a pool from a large block of red sandstone. According to his daughter, Gulbadan Begim, writing more than a half-century later, he had originally intended to fill a ten by ten foot well he ordered constructed there with wine, but as he had renounced drink, he filled it with lemonade instead!¹⁵ Babur says nothing of this possibly apocryphal story himself, perhaps a reflection of the different interests of Babur and his female relatives. Returning to Agra where he was sick again for nine days in September, he then set out to inspect Koil in the Duab region north of Agra, and Sambal, the important trans-Ganges town north-northeast of Koil and due east of Delhi.

Arriving in Koil on September 28th he and his men toured the

¹⁵ HN, f. 12a. Elizabeth B. Moynihan discovered the remains of Babur's construction in Dulpur and describes this "Lotus Garden Palace" in her illustrated article, "The Lotus Garden Palace of Zahir al-Din Muhammad Babur," Oleg Grabar ed., *Muqarnas* 5 (Leiden: Brill, 1988), 135-52.

area for two days, and after crossing the Ganges they spent another two days touring in the neighborhood of Sambal. Then in what seems to be an anecdote in which he recalled his still youthful energy and spirits Babur remarks that as they were riding back to Agra before dawn on October 6th, "On a pretext I split off from the men and galloped to within a *kuruh* of Agra. Later the men overtook me. We dismounted in Agra at *namaz-i pishin*, the noon time prayer."¹⁶ Riding alone in the relatively cool early morning air of October probably was such a delightful sensation that Babur recorded it in his diary, the form of the *Vaqaf* for this period. His recollection of the exhilaration he felt by going off alone, a solitary pleasure that many people recall first from their own childhood, offers yet another small example of the simple and easily recognizable pleasures that humanize Babur throughout the text and is found particularly often in seemingly offhand recollections in the unrevised diary sections of the *Vaqaf*.

There is an artful but apparently unintentional contrast between Babur's evident pleasure with this ride and the next entry in the *Vaqā'i*, his description of intermittent chills and fever he began suffering a week later on October 13th. While he alludes to earlier illnesses Babur makes relatively few references to his health in narrating events before 1527. He must have been very sick this October, perhaps with dysentery, because not only does he recall his thirst and sleeplessness, but he also mentions that while ill he composed "three or four *rubai*." One of these he quotes in the text and the others are found in his *diwan*. All of them artfully describe his illness in ways that again illustrate how much more comfortable writers of the age felt conveying their emotions in verse rather than in prose. Echoing his prose account, the first two lines of the quatrain read:

جسممدا ایسیتمه کوندا محکم بولا دور
کوزدین ال ال زل زل جواخشام بولا زل

Daily the fever in my body intensifies,
Sleep flies from my eyes as night arrives.¹⁷

¹⁶ BN-M, f. 331a.

¹⁷ BN-M, f. 331b, Koprulii no. 191, p. 327 and Yiicel, no. 319, p. 263.

In the two other *rubai* written at this time Babur evocatively recalls the effect of this fever in words that are painfully immediate to those who have suffered the debilitating effects of dysentery, whose paired symptoms are the dehydrating effects of diarrhea and high fever. One of them reads:

كونكلومدا اوت و اكي كوزومده سو دور
 مين خسته غه رحم قيل حاليم بو دور
 غم كوندوزي و فراق شامي ي:¹ &
 كون و تون منكا ني، قرار و ني اولتورور

Fever in my heart and water in my two eyes,
 Pity my sickness, this is my condition.
 Burning during oppressive days and troubled nights,
 For me neither rest nor sleep, day or night.¹⁸

Yet despite his increasingly frequent illnesses Babur resumed campaigning in the second week of December, 1527. During the next two years he conducted major campaigns against Rajputs and Afghans, and as he moved down the Ganges against Afghans, he tried to establish suzerainty over the Muslim ruler of Bengal. Meanwhile a new Safavid victory over the Uzbeks in September 1528 seemed to open the way to Mawarannahr again, and Babur gave Humayun *carte blanche* to campaign for the Timurid homelands from his base in Afghanistan. Nothing came of the latter opportunity, and it retrospect it seems to be the earliest example of the revanchist nostalgia for the Central Asian Timurid homelands that marked Timurid-Mughul history until the disintegration of the dynasty in the eighteenth century.

In Agra, though, Babur turned back to Rajasthan to conduct what he describes as a *ghaza*, a war for the faith, against the formidable Rajput fortress of Chandiri. He does not explain his reasons for this campaign against a fortress located about 175 miles due south of Agra, and one hundred miles south of Gwalior. The Ludis themselves had gained control of this region only in 1515, to lose

¹⁸ Koprulii no. 190, p. 326, Yiicel no. 328, p. 263, and *Rampur Diwan*, f. 17a.

it a short time later.¹⁹ However, it seems certain that Babur chose to attack in this direction because in 1527 Rana Sanga had controlled Chandiri through one of his feudatories, Medim Rao, who, Babur writes, had brought 12,000 men to the battle of Kanwah. That this attack was part of a larger strategy to destroy the Rajput's power is also implied when Babur later remarks after describing his conquest of Chandiri that he had planned to seize Chitor itself, Rana Sanga's principal fortress.

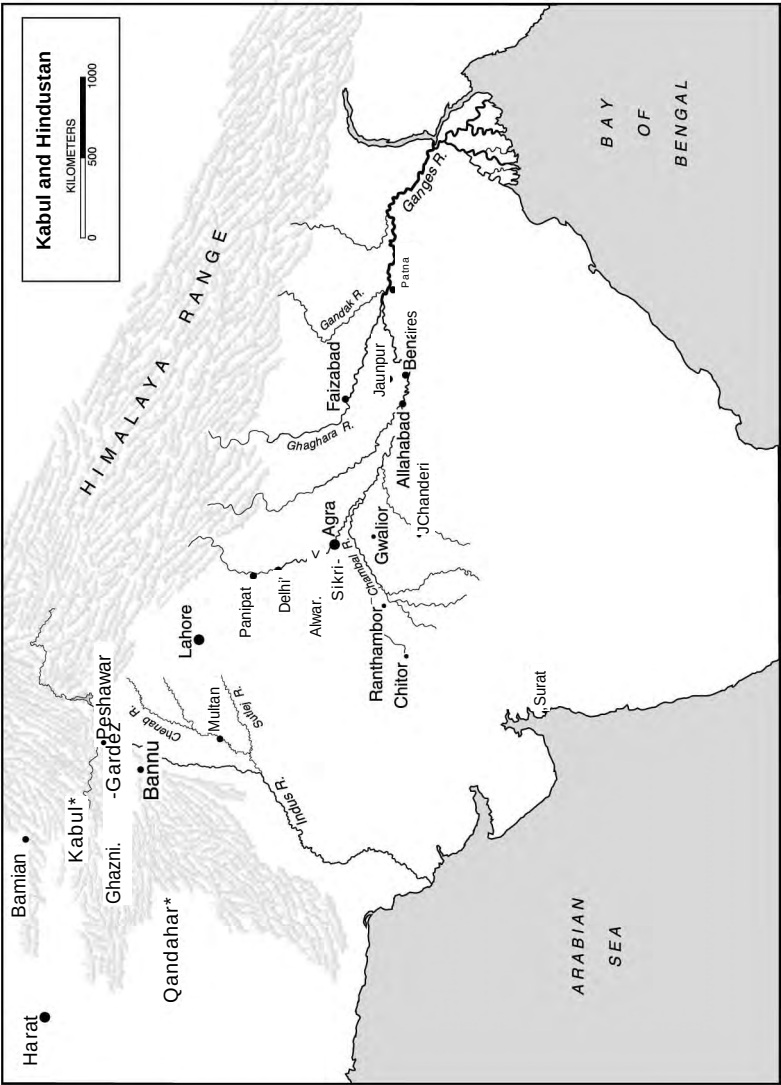
He marched out of Agra on December 12th southeast along the Jumna river, moving alternately by horse or boat until reaching Kalpi, more than a hundred miles downstream to the southeast. Simultaneously he detached troops to intimidate and if necessary attack the Afghan Shaykh Bayizid Farmuli, who had joined him after Panipat and been given more than fourteen million *tangahs* and the province of Oudh.²⁰ Babur believed that Shaykh Bayizid was giving signs of repudiating his new Timurid overlord, and in fact by early 1528 he was actively campaigning against Babur along the Ganges near Kannauj.²¹ At Kalpi Babur turned to the south west and marched along the Betwa river, meanwhile dispatching 6-7000 of his troops to ride ahead to Chandiri. He and the remainder reached the region of Chandiri on January 18th.

In military terms Babur's description of the march is interesting partly because his army had already begun to undergo a marked transformation. First, based upon his own estimates at least, he was now campaigning with at least as many troops as he commanded at Panipat, while simultaneously dispatching others to the east on subsidiary campaigns against Afghans. He could not have mobilized so many men without incorporating Indians into his army, and one Shaykh Guran, who had joined him after Panipat and fought with Babur's army at Kanwah, was among commanders he sent ahead to Chandiri. Apart from this Indianization or at least incorporation of Afghan-Indian troops, the Timurid army had also acquired an artillery arm that began to influence his campaigns. He brought with him to Chandiri a mortar that required the roads to

¹⁹Jackson, *The Delhi Sultanate*, 323. Babur summarizes the recent history of the Chandiri fortress. BN-M, fs. 333a-b.

²⁰ BN-M, f. 296b.

²¹ BN-M, f. 336a.



Map No. 4. Kabul and Hindustan

be widened and flattened for its passage. Hauling this cumbersome weapon through the jungles near Chandiri slowed the pace of the army, which now moved at the pace of elephants that pulled the mortar. The employment of elephants represented a third major change. These huge, intelligent animals seemed to be an irresistible temptation for rulers in India, whatever their own origin. The elephant was already being incorporated into Timurid-Mughul forces more generally, mimicking their use by the Ludis and other indigenous powers. Babur notes that he had assigned ten to Muhammad 'Alī Jang Jang, whom he had just detached eastward to confront Shaykh Bayizid Farmuli.²²

Arriving at Chandiri Babur first attempted to negotiate with its commander, MedinT Rao, offering his good will and another fortress if he surrendered Chandiri itself. He entrusted these negotiations to Shaykh Ghuran and another Indian, evidently an Afghan, Arayish Khan, who had joined him before Panipat in January 1526.²³ The latter, Babur, remarks, knew Medim Rao. After these negotiations failed Babur and his men began the siege of the fortress on the morning of January 28th. Prefaced by three or four ineffective shots from Ustad 'Alī Qutb's single mortar, the siege was conducted in the same basic formation of right and left wing, right and left flank of center and the royal *tabin* that Babur first described for the battle of Qandahar.²⁴ Surprisingly he took the formidable fortress with relative ease—Babur himself was obviously surprised, as he estimated 4-5,000 men defended its walls. Of course there is no reason to accept this estimate more than any other. His men scaled the walls and seized both the outer walls and the inner fortress within two hours and without severe fighting. They did so, he says, even before the standards could be arrayed or the drums beaten to signal the general assault.

Many men within followed Rajput custom of *jauhar*. They stripped naked and fought to the death, some later killing one another after having already slain their own wives and other women. Scenes representing these killings are subsidiary parts of the miniature painting illustrating this battle in the late sixteenth

²² BN-M, f. 332a.

²³ BN-M, f. 261a.

²⁴ BN-M, fs. 334a-b. The mortar shells evidently bounced off the high stone walls of the fortress.

century Persian translation of the *Vaqaf*. However, many Rajputs surrendered, only to be massacred by Babur's troops.²⁵ A minaret of "infidel" skulls was erected nearby and Babur celebrated by composing his own Persian verse to include the chronogram that dated the victory.

بود چندی مقام چندیری پر ز کفار و دار حری [و] ضرب
 کشت تاریخ فتح دار الحرب j | o h j j Qy 3
 For a time this place of Was *dar al-harb* and pagan-
 Ghandiri full.
 I conquered its fortress in Its chronogram is *Fath dar*
 battle. *al-harb* [934].²⁶

Ghandiri was assigned to Ahmad Shah, a Khilji Turk and the grandson of the deceased Sultan of Malwa, who had held Ghandiri before his death in 1510. Babur also ordered that 50 lacs of its revenues were declared *khalisah* or royal revenue.

Babur then planned to attack another of Rana Sanga's feudatories known as Silhadi, in fact a Rajput convert to Islam named Salah al-Dm, who had also been present at Kanwah and whose son was killed in that battle. Rana Sanga himself had died the previous year, not in battle but after the Kanwah defeat. Babur estimated that Salah al-Dm controlled territory that could support 30,000 horsemen, again probably an exaggeration but a reflection of the quantitative shift in scale of military operations from his Ferghanah days. His planned campaign would have taken him in an arc southwest of Ghandiri to Salah al-Din's territory of Sarangpur and before marching northwest to Chitor itself, deep in the Rajasthan desert. However, just before he marched he received additional discouraging news about the force he had sent eastward to overawe Shaykh Bayizid and other Afghans in Oudh. In fact, just before he had begun the siege of Ghandiri he had been told that these troops of his had been defeated, abandoning Lucknow and falling back to

²⁵ Babur mentions this massacre earlier, f. 272a, but doesn't include it in his description of the victory. See Beveridge's typically thoughtful discussion of this omission. BN-B, p. 596, n. 1.

²⁶ BN-M, f. 335a. These common chronograms were based on the *abjad* (y y J) system according to which long vowels and consonants of the Arabic alphabet were assigned numerical values. Thus a=1, b=2, j=3 and d=4 etc.

Kannauj. He had decided, he writes, not to tell anyone in order to maintain morale before the Chandiri assault.

Now he learned that his men had also abandoned Kannauj, and he immediately turned back to the northeast towards that strategic city so near Delhi, dispatching scouts, or as he calls them, *qazaq yiyiller*, to locate the Afghan troops. In the face of Babur's rapid march they retreated back across the Ganges. A standoff ensued while Babur had a bridge of boats built. In the meantime some of Babur's men crossed the river in small numbers, only to be driven back by Afghans using their war elephants, which could easily intimidate men on foot. Ustad 'Ali Quit began firing his mortar, getting off eight shots in one day and sixteen the next, and the matchlock men also began shooting across the river. On Friday March 1st the bridge was completed and the *tabin* and forces from the center crossed and in a pitched battle forced the Afghans to retire. By Saturday, writes Babur, his men probably could have pressed home their advantage and captured most of the enemy, but he says he decided to postpone the attack until Sunday—for seemingly quixotic reason having to do with the timing of the battle of Kanwah.

"It came to mind," writes Babur:

That last year having left Sikn on nauruz (New Year's), a Tuesday, intending to attack Sanga, we crushed the rebellion Saturday. This year we set out on nauruz, a Wednesday, intending to attack these rebels. If we triumphed over the enemy on Sunday it would be a singular event. For this reason no one was allowed to cross.²⁷

Babur's men crossed on Sunday morning, and just as the *naqarah* drums were sounded news arrived that the Afghans had fled the battle field. Babur's men later captured their baggage train about eighty miles further east but the Afghans themselves escaped with few casualties.

What seems more providential than Babur's carefully calculated coincidence was the arrival of a prestigious refugee, signaling the increasing flow of military aristocrats, intellectuals and religious scholars to the nascent Timurid-Mughul empire. On Monday his Chaghatay cousin, Tukhta Bugha Sultan came. He was one of the

²⁷ BN-M, f. 337b. Babur mentions leaving Sikri on Nauruz, 1527 to confront Rana Sanga. BN-M, f. 315a. Other Christian and Muslim dates for Nauruz can be found in Ahmad Birashk, *A Comparative Calendar of the Iranian, Muslim Lunar, and Christian Eras for Three Thousand Years*.

sons of his uncle of the disheveled tent, Kichik Khan. Six Timurid and Ghaghatay women also arrived in Agra in October. Three were his paternal aunts, to whom he showed dutiful respect by riding to visit them in their new quarters.²⁸ About a month earlier in September 1528 three well-known representatives of Harat high culture had joined Babur's service. Khwandamir, the prominent historian, the poet Maulana Shihab al-Dm and Mir Ibrahim, a dulcimer player, arrived, the first of the stream anticipating the later torrent river of Persian-speaking literati and artists who would flood the Timurid-Mughul court in succeeding centuries. A third distinct group of men who began arriving in India by December were Ahrari Naqshbandis, descendants of Babur's hereditary sufi "saint," Khwajah Ahrar. Like Chaghatays, Timurids and Harat intellectuals they were also given an enthusiastic welcome, and indeed eventually were accorded the status of religious aristocrats, some of whom married Babur's descendants.²⁹

Rajputs too became Mughul aristocrats in the late sixteenth century, and the first sign of Rajput accommodation with the new Timurid power in Hindustan came in September 1528 as Babur was touring Gwalior. Babur never seems to have resumed his Rajput campaign. Unfortunately there is another unexplained gap in his memoirs from April to September 1528, and so it is impossible to know whether he reentered Rajasthan in force after chasing Shaykh Bayizid and his Afghan allies down the Ganges. However, since the rhythm of Indian campaigning harmonized with the seasons, it is quite likely that he had returned to Agra to sit out the monsoons. It is from Agra that he rode out in late September to visit Gwalior, still held for him by Rahimdad, the nephew of Mahdi Khwajah. At Gwalior he received an emissary from Rana Sanga's second son, Bikramjit, the holder of the important fort of Ranthambor. Bikramjit's minister, a close relation, offered his master's "good will and service," *daulatkhahliq ve khidmatgartiq qabul qilibturlar*, in exchange for control of Ranthambor and seventy lacs of revenue. However, later Bikramjit's representatives asked instead for Bayanah. On October 19th he was in the process of surrendering Ranthambor, having been offered instead Ghitor, if and when

²⁸ BN-M, fs. 344b-345a.

²⁹ Dale and Payind, "The Ahran Waqf of Kabul in the Year 1546 and the Mughul Naqshbandiyyah," *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, 225-26.

Babur was able to take that imposing fortress then held by Bikramjit's brother. Babur describes all of these negotiations in a matter-of-fact tone, never lapsing into the religious rhetoric of the *ghazd* or referring to Bikramjit or any of his relatives or servants as infidels. He simply identifies them as Hindus, and speaks of their submission in virtually the same terms he uses to characterize the surrender of Afghans. His terminology reminds readers that Babur was a pragmatic conqueror, a man willing to exploit religious or cultural distinctions if it served his immediate purpose, but not an ideologue, certainly not a person engaged in a Safavid-like religious crusade.

Babur left Gwalior on September 30 and his visit concluded with relaxing intervals at seemingly every reservoir, garden and fast-running stream that evoked, however poorly in his mind, the *Chahar Bdghs* and stream-side picnic grounds of Kabul, Harat and Samarqand. On the first day of their leisurely return he and his men stopped at one of these sites atop a waterfall where they ate *majun* and listened to musicians and singers. Five days later they reached Dulpur where Babur had ordered an octagonal pool to be carved out of solid rock three weeks earlier on his ride out to Gwalior. Now finding that the work had not progressed fast enough he commanded that an additional 1000 stonecutters put to work to finish the pool, another small hint of the human resources that Timurid rulers could command in India. After another *majun* party beside this site, they rode off late one evening toward Sikri, camping later that night along the road. Possibly because of the cold evening air Babur again suffered from an ear ache that had plagued him since September. He had taken opium for this affliction on September 26th, although he had also, he writes, been induced to take opium because of the moonlight that particular evening, an apparent allusion to the astrological notion associating moonlight with humidity and cold.³⁰ Then about October 7th, reaching the garden he had earlier ordered built in Sikri, Babur was displeased with the work done on the garden wall and its well-buildings and so "threatened and punished" the men supervising the work. On

³⁰ BN-M, fs. 344 b & 340a. For a brief summary of the moon's astrological significance, including its feminine nature, see Stefano Carboni, *Following the Stars: Images of the Zodiac in Islamic Art* (New York, N.Y.: Metropolitan Museum of Art, 1997), 11.

October 15th he and his companions reached Agra during the first watch, that is between six and nine in the morning.

Autumn 1528: Celebration of Empire

During the next three months Babur remained in Agra, and his narrative for this period offers as much insight into his political situation and state of mind as any other comparable section of the *Vaqai*. His comments reveal, first of all, that by this time he had completely exhausted the cash of the Delhi and Agra treasuries. As a result on October 22nd he ordered *wajhdars* or stipendiaries to pay thirty percent of their stipends into the *diwan* to provide funds for arms and supplies.³¹ The acute cash shortage later sparked a debate about the direction of his next campaign, leading him to report with refreshing frankness on the fiscal realities of empire building. As he says when describing the meeting of Turkic and Indian *amirs* held at his *khalvatkhanih* or private residence in Agra two and a half months later on January 3rd, whether or not they campaigned to the east against Afghan forces or to the west depended on whether they could capture a treasury to pay the army.³²

Yet despite the cash crises and the threat of substantial Afghan forces operating in the eastern Ganges region, at this moment in the fall of 1528, Babur was feeling increasingly confident about the military situation in India. Citing *farmans*, royal edicts or pronouncements, sent to unnamed persons in Harat on October 24th, he reports writing that he was satisfied with the situation of the “rebels and infidels in the east and west of Hindustan” to the degree that he hoped to come to Kabul the following summer.³³ Three and a half months later as Babur was marching down the Ganges he was just as confident. In a letter he wrote to Khwajah Kalan on February 9th he says again that he was consolidating his power in India and soon hoped to leave for the Afghan capital, whose pleasures he vividly remembered.³⁴ Perhaps Babur hoped to

³¹ BN-M, fs. 345a-b.

³² *Khalvatkhanih* is a word connoting private quarters, sometimes referring specifically to women’s rooms but not necessarily so. DKh. 6, p. 704.

³³ BN-M, fs. 345a-b.

³⁴ BN-M, fs. 359a-361a.

return to Kabul merely because he, like Khwajah Kalan, was sick of India's climate, not to speak of his widely advertised distaste for other aspects of India's landscape and people. His love of Kabul was and continued to be a powerful attraction. Yet he may have also had both dynastic and strategic reasons for thinking of returning to Afghanistan during the fall and winter of 1528-29.

The dynastic reasons concerned the political intrigues of his sons over the control of Kabul, which he tried to settle finally a short time later with his letter to Humayun and subsequent order that his female relatives leave Kabul for India. The strategic reasons concerned the balance of power between Uzbeks and Safavids, which shifted dramatically in the fall of 1528. At the time Babur wrote to Harat on October 24th he may have feared that Uzbek forces were about to reoccupy Harat and most of Khurasan, as they had been besieging the city most of the year. Babur's fears about resurgent Uzbek power in the region might explain earlier, undated messages sent to the "people of Khurasan" that he alludes to in this message of the 24th, which he characterizes as *istimdlat farmdnlari* "encouraging" or "supportive." Merely the use of the term *farman* in both messages suggests that they had some significant political content. The word *istimdlat* hints, in turn, that Babur might have promised Timurids and others in Harat that he would march there if the Uzbeks seized the city and province. Given his experience in 1507 he knew that the Uzbeks could quickly move on Qandahar if they reoccupied Husayn Bayqara's former capital.

Fortunately Shah Tahmasp, the Safavid ruler, had already reached Khurasan in the late summer, and on November 4th Babur learned that Tahmasp had defeated a small Uzbek force on or about 16 September. Then on November 22nd he received more good news; Tahmasp had shattered the combined Uzbek army at Jam, near Merv, on 26th of September. The Safavid victory removed the immediate Uzbek threat but they may have given Babur a new reason to return to Kabul. That is, these events must have reminded Babur of Shah Ismail's earlier defeat of Shibam Khan Uzbek in 1510 and may at least momentarily have rekindled his desire to march once again on Samarqand. Yet the situation in the fall of 1528 differed markedly from conditions eighteen years earlier. Now he was slowly gaining mastery over the wealthy Indian heartland. However little he cared for the country

he was by force of circumstance evolving into an Indian ruler. Thus, while he may have been nostalgic for Kabul and still dreaming of reclaiming his Timurid patrimony, he assigned Humayun to realize the family's revanchist ambitions.

On November 27th when he wrote to Humayun and Kamran to settle the affairs of Kabul, he also gave his eldest son tentative instructions about dividing up yet unconquered Uzbek territories in northern Afghanistan and southern Mawarannahr. His instructions represent another note about Timurid-Mughul appanage politics. Humayun was to get Hisar while Kamran was to hold Balkh. He also told Humayun if Samarqand itself was retaken Humayun should remain there while Kamran would keep Balkh, and perhaps be given additional territories if he thought Balkh too modest. In late January just as Babur was starting for the east he received the news that his eldest son was actually on the march north to Samarqand with an estimated 40,000 men, a number that seems, as usual, improbably large, and information that Humayun's allies had already taken Hisar.³⁵ However, nothing more is heard about this campaign, and nearly a year later, sometime in the autumn of 1529, Humayun was back in Agra. The remarkable ability of the Uzbeks to regroup after military defeats and/or news of his father's increasingly poor health may have convinced him to abandon the campaign.

It was probably just shortly before Babur wrote to Humayun that he finally recovered from another bout of sickness, this time a serious intestinal illness. Speculation as to its original cause is a waste of time given the many possibilities, but he reports falling ill on November 6th. He suffered, he writes, from intestinal swelling accompanied by chills and fever, making it too painful for him even to pray.³⁶ These acute symptoms may have been caused by the medicine he took for what was apparently a more mild affliction that began late in October. It was then he began taking quicksilver, or mercury. However, the effects of mercury on the human body vary with the form or specific chemical compound injected, so it is impossible to say from his brief reference how this treatment may have affected him. Liquid or metallic mercury, that is quicksilver,

³⁵ BN-M, f. 356b.

³⁶ BN-M, f. 346a.

has very little toxic effect on humans, while many mercury compounds, such as cinnabar, may cause fatal illnesses.³⁷

Babur reports that he decided, probably wisely given current medical knowledge, that piety might cure him, and so began to versify a treatise of his deceased Naqshbandi *pīf* Khwajah Ahrar, noting that he wrote in verse to make it easier to remember.³⁸ After composing ten lines of Ahrar's work, the *Risala-i Validrya* each day but one, Babur began to improve after only six days.³⁹ He took this to be proof of Ahrar's intercession—now for his health, earlier before Samarqand—for he recalls that when he fell ill the previous year he was sick for thirty to forty days. Lines from the preface he wrote to accompany his versification echo his prose narrative in its allusion to his problematic health and growing concern for union with god. Here he invokes Muhammad for the first time in his writings.

یا حبیب عربی قرشی
غم و دردینک منگا سادی و خوشی
.....
مین بس کا* J J I سروید* J
J U UJJ J J-e J 4 L-hj q J_ox.
مین کمراه قه کورسات بیر یول
مین مقصود قه بیتکور گای اول

³⁷ See Leonard J. Goldwater, *Mercury, A History of QuickSilver* (Baltimore, Md., York Press, 1972). Citing data from N.Y. in 1955 the author says that simply ingesting mercury is generally harmless, as it quickly passes through the body without being absorbed. However, some compounds of mercury are deadly. See Chapter 11, "Toxicology." Goldwater's findings are supported by I. M. Trakhtenberg in his work *Chronic Effects of Mercury on Organisms* (Washington, D.C.: U. S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare, 1974), 38 & 40. Mercury and the mercury compound cinnabar were associated with longevity by Taoists and perhaps others in Han China and later. See Joseph Needham, Ho-Ping-Yu and La Gwei-Djen, *Science and Civilization in China* 5, pt. 3, "Chemistry and Chemical Technology," (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1976), 11 & 40. Cinnabar was still being used in India in relatively recent times. *Ibid.*, 11, n. a. Tantric Hindus also had an interest in mercury. Joseph Needham and La Gwei-Djen, *Ibid.*, 5, pt. 5, (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1983), 277.

³⁸ Translated by A. J. E. Bodrogligeti as, "Babur Shah's Chaghatay Version of the *Risala-i Validya*." *A Central Asian Turkic Treatise on How to Emulate the Prophet Muhammad*, *Ural-Altaische Jahrbücher* vol. 54 (1984), 4.

³⁹ BN-M, f. 346b.

قويمه بابرنی بو حرمان بیرله

چاره قیل دردیغه درمان بیرله
*

Oh beloved [Muhammad] of the Arabian Quraish
Your grief and suffering are my happiness and joy.

I am unwell, and the road is very distant.
Life is very short, and the road is longer.
This road's map is unknown to me.
What should bring me to the goal?
Not leaving Babur in this despair
Cure his ills with Thy means.⁴⁰

Still, by the time he wrote to Humayun Babur had recovered, and in early December he fully resumed his activities.

Whatever Babur felt about the possibility of retaking Mawaran-nahr, his own growing sense of himself as an Indian, or Indo Afghan ruler, is reinforced by other aspects of his narrative for this three month period. In mid-December "it was settled" that two of his men were to measure the distance from Agra to Kabul. At intervals of about eighteen miles they were to build distance marking towers and at thirty-six-mile intervals they were to establish relay stations where six post-horses were to be kept ready. Further, it was "ordered" that this system was to be paid for from royal revenues, when the horses were kept on *khalisah* or crown lands, or in other cases by local *begsin* whose *parganah* or district the horses were stabled.⁴¹ Babur concludes this discussion by quoting from his 1521 verse text on Islamic law, the *Mubaiyin* in which he identifies terms for various distances and describes how they are subdivided. His inclusion of Indian terminology in this part of the text is another indication of the degree to which he had turned toward Indian affairs in the early 1520's. His careful description of these terms also offers yet another illustration of his frequently expressed interest in quantification and in this case also, his knowledge of and interest in Indian measures. It also helps to remind readers of Babur's taste for systemization, which in Ti-

⁴⁰ Yücel no. 2 pp. 97-98 and *Rampur Diwan*, Plate 2a.

⁴¹ BN-M, f. 351a.

murid-Mughul historiography is more often associated with his grandson, Akbar.

As a preface to quoting his own verse Babur notes that the Indian measure *kuruh* was to be taken as equal to the Indo-European term *mil* or mile, which, he writes, was the equivalent of 4000 paces. Written in Turk! verse and in verse in which the final word of each hemistich or half-line rhymed, undoubtedly made it easier to remember. The first two hemistichs, for example, end, respectively in “mil” (mile) and “bil” (know), the second in *qadam* and *tutam* and the third in *ilik* and *bilik*. Babur does not say if he quoted this passage at his men. However, if they were illiterate such easily remembered instructions would have been another practical use for poetry.

تورت مینک دور قدم بیلہ میل بیر کروہ آنی ہند ایللی دیر بیل
دیدیلار بیر یاریم قاری بیر قدم ہر قاری بیل کہ باری دور آلتی توتام
ہر توتام تورت ایللیک ینہ ہر ایللیک * آلتی جو عرض بولدی بیل بو بیللیک

Four thousand paces equals a mile

Know this is what Indians call a *kuruh*.

They say one pace equals one and a half *qari*

Know that each *qari* in turn equals six *tutam* (handwidths)

Each *tutam* equals four *ilik* (finger widths) and further

Know this, each *ilik* equals the space of six grains of barley.⁴²

His agents, Babur writes, were to make measuring cords of forty *qari* or approximately 120 feet to establish the distance markers and post-horse stations between Agra and Kabul.⁴³

This period, and really Babur's entire remarkable career was climaxed on the 19th of December when he held a “feast” in Agra that ritually marked the foundation of the Timurid-Mughul, South Asian empire. While elements of the ceremonies he describes here such as the exchange of gifts and robing of the elite guests were common features of Timurid court etiquette, what Babur describes was not merely a feast, or even one of his favorite *suhbatarayaliq*

⁴² BN-M, f. 351b. *Kuruh* is also an Iranian term.

⁴³ The *kuruh* also known as *kos* and later distance markers are discussed by Jean Delouche, *Recherches Sur Les Routes de L'Inde Au Temps des Mogols* (Paris: Ecole Française D'Extreme-Orient, 1968), LXVII. See “Variations de la valeur de kos,” 77-81 and Planche XI “Types de kos minar.”

gatherings, but a royal or imperial celebration. The feast's significance was signaled by the attendance of Iranian, Uzbek and "Hindu" or Rajput ambassadors. Beyond these emissaries there were Timurids, Ghaghatay Mongols, Naqshbandi *shaykhs*, Samarqand *'ulam*, his own retainers and those of his children, fellow exiles from Andijan, villagers from Sukh and Hushyar near Isfarah, who had sheltered Babur during the winter 1503-04 before he fled south through Afghanistan, and even Afghan villagers who assisted Babur during that flight to Kabul. Even these villagers were given or, more precisely, *in dm buldi* "had [royally] conferred" on them, *chakmanlar* jackets or tunics, *qumash khilatlar*, silk robes, textiles, gold and silver [coins] and other unspecified "articles."⁴⁴

Babur's account of the seating of the principal guests illustrates the status hierarchy of the gathering, and Babur is as careful to describe these seating arrangements as he is when depicting his visit to Harat more than twenty years earlier. In later Timurid-Mughul history such scenes were the frequent subjects of court artists whose placement of court figures mirrored their imperial status. "I sat," writes Babur, "on the north side of a newly built, grass-covered octagonal pavilion.

Five or six *qaristo* to my right side sat Tukhtah Bughah Sultan [Chaghatay Mongol, son of Kichik Khan], 'Askari [Babur's third son, b. 1517], the descendants of his Eminence the Khwajah [Ubaydullah Ahrar Naqshbandi] Khwajah 'Abd al-Shahid and Khwajah Kalan, Khwajah Chishti [presumably a Chishti sufi], Khallfah [Nizam al-Din 'Ali Barias, Babur's brother-in-law], and the Khwajah's dependents from Samarqand—*hdfizes* [Quran reciters] and *mullds*. Five or six *qaristo* to my left side sat Muhammad Zaman Mirza [Timurid, last surviving male heir of Sultan Husayn Bayqara], Tang Atmish Sultan [Uzbek, but possibly Muhammad Zaman's relation], Sayyid Rafi' [?] and Sayyid Rumi [?], Shaykh Abu al-Fath [emissary from Bengal] Shaykh Jamali [?], Shaykh Shihab al-Din 'Arab [?] and Sayyid Dakni [Shirazi, landscape architect].⁴⁵

The *Qizilbdsh* or Iranian ambassadors sat "seventy or eighty *qaris* off to the right" with one of Babur's begs and companions, Yunas 'Ali, the son of Husayn Bayqara's Lord of the Gate. The Uzbek ambassadors were similarly seated to the left, accompanied by Babur's longtime drinking companion and fellow writer of off-color verse, Mulla Abdullah Kitabdar.

⁴⁴ BN-M, fs. 352a-353a.

⁴⁵ BN-M, fs. 351b-352a.

These carefully orchestrated seating arrangements partly echoed Babur's battle orders, with the most important and/or senior Timurids and Chingizids to his immediate right and left. Babur's two oldest sons, Humayun and Kamran were in Afghanistan, so only his eleven year old son 'Askari sat to his right once removed. Perhaps because of Askari's age the place of greatest honor immediately to Babur's right was occupied by Babur's maternal cousin, the son of Kichik Khan. Then on the left sat first the last Bayqara Timurid, Muhammad Zaman Mirza and an Uzbek and probably part Timurid on his mother's side, Tang Atmish Sultan. Next in precedence on the right were spiritual aristocrats, the grandson and nephew of Khwajah Yahya, the second son of Babur's Naqshbandi patron saint, Khwajah Ubaydullah Ahrar. Babur's exceptionally respectful attitude toward the Ahraris is made even more clear when in January another Ahrar Naqshbandi arrived, Khwajah Abd al-Haqq, and Babur honored him with a visit, describing it as *maldzamat qildim*, "I paid my respects."⁴⁶ As these seating arrangements demonstrate, at this moment Babur's state was politically and religiously at least, still a Central Asian Timurid empire.

In some other superficial respects Babur's court had begun to take on the trappings of a hybrid Indo-Muslim state, outwardly marked on this occasion by staged camel and elephant fights and the performance of Indian acrobats. After the acrobats came *pdarldr*, Indian dancing girls, and about the time of the evening prayer many gold, silver and copper coins were scattered, evidently to the assembled crowd, and it precipitated what Babur describes as "clamor and pushing."

Babur describes one last event in which he pointedly reminds his readers of his now unchallenged sovereign status, the successful realization, finally, of his *mulkgzrliq* ambition. He remarks that "Between evening and bedtime prayers I brought five or six *makhsuslar*, special or distinguished people, to sit in my presence."⁴⁷ Prior to this time Babur, by his own testimony, was acutely sensitive to any acts that implicitly or explicitly challenged his legitimacy, his Timurid status. These ranged from his impotent anger in

⁴⁶ BN-M, f. 357a.

⁴⁷ BN-M, f. 353b.

Ferghanah, when his erstwhile allies began acting like royalty, to the Kabul period when an impudent *rnardaL* arrogantly placed his seal in the center of a letter. The moment in Kabul in 1519 when he urged one of his men to act less formally to allow for a gayer “gathering” offers a flash of insight into his normal practice of maintaining a social distance from his men even while he was in such close physical contact as he fought, drank and wrote poetry. Perhaps even in Kabul the close-knit camaraderie of earlier *qazaqtıq* days had already begun to give way to greater “splendid” royal isolation, especially after he proclaimed himself *padshah* in 1506, although this cannot be inferred from the *Vaqai*. Whatever had been his practice before Panipat, his summoning of favored men into his “presence” in December 1528 and the vocabulary he uses to describe this audience in his memoirs, reveal the incipient and probably inevitable evolution of protocol from the camaraderie of a snow-bound cave on the march back to Kabul in December-January 1506-07, to the increasingly rigid court ceremonial of his Timurid-Mughul descendants.

Perhaps it was sometime in December 1528 that Babur wrote the *rubai* in which he also celebrated the north Indian winter season, one of the most delightful times of the year in the subcontinent.

jjj i j J ¼ a J Loy cAd²

لكن بوشتا ھندته كوب دلکش دور

ھنكام نشاط و باد ھ بى غش دور

مى بولاسه معجون داغى بولسا خوش دور

*

Winter, although a time of the brazier and the fire,

Yet this winter in India is very amiable.

A season of pleasure and pure wine.

If wine is not permissible, yet majun is also fine.⁴⁸

Anyone who has wintered in north India and awakened to the smell of wood smoke in the crisp, sunny mornings will understand Babur’s delight, a feeling that is evoked in the later pages of Rudyard Kipling’s charming romance, *William the Conqueror*, as the

⁴⁸ Yücel no. 335, p. 264 no. 195 and Koprulii no. 197, p. 327.

hero and heroine return from duty in the humid Indian south to the crisp winter air of the Panjab. "Morning brought the penetrating chill of the Northern December, the layers of wood-smoke, the dusty grey-blue of the tamarisks, the domes of ruined tombs, and all the smell of the white northern plains."⁴⁹

Still this is one of the few poems that Babur included in the *Rampur Diwan* in which Babur celebrates India. It is one of the ironies of this period in Babur's life that just after he presided over his imperial celebration, he completed the *Diwan* whose poems collectively offer a bleak personal counterpoint to his political triumph. Collectively these verses convey shades of alienation, isolation and depression. In the first *rubai* listed just after proclaiming that he had become a *ghazv* Babur writes, thinking perhaps both of Khwajah Kalan's departure and his tenuous political situation in 1527:

اندين برى كيم؟ jkh ز دياريم يوقتور
 بر بحظه و بر نفس قراريم يوقتور
 كيلديم بو سارى اوز اختياريم بيرله
 بارماقته وليك اختياريم يوقتور

Since I have neither friends nor districts,
 I have not one moment of repose.
 It was my choice to come here,
 Yet I am not able to go away.⁵⁰

The spirit of this *rubai* is magnified in the only *ghazal* Babur includes in the *Diwan*, and which, as a result, cannot be precisely dated. Yet it so nearly echoes the just-quoted *rubai* that it could have been written around the same time—or anytime between 1527 and 1528. This is another occasional poem in which he openly plays on the idea of *ghurbat*, the term used in his 1502 *rubai* recited in Tashkent and so often employed in verse to describe separation from the beloved. Here he reflects on his sense of *ghurbat*, separation or exile from friends—probably Khwajah Kalan and others in Kabul. Babur begins the *ghazal* by invoking both *ghurbat*

⁴⁹ Rudyard Kipling, "William the Conqueror," *In the Vernacular: the English In India* Randall Jarrell ed. (New York, N.Y.: Anchor Books, 1963), 135.

⁵⁰ Yucel no. 319, p. 260 and Kopulii no. 181, p. 326.

and the nearly synonymous *hajr* or *hajran*, separation or abandoning friends and country. The first line probably refers to the fasting of Ramadan.

غربت ته *JJ & هجری مینی پیر *f?b: ۱۱H
 هجران بيله غربت منکا تاثیر قلیب تور *

In exile this month of abstinence ages me,
 Separated from friends exile has affected me.

Then after lines in which he rues his fate, and says he does not know whether he will remain on “that” or “this side,” apparently referring to Kabul or Ferghanah versus India, Babur then poignantly speaks about his love-hate feelings for India in the typical lyrical vocabulary of the *ghazal*, with the India the “friend” of the final line.

بو هند ییری حاصلی دین کوب کونکل آلدیم
 نی سود که بو ییر مینی دلکیر قلیب تور
 <<دین بو a-jz قالدی ییراق I L>_z
 معذور توت ای L z <E 15صیر قلیب تور *

I deeply desired the riches of this Indian land.
 What is the profit since this land enslaves me.
 Left so far from you, Babur has not perished,
 Excuse me my friend for this my insufficiency.⁵¹

Evidently reinforcing his sense of social isolation was his regret at renouncing drink, which of course he associated with the *suhbat ve subatardyalig* gatherings during the old days in Kabul. Alluding to the oath that he had taken to ensure a victory at Kanwah he writes in a poem placed in the *Diwan* shortly after the quatrain just quoted above:

می ترکنی قیلغالی ایرور مین غم لیق
 بار تیره کونکولکا هر زمان درهم لیق

⁵¹ Stebleva, no. 119, p. 327, Yucel no. 124, p. 190, and see also Azimdzhanova, 49-50.

غم بیرله فسرده لیق هلاک ای ی مینی
می بیرله ایمیش شادلیق و خرم لیق
*

I am grief-stricken at abandoning wine.
Darkening my heart, I am always in a confused state.
Frozen in grief I am lost.
With wine I am cheerful and smiling.⁵²

After expressing these sentiments Babur wrote a second quatrain expressing his *pirishan* or agitated state after giving up wine, then openly concluding in the fourth and final line, "I have renounced wine and now regret it!"⁵³ The likely dating of these poems to 1527—and their association with his old social life—is suggested both by their placement in the *Rampur Diwan* and because he quotes this latter *rubai* in a letter he wrote to Khwajah Kalan in Kabul in February 1529, in which he says that two years earlier his craving for wine was so great he was on the verge of tears. In this letter, though, he tells his old friend that he no longer craved wine, and that Khwajah Kalan should also take the oath of temperance.

Shortly after this his mood seems to become even darker, evidently reflecting the sickness, loneliness and regret he alludes to in less artful and affecting words in the *Vaqai*. Much more than the memoirs these poems powerfully convey feelings of exhaustion, despair and perhaps even the paranoia of old age. One of these *rubai*, which based upon its placement in the *Diwan*, was written presumably sometime in 1528, is perhaps the darkest of the entire collection.

نی یار وفا قیلغوسی آخر نی حریف
نی صیف و شتا قایغوسی باقی نی حریف
یوز حیف که ضایع اوتادور عمر عزیز
افسوس که باطل بارادور وقت شریف
*

⁵² Yiicel no. 322, p. 261 and Koprulii no. 184, p. 326.

⁵³ Yiicel no. 323, p. 261 and Koprulii no. 185, p. 326. Babur quotes the second of these in the *Vaqd'i* in his narrative for February 1529 when discussing the problem of temperance. Yet he obviously wrote it earlier, as it is included in the *Rampur Diwan*.

Finally neither friends nor companions will be faithful.
 Neither summer and winter nor companions will remain.
 A hundred pities that precious life passes away.
 O, alas, that this celebrated time is futile.⁵⁴

The Last Campaign

Less than two weeks after completing and dating the *Rampur Diwan*, Babur finally decided to ride west in search of lucrative but unnamed treasures he desperately needed to replenish his funds. The largess that he had distributed during his imperial celebration on December 19th must have made his fiscal situation even more desperate than it had been in late October. He felt he couldn't attack Bengal, the only substantial treasury in the east, because its Muslim ruler, Nusrat Shah, had declared his loyalty. In any case "some places on the western side were both close and had treasures," an observation then repeated in an unattributed Turki verse.

JjJk JjJ كرىراقتور cSjLoxJij-JL JjJG Jj-j j_SLE j-alj مالى
 Abundant wealth, pagan people, a short road. While the eastern
 road is far,
 This is near.⁵⁵

His narrative for this period seems to reflect the uncertainty he and his men felt. On the one hand he had already sent his son Askari off with substantial forces to the east on December 12th, saying he would follow if necessary.⁵⁶ Three weeks later on January 3rd he and his men somewhat hesitatingly decided to march west, while anxiously waiting for intelligence and keeping open the option to reverse course.⁵⁷

As was so often the case, though, the campaign began in a leisurely fashion. Babur crossed the Jumna on the 8th and arrived in Dulpur a short time later. Camping in the *Bagh-i Nilufar* or Water-Lily Garden, he typically occupied himself again by further

⁵⁴ Yücel no. 330, p. 263 and Kopriilu no. 192, p. 327.

⁵⁵ BN-M, f. 355a.. As Babur does not claim these verses and because they do not appear in his *Diwan* they were presumably written by one of his companions.

⁵⁶ BN-M, fs. 350a-b.

⁵⁷ BN-M, f. 355a

working to recreate his Central Asian or Afghan environment. Assigning places around the garden for his *begs* and *ichkhis* to construct gardens and pavilions for themselves, Babur ordered a *hammam* constructed with a ten-by-ten pool inside. This idyll was interrupted just at that moment when news arrived that Iskandar Ludi's son and Ibrahim Ludi's brother, Mahmud, had taken Bihar, by which he evidently meant the wealthy Gangetic province with Patna as its capital.⁵⁸ The sudden and obviously unanticipated resurgence of a seemingly unified Afghan force prompted Babur to abandon his improvements at Dulpur and return immediately to Agra.

On January 21st he and his *begs* decided to march southeast down the Ganges and they crossed the Jumna the same day, camping first in the *Bagh-i Earafshar* the "Gold-Scattering Garden," possibly named after the Zarafshan river that flows by Samarqand. The army moved slowly east for two and a half weeks while Babur conducted unfinished business. The Bengali ambassador from the province's Muslim ruler, Nusrat Shah, was received—first according to Hindustan custom, then kneeling three times in Timurid fashion. The ambassador's arrival was probably connected with the many Afghans who had fled east into his kingdom, an issue that preoccupied Babur as the campaign continued. Uzbek ambassadors who had attended the celebration in December were then formally dismissed. However, according to his account, Babur gave most of his attention to relations with his sons and relatives in Kabul.

On February 1st he wrote letters to accompany gifts sent to Kamran and Humayun—for Kamran's marriage and the birth of Humayun's son. Kamran was married to a daughter of the important but non-Chingizid Mongol, Sultan 'Ali Begchik, one of the clan who had both served Babur at Qandahar and betrayed him at Hisar.⁵⁹ Babur also included letters of the alphabet of his new "Baburi" script in a message to his young son Hind-al in Kabul, who also received copies of Babur's poems.⁶⁰ Humayun also re-

⁵⁸ BN-M, fs. 356a-b. There was a town of this name also, located about 40 miles southeast of Patna. See Irfan Habib, *An Atlas of the Mughal Empire*, map 10a.

⁵⁹ BN-M, f. 346a. The Begchik was one of the Mongol tribes listed by Haydar Mirza.

⁶⁰ For this script, often believed to be lost, see Ahmad Gulchin-i Ma'am, "Mushaf-i Baburi," *Namah-yi Astad-i Quds* Vol. 20 (1344/1965), 60-64 and for a

ceived copies of Babur's Indian poems, as did Kamran and Khwajah Kalan. He also sent a copy of the Turki translation of Khwajah Ahrar's he had versified to all three sons and his old friend, Khwajah Kalan. In other letters addressed to Humayun and Kamran and sent on February 9th, he proclaimed once again that Kabul was to be *khalisah* land and repeated his earlier order for his wives and females relatives to come to India. A day later he also wrote a long letter to Khwajah Kalan, which he copied into his narrative because, as he says, "it makes some circumstances known."

Babur's letter to Khwajah Kalan is one of only three complete letters he includes in the *Vaqai*, and it is the last extended statement of his personal feelings and political concerns. Babur himself implies he included the letter in the text just for this reason, and he probably wrote this section of his memoirs in the 1530 monsoon season, when he apparently fell ill for the last time, leading to his eventual death in December 1530. It is a remarkable document in which he mixes the personal and the political, openly discussing his emotions but also demonstrating a preoccupation with the minutiae of rule. The letter, which typically discusses garden construction, also includes both poetry and an off-color joke. It encompasses the man in so many ways it is worth honoring Babur's own intent and quoting it in full.

Saying salam to Khwajah Kalan, the message is this. Shams al-Dm Muhammad [the messenger from Kabul] has reached Etawah [and] affairs have become known. Our desire to go to those places is immense and boundless. Hindustan affairs are coming to some kind of resolution [and] with God Most High, the hope is such that with God's grace things will soon be arranged. After managing this work if God wills, I shall set out immediately. How can a person forget the pleasures of those lands? Especially for such a one who has become repentant and abstinent [from drinking wine], how can [such] a person blot from the mind such legally sanctioned pleasure as melons and grapes. In time a melon was brought. Gutting [and] eating [it] had a strange effect; I was consumed with tears.⁶¹

discussion of the Quran Babur wrote in this script see Ali Alparslan, "Babur'un icad ettigi // Babur! yazisi// ve onunla yazilmiř olan Kur'an," *Türkiyat Mecmuası*, 18 (1976), 161-8. I am indebted to Professor E.J. Mano of Kyoto University for the former reference.

⁶¹ Paragraphs have been imposed on the text for ease of reading.

Kabul's chaotic affairs have been written of [to me]. On this account [after] thinking it was decided that if there were seven or eight governors in one province how could [things] be contained and controlled. Given this situation I summoned my elder sister and wives to Hindustan. I made all Kabul province and its villages *khdlisah* [crown land]. I also wrote to Humayun and Kamran in this sense. A trust worthy person must take these letters to the *mirzds* [Humayun and Kamran]. I also previously wrote in exactly this sense and sent [letters] to the *mirzds*. Perhaps it is already known. Now there remains no word or excuse about the safety and prosperity of the province. After this if the fortifications are not strong and the people are not prosperous or if there are no provisions or the treasury is not full, it will be charged to the Pillar of the State's ineffectiveness [to Khwajah Kalan].

Some necessary things will now be specified. In some cases an order has already gone out. One of these is you must add to the treasury. The necessary things are these: repair of fortifications, provisions, lodging and stipends for arriving and departing ambassadors. You must spend money legally taken from revenue for the congregational mosque building.⁶² Then, repairs to the caravanserai and the *hamdm*, completion of the half-finished, baked-brick building done by Master Hasan ⁶¹A1T in the *ark* [citadel]- after consulting about this building with Master Sultan Muhammad you must order a suitable design. If the former plan made by Master Hasan ⁶¹A1I still exists you must complete it exactly in that manner. If not after consultation you must erect a nicely designed building so that its floor is level with the floor of the *dlwankhanah* [audience hall].

Then, the Khurd Kabul dam, which is to be built on the Butkhak river where the gorge opens out toward Khurd Kabul. Then, repair of the Ghazni dam. Then the *Bagh-i Khidbdn* [the Avenue of Trees Garden] and the avenue, for which there is too little water, it is necessary to buy and divert a one-mill stream. Then, on the south west side of Khwajah-Bastah I diverted the Tutamdarah stream atop a small rise, constructed a pool and planted saplings. As it stood opposite the ford and had a nice view it was called the *Nazargdh* [the scenic view]. Here also it is necessary to plant good saplings, well-planned lawns, [and] alongside the lawns, beautiful and fragrant flowers and sweet-smelling herbs.

Then, Sayyid Qasim has been assigned to assist. Then, you must not neglect the condition of Master Muhammad Amin Jibachi and the matchlockmen. Then, the minute this letter arrives you must take

⁶² Annette Beveridge in a typically insightful note suggests that this phrase "legally taken from revenue" may refer to the creation of a *waqf* or endowment in which funds are permanently alienated to support a religious or charitable institution.

my elder sister and wives and go as an escort to Nilab [Indus]. It is imperative that in the same week when this letter arrives you all must definitely leave however much they delay, both because the troops that have gone from Hindustan are suffering in unpleasant quarters and also because the province [Kabul] is being ruined.⁶³

Then, it was written in a letter to Abdullah that it had been very unsettling to reside in the vale of repentance. This *rubai* partly explains the difficulty.

می ترکینی قیلغالی پریشان دور مین
 بیلمان قیلور ایشیمنی و حیران دور مین
 ایل بارچه پشیمان بولور و توبه قیلور
 مین توبه قیلیب مین و پشیمان دور مین

Renouncing wine, I am confounded,
 I know not what to do and am bewildered.
 People become penitent and repent,
 I now am penitent for having repented.⁶⁴

A bon mot of Banna"! came to mind. One day in ¹A1TShir Beg's presence Banna"! offers a bon mot. ¹A1I Shlr Beg, who was evidently wearing a jacket with buttons, says [in Persian] "You have made a rare bon mot. I would have given you my jacket but the buttons cannot be ignored and are a hindrance." Says Banna"! [in Persian] How can the buttons be a hindrance; the loops [female's openings] are the hindrance." [in Arabic] "The veracity rests with the story teller." You must excuse so many bon mots. Please God, you must pay no attention!

Then, that *rubai* was recited last year. During the past two years the craving and longing for a *chaghir-majlisi*, a wine-party, has been so intense and overwhelming that from the longing for wine I was brought to the edge of tears. This year, thank god, that inclination has completely left the mind. Probably the good and blessing came

⁶³ Babur must be referring to the family intrigues and political dissension in Kabul that he mentions earlier, as he is so insistent that his female relatives leave Kabul for India. The women included Khanzadah Begim, whom Babur abandoned in Samarkand in 1501, and now the wife of Mahdi Khwajah and Shahrbanu Begim, Khanzadah's half-sister and now wife of Sultan Junayd Barias. There were also family members of Muhammad Sultan Mirza and Muhammad Zaman Mirza. See HN, Introduction, pp. 18-19.

⁶⁴ BN-M, f. 360b, Yucel, no. 323, p. 261 and Koprulii, no. 185, p. 326.

from versifying the translation [of Khwajah Ahrar's *Walidiyah*]. You also must repent. Gatherings and wine are delightful with friends and boon companions.⁶⁵

کیم بیلہ صحبت توتقای سیز
کیم بیلہ چاگیر ایجکایسین *

With whom will you hold *suhbat*? With whom will you drink wine?

*

If your friends and boon companions are Shir Ahmad and Haydar Quit such renunciation should not be difficult. Conveying best wishes, salam.

Written Thursday, the first of the month of Jumada al-akhir
[February 10th]

“At the time,” Babur recalls, “writing these words of advice affected me profoundly.” Presumably he is referring to the nostalgic emotions it aroused, rekindling his desire to return to Kabul, its wonderful climate and the company of Khwajah Kalan and other friends. Quite apart from the effect it had on him the letter is a evocative in so many ways, first of all illustrating the multitudinous preoccupations of a pre-modern ruler. His solution for the stability of Kabul, evidently threatened by squabbling among his sons, and typically detailed instructions about the repairs to buildings and even architectural plans, are useful reminders both of his extraordinary energy but also the stamina and unrelenting attention to detail that a pre-modern empire builder needed for his kingdom to survive and prosper. Even the slightest inattention could quickly lead to the unraveling of the imperfectly subjugated realm. Based on his frequent allusions to letter writing Babur probably dispatched hundreds if not thousands of similar documents as he struggled to maintain control over his relatives and conquests. He also alludes to verbal messages that he had sent with the courier.

On the personal side the poem and commentary have a Tolstoyean quality in their evocation of religious consciousness struggling with sensual nature, documenting the recognizable conflicted emotions of a man trying to adhere to an ethical ideal by reigning in his natural instinct for pleasurable companionship fueled by

⁶⁵ BN-M, fs. 360b-361a.

drugs and alcohol. The two lines of the letter prior to the last verse are an especially delightful demonstration of the contradictions between what Babur writes and what he obviously felt, at once urging his old friend to repent, while then concluding with a nostalgic longing for what he has just said he no longer desired. Then too the entire story about Nava! shows Babur's earlier commitment to renounce ribald poetry was itself more a pious public wish than an actual fact. Actually, it is quite possible that Babur did not really make that commitment until just before he fell critically ill, and then inserted it earlier in the text, a kind of spiritual backing and filling as preparation for the next life. Finally, the entire passage might also be seen as an especially evocative illustration of the tension between the Iranized Turco-Mongol aristocrat and the observant Muslim.

Babur spent the next four months campaigning against the newly allied Afghan coalition led by Sultan Mahmud Ludi.⁶⁶ Having left Etawah on February 9th he marched slowly southeast down the Jumna, rarely covering more than 10 kuruh or about twenty miles a day. Much of the march closely followed the campaign of the previous year, which was also undertaken at almost exactly this time of year.⁶⁷ Now accompanying him were two of his Ghaghatay Chingizid cousins, Aisan Temur Sultan as well as his brother Tukhtah Bughah Sultan. Muhammad Zaman Mirza was also a member of the expedition, adding to its Timurid-Chingizid character. By February 26th the army reached the Ganges at Karrah district, just one or two marches from the confluence of the Jumna and Ganges at Allahabad. Forces nominally led by his son Askari joined him there on the opposite or northeastern bank of the river. While camped here Babur received news that a lac or "100,000 Afghans" had joined Sultan Mahmud Ludi, including such men as Shir Khan Suri, whom Babur had enrolled in his service less than a year earlier. This latter Afghan was eventually to defeat and displace Humayun in 1539 and 1540. However, these figures are as wildly exaggerated as other such reports, as Babur himself demonstrates later in his narrative, for as his forces moved further

⁶⁶ Babur specifically writes later that the only purpose of the campaign was to attack "rebel" Afghans. BN-M, f. 375b.

⁶⁷ The narrative for 1528 breaks off in early April and doesn't resume until September, 1528.

southeast toward Allahabad in early March Sultan Mahmud Ludi's troops abandoned recently captured Banaras and fled further east. Little more than a month later Sultan Mahmud is described as having merely two thousand men.⁶⁸

By late March, as they moved further southeast towards Bihar, news arrived that his female relatives had Anally left Kabul; as he learned later they had left on January 21st, the same day he had marched east from Agra.⁶⁹ A few days later Babur heard that Mahmud Khan was now camped on the border of Bihar at the Son river, and the army pressed on to the southeast, reaching Ghazipur by 30 March. At Ghazipur Babur received homage of one Afghan *amir* and letters from several others. As Babur was trying to win over individual Afghan *amirs* he was also trying to force Nusrat Shah of Bengal to join with him in opposing Sultan Mahmud, or at least to stand aside while Babur pursued his Afghan enemies. The Bengalis were threatened with unstated but evil consequences if they stood in the way of Babur's force.⁷⁰ Nonetheless, the subsequent and only major battle that Babur's men fought during this campaign was against Bengali forces blocking their way just upstream from Patna at the confluence of the Saru and Ganges rivers.

On April 28th Babur fortified the high ground commanding the confluence of the rivers with his mortar and matchlockmen and then set about crossing the Ganges to engage the Bengali forces on the southeast side. Over the course of the next seven days various units of Babur's force crossed by boats or by fords or simply swam their horses across, while Bengalis tried to cross to attack Babur's army. By May 5th Babur's forces had defeated the Bengali army without, it seems from his narrative, a very large loss of life on either side. His Chaghatay cousins, or as he calls them "the Sultans," acted with conspicuous bravery and were subsequently rewarded with substantial land assignments—the inconspicuous Indian denouement of the Chaghatay Mongol state. The battle, or really a series of small if deadly skirmishes, bore little resemblance to the epic clashes at Panipat and Kanwah, but for the moment at least it removed any serious threat on Babur's eastern borderlands.

Babur achieved two specific goals with this victory—prefaced by

⁶⁸ BN-M, f. 367a.

⁶⁹ BN-M, f. 380b.

⁷⁰ BN-M, fs. 368b-369a.

his earlier threats against Nusrat Shah in Bengal. First, by the middle of May a significant number of Afghan *amirs* pledged their loyalty and more soon followed. A few who had done so earlier in letters Babur received at Ghazipur on March 31st, now came in person.⁷¹ Some of these men had drifted into and out of cooperation with Babur since he had taken Lahore in January 1524.⁷² Many of them were Luhamis or Nuhamis, whom Babur sometimes distinguishes from Afghans, perhaps because they were well known merchants and long-distance traders.⁷³ By May 16th an estimated 7-8000 had joined Babur *bilah umidvarliq*, "with expectations," as he candidly describes their motives.⁷⁴ Some leaders were given substantial cash or land grants in yet another attempt to attach them to the Timurid-Mughul state. Then three days later on May 19th Babur's emissary to Nusrat Shah returned and reported that the Bengali ruler had acceded to his demands. Babur then observes that:

"Because this *yurush* was done to repel rebellious Afghans [and because] some of these rebels had taken themselves off and some accepted service [and because] the rest who remained were in service with the Bengali, who had received them [and because] the monsoon was imminent, we too therefore wrote and dispatched peaceful words about the previously stated conditions."⁷⁵

Two days later other Afghan *amirs* submitted to Babur leaving only a few major figures still defiant. By Monday May 23rd Babur's mind was, he writes, "at ease concerning Bihar and Bengal."⁷⁶ In fact, as Babur himself undoubtedly knew, he had taken only the first step in extending his influence in the region, an influence that at this time had no lasting basis apart from military campaigns. It was not until Akbar's reign that Timurid-Mughul authority was firmly imposed in the eastern Ganges valley.

Babur was still concerned with one other Afghan, Shaykh Bayizid Farmuli, whom he had been trying to capture or defeat the previous year. However, as he prepared to turn his army back

⁷¹ BN-M, fs. 365a-b.

⁷² See fs. 255b-257b where Babur discusses Alam Khan's abortive siege of Sultan Ibrahim Lodi in Delhi in 931 a.h./1524-25.

⁷³ See BN-M, f. 375b where Babur speaks of "Nuhamis and Afghans."

⁷⁴ Ibid., f. 375b.

⁷⁵ BN-M, fs. 375b-376a.

⁷⁶ BN-M, f. 376a.

towards Oudh where Bayizid was known to be camping, the first monsoon storm hit, making it clear that the campaign season was indeed nearly over. His description of the monsoon's sudden arrival evokes a powerful memory and even nostalgia in those who have experienced the dramatic onslaught of a monsoon storm. Often preceded by a sunny, partly cloudy afternoon, then immediately prefaced by an abrupt silence, the winds suddenly pick up and as Babur writes with accurate and evocative language describing the onset of the storm:

That evening after the *taramh* [prayer] it was the fifth *gan* of the first watch when the monsoon clouds boiled up. Within an instant an intense storm began. A powerful wind arose so that all but a few tents were flattened. I was inside the royal tent writing. There was no chance to gather papers and sections. The tent and its portico fell right on my head. The tent's ventilation flap was shredded. God [Tengri] intervened; there was no injury. Book and sections were completely soaked and collected only with difficulty. Placing [them] on a woolen coverlet we piled kilims on top. Two *gam* later it quieted down. Erecting the bedding tent, a candle was lit. Starting a fire after much difficulty we kept busy until dawn drying possessions and sections *\uruq ve ajza* ⁿ

The "papers," sections and book Babur mentions quite likely included drafts of his own memoirs, but also letters he was constantly sending throughout his expanding dominions. While some of the missing sections of his memoirs may be due to this storm or similar unrecorded events, it is far more likely they were lost when his son Humayun fled resurgent Afghan forces in India in 1540.

During the next month Babur was in fact preoccupied with running Shaykh Bayizid and his companion, Biban, to ground. However, the details of this ultimately unsuccessful pursuit are less significant in the long term than the likelihood that the commander who killed several of Shaykh Bayizid's men and came closest to capturing him was the individual who erected the now infamous "Baburi *masjid*" at in Oudh or Ayodhya. This man, Baqi Beg Shighavul, a Turco-Mongol from Tashkent, had been in Babur's service for some time. Babur had previously sent him on a mission to Balkh, but in 1529 he commanded forces in and around Lucknow and had been assigned lands there as well. Babur released

⁷⁷ BN-M, f. 376b.

in public as a *qalandar*, that is as an ascetic, wandering sufi may be only a typical royal conceit, playing on the hoary theme of the worldly shah as spiritual beggar—and it is very likely he knew of and approved this inscription. Nonetheless, it reminds readers of the *Vaqai* that while Babur repeatedly discusses gardens he has visited or constructed he never mentions commissioning mosques or any other religious architecture.

In both the Afghan and Indian sections he publicizes piety only in association with sufis. In the Afghan narrative he first alludes to his reverence for sufis when describes how he protected an unidentified sufi shrine at the mouth of the Sakhi Sarwar pass in March 1505. Then again in the course of describing his seemingly endless series of “gatherings” in 1519 he mentions circumambulating the tomb of one Khwajah Khwand Said, almost certainly a sufi, and very probably a Naqshbandi, in an area where Khwajah Ahrar and his descendants held considerable lands and buildings as *waqf* endowments.⁸¹ Immediately after Panipat he also circumambulated the Chishti shrine in Delhi. Earlier in this campaign of 1529 he took the time to visit the shrine of another Chishti *plf*, Shaykh Yahya located at Manir, near the confluence of the Son, Ganges and Saru Rivers, just upriver from Patna. Here also he reports *tawdf* or circumambulating the shrine of this man whose son, Shaykh Sharaf al-Dm (d.1380/81), wrote religious works later popular with Babur’s grandson Akbar.⁸² Babur’s care in describing his reverence for sufi shrines in India reprise his earlier expressions of respect and sometimes intensely felt spiritual connection with the deceased Naqshbandi *plf* the Timurid “patron saint,” Khwajah ‘Ubaydullah Ahrar. This respect, as has been mentioned, was so great as to elevate Khwajah Ahrar’s descendants to the status of an aristocratic religious lineage suitable for intermarriage with the Timurid house in India.

⁸⁰ Cited in BN-B, Appendix U.

⁸¹ BN-M, f. 241 and Dale and Payind, “The Ahrar! Waqf in Kabul in the year 1546 and the Mughul Naqshbandiyyah” 218-33.

⁸² AN, III, 132-33. Akbar sent money to this shrine while campaigning in precisely the area Babur traversed in 1529. It is Annette Beveridge who first called attention to this connection in one of her many informative notes. BN-B, p. 666, n. 3.

The "Conspicuous Conjunction"

By late June the monsoons had fully set in and Babur, having failed to capture or kill Shaykh Bayizid, ordered a return to Agra. "As the monsoons had arrived and since after five to six months campaigning the troops, horses and pack animals were worn out," Babur and an unspecified number of his men set off for the capital. Riding ahead of his baggage and guns, Babur covered about thirty-two miles on Tuesday evening, June 21st. Then between Wednesday morning and Thursday evening when he and his men dismounted in the *Hasht Bihisht* or Eight Paradises garden in Agra, they covered about 125 more miles. Moving this fast in the monsoons is impressive enough, but it also shows that however many illnesses Babur may have suffered in India in the past few years in June 1529 he was not worn out yet but still a healthy, campaign-hardened man.⁸³ He may have rushed back so that he could welcome his wife Mahim Begim, Humayun's mother, and other female relatives, who finally arrived there two days after him around midnight Saturday, June 25th.

Babur repeatedly records how deferentially he treated his female relatives, going to visit them rather than expecting them to pay court to him. He showed such respect to only two other groups, sufis, especially Ahrari Naqshbandis and Chishtis, and to Timurids and Chingizids. He mentions visiting some of his aunts on Friday, the day after he returned from this campaign. Many other of his female relatives had come earlier, others arrived in Agra slightly later, eventually a total of ninety-six according to his daughter Gulbadan, who gives their names in the course of describing a feast held after Babur's death.⁸⁴ Surprisingly, though, here he only notes the arrival of the women from Kabul the following day, and then records no events at all for the next ten days. During at least some of those days however, he spent time greeting and visiting his wife and other newly arrived relations, as his Gulbadan records in her memoirs, written at the request of Babur's grandson, Akbar, more than fifty years later.

⁸³ See BN-B, p. 686 n. 1 where Beveridge estimates the distance and makes the point about Babur's health.

⁸⁴ HN, fs. 11a & 25b.

Gulbadan, a young girl of five or six at this time, probably remembered some of these events herself, particularly meeting her father for the first time since she was two years old in Kabul. Yet like the young Haydar Mirza she more likely was reminded or informed about most of them afterwards by others, in her case by the women of the now imperial household. Gulbadan, who writes or dictates a simple but formal Persian or who had written or dictated from her native Turki and had it translated, came with her foster-mother Mahim and ahead of her sisters and the rest of the Kabul entourage. Babur did not learn of their approach until they had reached Koil/ Aligarh, and before he knew it they had pressed on to within a few miles of Agra.

At *namdz-i sham*, the evening prayer, a person came [and] said [to Babur] I passed her excellency two *kuruh*s [four miles] back. His excellency my father could not bear to wait for a horse to be brought but set out on foot and found [her] in near the *khdnah* [tent] of Mahim's *nanachah*. My lady wished to dismount. My father the Padshah did not allow this and walked before my mother until [reaching] her own *khdnah*.⁸⁵

Some three months later by Gulbadan's estimate, the remainder of the women arrived in Agra from Kabul. These included Babur's elder sister, Khanzadah Begim, whom Babur had abandoned in Samarqand to Shibam Khan in 1501. Among them also was Zaynab Sultan Khanim, a daughter of Mahmud Khan Ghaghatay and Muhibb Sultan Khanim, a daughter of Kichik Khan Ghaghatay. Two of Muhibb Sultan Khanim's brothers were already fighting with Babur. While these women had been ordered from Kabul primarily for political reasons, the gathering of all of them together in Agra must still have been an extraordinary emotional climax in Babur's life.

With their arrival he had finally gathered around a large number and perhaps the majority of the Timurids and Chaghatays who had survived the debacle of the Uzbek conquest. If the state reception the previous December symbolized his extraordinary political tri-

⁸⁵ HN, f. 13b-14a. *Nanachchah*, a diminutive form of *nanah*, perhaps here an elderly female relative. There are many aspects of this scene that are not clear from Gulbadan's sketchy Persian narrative. It seems likely from this and the following passage that the women and their escort had camped just north of Agra late Saturday night, perhaps intending to enter the city in a ceremonial procession the next day.

umphs, the arrival of these women was a social event of equal significance. All of his female relatives received houses, lands and gifts "And in the period of four years that he was in Agra," Gulbadan continues, "he went each Friday to visit his paternal aunts," whose own fathers and brothers had died or been killed.⁸⁶ It isn't clear if Gulbadan's comment is meant to reflect Babur's preference for his paternal relatives and long-harbored resentment towards members of his mother's family. Nonetheless, he was now the center of a newly constituted Timurid-Chaghatay galaxy and it is hard to believe no metaphorical poetry was written to celebrate this social constellation. If this had been a more established court with a full retinue of panegyric poets, some writers almost certainly would have manipulated Timur's title, *Sahib-Qirdn* the lord of the fortunate conjunction, that is of Jupiter and Venus, to eulogize the man who had restored Timurid fortunes.⁸⁷ In retrospect, the possible astronomical/astrological metaphors seem staggeringly numerous. Such poems may have been written—and lost.

This 1529 monsoon season in June, July and August was perhaps and for a time the most idyllic period of Babur's life. His family was gathered around him and no major power immediately threatened his Indo-Afghan state, although he mentions some kind of unrest in Lahore in July and an incipient rebellion by Rahimdad, Mahdi Khwajah's nephew, in Gwalior during July and August. Unfortunately his own account of these summer months is quite sketchy, and his memoirs break off for the last time after an entry for September 7th. He was probably writing this section when he fell ill, eventually fatally so, the following year. His narrative is supplemented only in part by Gulbadan's memoir, Haydar Mirza's history and, probably unreliably, by Akbar's court historian Abu'l Fazl more than a half-century later.

⁸⁶ HN, f. 11b. Gulbadan later lists thirty-eight women some of whom she identifies as Mahim Aga's paternal aunts, and some as Gulbadan's paternal aunts. Then she lists other Timurid and ChingTzid women who sat on Humayun's right HN, fs. 24b-25b.

⁸⁷ The title *Sahib-Qiran* first given to Timur referred to the astrological idea that the conjunction of Jupiter and Venus was a fortunate birth date. See T. W. Haig, "Sahib-kiran," EI2, VII, 832-33 and P. Kunitzsh, "al-sa'dan," in *Ibid.*, 716. The idea that certain planetary conjunctions determined turning points in history is particularly attributed to the ninth century a.d. Muslim astrologer Abu Mashar. See Peter Whitfield, *Astrology, A History* (New York, N.Y.: Henry Abrams, 2001), 90. For an example of the Greek and Indian horoscope of Babur's grandson, Akbar, see AN, I, 69-128.

Babur apparently spent the time as he had done the previous summer while waiting for the rains to abate, living in gardens in and around Agra as he received emissaries, conducted state business and wrote the *Vaqai*. Among other things he ordered the arrest of two men in Lahore and sent threatening messages to Rahimdad in Gwalior, who by September apparently thought better of rebelling. Babur also supervised his Agra garden, newly planted with melons and grapes by a gardener named Balkhi, perhaps an indication of the northern Afghan origin of these fruits. However, these plants were obviously experimental ones, for he also sent 150 porters to Kabul to bring his favorite grapes, melons and other fruit to India.

Gulbadan writes that after spending three months in Agra Babur went to Dulpur, the site of one of his favorite gardens, the Lotus Pavilion, taking his wife Mahim Begim and Gulbadan with him.⁸⁸ From there he moved to Sikri, presumably to stay in the *Bagh-i Fath*, the garden of Victory, where he had spent the last day of Ramadan in 1527. In Sikri, Gulbadan reports, Babur ordered a large platform to be constructed in the middle of a reservoir, where he would sit or row about in the surrounding pool. While in the garden itself he spent part of his time in a pavilion he had built, a *chaukandi*, "where he sat and wrote the book," by which Gulbadan presumably means the *Vaqai*, which she had read before composing her memoirs.⁸⁹ Then he returned to Agra, perhaps in early September, in time to welcome the arrival of his sister, Khanzadah Begim, and the rest of the Kabul women.

It seems dramatically fitting that Babur's relations with his family should be the best documented aspect for the remaining year and a half of his life. During the fall and winter he must have been preoccupied with Humayun's actions, although neither he nor Gulbadan mentions his son's abrupt departure from Badakhshan and unexpected arrival in Agra sometime in the late summer or early fall of 1529. Haydar Mirza, however, was an eyewitness to events that unfolded in Badakhshan after Humayun's departure, although by the time of Babur's death he had retired back to Yang-

⁸⁸ Babur spells this site/village Dulpur. In Gulbadan's Persian text it is given as Dhulpur.

⁸⁹ HN f. 15a. There seems no reason to question the universal assumption that Gulbadan is referring to his autobiography here.

i Hisar in the *Alti Shahr* country just east of Kashgar.⁹⁰ Humayun, who on the evidence of Babur's narrative had repeatedly irritated or offended his father—by his late arrival with Badakhshan troops in 1525 and by plundering the treasury in Delhi on his way back to Kabul and Badakhshan in 1527—now acted so as to endanger Babur's control of the strategic Badakhshan region. He suddenly left Afghanistan sometime in the summer of 1529.⁹¹

According to Haydar Mirza, the local Badakhshan leaders panicked because they felt that Humayun's abrupt departure left them vulnerable to Uzbek attack. Apparently without informing them, Humayun sent his younger brother Hind-al from Kabul to the Qalah Zafar fortress in Badakhshan. However, before Hind-al arrived they invited Haydar Mirza's uncle, Sa'id Khan Chaghatay, to Badakhshan, but when he arrived at Qalah Zafar he discovered Hind-al had already arrived. He asked that some districts be given to him and his uncle to support themselves during the winter, which had already set in, but Hind-al's advisors did not trust them and refused.⁹² Implying that he had no other choice, first Haydar Mirza and then his uncle decided to plunder the surrounding countryside.⁹³ They did so despite the close family relationship between Haydar Mirza, his Uncle, Said Khan, and Babur—they were cousins through Yunas Khan—and despite Babur's earlier hospitality to both of them in Kabul. However, as Haydar Mirza says, they may not have had a choice if they were to survive, and near the end of the winter, presumably now March, 1530, they abandoned the country and retired due east over the mountains to Yarkand in the *Alti Shahr*. They may have left because the Khan was seriously ill or because Babur by this time had protested their

⁹⁰ TR-T, fs. 214a-b.

⁹¹ At least this seems the most probable period of his departure. Abu'l Fazl's cut-and-paste historical account drawn from several sources says that Humayun arrived in Agra after his mother, Mahim Aga, and that after spending some time with his parents went off to his fief at Sambal, about eighty miles due west of Delhi. When dating Humayun's arrival in Agra he only cites Haydar Mirza's comment that Humayun arrived there in 935 a.h. 1528-29. AN, I, p. 272.

⁹² Haydar Mirza says he arrived in the Iranian month of Dey, that is January 1530. TR, f. 296.

⁹³ TR, f. 214b. Haydar Mirza writes that after finding Hind-al in the fortress and asking but receiving no grant of territory during the winter "In the end it was decided to plunder. Until the Khan (his uncle) arrived [from Kashgar] I did so around Qala Zafar."

actions, invoking family connections and his previous hospitality shown to both men in Kabul years earlier.⁹⁴ In any event Babur eventually recalled Hind-al and sent to Badakhshan instead Sulayman Shah Mirza, son of Ways Khan Mirza and the grandson of Mahmud Mirza, long the Timurid ruler of the region in pre Uzbek days.

Babur says nothing in the last pages of his memoirs about Humayun's precipitate departure from Badakhshan and sudden arrival in Kabul. He may not have learned the details of what happened until Humayun's arrival in Agra.⁹⁵ Humayun may have decided to come to India after hearing about his father's illness the previous year. If so he would have naturally wished to be present to guarantee his own succession if Babur suddenly died. His mother, Mahim Begim, may also have encouraged him to come. Nor does Gulbadan allude to Afghan events. She does not even describe Humayun's arrival in Agra. However, before even mentioning her older step-brother she tells a story she obviously heard later from other women that may reflect Babur's declining health, but might equally be apocryphal and a later ratification of Humayun's accession. In Gulbadan's tale a few days after Babur had received his sister and the other Kabul women he, his wife Mahim and some others visited the *Bagh-i Zamfshan*, the "gold scattering garden," and while there he said "*dil-i man az saltanat ve badshahigiriftih*," "I am heavy hearted over rule and kingship." Then in her account he continued on to say I shall retire to the *Bagh-i Zarafshan* with a servant and "give the kingship to Humayun."⁹⁶ A short time later, though, Babur with some of his women left again for Dulpur by boat.

The pages of Gulbadan's memoir that deal with this last year and a half of Babur's life, are from this point on entirely given over to stories of illness and death. She says that a "few days" after Babur's declaration in the *Bagh-i Zamfshan* her own natural mother, Dildar Begim, fell into inconsolable grief when her son,

⁹⁴ TR, f. 214b.

⁹⁵ If Haydar Mirza is correct then the latest date for Humayun's arrival in Agra would be 5 September 1529, the end of year 935 a. h.

⁹⁶ HN, f. 15b. The phrase Gulbadan uses when she quotes Babur's wish to retire to the garden, "*gulshih binishinam*," implies Babur was retiring from the world as a kind of religious recluse.

Alwar Mirza, died after falling ill with an otherwise undefined *dard-i shikam* or “stomach/intestinal pain.” Alwar Mirza was in a sense her only son, for while she had earlier given birth to Hind-al, he had been given to Mahim Begim, who, at the time of Hind-al’s birth, had lost several children and not yet given birth to Humayun. In 1519 after learning Dildar was pregnant, she had asked Babur to give her Dildar’s child whether it be a boy or girl, and he agreed.⁹⁷ Perhaps he did so because Gulbadan’s mother already had at least one surviving daughter and she was younger than Mahim, subordinate to the older woman and likely to bear more children in the future. Gulbadan does not say whether she grieved for a son or simply for a beloved child. She only remarks, that when Dildar’s anguish exceeded all limits Babur took the Mahim Begim and unspecified other women off to Dulpur by boat, perhaps sailing first southeast down the Jumna and then crossing overland to the Chambal river for the rest of the short trip southwest to his Lotus Garden.⁹⁸

“At this time,” Gulbadan continues with her sombre account, news came from Delhi that Humayun had fallen seriously ill. The time that Gulbadan mentions was probably late in monsoon season of 1530. Humayun had evidently been staying in Delhi rather than at his fief at Sambal, where Babur had ordered him to go after Humayun had refused to return to Afghanistan.⁹⁹ Mahim Begim then set out to meet her only natural son, who had already left for Agra, probably by boat, if he was as ill as the chronicles suggest. She met him at the river town of Mathura, and from there, writes Gulbadan, “Both, mother and son, like Jesus and Mary, set out for Agra,” where Gulbadan met them.¹⁰⁰ As he grew weaker, Gul-

⁹⁷ BN-M, 220a. However, this story is found only in the Kazan edition of Babur’s text, and, Annette Beveridge believed, may have been added to the manuscript later by Humayun. See the discussion of this episode by E. J. Mano, *Babur-Nama* (Vaqa’f), II, *Concordance and Classified Indexes*, xxvii-xxviii and by Beveridge, BN-B, Appendix L.

⁹⁸ HN, f. 16a. Gulbadan says that “they sat in a boat” and went “happily and peacefully by water.”

⁹⁹ The estimates of dates are based largely on Haydar Mirza’s narrative and Abu’l Fazl’s history, the *Akbar namah*. Abu’l Fazl says that Humayun spent six months at his Sambal fief after Babur dismissed him from Agra, where he stayed for an undetermined time after his precipitate arrival from Badakhshan. AN, I, 275.

¹⁰⁰ HN, f. 16b.

badan recalls, Babur grew more concerned, only to be told by Mahim Begim in a seemingly bitter observation, and perhaps genuinely reported because of its remarkable tone:

“You are unconcerned about my son. You are *Padshah*, what grief do you have? You have other sons. I am grieving because I have but a single son.”¹⁰¹

To which Babur replied, writes Gulbadan, “Although I have other sons, none do I love as much as your Humayun [and] I want the state and rule for the beloved son Humayun, and not for others.”¹⁰²

Navigating the shoals of Gulbadan’s aged memory and her seemingly artistic impulse to tell a compelling story leaves any reader uncertain about the truth of the complex emotions on display here, feelings in which parental love might either have been intensified or muted by political ambition.¹⁰³ Mahim Begim was probably distraught about the health of her only son and yet also ambitious for him and concerned about her own future if he did not survive to succeed his father. There is good reason to believe that Humayun was Babur’s chosen heir, even if he had often criticized him and could designate one of his three other sons. Babur had already made his preference publicly clear in his letter to Humayun that he includes in the *Vaqaf*. Not only does he carefully instruct Humayun in the discipline of kingship but he assures his eldest son that in his father’s eyes he had precedence over his brothers. Given the lack of definitive succession rules among Turco-Mongols it would have been unusual if his brothers, other Timurids or powerful nobles had not thought of contesting the new and still fragile Timurid-Mughul state at Babur’s death. However, later theories that he might have preferred another successor, most notably Husayn Bayqara’s grandson, Muhammad Zaman Mirza, are based on little more than hearsay and inventive speculation.¹⁰⁴ They may have been stimulated by Babur’s criticism of his eldest son and the knowledge of Humayun’s 1539 and 1540

¹⁰¹ HN, f. 17a.

¹⁰² Ibid., f. 17b.

¹⁰³ Ruby Lal examines the significance of Gulbadan’s fascinating memoir in her article “Rethinking Mughal India, the Challenge of a Princess’s Memoir,” *Economic and Political Weekly*, 38, 1 January 4, 2003), 53-65.

¹⁰⁴ They are summarized, with her usual care, by Annette Beveridge, who supports the idea that Babur may have preferred Muhammad Zaman Mirza. BN-B, 702-08.

defeats by Shir Khan Suri, who then drove him from India and replaced the nascent Timurid-Mughul state with a new and remarkably effective Afghan kingdom.

Gulbadan Begim was, in any event, the only one present during the last months of Babur's life who has left a record, and she sketches a religious tableau in which Babur and Humayun are the principal figures. In fact her account, beginning with the evocation of Jesus and Mary, suggests she was intentionally presenting her story as a parable. Her brief and sometimes confusing story of these last few months of Babur's life is simply this. That during Humayun's seemingly critical illness Babur circumambulated his son's bed and eventually offered up a sacrificial prayer, saying,

If a life may be exchanged for a life I who am Babur bestow my life and soul on Humayun. That very day *Firdaus Makdm* [Resting in Paradise—Babur's posthumous name] became ill and Humayun poured water on his own head, came out and gave an audience. And due to his illness they carried his excellency the *Badshah*, my father, inside. He remained bed-ridden for two to three months.¹⁰⁵

Gulbadan then implies that Humayun left Agra unaware of his father's illness, only to be recalled later as Babur's health deteriorated, for she has him say that he had left Babur healthy and cannot understand why he became ill so suddenly.

What follows is a prolonged death bed scene that Gulbadan presumably knew mainly from her mother and elder female relatives. Unlike the circumambulation story with its formulaic air of ritual self-sacrifice, her remaining narrative of her father's lingering illness convincingly suggests the self-absorbed preoccupations of a dying man who also happens to be an emperor. After describing Humayun's return she says Babur repeatedly asked for his young son Hind-al. "Where is Hind-al? What is he doing?" Then when, Mir Bardi Beg, the son of Hind-al's long-time guardian is given an audience, Babur verbally assaults him, calling him *mardak* and blaming him for delaying Hind-al, implying Hind-al had been celebrating Mir BardT Beg's marriage in Lahore. Gulbadan convincingly conveys the sense of a weakening, perhaps semi-delirious man as she describes how Babur asked Mir Bardi Beg how tall his son has grown and constantly each hour said: "A thousand regrets

¹⁰⁵ HN, fs. 17a-b.

that I have not seen Hind-al, asking all who came, when will Hind-al arrive?"¹⁰⁶

During the time of his illness Babur told Mahim Begim that marriages should be arranged for two of Gulbadan's sisters, Gulrang and Gulchihrah, literally the "Rose-colored" and Rosy-faced" *begims*. They ought to be married, he reportedly says, and "it occurred to him" that they should be given to the two Chaghatay Mongol brothers, the ninth and tenth sons of his Mongol uncle Kichik Khan, the Sultans who had been fighting with him on his last campaign. Later when Mahim Begim is asked her opinion she agrees, and the two brothers are brought into the room and formally made to kneel before Babur, ceremonially elevating them to the rank of sons-in-law.¹⁰⁷ These dynastic marriages consolidated Babur's Chaghatay Mongol connections. They are another reminder if, one is needed, of the importance he attached to his maternal lineage and the reason why his dynasty is not just Timurid but Timurid-Mughul.

"All the while," Gulbadan writes, "the disturbance of his stomach/bowels intensified, [and] Humayun when he saw his father's condition worsen became distraught." The doctors, *hakims*, were unable to do more than hope for God's intervention. "Day by day he became weak and thin. Every day his disorder intensified." Then, Babur summoned his *amirs* and decreed:

For years it has been my wish to give my rule to Humayun Mirza and myself retire to the *Bdgh-i Zarafshdn*. Everything has come right but bodily health. Now this disorder has weakened me I decree that everyone recognize Humayun in my place and do not fail in good will to him.... Further, Humayun, I entrust to God you and your brothers and all kinfolk and my own people and your people and I [also] entrust them all to you.

"At these words," continues Gulbadan, "the onlookers and witnesses wept and lamented and his own auspicious eyes filled with tears." Three days later Jumada I 937 a.h. or December 21, 1530, Babur died. On Friday, December 29th Humayun Badshah sat on the throne and [those present said] "May all the world be blessed by his illustrious rule."¹⁰⁸

¹⁰⁶ HN, f. 18a.

¹⁰⁷ HN, fs. 18a-b.

¹⁰⁸ HN, fs. 18b-20a.

Babur, who asked to be buried in Kabul, was initially interred in a garden across the river from the later site of the Taj Mahal. Now "The eloquent of the age composed chronograms and elegies about his majesty."¹⁰⁹ Sixty reciters were appointed to offer the five daily prayers and read the entire Quran over the grave. The garden was endowed as a *waqf* or pious bequest to support the reciters and 'alims with the entire revenues of Sikri and with additional funds from Bayanah. During her life Mahim Begim assigned from her own estates a food allowance of an ox, two sheep and five goats for the morning meals and five goats at the time of afternoon prayer. Babur's wife lived for an additional two and a half years, when she too suffered from a "disorder of the stomach/bowels" and died sometime in 1533. Gulbadan, whose description of these events convey genuine pathos, now at age ten "felt lonely and helpless... and night and day would weep, grieve and mourn."¹¹⁰ She eventually returned to her own natural mother, Dildar Begim.

Babur's body was later carried to Kabul sometime between 1539 and 1544, interred again in a simple tomb on a hill with an appropriately dramatic view. His great-grandson, Jahangir, made a pilgrimage to Kabul in 1607, where he read and annotated Babur's *Vaqai* and visited the tomb.¹¹¹ He ordered a marble headstone erected and a marble platform placed before the tomb for prayers. Jahangir's son, Shah Jahan, visited the site in 1640 and as befits his grandiose building projects in India, ordered it to be restored and greatly expanded into a major mausoleum complex with a small mosque and pool. He also added a pavilion where pilgrims could sit and eat out of the weather.¹¹²

In the spring of 1831 the British agent and explorer Alexander Burnes visited the complex, which survived largely unscathed until damaged in the civil war that followed the Soviet withdrawal from Afghanistan. "I lost no time in making excursions near Cabool," Burnes writes, "and chose the earliest opportunity to visit the tomb

¹⁰⁹ AN-I, 277.

¹¹⁰ HN, f. 23b.

¹¹¹ TJ, I, 108-9.

¹¹² The tomb and its later history and modern (1970) plans for restoration are lovingly described with extensive photographs by Maria Teresa Shephard Parpagliolo in her study, *Kabul: The Bagh-i Babur, a Project and a Research into the Possibilities of a Complete Reconstruction II* in *Restorations* Giuseppe Tucci ed. (Rome: Istituto Italiano Per Il Medio Ed Estremo Oriente, 1972).

of the emperor Baber, which is about a mile from the city and situated in the sweetest spot of the neighborhood.”

The grave is marked by two erect slabs of white marble; and, as is common in the East, the different letters of a part of the inscription indicate the number of the year of the Hegira in which the Emperor died.... Near the Emperor, many of his wives and children have been interred; and the garden, which is small, has been surrounded by a wall of marble. A running and clear stream yet waters the fragrant flowers of this cemetery, which is the great holiday resort of the people of Cabool. In front of the grave, there is a small but chaste mosque of marble; and an inscription upon it sets forth that it was built in the year 1640, by order of the Emperor Shah Jehan....¹¹³

Burnes then exclaims about the beauty of the view from the tomb in language that echoed Babur's own when describing, as he so often did, the aesthetics of a dramatic natural prospect.

If my reader can imagine a plain, about twenty miles in circumference, laid out with gardens and fields in pleasing irregularity, intersected by three rivulets, which wind through it by a serpentine course, and wash innumerable little forts and villages, he will have before him one of the meadows of Cabool. To the north lie the hills of Pughman, covered half way down with snow, and separated from the eye by a sheet of the richest verdure. On the other side, the mountains, which are bleak and rocky, mark the hunting preserves of kings; and the gardens of this city, so celebrated for fruit, lie beneath, the water being conducted to them with great ingenuity. I do not wonder at the hearts of the people being captivated with the landscape, and of Baber's admiration; for in his own words, “its verdure and flowers render Cabool, in spring, a heaven.”¹¹⁴

Here was a poetic kind of second life, a conspicuous burial in an earthly paradise.

¹¹³ Burnes, *Travels into Bokhara*, II, 121-22.

¹¹⁴ *Ibid.*, 122-3.

EPILOGUE

BABUR and the timurid renaissance

The term Timurid Renaissance has been commonly applied to the cultural florescence that Timur's descendants patronized in Harat and Samarqand and even more particularly to the Husayn Bayqara's splendid court in Harat, peopled with some of the greatest artistic and literary luminaries of the age in the eastern Islamic world.¹ However, as some scholars have observed, "renaissance" implies an earlier florescence, as exemplified by Renaissance Italy's relationship to the culture of classical Greece and/or Rome. No one has yet argued that such a cultural flowering occurred during Timur's lifetime, notwithstanding his monumental building projects in Samarqand and nearby Shahr-i sabz. The real Timurid rebirth occurred in north India following the battle of Panipat. It was there in the sixteenth century that the Timurid-Chingizid phoenix arose from the ashes of its own ineptitude and Uzbek conquests to establish a new, and from a Central Asian perspective, fabulously wealthy state. It was in India also that Timurid-Mughul rulers presided over the development of a hybrid culture in which the Turco-Mongol, Perso-Islamic culture of the Timurids absorbed and also influenced aspects of north Indian society.

In retrospect Babur only sparked that renaissance, for his death only four and a half years after Panipat meant that he did not so much establish an empire as he bequeathed an idea or ambition for one. He himself notes that he did not even begin to implement his administration until after Kanwah, and it is difficult to know what he means by that other than his appointment of Timurid and Chaghatay loyalists to important forts. During his brief rule revenue collection must have been based on Ludi records using former Ludi officials. Therefore, at the time of his death, Babur's conquests in India represented little more than an initial military occupation by Turco-Mongol troops and Indian allies. Unlike the inhabitants

¹ See Jean-Paul Roux's chapter. "La Renaissance timouride," in his biography *BABUR, Histoire des Grands Moghols*, 51-93.

of Samarqand in 1511, no Indians, whether rulers or subjects, Afghans or Rajputs, heralded Babur's arrival in their midst, except to use him to further their own territorial ambitions. Events implicitly demonstrated that they resented his intrusion and assumptions of legitimacy. While Afghans and Rajputs might have initially been cowed into submission, this did not imply anything more than a pragmatic kind of deference, deference not loyalty, the latter a word not even applicable to the relations between Timurid victors and defeated Indian rulers at this period.

In his narrative for 1526-27, Babur himself describes the fragile nature of the Timurid-Mughul enterprise when he recounts the defections of recently defeated or intimidated rulers that occurred as the battle of Kanwah loomed. In doing so he reveals with stunning clarity how he and his Turco-Mongol *begs* could lose control of their recently subjugated territories literally overnight the moment they exhibited the slightest sign of weakness. It was one of many political lessons that Babur's descendants might have derived from reading the *Vaqaz*. It is an equally valuable lesson for historians when they discuss the foundation of empires. To really understand the nature of imperial conquest and consolidation of rule in the Timurid-Mughul Empire, it is necessary to examine the identity and status of local elites, district by district, province by province, over the course of a century or more in order to understand the nature and degree of their submission and/or integration. As Babur's brief experience in north India illustrates, it was extraordinarily difficult to move from military occupation to accepted, that is legitimate rule. He had scarcely even begun that process when he died.

The Timurid-Mughuls were also limited by the lack of a significant Turco-Mongol population base that might offer troops or support. Even if the Afghans were perennially riven by tribal, clan and personal factions they still could call on an ethnic core of fellow Afghans in certain areas of the Panjab, the Duab region and even parts of the Gangetic valley. After Kanwah Afghan contingents posed the greatest threat to Timurid-Mughul rule and within six months of Babur's death the Afghan chiefs Bayizid and Biban renewed their challenge to the Timurid regime. Humayun won his first battle with Afghan forces in 1532 in which Sultan Bayizid was killed, and he directed successful campaigns against other signifi-

cant Indian rulers—Sultan Bahadur in Gujarat in 1534-35 and later in Bengal. In 1539 and 1540, though, he suffered successive defeats at the hands of the Afghan commander Shir Khan, later Shir Shah Suri, first in Bengal and then near Kannauj at the Battle of the Ganges.

Afghan opposition came as no surprise to Humayun, as Babur had been pursuing their forces in his last campaign. Whether he was equally prepared for the harsh reality of Timurid politics is uncertain. If he hadn't read his father's book or learned from his own experience he was given lessons in the realities of the Turco-Mongol inheritance and political system as soon as he came to power. First of all the Bayqara Timurids, Muhammad Zaman Mirza and Muhammad Sultan Mirza, flouted Humayun's authority from the beginning of his troubled reign and, as Gulbadan Begim succinctly remarks, they were a perpetual problem thereafter.² Muhammad Zaman Mirza, for example, joined with the Gujarat Sultan after failing in an earlier bid for power. His political ambitions and obvious reluctance to accept Humayun's authority were even known to the Safavid historian Hasan-i Rumlu, who devotes considerable space to Husayn Bayqara's grandson.³ More threatening to Humayun's political survival was the treatment he received from his brothers, first during his decade of rule in India and then in Afghanistan following his losses to Shir Khan.

Well before 1540 Humayun's brothers had exhibited their own political ambitions as they drifted in and out of cooperation with him. In 1538 Mirza Hind-al even briefly proclaimed his sovereignty by having the *khutbah* read in his name.⁴ If Humayun had commanded his brothers' absolute loyalty it seems unlikely he would have been driven from India. However, by 1540 he had become a fugitive in the Indo-Afghan borderlands and was unable to take refuge in Kabul or Qandahar, which Kamran and 'Askari had by then occupied as their independent appanages. Thus the political mentality that marked and was responsible for much of the late Timurid political collapse in Mawarannahr was exhibited anew in

² HN, f. 23a.

³ Hasan-i Rumlu, *Ahsan al-tawankh*, 314.

⁴ AN, I, 338-39. Abu'l Fazl summarizes the events of Humayun's reign from the time of his accession until 1544, when he fled to Iran. *Ibid.*, 283-437.

India. Wandering about in the region between western Rajasthan, the Sind and southern Afghanistan, Humayun now endured his own *qazaqtiq* period. In 1543 he even lost control of his son, Akbar, whom Askari captured and later sent on to Kamran in Kabul. It seems as if Babur's early history in Andijan with Ahmad Tambal and Jahangir was now being reenacted by his eldest son. Akbar, like Jahangir before him, had become a pawn of appanage politics.

Finally, in early 1544 Humayun sought refuge with the Safavid Shah, Tahmasp, who welcomed him to Iran and treated him not as the refugee he undeniably was but as the once and future *padshah* of Hindustan.⁵ Here, apparently was another demonstration of the life-saving power of legitimacy, partly purchased by Humayun's coerced profession of the Shfi faith and his gift to Tahmasp in July 1544 of Badakhshan! rubies, along with a stunningly large diamond, possibly the Kuh-i nur.⁶ In loaning Humayun an estimated 10-12,000 troops Tahmasp seemed to be resurrecting the alliance Shah Ismail briefly made with Babur in 1511, and perhaps, like his father, he also hoped for continued anti-Uzbek cooperation. These troops were commanded mainly by Qizilbash leaders, that is Tahmasp's Turkic *tmzrs*, and served for a limited if undetermined period.⁷ Tahmasp evidently intended them principally to occupy Qandahar on his behalf. With these forces Humayun was able to arrest what then must have seemed to most observers his inexora-

⁵ Abud Fazl describes his reception at Qazvin near the old Mongol capital of Sultaniya in July 1544. AN, I, 437-41. For a detailed account of Humayun's stay in Iran, including copies of letters between Humayun and Shah Tahmasp, see Sukumar Ray, *Humayun in Persia* (Calcutta: Royal Asiatic Society, 1948).

⁶ The meeting and its aftermath, in which Bayram Khan evidently played a critical role, is ably described by Mahmudul Hasan Siddiqi, *Diwan of Bayram Khan*, "Introduction, 1-18. However, some of his details do not agree with those of Ray, *Humayun in Persia*.

⁷ AN, I, 441-42 where the names of the commanders are given. They are unmistakably Qizilbash chiefs with names such as Afshar and Qajar, tribal leaders whose descendants formed the two most important successor dynasties to the Safavids in eighteenth century Iran. One source says that Humayun was given only 3,000 troops, another caution about accepting troop estimates at face value. See Ray, *Humayun in Persia*, 48 n. 2. These Qizilbash commanders may have been engaged only to help Humayun capture Qandahar. Their names are not found in later lists. Names of *begs* who were evidently personally loyal or in the service of Humayun at this time are given in AN, I, 447-52. Humayun and Bayram Khan later seized Qandahar from their nominal Iranian allies. Ray, *Humayun in Persia*, 53-61.

ble collapse. With an army possibly larger than Babur commanded at Panipat and probably far more reliable than he himself had previously commanded in India, Humayun quickly returned to Afghanistan.

In March 1545 he arrived outside Qandahar to begin the decade-long reconquest of the Timurid-Mughul empire, first overcoming his brothers and then only in July 1555 defeating the Afghans at Sirhind.⁸ Humayun's victory can hardly be attributed to Timurid unity and Afghan factionalism, but at least he fought free of the divisive effect of his brothers' ambitions.⁹ Without actual descriptions of the battle it is only possible to offer a general suggestion that it was Humayun's Timurid stature, his powerful sense of legitimacy and membership in a larger cultural and political world than the Afghans inhabited, that left a Timurid-Mughul rather than an Afghan state ruling Hindustan for the next two centuries. Daulat Khan's apparent inability to speak Persian when Babur captured and confronted him in 1526 indicates that some Afghan leaders at least, were very parochial, knowing perhaps Pashtu and Hinduwi, but having little contact with the Perso-Islamic world in Iran or Mawarannahr. In any event, the idea and prestige of Babur's conquest had improbably survived to be finally transformed into an empire by his grandson, Akbar, who as a boy of twelve acceded to the throne when Humayun, like his grandfather, 'Umar Shaykh, unexpectedly died an accidental death in 1556. In Humayun's case, he tripped and apparently fractured his skull, as he hurried down the steep steps of his library to answer the call to prayer.

The empire that Babur began, Humayun re-established and Akbar consolidated was one whose basic character was defined by Babur's own political and cultural inheritance, and it was a sophisticated world apart from what is known of many and perhaps most Afghans of the period. The character of this state remained funda-

⁸ Kamran was captured and blinded in 1553. "Askari was captured, imprisoned in Kabul, eventually released to go on pilgrimage to Mecca, dying en route, but only in 1558. AN, I, 604 & 575. Hind-al, who had accompanied Humayun and been with him when he retook Kabul from Kamran, died in a battle in 1551. AN, I, 582-85.

⁹ The names of Humayun's principal commanders when he retook India are given by Bayizid Bayat, *Tazkirah-i Humayun va Akbar* M. Hidayat Husayn ed., (Calcutta: Baptist Mission Press, 1941), 172-77.

mentally unchanged, despite the distinct individual characteristics of Timurid-Mughul rulers. It was a Turco-Mongol conquest state of observant Sunni Muslims steeped in Perso-Islamic culture whose rulers had one principal goal, to perpetuate and enrich the Timurid-Chaghatay elite. Most of these rulers and many of the elite also exhibited Babur's seeming preference for sufi devotionism over rigid formal worship. Babur himself brought the Naqshbandis to India, not so much as an order, but as a group of Central Asian religious aristocrats, politically linked with his family and soon to intermarry with them as well.

Despite the dynasty's common name in India and later in the West, Babur's empire had almost nothing in common with the nomadic empires of his ancestors, Timur and Chingiz Khan. Little, that is, except the critical Mongol military role in Babur's major victories! Babur thought of himself as a ruler of a sedentary, agrarian state that he would rule according to accepted Muslim administrative norms. He had observed his father doing so in Ferghanah. Like his Mongol grandfather, Yunas Khan, Babur loved cities, in his case, Samarqand, Harat and Kabul. Indeed, apart from certain specific tenets of Islam his own social goals seem largely indistinguishable from the literate residents of most Mediterranean and Middle Eastern societies, a civilized, that is urban life, distinguished by communal institutions and the ritualized camaraderie of shared drink,—or *majun*—meals and literary and artistic culture. Greek, Roman and early Christian writers in the Mediterranean region were virtually unanimous in seeing the city as Babur saw it, as the “urbium cultus” of Tacitus, the touchstone of civilization.¹⁰ Sounding somewhat like Babur writing on Samarqand, the writer Tertullian, who as a Christian was, like Babur, a member of a congregational religion, said that Christians lived in a “world of *fora, macella, balnea* and *tabernae* (town squares, market places, baths and inns).”¹¹ Tertullian would have admired Samarqand, its bazars, *hammams* and gardens and understood even its mosques. It seems certain also that he would have sympathized with Babur's critique of Indian social life.

In Babur's case it is tempting to use the geometry or mathemat-

¹⁰ Quoted by A. T. Fear, *Rome and Baetica*, urbanization in southern Spain, 50 B. C.-A. D. 150. (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1996), 6.

¹¹ *Ibid.*, 6.

ics more generally as a metaphor for his civilized ideal. He valued a regulated social life lived among straightened streams in geometrically proportionate kiosks and gardens, where he and his *begs* who followed the straight path of the Quran would recite or compose mathematically structured poetry and music. In that context it is worth observing that from the perspective of mathematical and scientific, that is in Greek terms, philosophical knowledge, populations of the central Timurid regions of Khurasan and Mawarannahr did not have to go through a renaissance in Babur's lifetime. They were already the beneficiaries of the translation movement of the 'Abbasid Caliphate. Scholars who were legatees of these translations were exemplified by the outstanding scientific/ philosophical figures of the Perso-Islamic world in eleventh, twelfth and thirteenth centuries, that is by Ibn Sina, al-Biruni, 'Umar al-Khayyam and al-Tusi.¹² Babur was only a distant and indirect heir of these scholars' thought, but still reflected some of their influence, at least in his appreciation for geometric balance, quantification and an awareness of the precision that astronomical observations offered to the placement of the *qiblah*. Even the horoscope of his grandson Akbar was determined "according to the altitudes taken by the Greek astrolabe and by calculations based on the *Gurkham* tables [the astronomical tables of Ulugh Beg]."¹³ When Babur's and his Timurid predecessors' contact with and knowledge of China and appreciation for Chinese ceramics and designs is also recalled, it is difficult to agree that Babur matured, as E. M. Forster wittily expressed it, "at the extreme north of the fashionable world." Even with the devastation of Chingiz Khan and Timur—indeed partly because of the cultural contacts that followed the brutal Mongol unification of Eurasia—it is possible to argue that Harat and Samarqand, Khurasan and Mawarannahr, jointly comprised one of the most intellectually fashionable and dynamic regions of the Islamic world between the eleventh and early sixteenth century.¹⁴

Indian Muslims of the Timurid-Mughul period did not have to

¹² For The "House of Knowledge" see Dimitri Gutas, *Greek Thought, Arabic Culture*, 53-60.

¹³ AN, I, 69-70. Just to be safe Akbar's horoscope was also read according to calculations of Indian astrologers. Ibid., 85-95.

¹⁴ The remarkable cross-fertilization between China and Iran during the Mongol period is described by Thomas T. Allsen, *Conquest and Culture in Mongol Eurasia* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2001).

discuss these specific aspects of Babur's heritage to convince them selves of Babur's significance. Akbar's amanuensis and companion, Abu'l Fazl, provides the most eloquent appreciation in the *Akbar namah*) one that gives another meaning to the idea of the Timurid renaissance as it portrays Babur as a "perfect man."¹⁵ If Abud Fazl had known Italian he would likely have described Babur as 'Tuomo universale,' an ideal now commonly known as the "Renaissance man." In very much the same way that Forster divides his appreciation of Babur into the political and the artistic, Abu'l Fazl extols him first as a monarch and then as an intellectual. "It would be impossible," he writes, "even if volumes were employed, to detail the perfections of this Holy One." "Among them," Abu'l Fazl says with considerable accuracy even when his panegyric agenda is considered, "He possessed the eight essentials of empire, that is, (1) high fortune; (2) great designs; (3) conquering power (4) administrative capacity; (5) civilizing faculty; (6) devotion to the welfare of God's servants; (7) the cherishing of the army; (8) the restraining it from evil." Despite Abu'l Fazl's formulaic presentation most readers of the *Vaqai* at least would agree that Babur was an extremely lucky man with undisguised imperial ambitions who enjoyed, after a time, military success. While his administrative capacity is only suggested by a few passages, such as his letter to Khwajah Kalan about plans for Kabul, he certainly had a civilized intellect, supported both sufis and apparently, but less vocally, the '*ulama*. Babur, of course, valued the army, even if he did not publicly cherish its crucial Mongol contingents, and, by his evidence once again, prevented Mongols from engaging in the destructive rampages that they visited on Hisar in 1512.

Then Abu'l Fazl offers a largely accurate evaluation of Babur's cultural achievements, even though he probably could not read Turki and almost certainly borrowed from Haydar Mirza's fulsome praise of his older cousin.

And in acquired accomplishments, he was at the head of his Age. He held high rank as a poet and prose-writer, and especially in Turk! poetry. The Turk! *diwan* (*diwan-i Turk!*) of his Majesty is of great

¹⁵ Not apparently intending to characterize him as the *al-insanu'l kamil* of Sufism, "one who has realized his essential oneness with the Divine Being," R. A. Nicholson, *Studies in Islamic Mysticism* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, repr. 1967), 77-78.

eloquence and purity, and its contents are charming. His book of Masnawi which has the name of *Mubin* (clear) is a famous composition and is mentioned by great applause by critics. He versified the *Risala-i walidiya* of Khwaja Ahrar which is a pearl from the ocean of knowledge, and very excellent it was. He also wrote his Acts (*Wdqidb*) from the beginning of his reign to the time of departure with fidelity and in a lucid and eloquent style. It is an Institute for all earthly sovereigns and a manual for teaching right thoughts and proper ideas.... His Majesty was also eminently skilled in music and composed charming verses in Persian.... His Majesty was also famous for treatises on prosody, and, among them is a book called *mufassal* which is a commentary on the science.¹⁶

Most modern scholars would agree with Abu'l Fazl's sentiments and even go beyond his praise to observe that the *Vaqai* represents the single greatest prose composition in the Turk! literature of Mawarannahr, which in its remarkably open and realistic portrayal of individuals, politics and military campaigns, ought to be "an Institute for all earthly sovereigns." No other Timurid, Ghingizid, Ottoman, Safavid or Timurid-Mughul wrote anything of comparable scope or literary power. Babur's marginal political importance and tumultuous life lived outside major power centers and elaborate courts may at least partly explain why he wrote and wrote as he did. No court historian did or could have chronicled his life. Then too, even when writing much of the manuscript in India, he did not operate within a highly structured traditional court setting, hemmed about with cadres of artistically fastidious literati. While Babur's frequent insertions of poetic aphorisms in the *Vaqcii* show he was concerned with producing a work that possessed traditional attributes of scholarly writing, he wrote primarily to inform rather than to demonstrate his rhetorical skills.

The memoir of his great-grandson, Jahangir, offers the most important basis for comparison. It is in its own way a fascinating, idiosyncratic text, exceptional among seventeenth century rulers in Europe, the Islamic world or Asia, but it lacks the artistic ambition, dynamism, structure and multiple purposes of the *Vaqai*. Some of these differences may be attributable to the dramatically distinct careers of these men. Indeed, Babur would likely have seen in Jahangir, at least at certain periods of his career, another decadent ruler in the mold of the late Husayn Bayqara. However, the

¹⁶ AN, I, 277-79.

comparison of these two exceptional texts also raises the question of the intelligence of each man. It is impossible to say that Babur was more intelligent than his descendant—although he did possess a luminous intellect, but he seems to have possessed a more active, systemizing mind than Jahangir.

Abu'l Fazl himself was hardly in a position to point out inconsistencies and contradictions in the *Vaqai* or to remind his audience that Babur's "conquering power" was preceded by a long series of ignoble military disasters. To be fair to him, though, it is important to understand that in writing the *Vaqai* Babur was, among his many other purposes, trying to demonstrate that he was the perfect man, or the perfect ruler in the mold of Yunas Khan. Just the evidence of the *Vaqai* with its repeated citations of classical Persian verse and composition of his own derivative Turki verse, was sufficient implicit evidence that he was an *adib*, a cultured, civilized man and therefore, partly for that reason, qualified to rule. Babur was justifiably proud of this work, which took precedence over his poetry during his Indian years. In the text itself he tried to show how his life was devoted to becoming the perfect ruler of the late Timurid world: a clever military tactician, a consummate poet, a good Sunni Muslim. The *Vaqai* is thus partly a record of his military, literary and religious accomplishment. Babur does not only describe the progression of his life from youthful insecurity to mature reflection, but from military incompetence to skillful triumph, from insecure, novice writer to skilled poet and theorist of prosody and from unreflective, youthful Muslim to a student of *fiqh* and pious adulthood. That is he wanted the Turki-speaking world to see himself as he saw Baysunghur Mirza or as Haydar Mirza saw Yunas Khan, a man skilled in the accomplishments that mattered most to the Persianized, Islamized Turco-Mongol aristocrat of the late Timurid period: war, poetry and religion.

What is most engaging for the twenty-first century reader is that his writings reveal that Babur was not a perfect man, but an acutely intelligent, engaging, complex and also typically egotistical human being struggling to make his way in a chaotic, unpredictable political environment. In this way too he writes about himself as a person whose characteristics call forth the other common perception of the so-called "Renaissance man," that is not only an individual who has multifaceted interests but one who displays personality traits associated with the Italian Renaissance or some-

times even with the "Rise of the West," among other things, intellectual curiosity, unapologetic egotism, and ruthlessness. The egos exhibited by Cellini and Babur in their respective autobiographies are indistinguishable. Indistinguishable also is the sense that both manage to convey of the complex, indeterminacy of their personal lives, and in Babur's case also, his political career. Perhaps nothing more important emerges from this biography of Babur than an appreciation for the complexity of individuals and the contingencies of politics in Central Asia, Afghanistan and northern India in the late fifteenth and early sixteenth century.

Biographies are devoted to individuals, and individuals are rarely evident in either Islamic or western historiography for most of the recorded history of the non-western world. The critique of Orientalism has achieved part of its goal of sensitizing western scholars and the broader public to the necessity of discarding simplistic and essentially anti-humanistic images of Islam and Asia. However, that critique by itself has not generally succeeded in displacing prevalent, one dimensional caricatures with multifaceted individuals. Teaching by example rather than preaching with outraged rhetoric is probably a more effective way of educating a skeptical or simply uninterested public. In this context the really telling legacies of the *Vaqaf* and Babur's verse are his displays of recognizable human emotion: his profound grief at the death of a Mongol friend, his adolescent emotional confusion, his prickly relations with Timurid cousins, his openly enthusiastic appreciation of natural beauty, his irritated critique of his eldest son, his touching poetic expression of his illnesses, his irrational, exasperated anger on his deathbed and more than all these, his undiminished delight in the gathering of friends. In his case "A good memory" is not merely, as he remarks, "a second life," but the testament to the human vitality of an entire civilization.

"New Lives;" Babur in Indian and Uzbek Nationalism

Astrologers often attributed events in Timurid history to the conspicuous conjunction of the planets or other heavenly bodies. It is tempting, therefore, to speculate what heavenly signs they would have found to explain the most recent episodes in Timurid history, the very earthly conjunction of events that have made Babur a

pivotal figure in the nationalist politics of both India and Uzbekistan in the late twentieth and early twenty-first century. In both countries many people have come to see him as one symbol of their past and “national” future. However, the contrast between his symbolic stature in these two societies is starkly different.

In India Babur has come to be seen by many Hindus as a personification of Muslim oppression because of the mosque he is believed to have ordered constructed at Ayodhya, near Faizabad, a city nearly due east of Lucknow. As has been seen, it is impossible to know whether or not Babur actually ordered the construction of this building. He does not mention the mosque in the extant pages of the *Vaqai*. However, members of the Viswa Hindu Parishad, or World Hindu Council, made the mosque an issue in the 1980's, because Hindus had long believed that two stone columns included in the mosque were taken from a Vaishnavite temple dedicated to Rama, one of Vishnu's avatars or incarnations. Rama himself is thought to have been born in Ayodhya, and the region was known by Babur's descendants in the late sixteenth century to have just these sacred associations.¹⁷ Council members have blamed Babur directly for the destruction of a Vaisnavite temple, which was believed to be the source of the stone columns, as well as for the construction of the mosque itself. One member of the Council wrote in 1993 that “Traditions and records of all kinds are unany-mous [sic] in holding Babar [sic] responsible for the replacement of the Rama temple with the Babari mosque.”¹⁸ The issue became a national one in India when in 1992 two leading members of the BJP, the Hindu nationalist party, by then a powerful political force in north India, helped organize thousands of followers of the World Hindu Council who subsequently attacked and demolished the mosque.¹⁹ The assault provoked widespread communal violence in which more than one thousand people were killed, and the destruction of the mosque as well as the future use of the site has remained an emotionally charged issue in Indian politics ever since. In the

¹⁷ AA, II, 182.

¹⁸ Harsh Narain, *The Ayodhya Temple-Mosque Dispute* (Delhi: Penman Publishers, 1993), 61.

¹⁹ See among other sources, Thomas Blom Hansen, *The Saffron Wave. Democracy and Hindu Nationalism in Modern India* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1999) and Yogendra K. Malik and V. B. Singh, *Hindu Nationalists in India, The Rise of the Bharatiya Janata Party* (Boulder: Westview Press, 1994), 79-80 & 95-95.

early twenty-first century the site has become an archeological dig, as politically motivated workers search for physical proof of its Vaishnavite origins.²⁰

At nearly the same time many Indians were reviling Babur, people in his homeland had begun raising him to nearly iconic status. Just at the moment that the goals of the World Hindu Council were catalyzed by the political ambitions of a few leaders of the BJP, the Soviet Union dissolved, leaving behind a group of republics stretching from the Baltic to Central Asia. Some of these states, like the Baltic republics, possessed clearly articulated national identities, but others and especially the five in Central Asia, emerged as former Soviet “republics” that had been carved out of territories occupied by Imperial Russia in the nineteenth century. Prior to that time all five states: Kazakistan, Turkmenistan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan and Uzbekistan, had been subject to the Uzbek khanates that had succeeded the Shibam Khan-led confederation that had defeated, killed or expelled the Timurids and Chaghatay Chingizids from Mawarannahr in the early sixteenth century. In 1991, though, the leaders of these republics suddenly found themselves in the unfamiliar role as heads of new nations, nations created by fiat and historical accident rather than by indigenous political movements. These men quickly set about constructing national identities, not from scratch, but by molding local cultural traditions.

In Uzbekistan, the most populous of all five states and the one possessing the historic cities of Bukhara and Samarqand, leaders have claimed the entire Islamic history of the region as their national tradition, so that any political, literary, scientific or scholarly figures of note have become emblems of Uzbek greatness.²¹ There are perhaps even more ironies in the creation of this national myth than most, but that is partly due to the necessity of constructing a new nation at a moment’s notice. However, from the perspective of this biography the greatest irony of all is the elevation of Timur and prominent Timurids to an Uzbek national pantheon.²²

²⁰ Amy Waldman, “India’s Big Dig: Will It Settle or Inflamm a Controversy?” *New York Times*, 3 April 2003, p. A 9.

²¹ For an introduction to Uzbek history and culture see Edward Allworth, *The Modern Uzbeks* (Stanford: Hoover Institution Press, 1990). Otherwise the following is based on the author’s visit to Uzbekistan in the spring of 2000.

²² Beatrice Forbes Manz offers the best introduction to the “cult” of Timur in

Timur has been “given the stature of the founder of the Uzbek nation.”²³ Timur and Timurids are not the only figures so honored. The medieval mathematician, al-Khwarizmi, and the Harat poet and proponent of Turki, Naval, have also been implicitly elected to the Uzbek pantheon. In Tashkent, though, an heroic statue of Timur stands near a museum devoted to his exploits, while in Samarqand new attention is being paid to the scientific research of Ulugh Beg, who is quite reasonably seen as a patron “saint” of Samarqand State University.

Far to the east in Andijan, however, it is Babur who symbolizes past greatness. Overseen by the dynamic Babur Foundation, the city has erected a monumental statue in the city center, a museum, and created a lovely hillside park featuring an impression of a Timurid-era building with internal wall paintings illustrating Babur’s career—just as Timur had scenes from his conquests painted in Samarqand. Finally, high up on the slope a replica of Babur’s Kabul tomb has been erected overlooking this building and the eastern Ferghanah countryside, exactly the kind of scenic prospect Babur would have chosen and a reminder of his gravesite near Kabul. When the author attended a *suhbat* in this garden with Uzbek companions in the year 2000, it seemed that both he and Babur himself had come full circle.

Uzbek nationalist ideology in her article, “Tamerlane’s Career and Its Uses,” *Journal of World History* 13, 1 (Spring 2002), 16-24.

²³ Manz, “Tamerlane’s Career and Its Uses,” 16.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Agoston, Gabon, "Ottoman Artillery and European Military Technology in the Fifteenth and Seventeenth Centuries," *Acta Orientalia Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae* 47, Fasc. 1-2 (1994), 13-48.
- Ahmad, Khwajah Nizam al-Dm, *Tabaqat-i Akban* Brajendranath De trans, and Baini Prashad ed. (Calcutta: Baptist Mission Press, 1939), 3 v.
- Ahmed, Shahab, "Mapping the World of a Scholar in Sixth/Twelfth Century Bukhara: Regional Tradition in Medieval Islamic Scholarship as Reflected in a Bibliography," *American Oriental Society* 120, 1 (January-March, 2000), 24-43.
- Aka, Ismail, *Mirza Şahruh ve famani* (1405-1447) (Ankara: Turk Tarih Basimevi, 1994).
- Akhmedov, B. A., *Istoriko-geograficheskaya Literatura Srednei Azii XV-XVII vv.* (Tashkent: "Fan," 1985).
- Akimushkin, O. F., "Khronoligiya Pravitelei Vostochnoi Chasti Chagatai Tsogo Ulusa," in B. A. Litvinskii, *Vostochnyi Turkestan i Srednyaya Aziya* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1984), 156-64.
- Alam, Muzaffar, "Akhlāqī Norms and Mughal Governance," in Muzaffar Alam, Françoise 'Nalini' Delvoye and Marc Gaborieau ed., *The Making of Indo-Persian Culture* (Delhi: Manohar, 2000), 67-95.
- and Delvoye, François 'Nalini,' *The Making of Indo-Persian Culture* (Delhi: Manohar for Centre De Sciences Humaines, 2000).
- Alavi, Rafi Ahmad, "New Light on Mughal Cavalry," *Medieval India* 2 (1972), 70-98.
- Algar, Hamid, "Darvis," "In the Islamic Period," *Encyclopaedia Iranica* Ehsan Yarshater ed. 7 (Costa Mesa, Ca.: Mazda, 1996), 74-76.
- "Allami, Abud Fazl, *Aln-i Akbari* H. Blochmann trans, and D.C. Philott ed. (Delhi: Crown Publications, repr. 1988), 3 v.
- *Akbar nama* H. Beveridge trans. (Delhi: Ess Ess Publications, repr. 1987), 3 v.
- ‘Ali, M. Athar, "Pursuing an Elusive Seeker of Universal Truth — the Identity and Environment of the Author of the *Dabistan-i Mazahib*, *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Series* 3rd series, 9, 3 (November 1999), 365-73.
- Allen, Terry, *A Catalogue of Toponyms and Monuments of Timurid Herat* (Cambridge, Ma.: MIT, 1981).
- *Timurid Herat* (Wiesbaden: Ludwig Reichart, 1983).
- Allsen, Thomas T., *Commodity and exchange in the Mongol empire* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1997).
- *Culture and Conquest in Mongol Eurasia* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2001).
- "Guard and Government in the Reign of The Gran Qan Mongke, 1251-59," *Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies*, 46, 2 (December 1986), 495-521.
- *Mongol Imperialism* (California: University of California Press, 1987).
- Allworth, Edward, *The Modern Uzbeks* (Stanford: Hoover Institution Press, 1990).
- Alparslan, Ali, "Babur'un lead ettigi "Babur! yazisi" ve Onunla Yazilmiş Olan Kur'an," *Tiirkiyat Mecmuasi* 18 (1976), 161-66.
- Amir Khusrau Dihlavi, *India As Seen by Amir Khusrau in 1318 A.D.* R. Nath and

- Faiyaz 'Gwaliari' trans. (Jaipur, India: Historical Research Documentation Programme, 1981).
- *JVuh Sipih* ba tashlh va tahshlah va muqaddimah dar zaban-i Inglis! az Muhammad Wahid Mirza (London: Oxford University Press, 1949).
- Amitai-Preiss, Reuven and Morgan, David O., *The Mongol Empire and Its Legacy* (Brill: Leiden, 1999).
- Ando, Shiro, "The Shaykh al-Islam as a Timurid Office," *Islamic Studies* 33, Nos. 2-3 (Summer- Autumn, 1994), 252-60.
- Andrews, Walter G., Black, Najaat and Kalpakh, Mehmet ed. and trans., *Ottoman Lyric Poetry* (Austin, Texas: University of Texas Press, 1997).
- Ansari, Zoe ed., *Life, Times and Works of Amir Khusrau Dehlavi* (Delhi: National Amir Khusrau Society, n. d.).
- Arabshah, Ahmed ibn Muhammad ibn, *Tamerlane or Timur The Great Amir* J. H. Sanders trans. (Lahore: Progressive Books, repr. 1976).
- *fendagi-yi shigift-avar-i Timur Muhammad* "Al! Nijat! tarjumah (Tehran: Shirkat-i Intisharat-i 'Ilm! va Farhangl, chap sevvom, 1365/1986).
- '*Aja'ib al-maqdur fi navdlb Timur Ahmad Fayiz al-Hims! tahqlq* (Bayrut: Mu'assasat al- Risalah, 1986).
- Arat, Reşit Rahmeti, *Vekayi Babur'un Hatirati* (Ankara: Turk Tarih Kurumu Basimevi, 1943).
- Arberry, A.J., *Classical Persian Literature* (London: George, Allen and Unwin, repr. 1967).
- *Fifty Poems of Hafiz* (London: Curzon Press, repr. 1993).
- Aries, Phillipe, *Centuries of Childhood* Roger Baldick trans. (New York: N.Y.: Vintage Books, 1952).
- Arjomand, Said Amir, *The Shadow of God and the Hidden Imam* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1984).
- Asimov, M. S. and Bosworth, C. E., ed., *History of civilizations of Central Asia* (Paris: UNESCO, 1998).
- Asher, Catherine B., *Architecture in Mughal India* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1992).
- "Babur and the Timurid Char Bagh: Use and Meaning," in *Environmental Design* 9, 1-2 (1991), 146-55.
- Ashrafyan, K. Z., "Central Asia Under Timur from 1370- to the early fifteenth century," in M. S. Asimov and C. E. Bosworth ed., *History of Civilizations of Central Asia* IV, 1 (Paris: Unesco, 1998), 319-45.
- Avery, Peter ed. and trans, and Heath-Stubbs, John trans., *The Rubaiyat of Omar Khayyam* (London and New York, Penguin Books, repr. 1981).
- Askeri, S. Hasan, *fain Khan's Tabaqat-i Baburi* (Delhi: Idarah-i Adabiyat-i Delhi, 1982).
- Ayalon, David, "Names, titles and 'nisbas³ of the Mamluks," *Israel Oriental Studies* 5 (1975), 189-232.
- Awliya, Nizam al-Din, *Morals for the Heart* Bruce Lawrence ed. and trans. (N.Y.: Paulist Press, 1992).
- Azimdzhanova, S. A. ed., *Babur-Name* (Akademii Nauk Uzbeksko! CCP, 1958).
- "Ekonomicheskikh Vzglyady Zakhiriddina Muhammmada Babura," in *Iz Istorii Razvitiya Obshchestvenno-Ekonomicheskoi Mysli v Uzbekistane v xv-xvi vv.* (Tashkent: Izdatefstvo Akademii Nauk Uzbeksko! CCP, 1960), 81-113.
- *Gosudarstvo Babura v Kabule i v Indii* (Moscow: "Nauka," 1977).
- *Indiiskii Divan Babura* (Tashkent: "Fan," 1966).
- *K Istorii Ferg'hany Vtoroi Poloviny XV v.* (Tashkent: "Nauka," 1957).
- "Nekotorye Ekonomicheskies Vzglyady Zakhir ad-Dina Muhammeda

- Babura, Izlozhennye v 'Mubaime,'" *Trudy Dvadsat³ Pyatogo Mezhdunarodnogo Kongressa Vostokovedov* (Moskva: VostochnoT Literatury, 1963), 203-08.
- Babadzhanov, Bakhtiyar Miranmovich, "Politicheskaiya Deyateknost ShaTkhov Nakshbandiia v Maverannakhre (I pol. XVI v.) (Tashkent: Akademiya Nauk, Respubliki Uzbekistan, 1996), 3-23.
- "Zahir al-Din Muhammad Mirza Babur et les Shaykh NaqshbandT de Transoxiane," *Cahiers d³ Asie Centrale* 1-2, Paris (1996), 220-226.
- Babayan, Kathryn, "The Safavid Synthesis: From Qizilbash Islam to Imamite Shi'ism," *Iranian Studies* 27, 1-4 (1994), 135-161.
- Babinger, Franz, *Mehmed the Conqueror and His Time* William Hickman ed. and Ralph Mannheim trans. (Princeton: Bollingen, 1978).
- Babur, Zakhiriddin Mukhammad, *Izbrannye Sochineniya* (Tashkent: Akademii Nauk UzbekskoT SSR, 1959).
- Bacque-Grammont, Jean-Louis, "Les evenements d'Asie Centrale en 1510 d'apres un document ottoman," *Cahier du monde russe*, 12 (1971), 189-207.
- trans., *Le Livre de Babur* (Paris: Unesco, 1980).
- Bahari, Ebadollah, *Bihzad, Master of Persian Painting* (London: I. B. Tauris, 1996).
- Bahar-i Ghufrallah, Muhammad Taqi, *Sabk-i Shinasi* (Tehran: Kitabha-yi pirastu, 1331/1952), 3 v.
- Bailey, G. A., "The Dynamics of Chinoiserie in Timurid and Early Safavid Ceramics," in Golombek and Subtelny ed. *Timurid Art and Culture*, 179-90.
- Balkh!, Mahmud b. Amir Wall Balkhi. *The Bahr ul-Asrar* Riazul Islam ed. (Karachi: Institute of Central and West Asian Studies, 1980).
- Banerji, S. K., "Babur and the Hindus," *Journal of the University of Punjab Historical Society* 9, 2 (1936), 70-96.
- Barnes, Jonathan, *The Cambridge Companion to Aristotle* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1996).
- Barth, Fredrik, *Ethnic Groups and Boundaries* (Oslo: Universitets Forlaget, 1969).
- *Nomads of South Persia* (London: Allen and Unwin, 1961).
- Barthold, V. V., *Four Studies on the History of Central Asia* (Leiden: Brill, repr. 1963).
- *An Historical Geography of Iran* Svat Soucek trans. (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1984).
- "The Tarikh-i-Rashidi of Mirza Muhammad Haidar, Dughlat. A History of the Moghuls of Central Asia," in V. V. Barthold, *Raboty Po Istochni-kovedeniyu* 8 (Moskva: "Nauka," 1973), 63-73.
- *Turkistan Down to the Mongol Invasion* (London: E. J. W. Gibb Memorial, 3rd ed. 1969).
- Bayly, Christopher, *Empire and Information, Intelligence Gathering and Social Communication in India 1780-1870* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1996).
- Battistini, Andrea, "L' autobiographia e il superego dei generi letterari," in *Annali d'Italianistica* 4 (1986), 7-29.
- Bayat, Bayzid, *Tazkirah -i Humayun va Akbar* M. Hidayat Husayn ed. (Calcutta: Baptist Mission Press, 1941).
- Beach, Milo Cleveland and Koch, Eva, *King of the World, The Padshahnama* (London: Azimuth Editions, 1997).
- Beelaert, A. L. F. A., "The Complaint of Musical Instruments: The Evolution of an Image in Classical Persian Poetry," in Bert Fragner et al ed., *Proceedings of the Second European Conference of Iranian Studies* (Rome: Institute Italiano Per il Medio ed Estremo Oriente, 1995), 81-96 and Plate XIII.
- Berlin, Isaiah, *The Hedgehog and the Fox* (New York, N.Y.: Simon and Schuster, 1953).

- Bernardo, Aldo S., "Petrarch's Autobiography: Circularity Revisited," in *Annali d'Italianistica* 4 (1986), 45-72.
- Bernadini, Michele, "The Ceremonial Function of Markets in the Timurid City," in *Environmental Design* 9, 1-2 (1991), 90-97.
- Bertels, Evgeni! Eduardovich, *Izbrannye Trudy, Navoi i Dzhami* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1965).
- "Literatura na Persidskom Yazike v Sredne! Azii," *Izbrannye Trudy* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1988), 261-302.
- Beveridge, Annette S., *The Babur-nama in English* (London: Luzac, repr. 1969).
- "The Haydarabad Codex of the Babar-Nama or Waqi'at-i-Babari of Zahiru-d-Din Muhammad Babar, Barias Turk," *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* n.s. 39 (January 1907), 741-62.
- *The History of Humdyun* (see Gulbadan Begim).
- "The Babar-Nama. The Material Now Available for a Definitive Text of the Book," *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* n.s. 40 (January 1908), 73-98.
- Birashk, Ahmad, *A Comparative Calendar of the Iranian, Muslim Lunar and Christian Eras for Three Thousand Years* (Costa Mesa, Ca., Mazda, 1993).
- Birnbaum, Eleazer, "The Ottomans and Chagatay Literature," *Central Asiatic Journal* 20, 3 (1976), 157-90.
- Blagova, G. F. "Babur-Name": *Yazik, Pragmatika Teksta, Stil* (Moskva: Vostochnaya Literatura, 1994).
- "K Istorii Izucheniya Babur-Name v Rosiif in *Tyurkologicheskii Sbornik* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1966), 168-76.
- Blake, Stephen P., "The Patrimonial-Bureaucratic Empire of the Mughals," *Journal of Asian Studies* 39, 1 (November, 1979), 77-94.
- *Half the World. The Social Order of Safavid Isfahan 1590-1722* (Costa Mesa, Ca.: Mazda, 1999).
- Bloch, Marc, *The Historian's Craft* (New York, N.Y.: Vintage Books, 1953).
- Bodrogligeti, A. J. E., *A Grammar of Chagatay* (Munich: Lincome Europa, 2001).
- "Babur Shah's Chagatay Version of the *Risala-i Validiya*," *A Central Asian Turkic Treatise on How to Emulate the Prophet Muhammad*, *Ural-Altische Jahrbilcher* 54 (1984), 1-61.
- *A Fourteenth Century Turkic Translation of Sa'di's Gulistan* (Sayf-i SarayT's Gulistan Bi't-Turk!) (Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana University, c. 1970).
- Borovkov, A. K., "Bada'i' al-Lugatf Slovar' Tali' imam Geratskogo K Sochineniyam Alishera Navoi (Moskva: Vostochno! Literaturny, 1961).
- Bosworth, C. Edmund., Pingree, David., de Blois, Francois, Saliba, George, Anawati, Georges C. and Lawrence, Bruce, "Birum, Abu'l Rayhan," *Encyclopaedia Iranica* 4 (London: Routledge and Keegan Paul, 1989), 274-87.
- *The Ghaznavids Their Empire in Afghanistan and Eastern Iran 994-1040* (Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press, 1963).
- ed., *Hudud al-Alam, "The Regions of the World I A Persian Geography 372 a.h.-982 a.d.* Translated and explained by V. Minorsky with a Preface by V. V. Barthold (London: Luzac, repr. 1970).
- "Saldjukids," "History," *Encyclopaedia of Islam* New Edition, C. E. Bosworth et al ed. 8 (Brill: Leiden, 1995), 936-59.
- Boyle, John Andrew trans., *The Successors of Genghis Khan* (New York, N.Y.: Columbia University Press, 1971).
- Bregel, Yuri ed., *Bibliography of Islamic Central Asia* (Bloomington, Indiana: Research Institute for Inner Asian Studies, Indiana University, 1995), 3 v.
- Brower, Robert H. and Miner, Earl. *Japanese Court Poetry* (Stanford: Stanford University Press, 1961).

- Brucker, Gene, *Renaissance Florence* (Berkeley, Ca.: University of California Press, repr., 1983).
- Buck, August, "Girolamo Cardano's *De propria vita*," *Annali d'Italianistica* 4 (1986), 80-90.
- Buehler, Arthur, *Sufi Heirs of the Prophet. The Naqshbandiyya and the Rise of the Mediating Sufi Shaykh* (Columbia, South Carolina: University of South Carolina Press, 1998).
- Buell, Paul D., "Mongol Emperor and Turkicization: The Evidence of Food and Foodways," in Reuven Amitai-Preiss and David O. Morgan ed., *The Mongol Empire and Its Legacy* (Leiden: Brill, 1999), 200-223.
- Burke, Peter, "Representations of the Self from Petrarch to Descartes," in Roy Porter ed., *Rewriting the Self* (London and New York: Routledge, 1997), 17-29.
- Buriev, A. B., "Svedeniya Hafiz-i Abru o vzaimootnosheniyakh Srednei Azii S Kitaem v XV v. XV v." in B. A. Litvinskii ed., *Iz Istorii Srednei Azii i Vostochnogo Turkestana XV-XIX* (Tashkent: "Fan," 1937), 24-37.
- Burnes, Alexander, *Travels into Bokhara* (London: John Murray, 1835), 3 v.
- Burkitt, Ian, "The Shifting Concept of the Self," *History of the Human Sciences*, 7 (1994), 7-28.
- Buzurg ibn Shahriyar, *Ajaib al-Hind, The book of the wonders of India: mainland, sea and islands* G. S. P. Freeman-Grenville ed. and trans. (London: East-West Publications, 1980).
- *Ajaib al-Hind, Les Merveilles de l'Inde* L. Marcel Devic ed. and trans. (Paris: A. Lemerre, 1878).
- Cahill, James, *The Compelling Image: Nature and Style in Seventeenth Century Chinese Painting* (Cambridge, Ma.: Harvard University Press, 1982).
- *Parting At the Shore: Chinese Painting of the Early and Middle Ming Dynasty 1368-1580* (Tokyo: Weatherhill, 1978).
- Cardan, Jerome (Cardano, Girolamo), *The Story of My Life (De Vita Propria Liber)* (New York N. Y.: E. P. Dutton, 1930).
- Carboni, Stefano, *Following the Stars: Images of the Zodiac in Islamic Art* (New York, N.Y.: The Metropolitan Museum of Art, 1997).
- Castiglione, Baldesar, *The Book of the Courtier* (London: Penguin, repr., 1976).
- Caton, Steven G., *Peaks of Yemen I Summon* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1990).
- Qelik, Ulkii, *All fir Nevayi, Leli vii Mecnun* (Ankara: Ataturk Kiltiir, 1996).
- Gervigni, Dino S., *The "Vita" of Benvenuto Cellini* (Ravenna: Longo Editore, 1979).
- Chadwick, Nora K. and Zhirmunsky, Victor, *Oral Epics of Central Asia* (Cambridge Cambridge University Press, 1969).
- Chakravarty, Kalyan Kumar, *Gwalior Fort* (Delhi: Arnold-Heinemann, 1984).
- Chekovich, O. D., *Samarkanskii Dokumenty xv-xvi* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1974).
- Chelkowski, Peter J. ed., *The Scholar and the Saint, Studies in Commemoration of Abu T Rayhan al-Biruni and Jalal al-Din al-Rumi* (New York, N.Y.: New York University Press, 1975).
- Clauson, Gerhard, *An Etymological Dictionary of Pre-thirteenth-Century Turkish* (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1972).
- Clavijo, Ruy Gonzalez de, *Clavijo, Embassy to Tamerlane, 1403-06* Guy Le Strange trans. and E. Denison Ross and Eileen Power ed. (New York, N.Y. and London: Harper, 1928).
- Cleaves, Francis Woodman and Kahn, Paul, *The Secret History of the Mongols* (San Francisco: North Point Press, 1984).
- Chingiz, Muhammed Yakub, *Kelur-Name* A. Ibragimova ed. (Tashkent: "Fan," 1982).

- Colin, G. S., Ayalon, D., Parry, V.J., Savory, R. M. and Khan, Yar Muhammad, "Barud," *Encyclopaedia of Islam*, New Edition 1 (Leiden: Brill, 1960), 1055-70.
- Courbier, Mireille, "The Broad Bean and the Moray, Social Hierarchies and Food in Rome," in Flandrin and Montanari ed., *Food, A Culinary History from Antiquity to the Present*, 128-40.
- Courteille, Abel Pavet De Courteille, *Dictionaire Turk-Oriental* (Amsterdam: Philo Press, repr. 1972).
- Crane, Howard, "The Patronage of Zahir al-Dm Babur and the Origins of Mughal Architecture," *Bulletin of the Asia Institute* 1 (1987), 95-110.
- Crowe, Yoland, "Some Timurid Designs and Their Far Eastern Connections," in Lisa Golombek and Maria Subtelny ed., *Timurid Art and Culture* (Leiden: Brill, 1992), 168-78.
- Daiber, H. and Ragep, F.J., "al-Tusi," Nasir al-Dm, Abu DjaTar Muhammad b. Muhammad b. al-Hasan (1201-74) *Encyclopaedia of Islam* New Edition P. J. Bearman et al ed. Fasc. 175-76, (Leiden: Brill, 2000), 745-52.
- Dale, Stephen Frederic, *Indian Merchants and Eurasian Trade 1600-1750* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1994).
- "The Legacy of the Timurids," *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* 3rd series, 8, 1 (April 1998), 43-58.
- "The Poetry and Autobiography of the Babur-nama," *The Journal of Asian Studies* 55, 3 (August 1996), 635-64.
- "Steppe Humanism: the Autobiographical Writings of Zahir al-Dm Muhammad Babur, 1483-1530," *International Journal of Middle Eastern Studies* 22 (1990), 37-58.
- and Payind, Alam, "The Ahrari Waqf in Kabul in the Year 1546 and the Mughul Naqshbandiyyah," *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 119, 2 (1999), 218-33.
- Dallal, Ahmad, "Science, Medicine and Technology," in John Esposito ed., *The Oxford History of Islam* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1999), 155-213.
- Dankoff, Robert, "The Turkic Vocabulary in the Farhang-i Zafan-guya," *Indiana University Research Institute for Inner Asian Studies* (Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana University Press, 1987).
- ed. and trans. *Wisdom of Royal Glory (Kutadgu Bilig)* A Turko-Islamic Mirror for Princes by Yusuf Khass Hajib (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1983).
- Dardess, John, *Conquerors and Confucians* (New York, N.Y.: Columbia University Press, 1973).
- Darley-Doran, R. E., "Timurids," "Numismatics," *Encyclopaedia of Islam*, New Edition, 10 fascs. 177-78, Th. Bianquis et al ed. (Leiden: Brill, 2000), 525-27.
- Davidovich, Elena A., *Istoriya Denezhnogo Obrashcheniya Srednevekovoi Srednei Azii* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1983).
- "The Monetary Reform of Muhammad ShTbanTKhan in 913-914/1507-08," in Devin DeWeese ed., *Studies on Central Asian History in Honor of Yuri Bregel* (Bloomington, Indiana: Research Institute for Inner Asian Studies, 2001), 129-85.
- And Mukhtarov, A., *Stranitsy Istorii Gissara* (Dushambe: "Irfon," 1969).
- Davis, Dick, *Borrowed Ware, Medieval Persian Epigrams* (Washington, D.C.: Mage, 1997).
- De Bruin, J. T. P., *Persian Sufi Poetry* (Richmond, Gt. Britain: Curzon Press, 1997).
- Delouche, Jean, *Recherches Sur Les routes de LTnde Au Temps des Mogols* (Paris: Ecole

- Frangaise D'Extreme-Orient, 1968), 57 Planche XI: "Types de Kos minar." and 2. Variations de valeur de kos." 77-81.
- Devereux, Robert trans., *Muhakamat al-Lughatain* (Leiden: Brill, 1966).
- Devic, L. Marcel ed. and trans., *The Book of the Marvels of India* Peter Quennel trans, (from French) (New York, N.Y.: Dial Press, 1939).
- DeWeese, Devin, *Islamization and Native Religion in the Golden Horde* (University Park, Pa.: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1994).
- Dickie, J., "The Hispano-Arabic Garden: Its Philosophy and Function," *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 31, 2 (1968), 237-48.
- Di Cosmo, Nicola ed., *Warfare in Inner Asian History*. 500-1800 (Leiden & Boston: Brill, 2002).
- Digby, Simon, *War-Horse and Elephant in the Delhi Sultanate, A Study of Military Supplies* (Oxford: Orient Monographs, 1971).
- Doerfer, Gerhard, "The Influence of Persian Language and Literature Among the Turks," in Richard G. Hovannisian and Georges Sabagh ed., *The Persian Presence in the Islamic World* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1998).
----- *Tiirkische und Mongolische Elemente im Neupersischen* (Wiesbaden: Franz Steiner, 1965-75), 4 v.
- Dughlat, Mirza Muhammad Haidar, *A History of the Moghuls of Central Asia, The Tarikh-i Rashidi of Mirza Muhammad Haidar Dughlat* N. Elias ed. and E. Denison Ross trans. (London: Curzon Press, repr. 1972).
- *Tarikh-i Rashidi, A History of the Khans of Moghulistan* W. M. Thackston ed. (Cambridge, Ma.: Harvard University, 1996).
- *Tarikh-i-Rashidi, A History of the Khans of Moghulistan* W. M. Thackston trans. (Cambridge, Ma.: Harvard University, 1996).
- *Ta'rikh-i Rashidi* A. Urunbaev et al ed. and trans. (Tashkent: "Fan," 1996).
- Dunbabin, Katharine M. D., "Ut Greaco More Biberetur: Greeks and Romans on the Dining Couch," in Inge and Hanne Sigismund Nielsen, *Meals in a Social Context, Aspects of the Communal Meal in the Hellenistic and Roman World* (Oxford: Aarhus University Press, 1998), 81-101.
- Durling, Robert M., *Petrarch's Lyric Poems* (Cambridge, Ma.: Harvard University Press, 1976).
- During, Jean, Mirabdolbaghi, Zia and Safvat, Dariush, *The Art of Persian Music* (Washington, D.G.: Mage, 1991).
- ed., *Chants de Bardes, Songs of the Bardes* (Geneva: Archives Interational De Musique Populaire, 1988).
- Dyke, C., "Strange Attraction, Curious Liason: Clio Meets Chaos," in *The Philosophical Forum* 21, 4 (Summer, 1990), 369-92.
- Eakin, John Paul, *Fictions in Autobiography* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1985).
- Eaton, Richard M., *The Rise of Islam and the Bengal Frontier 1240-1760* (California: University of California Press, 1993).
- Eckmann, Janos, *Chagatay Manual* Uralic and Altaic Series V. 60 (Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana University Publications, 1966).
- Harezm, Kipcak ve Cagatay Titrkgesi Uzerine Arafirmalar* (Anakara: Turk Dil Kurumu Yayinlari 635, 1996).
- Edelberg, Lennart and Jones, Schuyler, *Nuristan* (Graz, Austria: Akademische Druck- u. Verlagsanstalt, 1979).
- Edelman, D. L, *Yazyki Mira, Dardskie i Nuristanskies Yazyki* (Moscow: "Indrik," 1999).

- Elwell-Sutton, L. P., "Umar Khayyam," in *Persian Literature* 7 Ehsan Yarshater ed. (Binghampton, N.Y.: Biblioteca Persica, 1988), 147-60.
- Elphinstone, Mounstuart, *An Account of the Kingdom of Caubul and Its Dependencies in Persia, Tartary and India* (Delhi: Munshiram, repr. 1998).
- Erskine, William, *A History of India, under The Two First Sovereigns of the House of Taimur, Baber and Humayun* (London: Longman, Brown, Green and Longmans, 1854), 2 v.
- Eskander Beg Munshi, *History of Shah 'Abbas the Great* (Tarik-e 'Alamara-ye "Abbas!) (Boulder, Colorado and New York, N.Y.: Westview and Biblioteca Persica, 1978 & 1986), 3 v.
- Farhadi, A. G. Ravan trans., "*Makarim al-Akhlaq* (Exalted Standards of Virtues), A Short Treatise on the Character of Amir Ali Sher Navayi (1441-1501 a. d.) by Ghiyath-ad- Din Khwand Mir (1441-1535)," *Afghanistan Quarterly* 34, 1 (Spring 1981), 17-47.
- Faylov, E. I., *Starouzbekskii Yazyk* (Khorezmiiskie Pamyatniki XIV Veka) (Tashkent: "Fan," 1966), 2 v.
- Fear, A.T., *Rome and Baetica* (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1996).
- Field, Norma, *The Splendour of Longing* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1987).
- Fido, Franco, "At the Origins of Autobiography in the 18th and 19th Centuries," *Annali d'Italianistica* 4 (1986) 168-80.
- Fischel, Walter Joseph, *Ibn Khaldun and Tamerlane: Their Historic Meeting in Damascus A.D. 1401 (803)* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1952).
- "Ibn Khaldun's *Autobiography* In the Light of External Arabic Sources," *Studi orientalistici in onore di Giorgio Levi Della Vida* (Rome: Institute Per L'Oriente, 1956), 1, 287-308.
- Fitzgerald, John T., *Greco-Roman perspectives on friendship* (Atlanta, Ga.: Scholars Press, c. 1997).
- Flandrin, Jean-Louis and Montanari, Massimo, ed., *Food: a Culinary History from Antiquity to the Present* Clarissa Botsford trans. (New York, N.Y.: Columbia University Press, c. 1999).
- Fleischer, Cornell H., *Bureaucrat and Intellectual in the Ottoman Empire, The Historian Mustafa 'Ali, 1541-2600* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1986).
- "Soliman Le Magnifique Et Son Temps," *Rencontres De L' Ecole Du Louvre* (Paris: La Documentation Frangais, 1992), 159-77.
- Fletcher, Joseph F., *Studies on Chinese and Islamic Inner Asia* ed. by Beatrice Forbes Manz (Aidershot, Gt. Britain: Variorum, 1995).
- "Turco-Mongolian monarchic tradition in the Ottoman Empire," in *Studies on Chinese and Islamic Inner Asia* ed. by Beatrice Forbes Manz (repr. Aidershot, Gt. Britain, Variorum, 1995), 236-51.
- "The Naqshbandiyya in Northwest China," ed. by Jonathan Lipman in *Studies on Chinese and Islamic Inner Asia* ed. by Beatrice Forbes Manz (Aidershot, Gt. Britian, Variorum, 1995), 1-46.
- Fodor, Pal, "State and Society, Crises and Reform in 15th-17th Century Ottoman Mirror for Princes," *Acta Orientalia Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae* 40 (1986), 217-40.
- Folkenflik, ed., *The Culture of Autobiography: Constructions of Self-Representation* (Stanford, Ca.: Stanford University Press, 1993).
- Forster, E. M., "The Emperor Babur," in *Abinger Harvest* (London: Edward Arnold repr. 1936), 292-96.
- Fragner, Bert, *Persische Memoiren litterateur als Quelle zur Neuren Geshichte Irans* (Wiesbaden: Franz Steiner, 1979).

- Frederiksen, Birthe, *Caravans and Trade in Afghanistan* (London: Thames and Hudson, 1996).
- Freeman-Grenville, G. S. P., *The Book of the Wonders of India* (London: East-West Publications, 1981).
- Frye, Richard N., *The Heritage of Central Asia* (Princeton: Marcus Wiener, 1996).
- *Islamic Iran and Central Asia* (7th-12th centuries) (London: Variorum Reprints, 1979).
- "The Iranicization of Islam," in *Islamic Iran and Central Asia* (London: Variorum Reprints, 1993), 9, 1-7.
- Gallop, Annabel Teh, "The genealogical seal of the Mughal emperors of India," *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* 3rd ser. 9, 1 (April 1999), 77-140.
- Gandjei, T., *The Makarim al-Akhlaq A Treatise on 'Alishir Naval* by Ghiyath ad-Din b. Humam ad-Dm Muhammad "Khvandmir" (Cambridge: E. J. Gibb Memorial, 1979).
- Garborieau, Marc, Popovich, Alexandre and Zarccone, Thierry, *Naqshbandis* (Istanbul and Paris: Editions Isis, 1990).
- Gibb, (Sir) Hamilton, *The Travels of Ibn Battuta A. D. 1325-1354*, III (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1971).
- Golden, Peter B., *An Introduction to the History of the Turkic Peoples* (Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 1992).
- "T will give the people unto thee⁵: The Qinggisid Conquests and Their Aftermath in the Turkic World," *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* 3rd series 10, Pt. 1 (2000), 21-41.
- "Imperial Ideology and the Sources of Political Unity Amongst the Pre-Qinggisid Nomads of Western Eurasia," *Archivum Eurasiae Medii Aevi* 2 (1982), 37-76.
- "The Karakhanids and Early Islam," in Denis Sinor ed., *The Cambridge History of Early Inner Asia* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1990), 343-70.
- ed. *The King's Dictionary, The Rasulid Hexaglot* (Leiden: Brill, 2000).
- *Nomads and Sedentary Societies in Medieval Eurasia* (Washington, D.C.: American Historical Association, 1998).
- "Religion among the Qipqaqs of Medieval Eurasia," *Central Asiatic Journal* 42 (1998) 2, 180-237.
- Goldwater, Leonard J., *Mercury, A History of Quicksilver* (Baltimore, Md.: York Press, 1972).
- Golombek, Lisa, "From Tamerlane to the Taj Mahal," in Monica Juneja ed., *Architecture in Medieval India* (Delhi: Permanent Black, 2001), 315-27.
- "Tamerlane, Scourge of God," *Asian Art* II no. 2 (Spring, 1989), 31-61.
- and Subtelny, Maria, *Timurid Art and Culture* (Leiden: Brill, 1992).
- Gommans, Jos J. L., *The Rise of the Indo-Afghan Empire c. 1710-1780* (Leiden; Brill, 1995).
- and Kolff, Dirk, H. A., *Warfare and Weaponry in South Asia 1000-1800 A. D.* (Delhi: Oxford University Press, 2001), 1-42.
- Government of India, Publications Division ed., *Amir Khusrau Memorial Volume* (Delhi: Government of India, 1975).
- Gross, Jo-Ann, "The Economic Status of a Sufi Shaykh: A Matter of Conflict or Perception," *Iranian Studies*, 21, 1-2 (1988), 84-104.
- "Multiple Roles and Perceptions of a Sufi Shaikh: Symbolic statements of Political Power and Religious Authority," in Marc Garborieau, Alexandre Popovic and Thierry Zarccone ed. *Naqshbandis* (Istanbul/Paris: Editions ISIS, 1990), 109-21.

- "Naqshband! Appeals to the Herat Court: A Preliminary Study of Trade and Property Issues," in Devin DeWeese ed., *Studies on Central Asian History in Honor of Yuri Bregel* (Bloomington, Indiana: Research Institute for Inner Asian Studies, 2001), 113-28.
- Grupper, S.M., "A Barulas Family Narrative in the Yuan-shih: Some Neglected Prosopographical and Institutional Sources on Timurid Origins," *Archivum Eurasia Medii Aevi*, 8 (1992-94), 11-97.
- Gubaeva, S. S., *Ethnicheskii Sostav Naselenniya Ferghany v kontse XIX-nachale xxv.* (Tashkent: "Fan," 1983).
- Gulbadan Begim, *The History of Humayun (Humayun-Nama)* (Delhi: Idarah-i Adabiyat-i Delli, repr. 1972).
- Gulchln-i Ma'am, Ahmad, *Karvan-i Hind* (Tehran: Intisharat-i quds-i razavT, 1369/1990), 2 v.
- "Mushaf-i Babur!," *Name-yi Astan-i Quds* 24 (1344/1965), 60-64.
- Gutas, Dimitri, *Avicenna and the Aristotelian Tradition* (Leiden: Brill, 1988).
- *Greek Thought, Arabic Culture* (London and New York, N.Y.: Routledge, 1998).
- Habib, Irfan, *Akbar and His India* (Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1997).
- *An Atlas of the Mughal Empire* (Delhi: Oxford University Press, repr. 1986).
- Hafiz-i Abru, *Jughrafiya-yi Hafiz-i Abru: qismat-i rub^c-i Khurasan* Mayil HaravT ed. (Tehran: Bunyad-i Farhang-i Iran, 1349/1970).
- Haffenden, John, "What the Life leaves out: the biographer's tendency to put personality before poetry," *Times Literary Supplement* February 23, 1996, 14-16.
- Halil, Muhammad Ibrahim, *Mazarat-i Kabul* (Kabul: Doulati Press, 1339/1960-1961).
- Hamada, Masami, "Islamic Saints and Their Mausoleums," in *Acta Asiatica* 41 (1981), 79-98.
- Hamilton, Charles trans., *The Hedaya or Guide: a Commentary on the Mussulman Laws* (Lahore: New Book Co., repr., 1957).
- Hanaway, William L., "Blood and Wine: Sacrifice and Celebration in Manu-chir's Wine Poetry," *Iran* 26 (1988), 69-80.
- Haneda, Akira, "Problems of Turkicization," Problems of Islamization," in *Acta Asiatica* 41 (1981), 1-21.
- Hansen, Thomas Bloom, *The Saffron Wave, Democracy and Hindu Nationalism in Modern India* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1999).
- Hardy, Peter, *Historians of Medieval India* (London: Luzac, 1966).
- Harley, J. B. and Woodward, David., *Cartography in the Traditional Islamic and South Asian Sciences* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1992).
- Harris, Joseph and Reichl, Karl ed., *Prosimetrum: cross-cultural perspectives on narrative in prose and verse* (Cambridge: D. S. Brewer, 1997).
- Hasan, Hadi, "The Unique Diwan of Humayun Badshah," *Islamic Culture* 25 (1951), 212-76.
- Hasan-i Rumlu, *Ahsan al-tawdnkh* 'Abd al-Husayn Nava'T ed. (Tehran: Intisharat-i Babik, 1357/1978).
- Hasan, Mohibbul, *Babur* (Delhi: Manohar, 1985).
- Heinrichs, W. P. "Radlf," *Encyclopaedia of Islam* New Edition 8 C. E. Bosworth et al ed. (Leiden: Brill, 1995), 368-70.
- Hennessy, John-Pope ed., *The Life of Benvenuto Cellini, Written by Himself* John Addington Symonds trans. (London: Phaidon Press, repr. 1995).
- Herat!, Muhammad Husain ed., *Waqiat-i Shah Shuja*, Pts. I & II [Pt. 3 written by Herat!] (Kabul: Afghan Historical Society, 1954).

- Hillmann, Michael, "Afterward," in *Hafez: Dance of Life* M. and N. Batmanlij ed. (Washington, D.C.: Mage, 1988).
- Hitti, Philip K. trans, *An Arab-Syrian Gentleman and Warrior in the Period of the Crusades, Memoirs of Usamah Ibn Munqidh* (New York, N.Y.: Columbia University Press, 2000).
- Hodivala, Hormasji, *Historical Studies in Mughal Numismatics* (Bombay: Numismatic Society of India, 1976).
- Hornblower, Simon and Spawforth, Anthony ed., *The Oxford Classical Dictionary* (Oxford and N.Y.: Oxford University Press, 1996).
- Hosain, M. Hidayat ed., *Qanun-i Humayuni of Khwandamir* (Calcutta: Baptist Mission Press, 1940).
- Hovannisian, Richard G. and Sabagh, Georges ed., *The Persian Presence in the Islamic World* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1998).
- Hsiao, Ch'i-ch'ing, *The Military Establishment of the Tuan Dynasty* (Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press, 1978).
- Husain, Aga Mehdi, "India's Al-Biruni," in Zoe Ansari ed., *Life, Times and Works of Amir Khusrau Dehlavi* (Delhi: National Amir Khusrau Society n. d.).
- Husain, Ah Akbar, *Scent in the Islamic Garden* (Delhi: Oxford University Press, 2000).
- Hutchinson, H. D., *The Campaign in Tirah, 1897-98* (London: MacMillan, 1898).
- Hutchinson, John and Smith, Anthony ed., *Ethnicity* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1996).
- Inalcik, Halil, *The Ottoman Empire, The Classical Age 1300-1600* (London: Phoenix Press, repr. 2000).
- IsfizarT, Mu'Tn al-Dm Muhammad ZamchT, *Rauzat al-jannat fi ausaf madinat Harat 897-899 a.h. [1491-93]* Sayyid Kazim Imam ed. (Tehran: Tehran University, 1338-39/1969-60), 2 v.
- Jackson, Peter and Laurence Lockhart ed., *The Cambridge History of Iran, 6 The Timurid and Safavid Periods* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1986).
- Jackson, Peter, *Delhi Sultanate: A Political and Military History* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1999).
- "From Ulus to Khanate: the Making of the Mongol States," in Reuven Amitai-Preiss and David O. Morgan ed., *The Mongol Empire and Its Legacy* (Brill: Leiden, 1999), 12-38.
- Jalilov, SaTfiddin, *Bobur va Andizhon* (Tashkent: "Uzbekistan," 1993).
- *Bobirning Fargona Davlati* (Tashkent: "Fan" 1995).
- Javelidze, Elizbar, "On the Typology and Method of Research into Medieval Turkish Poetry." *Journal of Turkish Studies* 7 (1983), 263-72.
- Joshi, Rita, *The Afghan Nobility and the Mughals 1526-1707* (Delhi: Vikas Publishing, 1985).
- Juneja, Monica ed., *Architecture in Medieval India* (Delhi: Permanent Black, 2001).
- Jung, Willi, "Georg Misch's Geschichte der Autobiographic," *Annali D³ Italianaistica*, 4 (1986), 30-44.
- al-Juzjam, Abu 'Umar Minhaj an-Dm Usman ibn Siraj al-Dm, *Tabakat-i Nasin*, H. G. Raverty trans. (New Delhi: Oriental Books Reprint Corporation, repr. 1970), 2 v.
- *Tabaqat-i Nasin* Nasau Lees, Khadim Husain and 'Abd al-Hai ed. (Osnabriick: Biblio Verlag, repr., 1981).
- Kafadar, Cemal, *Between Two Worlds, The Construction of the Ottoman State* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1995).
- "Self and Others: the Diary of a Dervish in Seventeenth Century Istanbul

- and First-Person Narratives in Ottoman Literature," *Studia Islamica* (1989), 121-50.
- Kadyrov, Pirimkul, *fyzdnye Nochi* Yu. Suroteva trans. (Moskva: Sovetskii PisateF, 1983).
- Kafesoglu, I., "A Propos du nom Turkmén," *Oriens* 11 (1958), 146-50.
- Karamustapha, Ahmet, "Introduction to Islamic Maps," in *Cartography in the Traditional Islamic and South Asian Societies* 2, 1 of *The History of Cartography* Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1992), 3-11.
- Kary-Niyazov, T. N., *Astronomicheskaya Shkola Ulugbeka* (Moskva: Akademii Nauk, 1950).
- Kaye, G. R., "The Astronomical Observatories of Jai Singh," *Archeological Survey of India New Imperial Series* 15 (Calcutta, 1918).
- Kellert, Stephen, *In the Wake of Chaos* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1993).
- Kennedy, Edward S., *Astronomy and Astrology in the Medieval Islamic World* (Ashgate, Gt. Britain: Ashgate, 1984).
- "The Exact Sciences in Timurid Iran," in Jackson and Lockhart ed. *The Cambridge History of Iran 6 The Timurid and Safavid Periods* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1986), 568-80.
- Kerrigan, John ed., *William Shakespeare: the Sonnets and a Lover's Complaint* (London: Penguin Books, 1986).
- Khaldun, Ibn, *The Muqaddimah* Franz Rosenthal trans. (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1980), 3 v.
- Khalil, Muhammad Ibrahim, *Mazarat-i Shahr-i Kabul* (Kabul: Daulat-i matba'ah, 1339/1960-61).
- Khalidi, Tarif, *Arabic historical thought in the classical period* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1994).
- Khatmetov, A. Kh. and Kedrina, Z. S., *Istoriya Uzbeksoi Literatury* (Tashkent: "Fan" 1987).
- Khan, Iqtidar Alam Khan, "Early Use of Canon and Musket in India, AD 1442-1526," *Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient* 24, 2 (1981), 146-64.
- Khan, Iqtidar Alam, "Nature of gunpowder artillery in India during the sixteenth century—a reappraisal of the impact of European gunnery," *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* 3rd ser. 9, 1 (April 1999), 27-34.
- Khansari, Mehdi, Moghtader, M. Reza and Yavari, Minouch, *The Persian Garden, Echoes of Paradise* (Washington, D.C.: Mage, 1998).
- Khare, R. S., *The Hindu Hearth and Home* (Delhi: Vikas, 1976).
- Khasanov, S., *Babur* (Tashkent: Izdatel'stvo TsK Kompartii Uzbekistan, 1982), 2 v.
- "Khatdarabadsii Spisok Rukopisi Divana Babura," *Obshchestvennye Nauki v Uzbekistane* 12 (1979), 49-51.
- Khunji-Isfahani, Fadlullah b. Ruzbihan, *Tarikh-i Alam-Ara-yi A'imm* John E. Woods ed. with the abridged English translation by Vladimir Minorsky *Persia in A.D. 1478-1490* (London: Royal Asiatic Society, 1992).
- *Mihman-namah-i Bukhari*, Manuchihr Sutudih ed. (Tehran: BTNK, 1354/1976).
- *Suluk al-muluk* (Tehran: Intisharat-i Khwarazmi, 1362/1983).
- Khwandamir, Ghiyas al-Din b. Humam al-Din al-Husaym *Habib al-siyar fi akhbar afraad al-bashar* (Tehran: Intishariat-i Kitabkhanah-yi Khayyam, 1954), 4 v.
- Kim, Hodong, "The Early History of the Moghul Nomads: The Legacy of the

- Chaghatai Khanate," in Reuven Amitai-Preiss and David O. Morgan ed., *The Mongol Empire and Its Legacy* (Leiden: Brill, 1999), 290-318.
- King, David, *Astronomy in the Service of Islam* (Aldershot, Gt. Britain: Variorum, c. 1993).
- Kipling, Rudyard, "William the Conqueror," *In the Vernacular, the English in India* Randall Jarell ed. (New York, N.Y.: Anchor Books, 1963), 101-37.
- Kluckhohn, Clyde and Murray, Henry A., *Personality in Nature, Society and Culture* (N.Y.: Alfred A. Knopf, 2nd ed. 1953).
- "Personality Formation; the Determinants," in Kluckhohn and Murray, *Personality*, 53-71.
- Koch, Ebba, *Mughal Architecture* (Munich: Prestel, 1991).
- "Shah Jahan's Visit in Delhi Prior to 1648: New Evidence of Ritual Movement in Urban Mughal India," *Environmental Design* 9, 11 (1984), 18-29.
- Koprili-zade, M. F. "Babur'in shir'leri," *Milli tetubbu'lar mecmufasz* 1-2 1331/1915, 307-27 and 464-80.
- Kozmoyan, A.K., *Rubai v Kiassicheskoi Poezii na Farsi* (Erevan, Armenia: Izdatefstvo AN Armyansko SSR, 1981).
- Kramer, Martin ed., *Middle Eastern Lives* (Syracuse, N.Y.: Syracuse University Press, 1991).
- Kristeller, Paul Oskar, *Renaissance Thought: the Classic, Scholastic and Humanist Strains* (New York, N.Y., Harper, 1961).
- Kubo, Kazuyuki, "On Bina'T's *Shaybanz-nama*," and "A Critical Text of the *Shaybanz-nama* in Eiji Mano ed., *A Synthetical Study on Central Asian Culture in the Turco-Islamic Period* (Kyoto: Kyoto University, 1997), 26-61 & 1-93.
- Kuhzad, Ahmad 'All, *Balahisar-i Kabul* (Kabul: Doulati Press, 1326/1957).
- Kulke, Hermann, *The State in India 1000-1700* (Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1995).
- Lal, Ruby, "The 'Domestic World'³ of the Peripatetic Kings: Babur and Humayun, c. 1494- 1556," *Medieval History Journal* 4,1 (2001), 82.
- "Rethinking Mughal India, the Challenge of a Princess's Memoir," *Economic and Political Weekly* 38, 1 January 4, (2003), 53-65.
- Lambton, Ann K.S., "The Athar wa ahya³ of Rashid al-Din Fadi Allah Hamdan! and His Contribution as an Agronomist, Arboculturalist and Horticulturalist," in Reuven Amitai-Preiss ed., *The Mongol Empire and its Legacy* (Leiden: Brill, 1999), 126-54.
- *Continuity and Change in Medieval Persia* (London: I. B. Tauris, 1988).
- "Islamic Mirrors for Princes," in A. K. S. Lambton, *Theory and Practice in Medieval Persian Government* (London: Variorum, 1980), 419-42.
- "Soyurghal," *The Encyclopaedia of Islam* New Edition C. E. Bosworth et al ed. (Leiden: Brill, 1997), 731-34.
- "Tiyul," in *Encyclopaedia Islamica* New Edition Th. Bianquis et al ed. 10 fascs. 171-72 (Leiden: Brill, 1999), 550-51.
- Lane-Poole, Stanley, *The Coins of the Moghul Emperors of Hindustan in the British Museum* (Delhi: Inter-India Publications, repr. 1983).
- *Babar* (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1909).
- Laude-Cirtautas, Use, "On the Development of Literary Uzbek in the Last Fifty Years," *Central Asiatic Journal* 21(1977), 36-51.
- Lawrence, Bruce., ed. and trans., *Morals for the Heart* (New York, N.Y.: Paulist Press, 1992).
- Le Goff, Jacques, "After *Annales*: the life as history," *Times Literary Supplement* April 14-20, 1989, 394-96.

- Lejeune, Philippe, *On Autobiography* Katharine Leary trans, and Paul John Eakin ed. (Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press, 1989).
- "The Genetic Study of Autobiographical Texts," *Biography* 14 1 (Winter, 1991), 1-11.
- Lentz, Thomas, W., "Memory and Ideology in the Timurid Garden," in James Westcoat, Jr., and Joachim Wolschke-Bulmahn, ed. *Mughal Gardens* (Washington, D.C.: Dumbarton Oaks, 1996), 31-57.
- and Lowrey, Glenn D., *Timur and the Princely Vision* (Los Angeles and Washington, D.C.: Los Angeles County Museum of Art and Arthur M. Sackler Gallery, 1989).
- Levin, Theodore, *The Hundred Thousand Fools of God*, Musical Travels in Central Asia (And Queens, New York) (Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana University Press, 1996).
- Levi, Scott G., *The Indian Diaspora in Central Asia and Its Trade 1550-1900* (Leiden: Brill, 2002).
- Levy, Reuben, ed., *The Nasihat Kama known as Qabus Kama* of Kai Ka'us b. Iskandar b. Qabus b. WashmgTr (London: Luzac, 1951).
- Lewis, Eranklin D., "The Rise of a Persian Refrain, The Radif "Atash u Ab," in Suzanne Pinckney Stetkevych ed., *Reorientations: Arabic and Persian Poetry* (Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana University Press, c. 1994).
- Lindner, Rudi Paul, "How Mongol Were the Early Ottomans?" in Reuven Amitai-Preiss and David O. Morgan ed., *The Mongol Empire and Its Legacy* (Leiden: Brill, 1999), 282-89.
- Litvinskii, B. A., *Vostochnyi Turkistan i Srednyaya Aziya* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1984).
- Losensky, Paul, *Welcoming Fighanv. Imitation and Poetic Individuality in the Safavid-Mughal Ghazal* (Costa Mesa, Ca.: Mazda, 1998).
- Lukes, Steven, "The Meaning of Individualism," *Journal of the History of Ideas* 32,1 Jan.-Mar. 1971), 45-66.
- Mackenzie, D.N. ed. and trans., *Poems from the Divan of Khushal Khan Khattak* (London: George Allen and Unwin, 1965).
- Mahdi, Muhsin, *Ibn Khaldun's Philosophy of History* (London: George Allen and Unwin, 1957).
- Makdisi, George, "The Diary in Islamic Historiography," *History and Theory* 25,1 (1986), 173-85.
- Malti-Douglas, Eedwa, *Blindness and Autobiography: al-Ayyam of Taha Husayn* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1988).
- *Interpreting the Self Autobiography in the Arabic Literary Tradition* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 2001).
- Mano, Eiji, "An Attempt at a Critical Text of One Section of the *Tdrikh-i Rashidif* in Mano ed., *A Synthetical Study on Central Asian Culture in the Turco-Islamic Period* (Kyoto: Kyoto University, 1997), 6-25.
- ed., *Babur-Kama (Vaqayl)* (Kyoto: Syokado, 1995), II Concordance and Classified Indexes (Kyoto: Syokado, 1996).
- "The *Baburnama* and The *Tarikh-i Rashidi*'. Their Mutual Relationship," in Golombek and Subtelny ed., *Timurid Art and Culture* (Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1992), 44-47.
- "The Collected works of Babur preserved at the SaltanatT Library in Tehran," *Memoirs of the Research Department of the Toyo Bunko*, No. 57 (Tokyo: the Toyo Bunko, 1999), 175-200.
- "Moghulistan," in *Acta Asiatica* 41 (1981), 46-60.
- ed., *A Synthetical Study on Central Asian Culture in the Turco-Islamic Period* (Kyoto: Kyoto University, March, 1997).

- "The Weeping Willows Passage in the *Babur-namaf* in *Proceedings of the 27th Meeting of Haneda Memorial Hall* (Kyoto: Kyoto University Institute of Inner Asian Studies, 1930), 28-35.
- Manz, Beatrice, *Central Asia in Historical Perspective* (Boulder: Westview Press, 1994).
- "The Development and Meaning of Chaghatai Identity," in Jo-Ann Gross ed., *Muslims in Central Asia: Expressions of Identity and Change* (Durham, North Carolina: Duke University Press, 1992).
- "The Legacy of Timur," *Asian Art* 2, 2 (Spring, 1989), 10-29.
- "Mongol History rewritten and relived," in *Mythes historiques du monde musulman*, special issue of *Revue de monde musulman et de la Mediterranee* (2001), 129-49.
- *The rise and rule of Tamerlane* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1989).
- "Tamerlane and the Symbolism of Sovereignty," *Iranian Studies*, 21, 1-2 (1988), 105-22.
- "Tamerlane's Career and Its Uses," *Journal of World History* 13, 1 (Spring, 2002), 16-24.
- "Ulugh Beg," *Encyclopaedia of Islam* New Edition 10 P. J. Bearman et al ed. fascs. 177-78 (Leiden: Brill, 2000), 812-14.
- Masson M. E., and Pugachenkova, G. A. "Shakhri Syabz Pri Timure i Ulug Beke, ("Shahr-i Sabz From Timur to Ulugh Beg"), J. M Rogers trans. *Iran* 16 (1978), 103-26.
- Martines, Lauro, *Power and Imagination: City-States in Renaissance Italy* (New York: Knopf, 1979).
- Masashi, Haneda, "The Pastoral City and the Mausoleum City: Nomadic rule and City Construction in the Eastern Islamic World," in Sato Tsugitaka ed. *Islamic Urbanism in Human History* (London and N.Y.: Keegan Paul, 1997), 142-70.
- Mauhad, Ziya', "Qifah dar Sh'ir Farsi, Sa'dT, Shahr-i Qifasira" *Nashr Danesh* 14, 4 [1373/ 1994, 6-20.
- McChesney, R. D., *Central Asia, Foundations of Change* (Princeton: Darwin Press, 1996).
- "ShTbanT Khan," *Encyclopaedia of Islam*, New Edition 9 C. E. Bosworth et al ed. (Leiden: Brill, 1997), 426-28.
- "Some observations on "Garden" and its Meanings in the Property Transactions of the Juybari Family in Bukhara, 1544-77," in Attilio Petruccioli ed., *Gardens in the Time of Great Muslim Empires* (Brill: Leiden, 1997), 97-109.
- *Waqf in Central Asia 1480-1889* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1991).
- McCrindle, J. W., *Ancient India as Described by Megasthenes and Arrian* (Calcutta: Chatterjee, Chatterjee & Co., 1926).
- McWilliam, Gandia, "Truth's own dear beauty," (The early years of the remorseless, lyrical Mrs. Spark,) *Times Literary Supplement* July 24 1992, 5-6.
- Meier, Fritz, *Meister und Schuler im Orden der Naqsbandiyya* (Heidelberg: C. Winter, 1995).
- *Jwei Abhandlungen uber Die Naqsbandiyya* (Istanbul: Fritz Steiner Verlag, 1994).
- Meisami, Julie, "Allegorical Gardens in the Persian Poetic Tradition: Nezami, Rumi, Hafez," *International Journal of Middle East Studies* 17 (1985), 229-60.

- "The Body as Garden: Nature and Sexuality in Persian Poetry," *Eddebiyat* NS 6, No. 2 (1995), 245-74.
- *Medieval Persian Court Poetry* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1987).
- "Mixed Prose and Verse in Medieval Persian Literature," Joseph Harris and Karl Reichl ed., *Prosimetrum* Grosscultural Perspectives on Narrative in Prose and Verse (Cambridge: D. S. Brewer, 1997), 295-319.
- Melioranskii, P., "Dokument Ugurskago Pis'ma Sultana Omar'-SheTkha," in *fapiskie Vostochnogo Otdeleniia (Imp.) Russkovo Archeologicheskogo Obshchestva* 16 (1904), 1-12.
- Melville, Charles, *The Fall of Amir Chuppan and the decline of the Ilkhanate, 1327-37: A decade of discord in Mongol Iran* (Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana Research Institute for Inner Asian Studies, 1999).
- Menges, Karl H., *The Turkic Languages and Peoples* (Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2nd ed. 1995).
- Metcalf, Barbara D., "Narrating lives: A Mughul empress, A French Nabob, A Nationalist Muslim Intellectual," *Journal of Asian Studies* 54, 2 (May 1995), 474-80.
- Michalowski, Piotr, "The Drinking Gods: Alcohol in Mesopotamian Ritual and Mythology," in Lucio Milano ed. *Drinking in Ancient Societies, History and Culture of Drinks in the Ancient Near East* (Padua, Italy: Sargon srl, 1994), 27-44.
- Miklukho-Maklai, N. D., "Khondamir i 'Zapiski Babura," *Tyurkologicheskie Issledovaniya* (Moskva-Leningrad: "Nauka," 1963), 237-49.
- Milano, Lucio, ed., *Drinking in Ancient Societies, History and Culture of Drinks in the Ancient Near East* (Padua, Italy: Sargon srl, 1994).
- Minhaj al-Dm, Abu-'Umar-i 'Usman, *Tabaqat-i Nasin* (A General History of the Muhammadan Dynasties of Asia, Including Hindustan from A.H. 194 (810 A.D.) to A.H. 658 (1260 A. D.) H. G. Raverty trans and ed. (Delhi, India: Oriental Books Reprint Corporation, repr. 1970), 2 v.
- Minorsky, Valdimir, "Jihan-Shah Qara Qpyunlu and his Poetry," in *Medieval Iran and its Neighbors* (London: Variorum Reprints, 1982), 271-97.
- *Medieval Iran and its Neighbors* (London: Variorum Reprints, 1982).
- "The Poetry of Shah Isma'li," in *Medieval Iran and its Neighbours* (London: Variorum Reprints, 1982), 1006a-1053a.
- *Tadhkirat al-Muluk* (Cambridge: E. J. W. Gibb Memorial, repr. 1980).
- Mirza, Muhammad Wahid, *Khazain al-Futuh* (Lahore: National Book Foundation, 1975).
- *The Life and Works of Amir Khusrau* (Delhi: Idarah-i Adabiyat-i Delli, repr. 1974).
- *The Nuh Sipih of Amir Khusrau* (Calcutta: Oxford University Press, 1949).
- Misch, Georg, *Geschichte de Autobiographie* (Bern and Frankfurt: A. Francke and Gerhard Schulte-Bulmke, 1949-69), 2 v.
- *A History of Autobiography in Antiquity* E. W. Dickes trans. (London: Routledge, 1950).
- Misra, B. D., *Forts and Fortresses of Gwalior and Its Hinterland* (Delhi: Manohar, 1993).
- Mohuiddin, Momin, "A Soyurghal of Babur," *Indian Historical Records Commission Proceedings* 36, 2 (1961), 49-54.
- Moore, Charles ed., *The Status of the Individual in East and West* (Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1968).
- Moosvi, Shireen, "Making and Recording History—Akbar and The Akbar-nama" in Iqtidar Alam Khan, *Akbar and His Age* (Delhi: New Book Centre, 1999), 181-87.

- Morgenstierne, Georg., "Afghanistan," "Languages," in Ehsan Yarshater ed., *Encyclopaedia Iranica* (London: Routledge and Keegan Paul, 1985), 1, 501-25.
- *Indo-Iranian Frontier Languages* (Oslo: H. Aschehoug, 1929-), 4 v.
- Morris, Colin, *The Discovery of the Individual 1050-1200* (N.Y.: Harper Row, 1974).
- Morris, Ivan, *The World of the Shining Prince* (Baltimore, Md.: Penguin, 1969).
- Moynihan, Elizabeth B. "The Lotus Garden of Zahir al-Din Muhammad Babur," in Oleg Grabar ed., *Muqarnas* 5 (Leiden: E.J. Brill), 135-52.
- "But what a happiness to have known Babur!" in Westcoat, James L. and Wolschke-Bulman ed., *Mughal Gardens* (Washington, D.C.: Dumbarton Oaks, 1996), 95-126.
- Mubarakshah Marvar-rudT, Fakhr al-Dm, *Ta'rikh-i Fakhra d-Din Mubarakshah* (London: Royal Asiatic Society, 1927).
- Mukhtarov, A.[M.], "Inscriptions with Babur's Name in the Upper Reaches of the Zarafshan," *Afghanistan* 25 (September, 1972), 49-56.
- Mukminova, R. G., "The Timurid States in the fifteenth and sixteenth Centuries," in M. S. Asimov and G. E. Bosworth ed. *History of Civilizations of Central Asia* IV, 1 (Paris: Unesco, 1998), 347-63.
- Murphey, Rhoads, *Ottoman Warfare 1500-1700* (Rutgers, N.J.: Rutgers University Press, 1999).
- Murray, Oswyn, "Convivium," in Simon Hornblower and Anthony Spawforth *The Oxford Classical Dictionary* (Oxford and N.Y.: Oxford University Press, 1996), 387.
- "Forms of Sociality," in Jean-Pierre Vernant ed., *The Greeks* Charles Lambert and Teresa Lavender Fagan trans. (Chicago and London: University of Chicago Press, 1995), 218-53.
- "Symposium," in Hornblower and Spawforth, *The Oxford Classical Dictionary*, 1461.
- Nadzhip, E. N., "Prozaicheskoe Sochinenie XIV V. 'Nakhdz al-Faradis: Istoriya Izucheniya Kharakternye Osobennosti Yazika," in *Issledovaniya Po Istoriya Tyurskikh Tuzikov XI-XIV vv.* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1989), 137-46.
- "Tyurkskii Yazik DeliTsogo Sultanata xiv Veka," in *Sovetskaya Tyurkologiya* 2 (1982), 70-88.
- Nadelyayev, V. M., *Drevneturskii Slovar* (Leningrad: "Nauka," 1969).
- Naim, C.M., *fikr-i Mir* (Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1999).
- Nath, R. "Babur's Jai-Mahal at Fatehpur Sikri," *Studies in Islam* 18, Nos. 3-4 July/ October, 1981), 153-60.
- and 'Gwaliari,' Faiyiz, *Indian as Seen by Amir Khusrau* (in 1318 A.D.) Jaipur, India: Historical Research Documentation Programme, 1981).
- Nava'i, Mir 'Ali Shir, "BadaT al-Lugat" A. K. Borobkov ed. (Izdafestvo VochnoT Literartury, 1961).
- *Muhakamat al-Lughatain* Robert Devereux ed. and trans. (Leiden: Brill, 1966).
- Necipoglu, Giilru, "Geometric Design in Timurid/Turkmen Architectural Practice: Thoughts on a Recently Discovered Scroll and Its Recently Discovered Parallels," in Lisa Golombek and Maria Subtelny ed., *Timurid Art and Architecture* (Leiden: E.J. Brill, 1992), 48-66.
- "The Suburban Landscape of Sixteenth-Century Istanbul as a Mirror of Classical Ottoman Garden Culture," in Attilio Petruccioli ed., *Gardens in the Time of the Great Muslim Empires* (Brill: Leiden, 1997), 32-72.
- Needham, Joseph, Ping-Yii, Ho and Gwei-Jen, Lu, *Science and Civilization in China* 5, 3 "Chemistry and Chemical Technology: Spagyric Discovery and Invention..." (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1976).

- Nielsen, Inge and Nielsen, Hanne Sigismund, *Meals in a Social Context, Aspects of the Communal Meal in the Hellenistic and Roman World* (Oxford. Gt. Br.: Aarhus University Press, 1998).
- Oda, Juten, "Uighuristan," in *Acta Asiatica* Vol. 41 (1981), 22-45.
- Okada, Amina, *Indian Mughal Miniatures of the Mughal Court* Deke Dusinger trans. (New York; N.Y.: Henry Abrams, 1992).
- O'Kane, Bernard, *Timurid Architecture in Khurasan* (Costa Mesa, Ca.: Mazda, 1987).
- Ozdalga, Elisabeth ed., *Naqshbandis in Western and Central Asia* Transactions No. 9 (Istanbul: Swedish Research Institute in Istanbul, 1999), 17-45.
- Pandey, Awadh Bihari, *The First Afghan Empire in India 1451-1526* (Calcutta: Bookland, 1956).
- Pandey, Rajyashree, "Love, Poetry and Renunciation: Changing Configurations of the Ideal of Suki," *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* 3rd Ser. 5.2 (1995), 225-45.
- Pant, G. N., *Mughal Weapons in the Bdbur-nama* [sic] (Delhi: Agam Kala Prakashan, 1989).
- Parpagliolo, Maria Teresa Shepard, *Kabul: the Bagh-i Babur, a Project and a Research into the Possibilities of a Complete Reconstruction* II in *Restorations* Giuseppe Tucci ed., Rome: Institute Italiano Per il Medio Ed Estremo Oriente, 1972).
- Pascal, Roy, *Design and Truth in Autobiography* (London: Routledge and Keegan Paul, 1960).
- Paul, Jurgén, *Die politische und soziale Bedeutung de Naqshbandiyya im Mittelasian im 15. Jahrhundert* (Berlin and N.Y.: Walter de Gruyter, 1991).
- *Doctrine and Organization: the Khwajagan/Naqshbandiya in the First Generation After Baha'uddin* (Berlin: ANOR, 1998).
- "Forming a Faction: The Himayat System of Khwaja Ahrar," *International Journal of Middle East Studies* 23 (1991), 533-48.
- Pedersen, J., "Ibn Arabshah," *Encyclopaedia of Islam*, New Edition 3 B. Lewis et al ed. (Leiden: Brill, 1971), 711-12.
- Peters, F. E., "Science, History and Religion: Some Reflections on the India of Abu'l Rayhan al-Birum," in Peter J. Ghelkowski ed., *The Scholar and the Saint, Studies in Commemoration of Abu'l Rayhdn al-Biruni and Jalal al- Din al-Rumi* (New York, N.Y.: N.Y. University Press, 1975), 17-27.
- Petrucchioli, Attilio ed., *Gardens in the Time of the Great Muslim Empires Theory and Design* (Brill: Leiden, 1997).
- ed., "Mughal Architecture: Pomp and Ceremonies," *Environmental Design Journal of the Islamic Environmental Design Research Centre* 9, 1-2 (1991).
- Petrushevskii, I. P., "K Istarii Instituta SoTurgala," in V.V. Struve et al ed., *Sovetskoe Vostokovedenie* (Moskva, Leningrad: Akademii Nauk SSSR, 1949), 227-46.
- Pingree, D., "Ilm al-Hay'a," *Encyclopaedia of Islam*, New Edition 3 B. Lewis et al ed. (Brill: Leiden, 1971), 135-38.
- Pletnev, I. E. and Shvab, Yu. Z., "Arkhitekturnyi ansambf u mazara Khodzha Akhrara v Samarkande," in *Srednyaya Aziya v Drevnosti i Srednevekode* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1977), 160-64.
- Poliakova, E. A., "Timur as described by the 15th Century Court Historiographers," *Iranian Studies* 21, 1-2 (1988), 31-44.
- Pope-Hennessy, John, *Cellini* (N.Y.: Abbeyville Press, 1985).
- Porter, Roy, *Rewriting the Self* Histories from the Renaissance to the Present (London and N.Y.: Routledge, 1997).

- Pritchett, Frances, W. *Nets of Awareness* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1994).
- Quinn, Sholeh., *Historical Writing During the Reign of Shah "Abbas, Ideology, Imitation and Legitimacy in Safavid Chronicles* (Salt Lake City, Utah: The University of Utah Press, 2000).
- "Notes on Timurid Legitimacy in Three Safavid Chronicles," *Iranian Studies* 31,2 (1998), 149-58.
- Qureshi, Regula Burckhardt, *Sufi Music of India and Pakistan, Sound, Context and Meaning in Qawwali* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1986).
- Rachewiltz, Igor (De), "The name of the Mongols in Asia and Europe: A reappraisal," *Etudes Mongoles et Siberiennes* 27 (1996), 199-210.
- Rahim, M. A., *History of the Afghans in India A.D. 1545-163* (Karachi: Pakistan Publishing House, 1961).
- Rasanen, Martti, *Versuch Eines Etymologischen Worterbuchs Der Tiirksprachen* (Helsinki: Suomalais-Ugrilainen Seura, 1969-71), 2 v.
- Rashdi, S. Hassamuddin and Sabir, Muhammad eds., *Diwan of Bayram Khan* (Karachi: Institute of Central and West Asian Studies, 1971).
- Rashed, R. and Vahabzadeh, B., *Omar Khayyam the Mathematician* (New York, N.Y.: Biblioteca Persica, 2000).
- Ratchnevsky, Paul, *Genghis Khan, His Life and Legacy* Thomas Nivison Haining trans. (Oxford: Blackwells, repr., 1996).
- Ray, Sukumar, *Humayun in Persia* (Calcutta: Royal Asiatic Society, 1948).
- Reeder, Roberta, *Anna Akhmatova* (New York, N.Y.: St. Martins Press, 1994).
- Reichl, Karl, *Turkic Epic Poetry: Traditions, Forms, Poetic Structure* (New York, N.Y.: and London, Garland Publishing 1992).
- Reynolds, Dwight, "Arabic Autobiography," in Reynolds ed., *Arabic Autobiography, Edebiyat*, 7 (1997), 207-14.
- ed., *Interpreting the Self, Autobiography in the Arabic Literary Tradition* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 2001).
- Richards, John, *The Mughal Empire* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1994).
- Rickmers, W. Rickmer, *The Duab of Turkistan* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1913).
- Robertson, George Scott, *The Kafirs of the Hindu Kush* (London: Lawrence and Bullen, 1896).
- Roche, Thomas P., *Petrarch and the English Sonnet Sequences* (New York, N.Y.: AMS Press, 1989).
- Rodgers, Charles J., *Catalogue of The Coins, Pt. I, Coins of the Mogul Emperors of India* (Delhi: Inter-India Publications, 1985).
- Roemer, H. R., "Timur in Iran," in Peter Jackson and Laurence Lockhart ed. *The Cambridge History of Iran 6 The Timurid and Safavid Periods* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1986), 42-97.
- "The Successors of Timur," in *Ibid.*, 98-146.
- Rogers, Alexander trans, and Beveridge, Henry ed., *Tuzuk-i Jahangir or Memoirs of Jahangir* (Delhi: Munshiram, repr., 1978), 2 v.
- Roland, Alan, *In Search of the Self in India and Japan* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1988).
- al-Ramhurmuzi, Buzurg ibn Shahriyar, *"Aja'ib al-Hind* Muhammad Sa⁶Td al-Tarihi ed. (Bombay: Najafi House, 1987).
- Rosenthal, Franz, "Die arabische Autobiographic," *Studia Arabica [Analecta Onentaha]* 14 (1937), 1-40.

- Ross, E. Denison, "A Collection of Poems by the Emperor Babur [the "Rampur Diwan"] *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, n.s.6 (1910), i-43.
- and Power, Eileen ed., *Clavijo, Embassy to Tamerlane 1403-1406*, Guy Le Strange trans. (New York, N.Y.: Harper, 1928).
- Rousseau, Jean-Jacques, *The Confessions* J. M. Cohen trans. (London: Penguin, 1953).
- Rosset, L. F., "Le Padishah Baber (1483-1530): Son passage a Kaboul," *Afghanistan* 3 (1946), 36-46.
- Roux, Jean-Paul, *Histoire Des Grands Moghols, BABUR* (Paris: Fayard, 1986).
- "Recherche des Survivances Pre-Islamiques dans Les Textes Tures Musulmans: Le "Babur-Name," *Journal Asiatique* 256, 2 (1968), 247-61.
- Ruggles, D. Fairchild, *Gardens, Landscape, and Vision in the Palaces of Islamic Spain* (University Park, Pa.: Pennsylvania State University Press, 2000).
- Rypka, Jan, "History of Persian Literature Up to the Beginning of the Twentieth Century," in Jan Rypka ed., *History of Iranian Literature* (Dordrecht-Holland: D. Reidel, 1968), 71-309.
- Sachau, Edward C. ed. and trans., *Alberuni's India* (Delhi: Low Price Publications, repr. 1996).
- Safa, Z., "Persian Literature in the Timurid and Turkmen Periods." in Jackson and Lockhart ed., *The Cambridge History of Iran* 6, *The Timurid and Safavid Periods* (Cambridge: University Press, 1986), 913-28.
- Saguchi, Torn, "Kashgaria," in *Acta Asiatica* 41 (1981), 61-78.
- Saidi, Ahmad trans. and ed., *Rubdiyat of Omar Khayyam* (Berkeley, California: Asian Humanities Press, 1991).
- Salzman, Philip Carl, *Black Tents of Baluchistan* (Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian, 2000).
- SamarqandT, Daulatshah, *Tazkirah al-shu'ara* (Tehran: Khavar, 1338/1959).
- Sarwar, Ghulam, *History of Shah Ismakil Safawi* (Aligarh, India: by the author, 1939).
- Savory, R. M., "The Safavid State and Polity," *Iranian Studies* 7, 1-2 (Winter-Spring, 1974), 179-216.
- "Safawids," *Encyclopaedia of Islam*, New Edition, C.E. Bosworth et al ed., 7 (Leiden: Brill, 1995), 765-74.
- "The Struggle for Supremacy in Persia after the Death of Timur," *Der Islam* 40, 1 (1964), 36-65.
- Sauvaget, J., "Noms Et Surnoms De Mamelouks," *Journal Asiatique*, 238 (1950), 31-58.
- Sayih, Aydm, *Ulug Bey Semrkanddeki Him Faaliyeti Hakkinda Giyasiiddin-i Kdşi'nin Mektubu* Turk Tarih Kurumu Yaymlardin 7, No. 39 (Ankara: Turk Tarih Kurumu Basimevi, 1960).
- Scaglione, Aldo, "The Mediterranean's Three Spiritual Shores: Images of the Self between Christianity and Islam in the later Middle Ages," in Leigh A. Arrathoon ed., *The Craft of Fiction* (Rochester, Michigan: Solaris Press, 1984), 453-74.
- Schacter, Daniel L., *The Seven Sins of Memory, How the Mind Forgets and Remembers* (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2001).
- Schaeffer, Edward H., *The Golden Peaches of Samarkand* (Berkeley: University of California Press, repr. 1985).
- Scherer, M. A., *Annette Akroyd Beveridge: Victorian Reformer, Oriental Scholar* Unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, Ohio State University, 1995.
- Schimmel, Annemarie, "Babur Padishah, The Poet, with an Account of the Poetical Talent in his Family," *Islamic Culture* 24, 2 (April 1960), 125-38.

- "Hafiz and His Contemporaries," in *The Cambridge History of Iran*, 7, *The Timurid and Safavid Periods* Jackson and eds. (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1986), 929-47.
- *Islamic Calligraphy* (Leiden: Brill, 1970).
- "Turk and Hindu: A Poetical Image and its Application to Historical Fact," in Spero Vyronis ed., *Islam and Cultural Change* (Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 1975), 107-26.
- Schonig, Claus, *Finite Pradikationen und Textstruktur im Babur-name* (Haiderabad-Kodex) (Weisbaden: Harrassowitz, 1997).
- Schurmann, H. F., *The Mongols of Afghanistan* ('s Gravenhage: Mouton, 1962).
- Shaked, S., "Andarz and Andarz Literature in Pre-Islamic Iran," in Ehsan Yarshater ed., *Encyclopaedia Iranica* 2 (London: Routledge and Keegan Paul, 1997), 11-16.
- Sharma, Arvind, *Studies in "Alberuni's India"* (Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 1983).
- Sharma, Sunil, *Persian Poetry at the Indian Frontier, Mas'ud Sa'd Salman of Lahore* (Delhi: Permanent Black, 2000).
- Shuishki, Sergei E., "Some Observations on Modern Arabic Autobiography," *Journal of Arabic Literature* 13 (1982), 111-23.
- Shyam, Radhey, *Babar* (Patna: Janaki Prakashan, 1978).
- Siddiqi, Iqtidar Hussain, "Babur's Relations with Members of the Afghan Nobility in India," (1519 A.D.-1530 A.D) *Islamic Culture* 52 (1978), 241-61.
- *History of Sher Shah Sur* (Aligarh: P. C. Dwadash, 971).
- Siddiqi, Mahmudul Hasan, *Diwan of Bayram Khan* S. Hussamuddin Rashdi and Muhammad Sabir ed. (Karachi: Institute of Central and West Asian Studies, 1971).
- Silay, Kemal, *Nedim and the Poetics of the Ottoman Court* (Bloomington: Indiana: Indiana University Turkish Studies Series 13, 1994).
- Sims, Eleanor, "Painting in Timurid Iran," *Asian Art* 2, 2 (Spring, 1989), 62-79.
- Sirajdinov, S. Kh. ed., *Iz Istorii Nauki Epokhi Ulugbeka* (Tashkent, "Fan," 1979).
- Skrynnikova, T. D., "Siilde—The Basic Idea of the Chinggis-Khan Cult," *Acta Orientalia Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae* 56 Fasc. 1 (1992-93), 51-9.
- De Slane, M. G., "Autobiographic d' Ibn Khaldoun," *Journal Asiatique* 4th ser. 3 (1844), 5-60, 187-210, 291-308 & 325-53.
- Slater, William J., *Dining in a Classical Context* (Ann Arbor, Mi.: University of Michigan Press, 1991).
- Smith, Anthony D., *Ethnicity* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1996).
- Smith, Robin, "Logic," in Jonathan Barnes ed., *The Cambridge Companion to Aristotle* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1995).
- Smyth, William, "Early Persian Works on Poetics and Their Relationship to Similar Studies in Arabic," *Studia Iranica* 18.1 (1989), 27-52.
- Soucek, Svat, *A History of Inner Asia* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2000).
- Spence, Jonathan D., *Emperor of China* Self-portrait of K'ang-hsi (N.Y: Vintage Books, 1975).
- Spengemann, William C., *The Forms of Autobiography* (New Haven, Conn.: Yale University Press, 1980).
- Stebleva, I. V., "O Pravilakh Skandirovaniya v 'Traktate ob 'Aruze' Zakhiraddina Muhammada Babura," in *Pis'menniye Pamyatniki Vostoka* Ezhegodnik (1975) (Moskva: "Nauka," 1982), 102-16.
- *Razvitie Tyurskikh Poeticheskikh Form v XI Beke* (Moskva: Nauka, 1971).
- *Ritm i Smy'sl v klassicheskoi tyurkoyazychnoi poezii* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1993).
- *Semantika Gazeli Babura* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1982).

- "Some Notes on the Literary Skill of Zahiruddin Muhammad Babur," in *Gerhard Doerfer Festschrift, Journal of Turkish Studies* 13 (1989), 245-47.
- Steiner, George, "Portrait of the Artist as a Man," *New Yorker* April 7, 1986, 102.
- Stein, Burton, *Vijayanagara* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1989).
- Stewart, Devin, "The Humor of Scholars: the Autobiography of Nfmat Allah al-Jaza'iri (d.1112/1701)," *Iranian Studies* 22, 4 (1989), 47-81.
- Subtelny, Maria Eva, "Agriculture and the Timurid Chaharbagh: The Evidence from a Medieval Persian Agricultural Manual," in Attilio Petruccioli ed., *Gardens in the Time of the Great Muslim Empires* (Leiden: Brill, 1997), 110-28.
- "Art and Politics in Early 16th century Central Asia," *Central Asiatic Journal* 27.1-2 (1983), 121-48.
- "Babur's Rival Relations, A Study of Kinship and Conflict in 15th-16th Century Central Asia," *Der Islam* 66, 1 (1989), 102-18.
- "Centralizing Reform and Its Opponents in the late Timurid Period," *Iranian Studies*, 21, 1-2, (1988), 123-151.
- and Anas B. Khalidov, "The Curriculum of Islamic Higher Learning in Timurid Iran in Light of the Sunni Revival under Shah-Rukh," *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 115.2 (1995), 210-36.
- "Mirak-i Sayyid Ghiya And the Timurid Tradition of Landscape Architecture," *Studia Iranica* 24 (1995), 19-60.
- "Scenes from the Literary life of Timurid Herat," in Roger M. Savory and Dionisius A. Agius ed. *Logos Islamikos: Studia Islamica in honorem Georgii Michaelis Wickens* (Toronto, Canada: Pontifical Institute of Medieval Studies, 1984), 137-55.
- "Socioeconomic Bases of Cultural Patronage under the Later Timurids," *International Journal of Middle East Studies* 20, 4 (November 1998), 479-505.
- "The Sunni Revival Under Shah-Rukh and Its Promoters: A Study of the Connection between Ideology and Higher Learning in Timurid Iran," in E. J. Mano ed., *Proceedings of the 27th Meeting of Haneda Memorial Hall* (Kyoto: Kyoto Institute of Inner Asian Studies, 1993), 14-23.
- "The Symbiosis of Turk and Tajik," in Beatrice F. Manz ed., *Central Asia in Historical Perspective* (Boulder, Colo.: Westview Press, 45-61.
- "The Timurid Legacy: A Reaffirmation and a Reassessment," *Cahiers DAsie Centrale* 3-4 (1997), 9-19.
- "The VaqfTya of Mir 'A1TShir Nava'T as Apologia" *Journal of Turkish Studies* 15 (1991), 257-86.
- Sultan, Izzat, *Kniga priznanii Navoi* (Tashkent: Gafur Gulyam, 1985).
- Sultanov, T. L., "Obstoyatefstvo i Vremya Napisaniya 'Babur-Nama,'" in *Tyurkiskie i MongoVskie Pis'mennye Pamyatniki* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1992), 86-96.
- "'Tarikh-i Rashid!' Mirza Khaidara Duglata," in *Pis'mennye Pamyatniki Vostoka Ezhegodnik* (1975) Moskva; "Nauka," 1982), 116-135.
- Szabo, Albert and Barfield, Thomas J., *Afghanistan, an Atlas of Indigenous Domestic Architecture* (Austin: University of Texas Press, 1991).
- Symonds, John Addington trans., *The Life of Benvenuto Cellini* Introduction and notes by John Pope-Hennessy repr. (London: Phaidon, 1949).
- Szuppe, Maria, *Entre Timourides, Uzbeks and Safavides* (Paris: Association Pour L⁵ Avancement Des Etudes Iraniennes, 1992).
- "Les residences princieres de Herat. Problemes de continuite fonctionnelle entre les epoques timouride et safavide (lere moite XVIe siecle)" in Jean Calmard ed., *Etudes Safavides* Paris-Tehran: Institute Frangais de Recherche en Iran, 1993), 267-86.

- Tabibi, 'Abd al-Hakim, *Tarkih-i mukhtasar-i Harat dar ahd-i Timuriydn* (Tehran: Intishariat-i Hirmand, 1368/1989).
- Tamsh, Hafiz b. Mir Muhammad Bukhari, *Sharaf-nama-ii shakhi* M.A. Salakhe-dinova trans. and ed. (Moscow: Moskva: "Nauka," Chast' 1, 1983 & Chast' 2, 1989).
- Tapper, Richard, *Frontier Nomads of Iran* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1997).
- El-Tayib, Abdulla, "Pre-Islamic Poetry," in A. F. L. Beeston ed. *Arabic Literature to the end of the Umayyad Period* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1983), 27-111.
- Tekin, Talat, *A Grammar of Orkhon Turkic* (Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana University Press, 1981).
- Thackston, W. M. Jr., *Baburname* (Cambridge, Ma.: Harvard University Press, 1993).
- *The Baburname* (N.Y.: Oxford University Press, 1996).
- *A Millenium of Classical Persian Poetry* (Bethesda, Md.: Iran Books, 1994).
- Thapar, Valmik, *Land of the Tiger* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1997).
- Theisen, Finn, *A Manual of Classical Persian Prosody* (Wiesbaden: Otto Harrasowitz, 1982).
- Thomas, Edward, *The Chronicles of the Pathan Kings of Delhi* (Delhi: Munshiram, Manoharlal, repr. 1967).
- Tibi, Amin T., ed. and trans., *The Tibyan* (Leiden: Brill, 1986).
- Tumanovich, N. N. *Gerat v XVI-XVII vekah* (Moskva: "Nauka," 1989).
- Turan, Fikret, "On the Sentence Structure of Early Oghuz Turkish," *Central Asiatic Journal* 42, 1 (1998), 99-109.
- Turgunov, A., "K Etimologii Toponima 'Andizhan'," in B. A. Akhmedov ed., *Iz Istorii Srednei Azii i Vostochnogo Turkestana XV-XIX vv.* (Tashkent; "Fan," 1987), 130-36.
- Utas, Bo, "The Naqshbandiyya of Afghanistan on the Eve of the 1978 Coup d'Etat," in Elizabeth Ozdalga ed., *Naqshbandis in Western and Central Asia*, (Istanbul: Swedish Research Institute, 1999), 117-27.
- Vambéry, Hermann, *Cagataische Sprachstudien* (Leipzig: F.A. Brockhaus, 1867).
- Validi, Ahmet-Zeki, "Ein türkisches Werk von Haydar-Mirza Dughlat," *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 8 (1935-37), 985-89.
- Vetta, Massimo, "The Culture of the Symposium," in Jean Louis Flandrin and Massimo Montanari ed., *Food, A Culinary History from Antiquity to the Present* (London: Penguin, repr. 2000), 96-105.
- Waldman, Amy, "India's Big Dig: Will It Settle or Inflamm Controversy?" *New York Times*, 3 April 2003, p. A 9.
- Watson, Burton trans., *Records of the Grand Historian of China, the shih chi of ssu-ma tzien II The Age of the Emperor Wu 140-circa 100 B.C.* (New York, N.Y.: Columbia University Press, 1961).
- Watt, Montgomery trans., *The Faith and Practice of Al-Ghazali* (Oxford: One World Publications, repr., 1994).
- Weintraub, Karl Joachim, "Autobiography and Historical Consciousness," *Critical Enquiry* 1,4 June 1975), 821-48.
- The Value of the Individual, Self and Circumstance in Autobiography* (Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 1978).
- Welch, Anthony, "Gardens that Babur Did Not Like: Landscape, Water and Architecture for the Sultans of Delhi," in *Mughal Gardens* James L. Westcoat Jr., and Joachim Wolschke-Bulmahn ed. (Washington, D.C.: Dumbarton Oaks, 1996), 59-93.

- Welch, Stuart Cary, *A King's Book of Kings, The Shah Nameh of Shah Tahmasp* (London: Thames and Hudson, 1972).
- Westcoat, James L., Jr. and Wolschke-Bulmahn, Joachim, ed., *Mughal Gardens* (Washington: Dumbarton Oaks, 1996).
- "Picturing an Early Mughal Garden," *Asian Art* 2 (1989), 59-79.
- Westphal-Hellbusch, Sigrid and Soltkahn, Gisela, *Miltzen aus fentralasien und Persien* (Berlin: Museum fur Volkerkunde, 1976).
- Whitfield, Peter, *Astrology, A History* (New York, N.Y., Henry Abrams, 2001).
- Wickens, G. M., *The Bustan of Sa'di* (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1974).
- Wilbur, Donald N., "The Timurid Court: Life in Gardens and Tents," *Iran* 17 (1979), 127-33.
- Willis, Michael D., *Temples of Gopaksetra* (London: British Museum, 1997).
- Wittek, Paul, *The Rise of the Ottoman Empire* (London: Royal Asiatic Society, 1938).
- Wolff, Eritz, *Glossar zu Firdosis Schahname* (Hildesheim: Georg Olms, repr. 1965).
- Woods, John E., *The Aqqyunlu, clan, confederation and empire, a study in 15th/9th century Turko-Iranian Politics* (Minneapolis: Biblioteca Islamica, 1976).
- *The Timurid Dynasty Papers on Inner Asia* No. 14 (Bloomington, Indiana: Research Institute for Inner Asian Studies, 1990).
- Wu, Pei-yi, *The Confucian's Progress, Autobiographical Writings in Traditional China* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1990).
- Yarshater, Ehsan ed., *The Cambridge History of Iran*, 3(1) *The Seleucid, Parthian and Sasanian Periods* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1983).
- "Iranian National History," in *The Cambridge History of Iran* 5, 3 (1) (Cambridge: University Press, 1983), 359-477.
- ed. *Persian Literature* (Albany, N.Y.: Biblioteca Persica, 1988).
- "Persian Poetry in the Timurid and Safavid Periods," in Jackson and Lockhart ed. *The Cambridge History of Iran* 6, The Timurid and Safavid Periods, 1996), 965-994.
- Yazdi, Ghiyas al-Din'Ali, *Saadat nameh, ya Ruznamah-yi ghazavat-i Hindustan bih kushish-i Iraj Afshar* (Tehran: Miras-i Maktub, 1379/2000).
- Yazdi, Sharaf al-Dm 'A1T, *fafar-namah* A. Urunbaev ed. (Tashkent: "Lan," 1972).
- Young, M. L. J., Latham, J. D. and Serjeant, R.B., *Religion, Learning and Science and Science in the Abbasid Period* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1990).
- Yiicel, Bilal, *Babur Divam* (Ankara: Ataturk Kiiltur Merkezi, 1995).
- Yusefi, 'Alam Husain, *Bustan-i Soldi* (Tehran: SahamT-yi Intisharat-i Khwarazmi, 1359/1980).
- Yusofi, G.-H., "Andarz Literature in New Persian," in Ehsan Yarshater ed. *Encyclopaedia Iranica* 2 (London: Routledge and Keegan Paul, 1997), 16-24.
- Yusuf, Ali A., "The Self-Revelation of Babar," *Journal of the United Provinces Historical Society* 3, 2 (1926), 61-82.
- Zilli, Ishtiyag, Ahmad, "Development of Insha Literature to the end of Akbar's Reign," in Muzaffar Alam et al ed., *The Making of Indo-Persian Culture* (Delhi: Manohar, 2000), 309-50.

GLOSSARY

GENERAL.

Ark (T) (Jl) —Interior of a fortress, a citadel, a seat of power.

Aymaq (T) (<3Lu) —family, clan or subdivision of a tribe. (Mongol—*ayman*).

Amir (A) (j l) —Superior military or political rank, see also beg.

Ariq (T) (3 l) —irrigation channel.

Beg (T) (du) —superior military rank. (Ottoman *-bey*).

Beg atekheh (T) (<£J du) —Military guardian/tutor.

Buluk (T) (djl) —An administrative division, sometimes a subdivision of a *tuman*.

Chaghatay (T-M) (Lii) —1. Chingiz Khan's second son, and his descendants. 2. The nineteenth century European name for the Turkic language spoken in Chaghatay Khan's dominions.

Chaharbagh (charbagh) (P) (£L jl .) —Garden bisected by four water courses, sometimes but not always symmetrical.

Chapqun (T) (jj-LL) —A raid by horsemen.

Eshik ikhtiyar! (T-A) (jLukldwnl) —“Lord of the Gate;” Beg trusted with administrative and/or military authority; also “ulugh ve ikhtiyar beg” and “sahib-i ikhtiyar.” See especially BN-A, 606-09.

Fatrat (A) (syA) — intermission, interval, interregnum.

Gunya (Gr) (LpS) —rectangularity.

Hamkasah (P) (<Uul<LA) —boon companion. See also *nadim* and *musdhib*.

Ichki beg (T) (dL J) —military rank, second to *beg*.

Il (T-M) (JJ) — tribe, people, see also *ulus*.

Khan, Qan or Qa'an (T-M) (jli <jLk)—chief/leader of Mongol/Turkic tribal confederation/empire.

Kokeltash (M-T) (iJjK <ḡLKj)—foster brother or sister, “milk-brother.”

Kiirgen (M) (کورگان)—Son-in-law; title taken by Temur and Ulugh Beg.

Mal-i aman (P) (jLI JU)—indemnity levied on conquered cities/territories.

Mawarannahr (A) (JfljjU)—Transoxiana, lands northeast of the Amu Darya river.

Mulkgirlıq (A-P-T) (dJ lñ <3JjaC<L)—conquest, imperialism.

Musahib (A) (<_ L a)—boon companion. See also *hamkdsah* and *nadim*.

Nadim (A) (j:)—boon companion. See also *hamkdsah* and *musahib*.

Nokor, Naukar (M-T-P) (نوکور، نوکر)—liegeman, follower, dependent, servant.

Orchin (T-M) (j jjl)—a district, see also *tuman*, *parganah*.

Qaum (A) ()—tribe, people, family.

Qazaq (T) (jlj2)—stateless or homeless; a warrior or raider.

Qauchin (M) (j j2)—an hereditary military class and/or social group.

Sahib Qiran (A) (jl j <_ L) “Lord of the Fortunate [Astrological] Conjunction.” Title given to Timur and afterwards to Shah Jahan as the “Sam” or second Timur.

Shahrūkhi (P) (A Li)—Timurid silver coin, sometimes known as *tangah* (T) or *tangah-i misqdli* (T-A).

Tagha'i, Taghayi (T) (£\$UIL < 13-3 ULj)—Maternal uncle.

Tamgha (M-T) (Llg)—seal, tax-stamp; urban commercial tax.

Tumen, tuman (M-T) —10,000 fighting men, a district supporting 10,000 men. See also *orchin* and *parganah*

Tuqqan (T) (توغقان, توققان)—relation, children of the same mother.

Tuqqanliq (T) (توققانلىقى)—blood relationship, uterine relation.

Uruq (T) (Jjjj) family; camp or entourage.

Ulus (T-M) (chijl) (T-M)—tribe or people; gathering.

Vilayat [lar] (A-T) —district; homeland; for Babur Mawarannahr. See also *watan* (A).

Yigach (T) (Uuj)—a variable distance, sometimes a mile, sometimes a *farsang* (2-4 miles).

Yigit (T) (pXj —literally “youth,” usually an individual warrior with no independent following or means.

POETRY.

Bayt (A) (cw)—verse or line of a poem

Ghazal (A) (Jyi)—lyric or ode, poem of approximately 6-15 lines with rhyme aa, ba, ca etc. for the *misras* or half-lines of each *bayt* or verse.

Masnavi (A) —poem usually longer than a ghazal of unrestricted subject and length rhyme aa, bb, cc for the *misras* or half-lines of each *bayt* or verse.

Misra^c (A) —half-line of verse.

Matla^c (A) —first *bayt* or line of a poem.

Maqta^c (A) —last *bayt* or line of a poem.

RadTf (A) —the word following the rhyme.

Ruba'i (A) —poem of two *bait*s or four *misras* with rhyme aaba for the *misras* of each *bayt* or verse.

Qasidah (A) —Eulogy, sometimes mystical verse of multiple lines with rhyme ab, ab for the *misras* or half-lines of each *bayt* or verse.

Qit'ah (A) —short poem, usually 2-15 lines, unrestricted topic with rhyme ab, ab for the *misras* of each *bayt* or verse.

Takhallus (A)— —the signature and/or pen name of the author, often found in the penultimate line in *ghazals* or in *rubais*.

GEOGRAPHY'.

1. *Mawarannahr and Northern Afghanistan*'. 2. *Kabul and Southern Afghanistan*'.

Andijan—J 1.

Adinapur—آدینه‌پور.

Aura Tipa—Lp Ijjl.

Bamian—J LoL

Badakhshan—J LAAjj.

Bajaur—بجور.

Balkh—£_L.

Bannu—jly

Bukhara—lj LAj

Gardez—کردیز.

Ferghanah—<SLc.ji.

Ghazni—غزنی.

Hisar—حصار.

Harat—هری.

Khuja and—خجند.

Istalif—<aJLkujI.

Isfarah—اسف&.

Pamghan—J ULm.

Marghinan—J 1A A.م.

Qandahar—j Laala.

Qarshi—ijl

Qunduz—jjAs.

Samarqand—الاسمر.

Sukh—£ j-cu.

Ush—اوش.

Uzgend—اوزگند.

3. *India'*.

Agra—ajSL

Alwar—jjl l.

Bayanah— Lu.

Bherah—بهر5.

Chandiri—چند جج

Chitor—چتر.

Delhi—Jj

Dhulpur—jjJ j a.

Gwalior—j LJl ك

Kanwah—6لجSl£.

Lahore—لاهور.

Panipat—cu-aSL

Ranthambo r—jj-LASj •

Sambal—سنبل

INDEX

- Aba Bakr Dughlat Kashgari. *See* Dughlats
- Abbasid Caliphate 162
- ‘Abd al-Ghafur Lari 143
- ‘Abd al-Rahman Afghans 305-06
- ‘Abd al-Razzaq Mirza. *See* Miranshahi Timurids
- ‘Abd al-Shahid. *See* Naqshbandis
- Abu ‘‘Amir (Ibn Shuhayd) 84. *See also* gardens and Spain
- Abu 4 Fazl ‘AllamT67, 302, 400, 447, 464-65, 466
- Abul Khayr Khan (Uzbek) 78
- Abul Muhsin Mirza. *See* Bayqara Timurids
- Abu Said Mirza. *See* Miranshahi Timurids
- Adalat* (justice) 145, 179, 314. *See also* ‘‘just sultan’’
- Adam 395-96. *See also* Amir Khusrau Dihlavi
- Adinapur, Afghanistan 184, 229, 309, 314, 316, 356, 363, 372. *See also* gardens
- Afghans 1, 6, 15, 49, 61, 62, 64, 149, 157, 161, 163, 164, 166, 182, 187-200, 229, 230, 293, 295, 298, 299, 302, 303, 304, 306, 309, 310, 323, 325, 327, 328, 329, 335, 336, 338, 341, 342, 343, 346, 347, 353, 356, 368, 371, 389, 406, 409, 410, 411, 414, 416, 418, 419, 420, 421, 423, 427, 434, 439, 440, 441, 442, 457, 458, 459
- military tactics 198 & n. 30
- Afghanistan 1, 3, 5, 7, 12, 13, 23, 41, 44, 52, 56, 64, 74, 75, 78, 88, 112, 137, 150, 187-200, 216, 229, 230, 241, 246, 286, 289, 291, 306, 318, 340, 353, 355, 363, 367, 380, 384, 385, 390, 403, 404, 405, 411, 423, 427, 449, 450, 461, 467
- Afridi Afghans 308
- Agra 42, 52, 62, 67, 100, 135, 168, 231, 246, 296, 298, 299, 300, 306, 320, 335, 336, 337, 343, 344, 345, 352, 353, 355, 357, 358, 360, 366, 367, 371, 372, 404, 409, 410, 411, 412, 413, 414, 419, 421, 423, 425, 426, 446, 447, 448, 451, 453
- Ahmad Shah Durrani, Afghan 193
- Ahmad Shah KhiljiT 417
- Ahrari Naqshbandis. *See* Naqshbandis
- Ahsan al-tawdnkh* 8, 9
- Ajar, Afghanistan 129, 204, 207
- Akbar b. Humayun b. Babur 3, 168, 258, 301-02, 312, 337, 345, 375, 400, 409, 441, 445, 447, 460, 461, 463, 464
- Akbar namah* 67 & n. 1
- akhldqco&e* 173, 174
- Akhlaq-i Humayun* 174
- Akhsi, Ferghanah 85, 101, 102, 104, 105, 125, 126, 127, 142, 200, 204, 251, 353
- ‘Ala³ al-Dm 293. *See also* Swat
- Ala⁵ al-Dm KhiljiT 331
- Alamgest* 142
- alcohol and drugs. *See* Babur, alcohol and drugs
- Alexander the Great 142, 338
- WzmlO, 33, 96, 140, 169, 331
- ‘Ali Masjid, Afghanistan 322
- ‘Alishang, Afghanistan 229
- Allahabad, India 439, 440
- Allsen, Thomas T. vii
- Almaligh, Mughulistan 55
- Almatu (Almafi), Mughulistan 56
- Alti Shahr, Mughulistan 76, 103, 168
- Alwar Mirza b. Babur 45 1
- Alwar, India 350
- Ambalah, Panjab, India 325-26
- Amir Khusrau Dihlavi 103, 145, 251, 259, 262, 356, 360, 377, 392-40
- Amu Darya River. 21, 82, 188, 246, 291, 317, 318. *See also* Oxus River
- Anatolia 18, 19, 20, 151, 162. 328
- anca(simurgh)* 32
- Andarab province 189
- Andarab River, Afghanistan 130, 132, 202
- andarz* literature 177-78,
- Andijan, Ferghanah 46, 63, 72, 84, 85, 87, 88, 90, 92, 93, 96, 97, 98, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 109, 110, 112, 115, 121, 124, 127, 130,

- 142, 150, 154, 155, 157, 166, 179, 184, 188, 189, 191, 203, 223, 241, 244, 251, 256, 264, 304, 470
- Annales*, *Annaliste* 2-3, 12. *See also* Bloch
- appanage politics 69, 74, 85, 105, 200-07, 212, 230, 241, 406, 423
- Aq Begim 170
- Aq Quyunlu 1, 18 & n. 9, 20, 21, 294, 337
- Aqsu, Mughulistan 76, 165
- Arab (s) 29, 37, 146, 163, 164, 389
- Arabic usage and terminology 53, 54, 58-59, 97, 140, 145, 152-6 and 154 n. 58, 161, 179, 252, 359, 364, 398, 437
- Arabo-Persian 46, 268
- Aral Sea 75, 78, 385. *See also* Khwarazm
- Arat, Reşit Rahmeti vii
- Arayish Khan 416
- Arghuns 215, 224, 227, 228, 317
- Muhammad MuqTm 93, 132-33, 209, 222
- Shah Beg/Shuja' Beg 93, 222, 319, 320
- Zu'nNun 209, 13, 222, 282
- Aristotle 68, 142, 164, 391, 401
- ashrar* 99-100. *See also* *qazaq*
- 'Ashiqa 400, 402. *See also* Amir Khusrau DihlavT
- Asia 465
- ashraqi*. *See* coinage, Timurid
- "Askari b. Babur 406, 427, 433, 439, 459, 460
- Astarabad, Iran 214
- astrology 420
- astronomy 140-42. *See also* Ulugh Beg
- Ataturk, Mustafa Kemal 145
- Atun 120
- autobiography. *See also* Babur
- American 24
- Babur 1, 3 & n. 3, 4, 5, 7, 10, 11, 12, 23, 24, 26, 36, 47, 85, 135, 147
- Chinese 3, 8
- definition 37-38 & 37 n. 68, 39 n. 74
- European 3, 24, 26, 27, 29, 135, 467
- Islamic/Middle Eastern 3, 27-36 & 28 ns. 40-41, 45, 47, 52
- Japanese 54
- purpose 38-45
- "Ayisha Sultan Begim 106-07, 116
- aymaq* 160, 161, 305. *See also* Mongols
- Ayodhya, India 468-69
- Aisin Temur Sultan. *See* Chaghatay ChingTzids
- Azimdzhanova, S. A. vii, 4, 5, 6, 9, 232, 409
- Baba Aughuli 226
- Baba Dust Such! 375
- Baba Quli Beg 92
- Baba Shaykh 303
- Babbinger, Franz 22
- Babri Masjid 2, 442-43, 468-69. *See also* Babur, BJP and World Hindu Council
- Babur, Zahir al-Din Muhammad
- Afghans, attitude toward 163-65, 293-94, 298, 304-06
- alcohol and drugs 35, 37, 50, 57, 79, 143-44, 167, 180-82, 211-12, 261, 282, 286, 289, 293, 300-01, 303, 307, 310-12, 315-16, 322, 326, 345, 373, 381, 382-83, 420, 429, 432, 435, 437, 438, 439, 462. *See also* *suhbat*
- architecture, aesthetics 373-74, 377-79. *See also* Gwalior and Samarqand
- autobiography (*Vaqd'is*), signposts 49, 59, 114-15, 183, 209, 313-14, 332
- battles 224-27, 235-37, 243-45, 327-34, 349-51
- battle formations/tactics 224-25, 227, 330 & n. 98, 350, 416. *See also* fire-arms & *tulghamah*
- brothers, relations with 200-07. *See also* appanage
- commercial policies 194-95., 223, 233
- diwan(s)* 248, 257, 271, 274, 276, 280, 283, 285, 286, 288, 339, 412, 431, 433-34, 464
- emotional life 46-47, 96, 106-110, 127-28, 215, 256, 340, 354, 404, 412, 453-54. *See also* maturity, age of and poetry, emotional content
- etymology 15 & n. 2
- Foundation, in Andijan 470
- gardens 183-86, 313-14, 325, 371-73, 379-80
- geometry 313-15, 371-73, 378, 386, 462-63
- genealogy 38-40
- ghazi* 348-51, 401
- illness 51, 282, 287, 304, 306, 354, 412-13, 423-25

- inscription, Mawarannahr 122 & n. 159
 India, attitude toward 358-76
 Islam, Sunni practice 168-77
 language 148-56
 Mongols, attitudes toward 117, 163-65, 194
 motive for conquest 158-60, 193, 292, 297, 304, 317, 347, 349. *See also* legitimacy and *mulkgirliq*
 poetry 1, 4, 11, 50, 108-110, 123-24, 159, 177-79, 198, 205, 221, 247-49, 255-60, 264-89, 275, 278-80, 439
du-bayti 348
 emotional content 47 n. 93, 51, 106 & n. 109, 248, 279, 285 n. 109, 288, 429-33
ghazals 198, 266, 269-80, 284-86, 288, 289, 430
masnavi 288
 missing *diwan* 285
 Persian 256-57, 264-65, 281, 286, 346, 348
 prose and poetry 288-89
qit'ah 284-85
rubdi 266, 268, 269, 270, 280-84, 286, 289, 339, 340, 351, 412, 429, 430, 432, 437
 Turk! 264-65, 268, 271, 276, 280, 281, 287, 339, 346, 348, 426, 464, 466
 quantification 59-60, 359, 425-26
 Rajputs, relations with 343, 346-54, 413-18, 419-20
 Renaissance man 464, 466-67
 renunciation, of alcohol 345-47, 432, 437-39
 ShTl Islam,
 attitude towards 170, 235
 practice of 170, 234-35, 238-39, 242
 softs, reverence for 113, 174-77, 199. *See also* ChishtTs and Naqshbandls
 symposium 179-86. *See also suhbat*
 truthfulness 60-65, 220
 Turco-Mongol custom, attitude towards 170-71
 Uzbeks, relations with. *See* Uzbeks
Vaqad 23-27 & 23 n. 25, 37-66, 82, 114, 149, 171, 179-80, 256, 274, 280, 281, 285, 288, 289, 301, 302, 312, 317, 326, 349, 355, 356, 358, 359, 364, 372, 374, 375, 376, 404, 412, 416, 421, 429, 435, 442, 443, 444, 448, 452, 455, 458, 465, 466, 468
 wine. *See* Babur, alcohol and drugs, symposium and *suhbat*
 Babur! 46, 107-09, 256, 260. *See also* emotional life
 Babur! script 434
Babur: Starry Nights 3
 Badakhshan (i) 55, 75, 78, 93, 128, 194, 201, 203, 206, 221, 223, 233, 292, 304, 308, 310, 322, 323, 333, 338, 352, 403, 404, 405, 406, 411, 448, 449, 460,
 Bad? al-Zaman Mirza. *See* Bayqara Tlmurids
 Baghdad 138
Bagh-i Dilkushd, Samarqand 379
Bagh-i Fath, India 448
Bagh-i Jahan-Aray, Harat 185
Bagh-i Kaldn, Kabul 180, 313, 314
Bagh-i Khiaban, Kabul, 436
Bagh-i Maidan, Samarqand 379-80
Bagh-i Sefid Harat 382
Bagh-i Vafit Adinapur 309, 310, 315, 322
Bagh-i gftghdn, Harat 114
Bagh-i Zarfshdn, Agra 434, 450
bahadur, *See also* alcohol and drugs
 Bahlul Ludl. *See* Ludls
 Bahlulpur 407
 Bajaur, Afghanistan 281, 291-94, 295, 302, 307, 364
 Balkans 18
 Balkh, Afghanistan 194, 207, 208, 210, 232, 291, 292, 304, 318, 319, 321, 322, 333, 380, 423, 442
 Balkh! 448
 Baltic Republics 469
 Baluch! 324
 Bamian, Afghanistan 129, 201, 206, 207, 217, 232
 Banaras 390, 408
 Bangash, Afghanistan 197, 304
 Bangash Afghans, 304
 Banna¹, Mulla 115, 214, 264-66, 437
 Bannu, Afghanistan 189, 197, 198, 189, 197, 198

- Baqi Beg Shighavul 442-43. *See also* Babri Masjid
- Baqi Billah Birang 177. *See also* Naqsh-bandTs
- BaqiChaghanianT93, 128, 129, 131, 191-92, 205, 206
- Bara Kuh, Ferghanah 183
- Baran, Afghanistan 221
- Baran River, Afghanistan 201
- Bayanah, India 160, 336, 343, 344, 345, 358, 367, 404, 408, 410, 419
- Bayqara, Sultan Husayn Mirza. *See* Bayqara Timurids
- Bayqara, Timurids
- Abul Muhsin Mirza 84, 208
- Badi^cal-Zaman Mirza 62, 83, 84, 167, 208-214, 218, 382
- Ibn-i Husayn Mirza 84
- Kipik Mirza 84
- Muhammad Sultan Mirza 328, 330, 344, 459
- Muhammad Zaman Mirza 292, 318, 322, 408, 422, 439, 452, 459
- Muzaffar Mirza 84, 167, 208, 214, 218, 382-83
- Sultan Husayn Mirza 6, 70, 75, 78, 79, 80-84, 96, 99, 101, 113-15, 118, 127, 133, 138, 146-47, 152, 157, 161-63, 167, 169, 170, 178, 185, 188, 202, 206, 207, 208, 211, 214, 215, 251, 252, 254-55, 256, 301, 303, 318, 332, 345, 382, 383, 408, 410, 422, 427, 452, 459, 465
- Bayram Khan 337
- Baysunghur Mirza. *See* Miranshahi Timurids
- Bedouin 164
- beg* 89, 90, 91-92, 94, 95, 103, 104, 105, 118, 120, 128, 131, 132, 144, 168, 180, 191, 227, 228, 256, 306, 308, 323, 326, 327, 332, 335, 344, 347, 407, 425, 434, 458, 463
- beg atekeh* 69, 85, 89, 90, 103, 142, 200, 241, 318
- Begchik
- (Mir) Ayub Beg 226, 233, 246
- Ibrahim Beg 259
- Muhammad Beg 226
- Beg Tilbah 98, 103, 127. *See also* Sultan Ahmad Tambal
- Beirut 35
- Bengal 300, 354, 393, 413, 433, 440, 441, 459
- Berber (s) 34, 36
- Berlin, Isaiah 58
- Bertels, E. E. 52
- Betwa River, India, 414
- Beveridge, Annette Susannah vii, 25, 26, 276
- Beveridge, Henry 24
- Bherah, India 159, 291-92, 295-98, 300, 303, 304, 317, 318, 320, 325, 331, 333, 349
- Biban, Afghan 442, 458
- Bigram, Afghanistan 287, 322, 323
- Bihar, India 354, 407, 434, 440, 441
- Bihzad, Afghanistan 181, 373
- Bihzad, Kamal al-Dm Ustad 147, 214, 301, 373
- Bina'i, Kamal al-Dm Al! 9, 10
- Bikramjit, Rajah, Rajput 419, 420
- biography 2, 4-5, 11, 12, 231-32, 317, 467
- al-Birum, Abu Rayhan 355-56, 359, 385-92 & 385 n. 77, 393, 394, 395, 396, 398, 400, 401, 463
- BJP (Bharatiya Janata Party) 468. *See also* Babri Masjid and nationalism, Indian
- Bloch, Marc 3, 27, 66
- Blok, Alexander 288
- Bodrogligeti, Andras J. E. 20 n. 20
- "boon companion" 27, 35, 90 & n. 57, 182
- bork* 145, 147. *See also* headgear
- brahman* (-ical) 369, 370, 385, 389, 390, 391, 397, 398, 400, 401
- Brahmaputra valley, India 362
- British, in Afghanistan 307, 455
- British, in India 3, 355, 363, 384, 395
- Bukhara 22, 32, 41, 50, 75, 78, 88, 94, 111, 15, 116, 137, 140, 143, 189, 237, 238, 242, 243, 256, 281, 469
- al-Bukhari, Muhammad ibn Isma'l 376. *See also* Sahih Bukhari
- Burnes, Alexander 32, 241, 32, 241, 455-56
- Burns, Robert 276
- Bustan* 45, 121, 178. *See also* Sa'dT
- Butkhak River, Afghanistan 436
- Byzantine Empire 18
- calendars 273
- cartography 391-92. *See also* cultural boundaries

- Caspian Sea 99
 Castile 312. *See also* Clavijo
 Caucasus 20
 Cellini, Benvenuto 24, 29, 37-38, 60 & n. 120, 467. *See also* autobiography
 Central Asia 1, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9, 12, 13, 15, 16, 26, 33, 41, 64, 68, 69, 72, 75, 80, 138, 142, 147, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153, 154, 160, 166, 169, 194, 195, 221, 258, 295, 306, 332, 339, 355, 358, 361, 364, 390, 375, 384, 389, 391, 393, 400, 409, 413, 428, 434, 457, 462, 469. *See also* Mawarannahr
 Chacharan, Afghanistan 216
 Chaghatay ChingTzid
 Aysin Temur Sultan b. Ahmad 439
 Chin Timur Sultan b. Sultan Ahmad Khan 328
 SaTd Khan b. Ahmad 233, 234, 235, 259, 308-09, 449
 Sultan Ahmad Khan, Kichik or Alachah Khan 76, 79, 112, 125, 127, 143, 164, 166, 168, 419, 427, 446, 454
 Sultan Mahmud Khan 73, 76, 79, 80, 85, 87, 95, 98, 103, 109, 116, 118, 120, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 160, 170, 183, 200, 218, 226, 267, 269, 446
 Tukhtah Bughah Khan b. Ahmad 418, 427, 439
 Yunas Khan 39, 48, 75, 76, 79, 91, 101, 135, 136, 160, 165, 166, 191, 218, 219, 220, 370-71, 449, 462, 466
 Chaghatay Khan 16, 40, 75 & n. 23, 76, 158
 Chaghatay Mongols 17, 22, 41, 73, 78, 80, 81, 83, 87, 89, 92, 124, 126, 145, 158, 219, 228, 231, 233, 245, 249, 267, 292, 308, 418, 419, 427, 439, 440, 446, 454, 457, 469
 Chaghatay Turkish 16 n. 3, 149 n. 40. *See also* Turk!
chahdrbagh 184
Chahar Bagh. Kabul 184
 Chaldiran, battle of, 1514 294, 320
 Chambal River, India 451
 Chandawar, India 352
 Chandiri, India 329, 342, 354, 411, 413-17, 418
 chaos theory, and Timurid politics 73
chapqun 103, 195 & n. 24, 196, 197, 292, 297, 331. *See also* *almaq* and *yurush chapqunchi* 305. *See also* *qazaqyigitler*
 Charikar, Afghanistan, 187 n. 5, 196
 charisma. *See also* legitimacy 99-100. *See also* legitimacy
 Charmgarar gate, Kabul 132
 Chash Tupah, Kabul 221
 Chekovich, O D. vii
 Chenab, Panjab, India 297, 300
 Chenab River, India 407
 China (Khitai) 13, 16, 24, 75, 124, 194, 258, 396, 468. *See also* Qara Qitai
 Chinese 54, 70, 378, 379-80
 Chinggis Qan 15-16. *See also* Chingiz Khan
 Chingizid 18, 20, 21, 41, 61, 69, 72, 75, 76, 90, 92, 95, 99, 100, 127, 130, 140, 143, 156, 160, 165, 166, 177, 209, 234, 261, 325, 408, 428, 445, 457, 465
 Chingiz Khan, 12, 16-17 & ns. 6 & 7, 40, 69, 72, 75, 76, 78, 89, 100, 101, 137, 138, 146, 171, 197, 221, 341, 462, 463. *See also* Chinggis Qan, Genghis Khan
 ChmT-khanah, Samarqand 379 & n. 60
 Ciniut, Panjab, India 159
 Chitor, India, 337, 342, 351, 414, 416, 419
 ChishtT order 171, 175, 199, 331, 398, 400, 444, 445. *See also* Amir Khusrau Dihlavi and Khwajah Qutb al-Dm UshT
 Christian society 28, 36, 162, 370, 397, 462
 chronogram (*abjad*) 417 & n. 26
 Chunar, India 408
 Cicero 182. *See also* *suhbat* and symposium
 Clavijo, Ruy Gonzalez de 100, 132, 144, 197, 312
 climate 278, 311, 335, 337, 339-40, 353, 365-66, 395-97, 422, 429
 coinage, Timurid 6-7, 71, 228, 234-35, 298, 321, 334-35 & n. 108, 359, 407, 414
Confessions 29, 33, 38. *See also* autobiography and Rousseau
 Cordoba 184
 Courteille Abel Pavet de 3 n. 3, 340 n. 124
 Crusades 35-36
 Ctesiphon, Iraq 381
 Cultural boundaries 356, 368, 370, 394

- Damascus 35, 138
 Damghan, Iran 197. *See also* Timur
 dams, Kabul 201
 Darah-i Nur, Kabul 201
darugah 191
darvish 252 & n. 150
 Darvish, Muhammad Tarkhan 380
 Dasht, Afghanistan 197
 dating and time-keeping
 India 59
 Mawarannahr 59
 Daulat Khan Yusuf Khayl. *See* Ludis
 Daulatshah 142
 Davidovich, Elena A. 93
 Deccan 294
 Delhi 13, 15, 42, 62, 64, 100, 135, 138,
 159, 199, 231, 246, 292, 296, 298,
 300, 316, 325, 326, 331, 335, 336,
 337, 341, 342, 356, 393, 394, 404,
 407, 411, 418, 444, 448, 451
 Dikhat, Mawarannahr 120, 121, 123
 Dilahzak Afghans 292-94, 307
 Dilawar Khan Yusuf Khayl Ludi b.
 Daulat Khan. *See* LudTs
 Dildar Begim, 450, 455
Dimnah-khalilah (*Panchatantra*) 398
 Dughlats 76, 87, 89, 101, 123, 236,
 Aba Bakr Dughlat Kashgar! 76, 78,
 85
 Haydar Mirza Dughlat vii, 5, 6, 8, 10,
 53, 54, 76, 78, 93, 97, 101, 136,
 146, 149, 160, 162, 165, 166, 168,
 169, 171, 196, 199, 205, 206, 218,
 219, 231, 232, 234, 236, 237, 238,
 239, 240, 241, 242, 243, 244-45,
 246, 252, 259, 308, 316, 327, 370-
 71, 446, 447, 448, 449, 464, 466
 Muhammad Husayn Dughlat 78, 87,
 120, 121, 218
 Dulpur, India 336, 343, 344, 358, 371,
 374, 407, 411, 420, 434, 448, 450
 Durrani 189, 241
 Dushi, Afghanistan 130
 Dust Beg 302-03
 Dust Muhammad Baqir 310

 Egypt 19, 35, 381
 Eight Paradise Garden (*Hasht Bihisht Baghi*)
 2, 52, 353,
 Elphinstone, Mountstuart 193
eshik agasi (Lord of the Gate) 89, 92, 98,
 103, 129, 191-92, 226, 305,
 Etawah, India 336, 343, 408
 Euclid 391. *See also* geometry and mathe-
 matics
 Eurasia 463
 Europe (an) 14, 295, 375, 465

fakhr *See also* autobiography 33
 Faizabad 468. *See also* Babri Masjid
Farangi(lar). *See* firearms
 Faridun 67
 Farmul, Afghanistan 189
 Fath Khan Sherwan! 182
Fath-namah 347, 349-50. *See also* Battle of
 Kanwah
 Fatimid 35
fatrat bf 88, 98, 129, 266-67
 Ferghanah 2, 5, 13, 40, 41, 42, 44, 48, 49,
 50, 51, 52, 53, 55, 63, 72, 76, 82, 83,
 84 & n. 40, 85, 87, 89, 90, 91, 95, 100,
 103, 105, 117, 124, 125, 126, 128,
 143, 149, 151, 154, 155, 160, 161, 163,
 168, 173, 179, 183, 192, 194, 200,
 203, 204, 215, 216, 227, 229, 233,
 234, 236, 240, 251, 269, 280, 298,
 314, 318, 354, 358, 359, 366, 404,
 406, 411, 429, 431, 462, 470
fez 145. *See also* headgear
 Firdausi, Abu'l Qasim 109, 145, 153, 178,
 251, 348. *See also* *Shah namah*,
 Firdaus Makan! (Babur) 453
 Firearms 294-95, 329 & n. 95, 414-15
 farangi(lar) 294, 329
 tufang 294 & n. 9
 tup-i Farangi 295
 zarbzán (an) 329 & n. 95, 350
 Firuz Khan 342
 Fleischer, Cornell H. vii
 Florence 12, 66
 Forster, E. M. 12-13, 25, 45, 47, 463
 Franklin, Benjamin 5
fursat&l, 99, 266-67

 Ganges, battle of 1540 327, 329 n. 95,
 334, 342. *See also* Humayun and Shir
 Khan Sun
 Ganges-Jumna Duab 341, 357, 404, 411
 Ganges River, Gangetic valley, India 51,
 60, 307, 341, 344, 352, 404, 411, 412,
 413, 414, 418, 419, 421, 434, 439,
 440, 441, 458
 Garden of the Eight Paradises 2. *See also*

- Eight Paradise Garden and *Hasht Bihisht Bagh'i*
 Garden of Rest 2
 gardens, significance 183-86, 289, 310, 379-81
 Gardez, Afghanistan 305-06
gariyalis 59. *See also* dating and timekeeping
 gazetteers 42-43 & 43 n. 83
 Chinese 43 n. 83
 Ferghanah 42, 55, 215
 India 42, 56, 304, 332
 Kabul 42, 189
 Samarqand 376-82
 Gengis Khan 12. *See also* Ghinggis Qan and Chingiz Khan
 geometry and mathematics 391, 397-98, 462-63. *See also* Babur, geometry
 Ghaggar River, India 325
ghaza 20, 413, 420
 al-Ghazali, Abu Hamid 29
ghazals. *See* Babur, poetry, and poetry
 Ghazan Khan, Il-Khan 141
ghazi 19, 348, 349, 351, 401, 430
 Ghazipur, India 342, 344, 440, 441
 Ghaznavids 144, 339, 393
 Ghazni 42, 189, 192, 193, 195, 196, 199, 200, 202, 206, 211, 230, 246, 291, 303, 322, 325, 345, 392
 Ghizhduvan, battle of 1512 245
 Ghiyas al-Dm Balaban, Sultan 331
 Ghiyas al-Din Ghuri, Sultan 333
 Ghiyas al-Dm al-Husaym, Ikhtiyar al-Dm 174
 Ghur, Afghanistan 189
 Ghurband, Kabul 60, 187 n. 5
g/ zto (exile) 269, 288, 351, 366, 430-431.
 See also Babur, poetry
 Gibbon, 25
 Goethe 108
 Golden, Peter B. vii
 Gold-Scattering Garden 22. *See also* *Bagh-i Zarafshan*
 Golden Horde 21
 Granada 34
 Greece 13, 181, 457
 Greek 28, 181, 355, 369-70, 389, 401, 462, 463
 Greek Science 372, 385, 390-91
 Gross, Jo-Ann vii
 Gueneee, Bernard 2, 12
 Gujarat 294, 401, 459
 Gulbadan Begim 5, 51, 191, 316, 318, 334, 411, 445, 446, 447, 450, 451-53, 459. *See also* *Humayun namah*
 Gulbahar, Afghanistan 220, 276, 289. *See also* Babur, Poetry
 Gulchirah Begim 454
Gulistan 45, 178, 205. *See also* Sa'dT
 Gulrang Begim 454
 Gumal Pass, Afghanistan/India 199
 Gumal River, Afghanistan/India 198
 Gurkham tables 463. *See also* astronomy and Ulugh Beg
 Gurziwan, Afghanistan 208
 Gwalior, India, 300, 336, 344, 347, 358, 373, 375, 377, 404, 408, 413, 419, 420, 337, 448
 Habashi 164
Habib al-siyar 7, 53, 65, 232. *See also* Khwandamir
hadith 30
 Hafiz-i Abru 138
 Hafiz-i Tamsh, ibn Mir Muhammad Bukhari 9, 10
 Hafiz, Shams al-Dm 31, 151, 251, 253, 256, 258, 260, 262, 263, 277
 Haiku 258. *See also* *rubt'fi*
 Hamzah Sultan, Uzbek 237
 HanafT Islam 145, 169, 174, 408, 410
 Hangu, Afghanistan 197, 198
 Harat 6, 12, 22, 42, 50, 53, 62, 70, 71, 75, 79, 81-83, 93, 94, 96, 99, 114, 115, 118, 122, 138, 139, 143, 144, 147, 148, 156, 158, 159, 163, 66, 167, 168, 176, 180, 185, 187, 201, 206, 207-16, 218, 222, 223, 224, 227, 230, 242, 247, 251, 253, 254, 256, 266, 267, 274, 275, 278, 298, 301, 332, 254, 256, 266, 267, 274, 275, 278, 298, 301, 319, 332, 372, 373, 376, 379, 382-84, 396, 398, 401, 410, 419, 420, 421, 422, 457, 462, 463, 470
 Hardy, Peter 11
 Hari Rud River, Afghanistan 216
 Hasan 'Ali Jalayir 34
 Hasan-i Rumlu 8, 9, 10, 243, 244, 245, 317, 219, 459
 Hasan Khan MiwatT 336-38, 347
Hasht Bihisht 401. *See also* Amir Khusrau DihlavT

- Hasht Bihišt Baghi*. See Eight Paradise Garden
- Haydar Mirza Dughlat. See Dughlats
- Hazarahs 137 n. 5, 157, 160, 161, 178, 189, 192, 193, 195, 196, 218, 323
- headgear, significance 145-47, 171
- Heian Japan 54, 260-61, 289
- Henry the Vth 338
- Hidayat* 169, 170, 193, 408. See also Sunni Islam
- Hilali, Maulana Badr al-Dm 25
- Hind-alb. Babur 300, 318, 332, 406, 434, 449, 450, 453, 454, 459
- Hindu Beg Qauchin 300, 302, 303, 305
- Hindu Kush 64, 187, 405
- Hindu (s) 58, 311, 341, 351, 356, 367, 368, 371, 384, 387, 388, 389, 390, 391, 395, 398, 400, 420, 427, 443
- Hinduism 385, 397
- Hindustan 56, 133, 159, 194, 196, 229, 138, 159, 194, 196, 229, 304, 323, 332, 333, 341, 357, 363, 364, 366, 368, 374, 377, 401, 404, 405, 406-07, 411, 419, 421, 434, 435, 436, 437, 460. See also India
- Hindustani *amirs* 344, 347
- HinduwaT (Hindi) 255, 393, 461
- Hisar, Mawarannahr 75, 82, 93, 94, 101, 117, 123, 128 & n. 173, 192, 194, 233, 234, 235, 237, 240, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 308, 423, 464
- Hisar Firuzah, India 344
- Historians of Medieval India* 11
- homoeotericism and poetry 259-60, 274
- Hudud al-dlam* 42
- Hul-hul Anigah 312
- Humayun b. Babur 7, 44, 45, 49, 55, 90, 171, 182, 205, 223, 230, 288, 301, 302, 310, 318, 322, 325, 326, 327, 330, 334, 3377, 341, 343, 344, 345, 352, 355, 403, 404, 405, 409, 413, 422, 423, 425, 428, 434, 436, 439, 442, 445, 448, 450, 452, 453, 454, 458, 459, 460, 461
- Humayunnamah* 5 n. 10, 316. See also Gulbadan Begim
- hunting 35, 57, 103, 221-22, 269
- Hushyar, Ferghanah, 427
- Ibn Battuta 367
- Ibn BuluggTn, "Abd Allah 34-35, 37, 38, 40, 45, 52, 57, 264
- Ibn Hassul 162
- Ibn-i Husayn Mirza. See Bayqara Timurids
- Ibn Khaldun, 'Abd al-Rahman b. Muhammad b. Khaldun 29, 68, 80-83, 163-64, 166-68, 391
- Ibn Qutayba 372
- Ibn Sina, Abu 'Alī Tal-Husayn b. "Abd Allah 385, 463
- Ibrahim Ludi. See LudTs
- ichkibegM*, 180, 199, 217, 226, 323, 434
- 'Id al-fitr 198, 273, 353, 411
- Ilak Yaylagh, Mawarannahr 125
- Il-Khans of Iran 310. See also Ghazan Khan
- India, 1, 2, 4, 5, 7, 12, 13, 17, 23, 41, 46, 49, 50, 51, 53, 58, 60, 64, 65, 66, 67, 133, 143, 147, 157, 163, 180, 184, 186, 188, 191, 193, 194, 198, 229, 237, 247, 280, 285, 286, 288, 289, 295, 297, 311, 317, 318, 324, 325, 332, 333, 335, 338, 339, 341, 342, 349, 351, 353, 354, 355, 356-75, 380-81, 385, 386, 387, 390, 391, 392-402, 404, 408, 409, 410, 421, 422, 423, 425, 429, 440, 448, 455, 458, 460, 461, 462, 467. See also Hindustan
- Indians 1, 59, 223, 224, 339, 356-75, 385, 421, 457, 458, 463, 469
- individual (s) 2, 3, 12, 13-14, 467
- individuality 47, 262. See also Babur, poetry
- Indo-Afghan 1, 425, 447, 459
- Indo-European 151, 155, 169, 426
- Indo-Muslim 278, 392, 393, 395
- Indus (Nilab) 197, 198, 291, 295, 296, 302, 306, 356, 392, 364, 392, 437
- infidels, Babur's use of term 342, 345, 349, 351, 352
- Iran 8, 12, 18, 20, 2, 71, 99, 136, 137, 138, 139, 142, 147, 160, 165, 188, 194, 205, 258, 294, 317, 358, 390, 392, 393, 460, 461
- Iranian 8, 10, 19, 21, 45, 72, 108, 121, 137, 139, 144, 147, 148, 151, 154, 160, 165, 166, 170, 234, 237, 239, 242, 244, 245, 258, 339, 370, 375, 391, 427, 439
- kingship 70. See also shah, sedentary population. See Tat, Sart vend Tajik

- Iraq 335. *See also* Ctesiphon
irgonomi 261. *See also* Heian Japan and *rind*
 "Iron Gate," Mawarannahr 237
 Isa Khel Afghans 198
 Isen Devlet Begim 48, 63, 106, 120
 Isfahan 138
 Isfarah, Ferghanah 85, 127, 427
 Iskandar Beg Munshi 9, 232, 238
 Iskandar LudT. *See* Ludis
 IsfizarT, Mu'in al-Din Muhammad
 ZamchT 42 n. 82, 377
 Islam, Islamic 34, 137, 138, 140, 141, 144,
 145, 146, 147, 154, 155, 165, 168,
 170, 183, 184, 312, 347, 348, 351,
 385, 389, 392, 401, 425, 462, 466,
 469. *See also* Sunni Islam
 Islamic World 14, 18, 23, 28, 29, 37, 66,
 249, 370, 372, 385, 390, 457, 463, 465
 Issigh Koi lake, Mawarannahr 149-50
 Istalif, Afghanistan 180, 191, 289, 303,
 312, 314, 400
 Istanbul 162
 Istarghij, Afghanistan 312, 314
istiqlal 68, 99
 Italy 20

 Ja'far Khwajah b. Mahdi Khwajah 408
 Jahangir Mirza b. 'Umar Shaykh 70, 83,
 95, 102, 104, 116, 121, 126, 127, 130,
 131, 132, 191, 198, 200-07, 209, 224,
 278, 383, 406, 455, 460
 Jahangir Padshah b. Akbar 97, 230, 246
 & n. 171, 465-66
 al-Jahiz 163
 Jain sculpture 374. *See also* Gwalior
 Jalalabad 304
 Jam, Mawarannahr 422
 Jami, 'Abd al-Rahman 108, 143, 147, 176,
 251, 259, 262, 382, 383
 JamshTd 122
 JamshTd b. Mas'ud 141
 Janab, Panjab, India 159
 Jan Beg Atekeh 236-37, 241, 243
 Jan Beg Sultan, Uzbek 127, 245
 Janissaries 162
 Japanese Language and verse 260. *See also*
 Heian Japan
jauhar 416. *See also* Chandiri and Rajputs
 Jaunpur 299, 342, 344, 408
 Javelidze, Elizbar 262

 Jaxartes 13. *See also* Syr Darya
 "Jesus and Mary" 451, 453. *See also*
 Gulbadan Begim
 Jewish society 28
 Jhelum River, Panjab, India
 Juchi 78
Jughrd'fiyd-yi Hafiz-i Abru 421
 Jumna River, India 327, 331, 404, 414,
 439, 451
 Jum'd Junayd) 64 & n. 1
 "justsultan" 40, 179. *See also* *'adalat*
 al-Juzjam, Minhaj al-Dm 146, 152

 Kabul 1, 6, 7, 8, 13, 22, 32, 40, 41, 46,
 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 53, 56, 60, 61, 62,
 63, 64, 68, 72, 73, 74, 82, 88, 92, 118,
 119, 129, 130, 132, 133, 135, 143,
 149, 154, 157, 158, 168, 177, 180,
 182, 184, 187-200, 209, 210, 211, 213,
 215, 216, 218, 219, 220, 222, 223,
 224, 226, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232,
 233, 246, 259, 269, 271, 274, 275,
 280, 285, 286, 289, 291, 292, 296,
 302, 303, 304, 306, 309, 311, 312,
 315, 316, 317, 320, 321, 325, 326,
 331, 335, 338, 340, 341, 343, 345,
 347, 352, 355, 356, 357, 359, 363,
 364, 365, 376, 382, 384, 395, 396,
 402, 403, 404, 405, 406, 407, 408,
 409, 411, 420, 422, 423, 425, 426,
 427, 429, 431, 432, 434, 435-38, 443,
 445, 446, 448, 445, 448, 449, 450,
 455, 456, 459, 460, 464, 470
 population 157, 187-88
 revenues and taxes 193-95
 state formation 189-93, 304, 306-07
 Kabul Gazetteer. *See* gazetteer, Kabul
 Kabul River 307, 322
kafir ghazat 352. *See also* infidels, Kanwah,
 battle of and Babur, Rajputs, relations
 with
 Kafirs 229, 230
 Kafiristan 309
 Kahraj, Afghanistan 202, 207
 Kahmard, Afghanistan, 202, 207
 Kalpi, India 336, 414
 Kamran b. Babur 301, 302, 319, 325, 352,
 402, 405, 406, 423, 428, 436, 459, 460
 Kamrud River, Mawarannahr 112
 Kan-i gul meadow, Samarqand 381
 Kandar, India 343

- Kannauj, India 336, 342, 343, 347, 404, 408, 414, 418, 459
- Kanwah, battle of, 1527 227
- Karnaon, Ferghanah 127
- Karrah, India 439
- Kasan, Ferghanah 85, 103, 104, 200
- Kashgar, Mughulistan 55, 76, 85, 165, 189, 240, 308, 316, 335, 449
- Kashmir 165, 239, 390
- Katawaz plain 221. *See also* ^cAbd al-Rahman Afghans,
- Kazakistan 469
- Kerala 375
- kesig* 90 & n. 56
- Khadijah Begim 382
- Khagiam Afghans 304
- KhalTfah, Nizam al-Din ^cAlI Barias 282, 328, 427
- khalisah* (crown land) 405, 407, 416, 425, 435
- Khalil Sultan 252
- Khalil Sultan 116, 117, 204. *See also* Sultan Ahmad Tambal
- khalvatkhanah* 421
- khan(s)* 72, 74, 81, 91, 101, 111, 116, 140, 234, 328. *See also* ChingTzids
- khanagah* 140
- Khanzadah Begim 118, 119, 234, 446, 448
- khara* 193-94 and 309. *See also* Kabul, revenue and taxes
- Khiljl Afghans 221, 223, 224, 299, 309. *See also* Ludls
- Khizr Khel Afghans 308
- Khubnigar Khanim 219
- Khujand, Ferghanah 87, 91, 96, 97, 98, 154
- Khujand River, Afghanistan 121
- Khunjl (Isfahan!), Fazlullah ibn Ruzbihan 10, 242, 245
- Khurd Kabul dam 436
- Khurasan 22, 48, 70, 71, 74, 78, 79, 80, 127-28, 131, 132, 138, 148, 164, 179, 188, 193, 194, 205, 206, 207, 211, 213, 215, 230, 233, 234, 236, 249, 251, 252, 312, 317, 332, 335, 378, 390, 397, 400, 422
- Khushab, Panjab, India 159, 296, 297
- Khushal Khan Khattak, Afghan 108, 182
- Khusrau and Shirin* 403
- Khusrau Kiikiiltash 323
- Khusrau Shah 93, 94, 95, 111, 112, 128, 129, 131, 132, 174, 192, 196, 200, 202, 216, 218, 219, 226, 231, 234, 278, 324, 325, 337
- khutbah*. *See* sovereignty, symbols
- khwajah* 32. *See also* Naqshbandis
- Khwajah Abd al-Haqq. *SA* Naqshbandis
- Khwajah ChishtI 427
- Khwajah Kalan 90, 182, 281, 322, 325, 330, 339, 340, 387, 325, 403, 404, 405, 411, 422, 430, 432, 435-38, 464. *See also* *musahib* and *nadim*
- Khwajah Kalan Ahrari. *See* Naqshbandis
- Khwajah Khawand Sa'd 444
- Khwajah Maulana Qazi 46, 50, 63, 89, 95-96, 101, 105, 155, 169, 211
- Khwajah Qutb al-Din Ush! Chisht! 199, 331. *See also* Chisht! order
- Khwajah Sih-yaran, Kabul 303
- Khwajah Ubaydullah Ahrar. *See* Naqshbandis
- Khwajah Yahya Ahrari. *See* Naqshbandis
- Khwandamlr, Ghiyas al-Din 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 53-54, 64, 232, 245, 317, 410, 419
- Khwarazm 75, 152, 252, 332, 385, 392
- al-Khwarazm! 470
- Khybar Pass 287, 391,
- Kichik ^cAl1408
- Kichik Khan. *See* Chaghatay Chinglzids
- Kipling, Rudyard 429. *See also* William the Conqueror
- Kirghiz 33, 37
- Kisr! arch, Ctesiphon 381
- Kitab al-Tibar* 35. *See also* Usamah Ibn Munqidh
- Kitab al-zakat* 172-73
- Koil (Aligarh), India 347, 352, 404, 408, 411, 446
- Kok Saray Samarqand 377
- Kol-i malik, battle of, 1512 243-44
- Kuhat, India 197
- Kuh-i daman, Kabul 312
- kuh-i nur*. 331, 460
- Kunar, Afghanistan 316
- Kurdish 19
- kitrgen* 17 n. 7
- Kyrgyzistan 469
- Lahore 292, 298, 300, 321, 322, 323, 333, 341, 351, 404, 410, 441, 447, 457

- Lamghanat (Laghman), Afghanistan 56, 189, 191, 201, 229, 296, 310, 364
- Landar Afghans 304
- Langar Khan Niazi 295-96
- Latin 401
- Layla and Majnun* 108, 151, 259
- legitimacy 72, 87, 129, 129-130, 158-60, 324-25, 349, 458, 460, 461
- literary style 52-58
- Le Goff, Jacques 2. *See also Annales*
- Lotus Garden 2, 435, 451. *See also Bagh-i Nilufar*
- Lucknow (Lauknaur), India 352, 417, 442, 468
- Ludis 62, 149, 160, 231, 298, 299-300, 303, 317, 321, 323, 341, 343, 406, 413, 416, 457
- Bahlul Ludi 320, 331
- Daulat Khan Yusuf Khayl 298, 300, 320, 321, 323, 324, 325, 342, 344, 410, 461. *See also Lahore*
- Dilawar Khan Yusuf Khayl b. Daulat Khan 320, 342, 344, 410
- Ghazi Khan b. Daulat Khan 324
- Mahmud Khan 434, 439, 440
- Sultan 'Ala al-Dm 'Alam Khan 320, 321 323, 324
- Sultan Bahlul 299
- Sultan, Ibrahim 15, 42, 159, 286, 292, 298, 300, 317, 320, 321, 323, 324, 325-330, 333, 334, 336, 346, 349, 354, 374, 434
- Sultan Iskandar 298, 299-300, 331, 434
- Tatar Khan Yusuf Khayl 320, 324
- Luharm (Nuham), Afghans 311, 342, 441, Lutfi 253, 254
- Machiavelli 12, 13
- madrasah*(s) 140
- Madu (Mazu), Ferghanah 102
- Magribi, Muhammad Shirin 31. *See also zuhdyat* poetry
- Mahdi Khwajah 330, 344, 352, 408, 447
- Mahim Begim 318, 445, 446, 448, 450, 452, 454, 455
- Mahmud Khan LudT. *See Ludis*
- Mahmud Khan Luham 342
- Mahmud of Ghazna 332, 385
- Mahmud Oghlaqchi 199
- Majd al-Dm Muhammad 163
- ma'jun*. *See* Babur, alcohol and drugs
- mal* 309. *See also* Kabul, revenue and taxes
- mal-i aman* 214 n. 75, 298
- Malwa (Mandu), Sultan of 300, 342-43, 417
- Mamluk (s) 19
- Manas 33-34
- Mandu, India. *See* Malwa
- Manir, India 444
- Mano, E.J. vii, 4
- Manz, Beatrice F. vii
- Maragah, Iran 141. *See also* astronomy and Ulugh Beg
- mardak* 104, 105, 129, 324, 429. *See also* Khusrau Shah, Daulat Khan and Hasan Khan
- Marginan, Ferghanah 87, 100, 125, 127
- al-Marghinam, Burhan al-Dm 'A1TQilich 169, 171, 193. Sh? *also Hidayat*
- Mashad, Iran 215
- masnavi*. *See* poetry
- Mas'ud Sa'd Salman. *See also ghurbat* and poetry, *takhallus* 339
- Mas'umah Sultan Begim 215, 274, 318
- mathematics 140-42
- matldyyat*. *See* poetry
- Maturity, age of
- Babur 96
- Haydar Mirza 97
- Jahangir 97
- Mir 'A1TShir Naval 96
- Maulana Shihab al-Dm HaratT 419
- Mawarannah 6, 21, 22, 23, 36, 46, 56, 58, 64, 68, 70, 71, 74, 75, 79, 83, 84, 88, 92, 108, 111, 119, 124, 126, 133, 136, 137, 138, 139, 143, 145, 149, 160, 169, 170, 175, 184, 188, 197, 198, 203, 222, 232, 238, 239, 241, 242, 246, 249, 251, 252, 265, 299, 307, 318, 328, 333, 347, 355, 356, 366, 384, 390, 399, 400, 413, 423, 459, 461, 463, 465. *See also* Central Asia
- Mecca (n) 19, 164, 378
- Medina (n) 164, 401
- Medim Rao, Rajput 414, 416. *See also* Chandiri
- Mediterranean society 136, 462
- Megasthenes 369-70
- Mehmet II (the Conqueror) 18 & n. 10, 19, 22

- memory - and history 241-42
 mercury (Quicksilver) 423-24 & n. 37,
 424. *See also* Babur, illness
 Merv 422
 Merv, battle of 1510, 234
 Middle Eastern Societies 68, 183, 184,
 249, 462
 Mihrban(u) Khanim 280, 283
 Mihrnigar Khanim 48, 120, 220
 military organization and tactics. *See*
 Babur, battle plans
 Milwat, India 324
 miniature paintings 222, 301, 314, 373,
 375
 Mir ‘Ali Miradkhur 114
 Miranshah Mirza. *See* Miranshahi Ti-
 murids
 Miranshahi Timurids 39, 83, 292
 ‘Abd al-Razzaq Mirza b. Ulugh Beg
 Kabuli 208, 224, 226, 228, 229,
 230, 231
 Abul Qasim Babur 382
 Abu Said Mirza 74, 78, 105, 160
 Baysunghur Mirza 83, 87-88, 93, 95,
 98, 112, 157, 166, 218, 219, 235,
 248, 250-51, 392, 446
 Sulayman Mirza b. Ways Mirza 328
 Sultan Abu Said Mirza 39
 Sultan Ahmad Mirza 75, 78, 79, 83,
 84, 85, 87, 92, 107, 156, 161, 200,
 203, 215, 380
 Sultan Ali Mirza 10, 63, 83, 88, 94,
 95, 109, 111
 Sultan Husayn Mirza 83
 Sultan Mahmud Mirza 39, 63, 83, 88,
 94, 95
 Sultan Miranshah Mirza 39, 158, 312
 Sultan Muhammad Mirza 39
 Ulugh Beg Kabuli 40, 75, 78, 132,
 177, 192, 193, 209, 224, 226, 253,
 312, 377, 378, 379, 380, 410, 463,
 470
 ‘Umar Shaykh Mirza 39, 75, 78, 79,
 83, 84, 85, 89, 92, 106, 142-45,
 147, 152, 166, 171, 173, 179, 200,
 226, 230, 234, 339, 353, 461
 Ways Mirza (Mirza Khan) b. Mahmud
 Mirza 5, 83, 218, 219, 224, 226,
 229, 232, 235, 236, 260, 285, 291,
 292, 308, 318
 Mir Bardi Beg 453
 Mir Ibrahim (Harati) 419
 Mir Najm 244-45
 Mirkhwand, Muhammad b. Khawand
 Shah b. Mahmud 6
 “mirror for princes” 27, 44-45, 102, 223,
 300-01, 404
 mzh (s) 72, 74, 81, 90, 91, 100, 115, 202,
 210, 213, 216, 230, 234, 252, 328, 436
 Mirza Khan, Ways Mirza. *See* Miranshahi
 Timurids
 Miwat, India 336. *See also* Hasan Khan
 Mizan al-*auzan* 254. *See also* Naval
 Mongolia 100, 221
 Mongols 21, 34, 48, 56, 72, 75, 76, 79,
 80, 85, 87, 88-89, 93, 95, 97, 101, 102,
 109, 112, 1126, 126, 128, 129, 130,
 132, 136, 137, 138, 141, 142, 145,
 160-61, 163, 164, 165, 166, 169, 170,
 171, 183, 188, 193, 201, 203, 209,
 216, 221, 223, 225, 226, 227, 231,
 233, 234, 236, 237, 243, 246, 302,
 304, 308, 309, 323, 370, 410, 434,
 462, 464, 467. *See also* Mughuls,
 Chaghatay Mongols and Chingizids
 tactics 227
 Vocabulary 155
 Monsoons (*pushkal*) 306, 342, 352, 365,
 367, 404, 442, 445, 447
 muamma. *See* Babur poetry, and poetry
 Mubaiyin 171, 193, 250, 286-87, 408-09,
 425, 465
 Mufassal 465. *See also* Naval
 Mughal Empire 1, 13, 15, 147. *See also*
 Timurid-Mughul Empire
 Mughan steppe, Iran 99
 Mughul (Mongol) 72, 170, 223
 Mughulistan 72, 75, 112, 124, 125, 137,
 138, 145, 146, 156, 165, 163, 308
 Muhdkamatal-Lugatain I, 152, 239. *See also*
 Naval
 Muhammad, the Prophet Muhammad
 139, 146, 239, 424-25
 Muhammad Alijang-jang 328, 416
 Muhammad Husayn Dughlat. *See*
 Dughlats
 Muhammad Khan, Mughul 146
 Muhammad Muqim Arghun. *See* Arghuns
 Muhammad Mushin Mirza. *See* Bayqara
 Timurids
 Muhammad Qasim Barias 311
 Muhammad Salih 109, 286

- Muhammad Sharif Munajjim 347. *See also* astrology and Kanwah
- Muhammad Zaman Mirza. *See* Bayqara Timurids
- Muhibb 'All Qurchi 226
- Muhibb Sultan Khanim 446
- Muhamand Afghans 221, 223
- Mujaddidi Naqshbandis. *See* Shaykh Ahmad Sirhindī
- mulkgirliq* 153, 292, 297, 317, 349, 428.
See also Babur, motives for conquest
- mulla(s)* 427
- Mulla 'Abdullah Kitabdar 427
- Mulla Alī Khan 286, 316. *See also* poetry
- Mulla Hajr! 267
- Mulla Muhammad 171
- Multan 404, 406
- Muqaddimah* 81
- Murghab River, Khurasan 208, 210, 213, 215
- musahib*. *See* "boon companion" and *nadim*
- music 213 & n. 213, 250 & n. 7, 384, 398
- Muslim (s) 30, 33, 139, 140, 141, 146, 165, 166, 168, 194, 199, 242, 246, 248, 254, 311, 332, 349, 369, 370, 375, 384, 387, 389, 390, 392, 394, 395, 400, 401, 409, 410, 413, 434, 439, 443, 462, 463, 466
- Naghar, Kabul 189
- naqarah*. *See* sovereignty
- Naqshbandi Order 32 & ns. 52-53, 147, 174-77 and 174 n. 133, 180, 242, 253, 261, 262, 427, 444
- Ahrari Naqshbandis 177, 410, 419, 445
- Khawajah 'Abd al-Haqq 428
- Khawajah 'Ubaydullah Ahrar 57, 88, 98, 111, 113, 135, 145, 169, 174-76, 177, 199, 242, 250, 347, 419, 427, 428, 435, 438, 444, 465
- Khawajah Kalan 427
- Khawajah Yahya 88, 111, 428
- Khawajah Abd al-Shahid 427
- Mujaddidi Naqshbandis 177
- spiritual exercises 175-76
- Naryn River, Ferghanah 149-50
- nasihat* literature 44. *See also* "mirror for princes"
- Nasir al-Dm Tusī 378
- Nasir Mirza b. 'Umar Shaykh 70, 83, 85, 132, 191, 200-07, 221, 226, 228, 230, 246, 278, 406
- naukar* W, 125, 131, 216, 217, 227, 323, 348
- Naval, Mir 'All Shir 96, 97, 108, 122-23, 147, 152, 156, 211-12, 214, 247, 251, 252, 256, 262, 264-65, 284, 382, 437, 439, 470
- Near Eastern. *See* Middle Eastern
- Near/Middle East, drinking rituals in 144
- Nehecu'l Feradis* 152. *See also* Khwarazmand Turkl
- Nestorian Christians 387
- Newton, Issac 25
- Nijrao, Kabul 309
- Nikdiri Afghans 189
- Ningnahar, Afghanistan 193, 201, 229, 230, 356
- Nishapur, Khurasan 137, 258
- Nizam al-Dm 'All Barias Khalīfah. *See* Khalīfah
- Nizam al-Dm Auliya 171, 199, 331, 393.
See also Amir Khusrāu Dihlavī
- Nizami, Nizam al-Dm Ilyas b. Yusuf 108, 145, 151, 262, 403
- Nizam Khan 160. *See also* Bayanah
- North Africa 68, 80, 367
- Nuham (Luharni), Afghans. *See* Luharm Afghans
- Nuh sipihr* 360, 394, 400, 402
- Nusrat Shah (Bengali) 433, 434, 441
- Nuyan Beg 34
- Oghuz 137
- Opium, use of 420. *See also* Babur, alcohol and drugs
- orchin*. *See also* tuman and parganah 189
- Orientalism 467
- ortaqs* 223
- Osman 18, 19
- Ottoman Empire 18, 19 & ns. 12-13, 20, 69, 162, 214, 257, 294, 320
- Ottoman (s) 249, 292, 294, 328, 349, 350, 465
- Ottoman Turkish 249, 250, 257
- Ozbek. *See* Uzbek
- Oudh, India 342, 414, 417, 442
- Oxus 13, 75, 111, 128, 130, 131, 233, 234, 246. *See also* Amu Darya
- padshah*. *See* *shah*

- Padshah-i Bagh*, Kabul 314
Pahlavan Muhammad Bu-sayyid 384
Pamghan (Paghman), Afghanistan 73, 133, 191, 312
Panipat, battle of, 1526 15, 227, 299, 316, 327, 328-31, 333, 335, 348, 349-51, 366, 374, 392, 404, 408, 414, 416, 443, 444, 457, 461
Panjab 159, 291, 297, 298, 299, 302, 303, 306, 317, 320, 321, 323, 324, 325, 341, 357, 367, 385, 393, 404, 430

parganah 189, 306, 341. *See also* orchin and tuman
Pashaghar, Ferghanah 189
Pashtu (n) (Pushtu (n)) 88, 108, 149, 182, 189, 193
The Passage to India 25
Patna, India 434, 444
Paul, Jurgen vii
Payindah Sultan Begim 215
Persian-language histories 5, 6-11, 53, 139, 148, 152
Persian language 3, 4, 5, 10, 21, 24, 42, 53, 54, 81, 97, 108, 138, 139, 148, 149-54, 161, 168, 176, 248, 251, 253, 254, 289, 301, 312, 339, 350, 392, 394, 398, 399, 410, 419, 437, 440, 446. *See also* poetry
Persians 21, 29, 147, 150, 164, 384. *See also* Iranians
Persian wheel, use in India 367, 371
Perso-Islamic 52, 53, 136, 138, 139, 142, 143, 144, 148, 155, 156, 169, 170, 171, 211, 248, 262, 310, 371, 384, 401, 410, 457, 461, 462, 463
Peshawar (Pashawer), Afghanistan/India 189, 197
Petrarch 263
Piskharan, Ferghanah 104
Poetry, *see also* Babur, poetry
du-bayti 281
ghazal 123, 198, 253, 255, 257-60
Japanese 258, 260, 289
Jihan Shah Qara Quyunlu 255 n. 30
maqal 258, 270, 273, 275
masnavi 256, 259, 394
matld 267, 269, 273, 275, 278
mtfammas 55, 252, 255
Ottoman 151, 249-50, 263
Persian 51, 52, 109, 121-22, 123, 148, 152-68, 177-79, 248, 251, 253, 257, 262, 263, 278
qasidah(s) 34, 253, 260, 393
qit'ah 255, 284
radif 268
rubtfiydt 31, 123, 253, 255, 257-59, 393
Ruzbihan Khunji 245
Shah Ismail SafavT20 n. 17, 255 n. 30
ShTbanTKhan 214, 238
takhallus 248, 252, 257 262 263, Timurid 252-53
Turk! 4, 51, 52, 109, 123, 151, 252-57 and 252 n. 19, 262, 268
tuyuq 149, 253, 255, 258
Urdu 278
women poets 260 7& n. 49.
significance 249-50, 288-89
Pope-Hennnessy, John 24
precedence and status 208-10, 222, 226-27, 427-28. *See also* battle orders and sovereignty
The Prince 12
Ptolomey 142, 392
Pulad Sultan 283. *See also* Babur, Poetry
Pul-i sangin, battle of, 1511 227, 235-37

Qabus namah 44
Qadi-zada Rumi 141
qalandar, 312, 444
Qalat, Afghanistan 196, 223, 224, 228
Qalah Zafar, Afghanistan 449
qalpagh 147. *See also* headgear
Qambar ^{AlT}b. Qasim Beg 217
Qambar All Mughul 90-91, 103, 104, 105, 111, 118, 121, 125
Qandahar 9, 49, 75, 133, 188, 189, 193, 194, 202, 216, 217, 219, 222, 224, 225, 227, 228, 230, 234, 237
Qarakhanids 137
Qara Qitai 124. *See also* China
Qarluq, Afghanistan/India 303
Qarshi, Mawarannahr 238, 244
qasidah. *See* poetry
Qasim Beg Qauchin 89, 90, 91, 168, 178, 208, 217, 228, 229, 282
Qasim Sultan 209
Qauchin(s) 89
qazaq (liq) 67, 8, 4, 88, 98-100, 101, 103, 105, 119, 121, 128, 164, 187, 204, 229, 429, 460
qazaqyigitler 418
Qipchaq steppe 78, 325

- Qipchaq Turk 93, 112
(Tran al-sddayn {The Conjunction of Jupiter and Venus}) 360, 394
- Qitai 24. *See also* Khitai and China
- Qizilbash 239, 427, 460
- Qunduz 75, 95, 117, 130, 131, 189, 192, 201, 232, 233, 234, 236, 246, 291, 305, 333, 404, 405, 406
- Quran 30, 36, 50, 59, 126, 131, 145, 154, 155, 171, 177, 214, 287, 316, 349, 350, 378, 399, 427, 463
- Qutlugh Nigar Khanim 39, 48,
- Qutb al-Dm Bakhtiyar Kaki UshT (Chishti) 331. *See also* ChishtT order
- Qutb al-Dm Mubarak Shah 394, 395, 396, 399
- Quwwat al-Islam mosque 443
- radf. See* poetry
- RahTmdad, Khwajah 419, 447, 448
- Rajasthan 336, 342, 351, 404, 419, 460
- Rajputs 282, 3343, 350, 351, 353, 354, 368, 400, 411, 413, 414, 419, 427, 458
- Rama 468
- Rampur Diwan 15, 285, 288, 403, 430-31, 433
- Rana Sanga, Rajput 337, 342-51, 354, 414, 416, 419
- Ranthambor, Rajasthan 337, 342, 343, 419
- Rapri, India 236, 352, 310,
- Rashid al-Dm Fazlullah 310
- Rauzat al-Jannat ft ausdf madinat Harat* 42 & n. 82. *See also* gazetteers
- Renaissance,
 Italian 13, 66
 Timurid 95, 188
- Renaissance man. *See* Babur, Renaissance man
- Rickmers, Rickmer W. 119, 365
- Rime Sparse* 263
- rind* 261. *See also* irogonomi
- Risala-i Validiya* 250, 424, 465
- Romantic movement 29, 47, 108
- Rome, Roman 181-82, 355, 457, 462
- Rousseau, Jean Jacques 25, 47, 38, 135
- Roux, Jean-Paul 25, 47
- rubdiyat. See* poetry
- The Rubaiyat. See* Fitzgerald, Edward
- Rum, 194, 294
- Rumi, Jalal al-Dm 145, 251, 262
- Russian(s) 22, 58, 469
- Rustam Plain, Afghanistan 306
- Ruzbihan Khunji 242, 245
- sabk-i Hindi* 394. *See also* Persian
- sabuhi* (dawn-draught) 315 & n. 63, 316
- Sa'dT, Abu 'Abd Allah Musharrif 45, 121-22, 178, 205, 251, 256, 262, 277. *See also* Babur, poetry and, poetry
- safor* 321. *See also* chapqun and yurush
- Safavid(s) 7-10, 18 & n. 9, 19, 20 & n. 17, 21, 49, 64, 69, 147, 169, 231, 232, 233, 243, 244, 291, 292, 301, 317, 318, 320, 413, 420, 421, 460, 465
- Sahib-Qiran 447 & n. 87
- Sahih Bukhari* 376
- sahranishin* 160-64, 193
- SaTd Khan Chaghatay. *See* Chaghatay ChingTzids
- Saihun River, Ferghanah 151
- Saint Augustine 25, 33
- Saint Crispin's Day 338
- Sakakki 252-53. *See also* poetry, Turk!
- Sakhi Sarwar Pass, Afghanistan-India 199, 444
- Salah al-Dm (SilhadT) 35
- Salih, Muhammad
- Saljuqs 18, 137
- samd* 393, 401. *See also* Amir Khusrau DihlavT
- Samarqand 2, 8, 9, 10, 13, 18, 22, 41, 42, 49, 50, 61, 62, 63, 64, 66, 71, 75, 78, 79, 82, 84, 85, 87, 89, 90, 91, 93, 94, 95, 98, 102, 107, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 124, 128, 130, 133, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 143, 149, 155, 156, 159, 160, 161, 166, 169, 176, 180, 183, 188, 192, 194, 204, 210, 214, 219, 232, 233, 235, 237, 238, 242, 243, 244, 245, 247, 248, 253, 256, 265, 266, 267, 269, 278, 280, 282, 283, 285, 304, 312, 314, 330, 331, 332, 335, 342, 358, 365, 375, 376-82, 377, 402, 404, 410, 420, 423, 424, 427, 434, 458, 462, 463, 469, 470
- Samarqand State University 470
- SamarqandT, 'Abd al-Razzaq 6
- Sambal, India 342, 347, 352, 404, 411, 412, 451

- sangar* 198. *See also* Afghans, military tactics
 Sanskrit 385, 390, 398
 SaqlabT 164
 Sarangpur, India 417
 Sar-i Pul, battle of, 1501 116-17, 244
Sart 161, 315. *See also* *Tat*
 Saru River, India 444
 Sasanid 178, 372, 381
 Saturn 395
sava'im 194. *See also* Kabul, revenue and taxes
 Sayf al-Dm Ahmad 148
 Sayyidim All 174, 216
 Sayyid Qasim Jalayir 226, 305
 Sayyid Raff 427
 Sayyid Rumi 427
sayyids 139, 314
 Sayyids of Delhi 159
 Sayyid Yusuf Mejemi 105
 Seleucid 369
 September 11, 2001 1
shah 41, 49, 54, 70, 72, 84, 93, 95, 100, 111, 115, 118, 125, 153, 211, 230, 239, 265, 274, 44, 451, 460. *See also* *padshah*, *badshah*
 Shahabad, India 326
 Shahbaz Qalandar 293
 Shah Beg Arghun. *See* Arghuns
 Shah Begim 48, 93, 122, 191, 218, 219, 220, 229
shahid 351
 Shahlsmaff SafavT 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 64, 232, 234, 238, 239, 242, 244, 292, 320, 422, 460
 Shah Jahan b. Jahangir b. Akbar b. Humayun b. Babur 1, 311, 335, 393, 455
 Shah Mansur Yusufzai 293
Shahndmah 109, 145, 153, 178, 348, 350
 Shahr-i sabz (Kish) 111, 237, 266, 381, 457
 Shah Rukh 71, 139-40, 142, 159
shahrukhis. *See* coinage, Timurid
 Shahrukhiyah, Mawarannahr 267
 Shahsevan 99-101. *See also* *qazaq*
 Shah Shuja^c 32
 Shah Tahmasp SafavT 301, 422, 460
 Shahzadah 311-12
 Shakespeare, William 263, 278
Sharaf namah-i shahi 9, 10
shariah 30, 140, 169, 175, 466
 Shaykh Ahmad Sirhindi 177
 Shaykh Ahmad Yasavi 138
 Shaykh Bayizid 200. *See also* Sultan Ahmad Tambal
 Shaykh Bayizid Farmull, Afghan 342, 414, 416, 417, 419, 441, 442, 445
 Shaykh Guran, Afghan 414, 458
 Shaykh Mazid Beg Qauchin 89, 90
 Shaykh Shihab al-Dm 'Arab 427
 Shaykh Sharaf al-Dm (ChishtT) 444
 Shaykh Yahya (ChishtT) 444
 Shaykh Zayn 331, 347, 349-50. *See also* *Fath-namah*
 Shayzar, Syria 35
 ShTbanTKhan 9, 18, 21, 22, 23, 63, 64, 78, 79, 80, 82, 83, 93, 94, 109, 111, 112, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, 121, 122, 124, 126, 127, 129, 130, 131, 158, 160, 188, 210, 213, 216, 228, 230, 232, 233, 234, 238, 266, 298, 422, 446, 469
Shibani namah 9
 Shibartu Pass, Afghanistan 218
 Shihab al-Dm Muhammad Ghur! 332, 333
 SlffTIslam
 Babur 10, 170, 234-42
 Humayun 460
 Safavids, 19, 20
 Shir Khan (Shah) Sun 409, 439, 453, 459
 Siena 13
 Sialkot, Panjab, India 324
 Sikri, India 345, 346, 353, 411, 418, 420, 448, 455
 Sikandar LudT. *See* Ludis
 Sind 339, 460
 Sirhind, India 461
 Sirhindi. *See* Shaykh Ahmad SirhindT
 Socrates 391. *See also* al-Blrum
 Somnath 401
 Son River, India 444
 South Asia (n) 135, 198, 304, 306, 363, 384, 391, 409, 426. *See also* India and Hindustan
 sovereignty, indicators. *See also* legitimacy
khutbah (Friday prayers) 130-31, 298, 331, 459
naqarah 93, 312
 presents {*pishkishlar*} 200
 promotion 92

- seals 94, 223
workshops 106
- Soviet (s) 93, 107
- Soviet Union 52, 469
- soyurghal*, 6, 74 & n. 22, 90, 407. *See also* appanage
- Spain, Islamic (al-Andalus) 68, 184, 185
- state formation. *See also* Kabul, state formation
- Timurid-Mughul Empire 341, 343, 347-48, 351-52, 404-410
- Stebleva, I. V vii, 4
- steppe 145
- Straley, Dona vii
- structure (s) 2, 12, 14. *See also* *Annales*, Bloch, Guenee and Le Goff
- Suhbat al-abrar* 177. *See also* m
- Subtely, Maria E. 7
- sufi* 19, 30-33, 261, 352, 384, 410, 444, 470
- suhbat*
social 180-83, 311, 345, 382, 402, 426, 431, 444, 470. *See also* symposium
- spiritual 113, 176-77, 180. *See also* Naqshbandis
- Sukh, Ferghanah 127, 427
- suki*, *see also* Heian Japan, *irogonomi* and *rind* 261
- Sulayman Shah Mirza b. Ways Mirza. *See* Miranshahi Timurids
- Sulaiman Mts., Afghanistan 189, 199
- Sultan Abu Said Mirza. *See* Miranshahi Timurids
- Sultan Ahmad Khan (Kichik Khan). *See* Ghaghatay Chingizids
- Sultan Ahmad Mirza. *See* Miranshahi Timurids
- Sultan Ahmad Tambal 95, 96, 98, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 110, 111, 112, 116, 121, 123, 124-27, 160, 200, 203, 204, 212, 302, 460
- Sultan 'Ala³ al-Dm 'Alam Khan LudT. *See* LudTs
- Sultan 'Ala⁵ al-Dm Muhammad Shah Khilji 331
- Sultan 'Ali Mirza. *See* Miranshahi Timurids
- Sultanate of Delhi 299, 394
- Sultan Husayn Mirza Bayqara. *See* Bayqara Timurids
- Sultan Husayn Mirza b. Mahmud Mirza. *See* Miranshahi Timurids
- Sultan Ibrahim LudT. *See* LudTs
- Sultanim Begim 303
- Sultan Junayd Barias 408
- Sultan Mahmud Khan. *See* Ghaghatay Chingizids
- Sultan Mahmud Mirza. *See* Miranshahi Timurids
- Sultan Mas'udT Hazarabs 191, 195, 339
- Sultan Muhammad Duldai Barias 227
- Sultan Muhammad Khan Durrani 241
- Sultan Muhammad Mirza. *See* Miranshahi Timurids
- Sultannigar Khanim 219
- Sultan Said Khan. *See* Ghaghatay Chingizids
- Sultan Sanjar Barias 218, 219
- Sultan Ways Mirza (Mirza Khan). *See* Miranshahi Timurids
- Sultan Mas'ud Mirza. *See* Miranshahi Timurids
- Suluk al-muluk* 10
- Sunni Islam 19, 21, 40, 41, 144, 148, 155, 168, 170, 174, 180, 239, 242, 245, 363, 408-09, 410, 462, 466
- Surkhab River, Afghanistan 130, 235, 237
- SurTs 406
- symposium, Tlmurid 179-86, 369, 371, 384. *See also* *suhbat*
- Syr Darya River. *See also* *axaxes* 125
- Swat, Afghanistan 293 364
- Syria 381
- Tabaqat al-nasin* 146, 152
- Tabriz 19, 99, 317, 402
- Tacitus 462
- al-Taftazanl 148
- Tagha'i (s)
'Al! Dust 93, 105, 111
- Gadal 305
- Mir Ghiyas 200
- Muhammad 93, 106, 111
- SherTm 222, 229, 233, 243
- Yarik 226
- Tajikistan 469
- Tajiks 193, 309. *See also* *Sarts* and *Iranians*
- Taj Mahal 1, 311, 385, 455
- takhallus*. Sh? poetry
- Tamerlane 16. *See also* *Temur* and *Timur tamgha* 191, 193
- Tang Atmish Sultan 191, 193
- tangah*. *See* coinage, Tlmurid

- Tardi Beg Khaksar 311, 352
 Tardikah 350. *See also* Kanwah, batde of
Tarikh-i RashuliTd, 146, 149
 Tarkhans 109, 111, 116
 Tashkent 73, 75, 76, 80, 85, 98, 104, 109,
 120, 122, 123, 124, 138, 171, 175,
 243, 267, 269, 302, 430, 442, 470
Tat 160. *See also* Sart and Tajik
 Tatar Khan Yusuf Khayl Ludi. *See* Ludis
tauhiid 31
 taxes and tribute. *See* state formation and
mal-i-aman
 Tayyi⁵ 164
 Temur 15-16 and n. 4. *See also* Timur and
 Tamerlane
 Tengri Birdi Samanchi 161
 Termez, Mawarannahr/ Afghanistan 75
 Tertullian 462
 Thackston, Wheeler M. vii
 Tibet 241
Tibyan 34-35
 Tien Shan 72, 76
 Timur, 6, 12, 15-15, 21, 22, 33, 39, 52,
 60, 64, 69, 70, 71, 72, 79, 88, 100, 101,
 111, 137, 138, 140, 141, 142, 152,
 153, 159, 160, 197, 207, 213, 250,
 252, 297, 312, 314, 332, 336, 341,
 377, 378, 381, 394, 457, 463, 469-70.
See also Temur and Tamerlane
 Timurid (s) 6, 7, 9, 12, 17, 20, 21, 22, 23,
 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 46, 50, 52, 55,
 57, 60, 63, 64, 66, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73,
 74, 75, 76, 78, 79, 80, 81, 83, 88, 90,
 92, 93, 94, 95, 98, 99, 100, 101, 112,
 113, 115, 117, 118, 119, 120, 127,
 129, 130, 133, 137, 138, 139, 142,
 143, 144, 145, 148, 149, 156, 158,
 160, 161, 162, 164, 166, 167, 168,
 169, 174, 175, 176, 185, 186, 188,
 196, 197, 198, 199, 202, 203, 205,
 208, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215,
 216, 218, 219, 221, 224, 228, 230,
 231, 232, 234, 235, 237, 241, 242,
 243, 245, 247, 249, 252, 254, 255,
 258, 261, 292, 296, 299, 301, 302,
 305, 320, 324, 325, 328, 332, 335,
 336, 341, 342, 350, 352, 353, 372,
 373, 376, 378, 379, 380, 384, 404,
 408, 410, 413, 414, 419, 422, 423,
 426, 428, 434, 458, 459, 462, 463,
 466, 467, 469-70
 Timurid-Mughul (s) 17 & n. 8, 19, 20, 22,
 69, 222, 260, 301, 304, 320, 337, 348,
 409, 413, 416, 419, 423, 425-26, 427,
 429, 441, 449, 454, 463, 465
 Timurid-Mughul Empire 135, 168, 297,
 337, 406, 408-10, 411, 418, 426, 452,
 458, 461-62
tiyul 90, 91, 191, 407. *See also* appanage
 and *soyurghal*
 Tolstoy, L. N. 58, 438
torah 171, 209. *See also* *tozruk*
tovachi(s) 240. *See also* troop estimates
tozruk 171
 Transoxiana 21, 138. *See also* Marwaran-
 nahr
 tribe, meaning of 69 n. 5
 troop estimates 224, 233-34, 237, 240,
 243, 244, 323, 326-27, 330, 333-35,
 416, 417, 439-41
tufang. *See* firearms
tup-i Farangi. *See* firearms
 Tukhta Bugha Sultan. *See* Chaghatay
 ChingTzids
Tulghamah 328, 330 & n. 98. *See also* Babur,
 battle formations and Mongols, tac-
 tics
tuman 189-91, 341, 381 407. *See also* *orchin*
 and *parganah*
tuqqan 13, 87
 Turban - and Islam 145-47, 171,
 Turco-Mongol 33, 36, 41, 50, 53, 57, 68,
 70, 72, 73, 75, 89, 92, 97, 103, 108,
 136, 139, 140, 141, 142, 145, 146,
 147, 148, 154, 155, 158, 162, 169,
 176, 178, 201, 212, 221, 241, 249,
 250, 255, 259, 296, 344, 360, 361,
 368, 371, 375, 384, 396, 408, 410,
 439, 442, 452, 458, 462, 466
 Tur! Afghans 304
 Turk (s) 21, 34, 74, 88, 138, 139, 151, 156-
 66 & 157 ns. 67 & 71, 168, 216, 228,
 297, 298, 299, 304, 315, 323, 356
 Turk! 4, 16 n. 3, 24, 41, 53, 55, 56, 58,
 96, 97, 138, 147, 148-56 & 150 n. 42,
 157, 188, 189, 217, 247, 248, 249,
 250, 252, 253, 254, 340, 360, 426,
 433, 435, 446, 464, 465, 470. *See also*
 Babur, poetry, and poetry
 Turkic 15, 17, 18, 19, 20, 78, 99, 137, 138,
 142, 149, 151, 162, 171, 253, 258,
 261, 294, 304, 356, 357, 359, 392,
 393, 411, 421, 460

- Turkic Empires 15-23
 Turkish 4, 393. *See also* Chaghatay and Turk!
 Turkistan 21, 72, 194
 Turkman Hazarachs 176
 Turkman 157, 227, 231
 Turkmenistan 469
 al-Tusi, Muhammad b. al-Hasan b. ^ʿA1T Abu DjaTar 463
tuyuq. See poetry
 Ubaydullah Khan, Uzbek 243
 Uighur language 15 n. 2
^ʿulamd 30, 33, 407, 427, 443, 464
 Ulugh Beg 71, 139-42, 159
 Ulugh Beg Mirza Kabuli. *See* Miranshahi Timurids
ulus 101, 158, 370
^ʿUmar Khayyam 31 & n. 51, 121, 255, 258, 261, 391, 463
^ʿUmar Shaykh Mirza. *See* Miranshahi Timurids
 L'uomo universale. *See* Babur, "Renaissance man"
 Ura Tipa, Ferghanah 87, 88, 92, 98, 112, 115, 117, 120, 121, 122, 123, 161, 218
 Urdu. *See* Babur, poetry, and poetry
uruq 12, 405
 Usamah ibn Munqidh, Abud Muzaffar 35-36, 37, 38, 40, 45, 52, 57
 Ush, Ferghanah 102, 103, 110, 124, 125, 183, 184, 331
 Ustad ^ʿA1TQuli 294-95, 329, 350, 416, 418. *See also* firearms and Ottomans
^ʿushr 193. *See also* Kabul, revenue and taxes
 Utrar, Mughulistan 56
 Uzbeks 1, 8, 9, 10, 18, 19, 20, 21, 26, 41, 44, 49, 50, 61, 62, 63, 64, 69, 70, 72, 79, 80, 83, 84, 95, 98, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 126, 128, 131, 163, 176, 201, 202, 204, 207-08, 213, 219, 222, 227, 228, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 236, 238, 239, 242, 244, 245, 246, 267, 278, 280, 283, 291, 292, 302, 308, 317, 321, 330, 348, 403, 405, 413, 421, 423, 434, 446, 449, 450, 460, 460-70
 Uzbek language 16 n. 3
 Uzbekistan 1, 469
 Uzgend, Ferghanah, 102, 103, 105, 110, 125
 Uzun Hasan, Aq Quyunlu 19
 Vaishnavite 468-69. *See also* Babri masjid
Vaqay *See* Babur, *VaqayH*
 Venetians 294
 Vijayanagar 342
 Vikramaditya, Rajah 374. *See also* Gwalior
vildyat(lar) 187, 189-93, 216, 310, 357 & n. 4, 358, 359, 368, 376, 381, 404, 405
 Vishnu 468. *See also* Babri Masjid
 Vishwa Hindu Parishad. *See* Babri Masjid and nationalism, Indian
Vita 24, 29, 37, 60. *See also* autobiography and Cellini
 Volga 21, 78
wajdars 407, 421
 Waksh, Mawarannahr 233, 235
 Wall Beg 169
waqf 436 n. 62, 444, 455. *See also* NaqshbandTs
 Ways Laghari 85, 118, 200
 WazTrT Afghans 308, 309
William the Conqueror. See Kipling
 World Hindu Council 2, 468
 Yak-Tail Ceremony 171, 221, 295. *See also* *tbrah* and *tbzuk*
 Yakah Aulang, Afghanistan 218,
 Yangi, Mughulistan 56
 Yang-i Hisar, Mughulistan 448-49
 Yadgar Muhammad Nasir Mirza 114
 Yar-Husayn 297. *See also* Langar Khan
 Yarkand, Mughulistan 449
Yasa 140
yat 73
 Yazdi, Sharaf al-Dm ^ʿAll 52, 53, 152, 252
yigit (ler) 92, 216, 306, 338
Young Werther 108. *See also* Romantic movement
 Yiicel, Bilal 4
 Yunas Al! 427
 Yunas Khan. *See* Chaghatay Chingizids
yurush 196, 197, 198. *See also* *chapqun* and *safar*
 Yusufzai Afghans 196, 198, 296, 306, 321, 441
 Zafar, Afghanistan 233

- ʿĀfar namah* 52, 152, 252
 Zanj T 164
 Zarafshan River, Mawarannahr 112, 117
Zarb-zan(an). *See* firearms
 Zaynab Sultan Khanim Chaghatay 446
ZU^a ~*Gurkham* 378, 463. *See also* astronomy
 and Ulugh Beg
 Zirrin Pass, Afghanistan 217
zuhdiyyat poetry 30
 Zuʿn Nun Arghun. *See* Arghuns

BRILL'S INNER ASIAN LIBRARY

Editors

NICOLA DI COSMO
DEVIN DEWEESE
CAROLINE HUMPHREY

ISSN 1566-7162

The Brill's Inner Asian Library Series is dedicated to the scholarly research of every aspect of the history, literature, religion, arts, economy and politics of Inner Asian cultures and societies. The Series aims to contribute to the development of Inner Asian studies by representing also non-Western scholarly traditions.

1. Cosmo, N. Di and D. Bao, *Manchu-Mongol Relations on the Eve of the Qing Conquest. A Documentary History*. ISBN 90 04 11777 6
2. Williams, B.G., *The Crimean Tatars. The Diaspora Experience and the Forging of a Nation*. 2001. ISBN 90 04 12122 6
3. Levi, S.C., *The Indian Diaspora in Central Asia and its Trade (1550-1900)*. 2002. ISBN 90 04 12320 2
4. Allworth, E.A. *Evading Reality. The Devices of "Abdalrauf Fitrat, Modern Central Asian Reformist; Poetry and Prose of "Abdul Qadir Bedil*. TransL from Persian by William L. Hanaway. 2002. ISBN 90 04 12516 7
5. Gross, J. and A. Urumbaev, *The Letters of Khwaja 'Ubayd Allah Ahrar and his Associates*. 2002. ISBN 90 04 12603 1
6. Atwood, C.P., *Young Mongols and Vigilantes in Inner Mongolia's Interregnum Decades, 1911-1931*. 2002. ISBN 90 04 12607 4
7. Rachewiltz, I. de, *The Secret History of the Mongols. A Mongolian Epic Chronicle of the Thirteenth Century*. 2003. ISBN 90 04 13159 0 (Set), ISBN 90 04 13596 0 (Vol-U ISBN 90 04 13597 9 (Vol. 2)
8. Elverskog, J., *The "Jewel Translucent Sutra". Altan Khan and the Mongols in the Sixteenth Century*. 2003. ISBN 90 04 13261 9
9. Muhammad-Sharif-i Sadr-i Ziya. *The Personal History of a Bukharan Intellectual. The Diary of Muhammad-Sharif-i Sadr-i Ziya*. 2004. ISBN 90 04 13161 2
10. Dale, S.E., *The Garden of the Eight Paradises. Babur and the Culture of Empire in Central Asia, Afghanistan and India (1483-1530)*. 2004. ISBN 90 04 13707 6

